

ROBOTICS

Product manual

CRB 1100



Trace back information:
Workspace 23B version a17
Checked in 2023-06-29
Skribenta version 5.5.019

Product manual
CRB 1100-4/0.475
CRB 1100-4/0.58

OmniCore

Document ID: 3HAC078007-001

Revision: J

The information in this manual is subject to change without notice and should not be construed as a commitment by ABB. ABB assumes no responsibility for any errors that may appear in this manual.

Except as may be expressly stated anywhere in this manual, nothing herein shall be construed as any kind of guarantee or warranty by ABB for losses, damage to persons or property, fitness for a specific purpose or the like.

In no event shall ABB be liable for incidental or consequential damages arising from use of this manual and products described herein.

This manual and parts thereof must not be reproduced or copied without ABB's written permission.

Keep for future reference.

Additional copies of this manual may be obtained from ABB.

Original instructions.

Table of contents

| | |
|---|-----------|
| Overview of this manual | 9 |
| Product documentation | 13 |
| How to read the product manual | 15 |
| Network security | 16 |
| 1 Safety | 17 |
| 1.1 Safety information | 17 |
| 1.1.1 Limitation of liability | 17 |
| 1.1.2 Requirements on personnel | 18 |
| 1.2 Safety signals and symbols | 19 |
| 1.2.1 Safety signals in the manual | 19 |
| 1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels | 21 |
| 1.3 Robot stopping functions | 27 |
| 1.4 Safety during installation and commissioning | 28 |
| 1.5 Safety during operation | 30 |
| 1.6 Safety during maintenance and repair | 31 |
| 1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair | 31 |
| 1.6.2 Emergency release of the robot axes | 33 |
| 1.6.3 Brake testing | 34 |
| 1.7 Safety during troubleshooting | 35 |
| 1.8 Safety during decommissioning | 36 |
| 2 Manipulator description | 37 |
| 2.1 About CRB 1100 | 37 |
| 2.2 Technical data | 38 |
| 2.3 Safety data | 42 |
| 2.4 Dimensions | 43 |
| 2.5 Working range | 45 |
| 2.6 The unit is sensitive to ESD | 48 |
| 3 Installation and commissioning | 49 |
| 3.1 Introduction to installation and commissioning | 49 |
| 3.2 Unpacking | 50 |
| 3.2.1 Pre-installation procedure | 50 |
| 3.2.2 Risk of tipping/stability | 51 |
| 3.3 On-site installation | 53 |
| 3.3.1 Lifting the robot | 53 |
| 3.3.1.1 Lifting the robot by one person | 53 |
| 3.3.1.2 Lifting and rotating a suspended mounted robot | 55 |
| 3.3.2 Orienting and securing the robot | 56 |
| 3.3.3 Manually releasing the brakes | 58 |
| 3.3.4 Setting the system parameters for an inverted or a tilted robot | 60 |
| 3.3.5 Loads fitted to the robot, stopping time and braking distances | 65 |
| 3.3.6 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions) | 66 |
| 3.3.7 Installation of lead-through device | 71 |
| 3.3.8 Installation of laser scanner | 78 |
| 3.4 Restricting the working range | 86 |
| 3.4.1 Adjusting the working range | 86 |
| 3.4.2 Mechanically restricting the working range | 87 |
| 3.5 Electrical connection | 88 |
| 3.5.1 Robot cabling and connection points | 88 |
| 3.5.2 Customer connections | 91 |
| 3.6 Start of robot in cold environments | 93 |
| 3.7 Configuring the software | 94 |
| 3.7.1 Information about RobotWare and CRB 1100 | 95 |
| 3.7.2 Information about Collaborative Speed Control add-in | 96 |

Table of contents

| | | |
|----------|--|------------|
| 3.7.3 | Lead-through | 97 |
| 3.7.4 | SafeMove | 104 |
| 3.7.4.1 | The SafeMove configurator app on FlexPendant | 104 |
| 3.7.4.2 | Configuration of SafeMove using Visual SafeMove in RobotStudio | 114 |
| 3.7.5 | Speed control | 119 |
| 3.7.5.1 | Configuration of one PROFINET-base laser scanner (RobotWare 7.5 or earlier) | 119 |
| 3.7.5.2 | Configuration of one PROFI-safe-based laser scanner (RobotWare 7.6 or later and PLC acting as Master) | 125 |
| 3.7.5.3 | Configuration of two PROFI-safe-based laser scanners (RobotWare 7.6 or later and PLC acting as Master) | 129 |
| 3.7.5.4 | Configuration of one PROFI-safe-based laser scanner (RobotWare 7.10 or later and OmniCore acting as Master) | 133 |
| 3.7.5.5 | Configuration of two PROFI-safe-based laser scanners (RobotWare 7.10 or later and OmniCore acting as Master) | 137 |
| 3.7.5.6 | Configuration of one SafetyIO-base laser scanner (RobotWare 7.6 or later) | 141 |
| 3.7.5.7 | Configuration of two SafetyIO-base laser scanners (RobotWare 7.6 or later) | 146 |
| 3.7.5.8 | Speed control strategies | 151 |
| 3.7.6 | Robot status indication | 154 |
| 3.7.7 | Use cases of safety configurations | 156 |
| 3.8 | Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair | 161 |
| 4 | Maintenance | 163 |
| 4.1 | Introduction | 163 |
| 4.2 | Maintenance schedule and expected component life | 164 |
| 4.2.1 | Specification of maintenance intervals | 164 |
| 4.2.2 | Maintenance schedule | 165 |
| 4.2.3 | Expected component life | 167 |
| 4.3 | Cleaning activities | 168 |
| 4.3.1 | Cleaning the CRB 1100 | 168 |
| 4.4 | Inspection activities | 169 |
| 4.4.1 | Inspecting the information labels | 169 |
| 4.4.2 | Inspecting the robot cabling | 171 |
| 4.4.3 | Inspecting timing belts | 172 |
| 4.5 | Lubricating activities | 176 |
| 4.5.1 | Lubricating the cable package | 176 |
| 4.6 | Replacing/changing activities | 178 |
| 4.6.1 | Replacing the battery pack | 178 |
| 5 | Repair | 185 |
| 5.1 | Introduction | 185 |
| 5.2 | General procedures | 186 |
| 5.2.1 | Mounting instructions for sealings | 186 |
| 5.2.2 | Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts | 189 |
| 5.3 | Cable harness | 190 |
| 5.3.1 | Replacing the upper cable package | 191 |
| 5.3.2 | Replacing the lower cable package | 235 |
| 5.3.3 | Replacing the SMB unit | 269 |
| 5.4 | Swing and base | 277 |
| 5.4.1 | Replacing the base | 277 |
| 5.4.2 | Replacing the swing | 318 |
| 5.5 | Lower arm | 362 |
| 5.5.1 | Replacing the lower arm | 362 |
| 5.6 | Housing, extender unit and wrist | 393 |
| 5.6.1 | Replacing the housing | 393 |
| 5.6.2 | Replacing the extender unit and wrist | 435 |

| | | |
|----------|---|------------|
| 5.7 | Motors | 475 |
| 5.7.1 | Replacing the axis-1 motor | 475 |
| 5.7.2 | Replacing the axis-2 motor | 490 |
| 5.7.3 | Replacing the axis-3 motor | 502 |
| 5.7.4 | Replacing the axis-4 motor | 513 |
| 5.7.5 | Replacing the axis-5 motor | 524 |
| 5.7.6 | Replacing the axis-6 motor | 535 |
| 5.8 | Gearboxes | 545 |
| 5.8.1 | Replacing the axis-1 gearbox | 545 |
| 5.8.2 | Replacing the axis-2 gearbox | 587 |
| 5.8.3 | Replacing the axis-3 gearbox | 605 |
| 5.8.4 | Replacing the axis-4 gearbox | 620 |
| 6 | Calibration | 653 |
| 6.1 | Introduction to calibration | 653 |
| 6.1.1 | Introduction and calibration terminology | 653 |
| 6.1.2 | Calibration methods | 654 |
| 6.1.3 | When to calibrate | 656 |
| 6.2 | Synchronization marks and axis movement directions | 657 |
| 6.2.1 | Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes | 657 |
| 6.2.2 | Calibration movement directions for all axes | 658 |
| 6.3 | Updating revolution counters | 659 |
| 6.3.1 | Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots | 659 |
| 6.4 | Calibrating with Axis Calibration method | 663 |
| 6.4.1 | Description of Axis Calibration | 663 |
| 6.4.2 | Calibration tools for Axis Calibration | 666 |
| 6.4.3 | Installation locations for the calibration tools | 668 |
| 6.4.4 | Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure | 671 |
| 6.4.5 | Reference calibration | 677 |
| 6.5 | Calibrating with Wrist Optimization method | 679 |
| 6.6 | Verifying the calibration | 681 |
| 6.7 | Checking the synchronization position | 682 |
| 7 | Troubleshooting | 683 |
| 7.1 | Introduction to troubleshooting | 683 |
| 7.2 | Oil and grease stains on motors and gearboxes | 685 |
| 7.3 | Mechanical noise or dissonance | 686 |
| 7.4 | Manipulator collapses on power down | 687 |
| 7.5 | Motor temperature too high | 688 |
| 7.6 | Communication failure between PROFIsafe-based laser scanner, PLC, and controller | 689 |
| 7.7 | Communication failure between PLC and controller | 690 |
| 7.8 | Communication failure between scalable I/O device and controller | 692 |
| 7.9 | Errors related to stopped background task T_SWIFTI_LED | 693 |
| 7.10 | Unable to change speed value in FlexPendant | 694 |
| 7.11 | Movement in Safe area not in full speed or at zero speed | 695 |
| 7.12 | Unable to remove or reselect installed options in Collaborative Speed Control add-in | 696 |
| 7.13 | Unexpected robot movement when starting the program in Protecting Area | 697 |
| 8 | Decommissioning | 699 |
| 8.1 | Introduction to decommissioning | 699 |
| 8.2 | Environmental information | 700 |
| 8.3 | Scrapping of robot | 702 |
| 9 | Reference information | 703 |
| 9.1 | Introduction | 703 |
| 9.2 | Applicable standards | 704 |
| 9.3 | Unit conversion | 705 |
| 9.4 | Screw joints | 706 |

Table of contents

| | | |
|--------------|--|------------|
| 9.5 | Weight specifications | 709 |
| 9.6 | Standard toolkit | 710 |
| 9.7 | Special tools | 711 |
| 10 | Spare parts | 713 |
| 10.1 | Spare part lists and illustrations | 713 |
| Index | | 715 |

Overview of this manual

About this manual

This manual contains instructions for:

- mechanical and electrical installation of the CRB 1100
- maintenance of the CRB 1100
- mechanical and electrical repair of the CRB 1100

The robot described in this manual has the following protection types:

- *Standard*

Usage

This manual should be used during:

- installation and commissioning, from lifting the product to its work site and securing it to the foundation, to making it ready for operation
- maintenance work
- repair work
- decommissioning work



Note

It is the responsibility of the integrator to conduct a risk assessment of the final application.

It is the responsibility of the integrator to provide safety and user guides for the robot system.

Who should read this manual?

This manual is intended for:

- installation personnel
- maintenance personnel
- repair personnel.

Prerequisites

A maintenance/repair/installation craftsman working with an ABB robot must:

- be trained by ABB and have the required knowledge of mechanical and electrical installation/repair/maintenance work.
- be trained to respond to emergencies or abnormal situations.

Product manual scope

The manual covers all variants and designs of the CRB 1100. Some variants and designs may have been removed from the business offer and are no longer available for purchase.

Continues on next page

References

Documentation referred to in the manual, is listed in the table below.

| Document name | Document ID |
|--|----------------|
| <i>Product manual, spare parts - CRB 1100</i> | 3HAC078009-001 |
| <i>Product specification - CRB 1100</i> | 3HAC082108-001 |
| <i>Safety manual for robot - Manipulator and IRC5 or OmniCore controllerⁱ</i> | 3HAC031045-001 |
| <i>Product manual - OmniCore C30</i> | 3HAC060860-001 |
| <i>Operating manual - OmniCore</i> | 3HAC065036-001 |
| <i>Application manual - Controller software OmniCore</i> | 3HAC066554-001 |
| <i>Application manual - CalibWare Field</i> | 3HAC030421-001 |
| <i>Technical reference manual - Event logs for RobotWare 7</i> | 3HAC066553-001 |
| <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> | 3HAC042927-001 |
| <i>Technical reference manual - System parameters</i> | 3HAC065041-001 |
| <i>Application manual - PROFINET Controller/Device</i> | 3HAC066558-001 |
| <i>Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove</i> | 3HAC066559-001 |
| <i>Operating manual - RobotStudio</i> | 3HAC032104-001 |
| <i>Circuit diagram - CRB 1100</i> | 3HAC076518-003 |

ⁱ This manual contains all safety instructions from the product manuals for the manipulators and the controllers.

Revisions

| Revision | Description |
|----------|---|
| A | First edition. |
| B | <p>Published in release 21B. The following updates are done in this revision:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Text regarding fastener quality is updated, see Fastener quality on page 70.• Text regarding diameter of air hoses is updated, see Customer connections on page 91.• Added delivery information about the attachment screws, see Attachment screws on page 56.• Added maintenance activities of running the <i>Brake Check</i> and <i>Cyclic Brake Check</i> routines. See Maintenance schedule on page 165.• Removed maintenance activity of inspecting oil seepage and updated troubleshooting description about oil and grease stains on motors and gearboxes.• Added a caution about cleaning the lamp unit cover. See Cleaning methods on page 168.• Updated the tightening torque for fitting the lamp unit cover from 0.15 Nm to 0.1 Nm.• Added a note to remind users that mechanical stop locations cannot be adjusted. See Adjusting the working range on page 86. |

Continues on next page

| Revision | Description |
|----------|--|
| C | Published in release 21C. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Added a note to the procedure of enabling the lead-through device. • Added spare part parallel pin on extender unit and updated related refitting procedure of extender unit. • Corrected the description of connection point on cabinet. • Updated the naming of timing belt tension adjustment tools, from acoustic tensiometer and tensiometer to sonic tension meter and dynamometer, respectively. |
| D | Published in release 22A. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Added information about length of thread engagement for attachment screws. • Added cautions in procedures of removing timing belts, motors and gearboxes. • Updated dimension figures to include dimension for bottom connector interface option. • Added troubleshooting for high motor temperature, see Motor temperature too high on page 688. • Updated information about Gleitmo treated screws, see Screw joints on page 706. • Updated information of lead-through device and laser scanner connection and configuration due to new introduction of Collaborative Speed Control add-in and new laser scanner options. See Installation of lead-through device on page 71, Installation of laser scanner on page 78 and Configuring the software on page 94. • Removed caution about not to use cleaning detergents containing ethanol, organic solvent or similar to clean the lamp cover. |
| E | Published in release 22B. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Updated the optional port from LAN port to MGMT port, which is used to connect the cable from robot to controller for lead-through functionality. • Added installation and configuration of the two-button-type lead-through device. • Added a list of general software configuration procedure. • Added a note about the requirement for connecting lamp unit cabling. |
| F | Published in release 22C. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Updated robot power cable information, see Robot cables on page 88. • Updated spare part numbers for axes 1-6 motors. • Added expected life of gearboxes. • Updated cable connection figures for safetyIO-based scanner(s). • Added the lamp unit cabling when the controller is configured with safety I/O device DSQC1042. • Added a caution about carefully using of the lead-through device on the robot. • Updated information label figure. • Updated the connection figures and configuration procedure of the safetyIO-based laser scanners. • Removed the troubleshooting for issue of RED flashing status on Scalable I/O device and failure to move the robot. |
| G | Published in release 22D. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Added information about Wrist Optimization in calibration chapter. • Added notes about installation and configuration of additional scalable I/O device. |

Continues on next page

| Revision | Description |
|----------|--|
| H | Published in release 23A. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Added the direct connection between the laser scanner and OmniCore controller. |
| J | Published in release 23B. The following updates are done in this revision: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Added pin assignment on XG1 connector of SafetyIO-based laser scanner.• Updated the logical expressions for SafeMove configuration using Visual SafeMove, see Configuring pre logic on page 114. |

Product documentation

Categories for user documentation from ABB Robotics

The user documentation from ABB Robotics is divided into a number of categories. This listing is based on the type of information in the documents, regardless of whether the products are standard or optional.



Tip

All documents can be found via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

Product manuals

Manipulators, controllers, DressPack/SpotPack, and most other hardware is delivered with a **Product manual** that generally contains:

- Safety information.
- Installation and commissioning (descriptions of mechanical installation or electrical connections).
- Maintenance (descriptions of all required preventive maintenance procedures including intervals and expected life time of parts).
- Repair (descriptions of all recommended repair procedures including spare parts).
- Calibration.
- Troubleshooting.
- Decommissioning.
- Reference information (safety standards, unit conversions, screw joints, lists of tools).
- Spare parts list with corresponding figures (or references to separate spare parts lists).
- References to circuit diagrams.

Technical reference manuals

The technical reference manuals describe reference information for robotics products, for example lubrication, the RAPID language, and system parameters.

Application manuals

Specific applications (for example software or hardware options) are described in **Application manuals**. An application manual can describe one or several applications.

An application manual generally contains information about:

- The purpose of the application (what it does and when it is useful).
- What is included (for example cables, I/O boards, RAPID instructions, system parameters, software).
- How to install included or required hardware.
- How to use the application.

Continues on next page

- Examples of how to use the application.

Operating manuals

The operating manuals describe hands-on handling of the products. The manuals are aimed at those having first-hand operational contact with the product, that is production cell operators, programmers, and troubleshooters.

How to read the product manual

Reading the procedures

The procedures contain all information required for the installation or service activity and can be printed out separately when needed for a certain service procedure.

Safety information

The manual includes a separate safety chapter that must be read through before proceeding with any service or installation procedures. All procedures also include specific safety information when dangerous steps are to be performed.

Read more in the chapter [Safety on page 17](#).

Illustrations

The product is illustrated with general figures that does not take painting or protection type in consideration.

Likewise, certain work methods or general information that is valid for several product models, can be illustrated with illustrations that show a different product model than the one that is described in the current manual.

Network security

Network security

This product is designed to be connected to and to communicate information and data via a network interface. It is your sole responsibility to provide, and continuously ensure, a secure connection between the product and to your network or any other network (as the case may be).

You shall establish and maintain any appropriate measures (such as, but not limited to, the installation of firewalls, application of authentication measures, encryption of data, installation of anti-virus programs, etc) to protect the product, the network, its system and the interface against any kind of security breaches, unauthorized access, interference, intrusion, leakage and/or theft of data or information. ABB Ltd and its entities are not liable for damage and/or loss related to such security breaches, any unauthorized access, interference, intrusion, leakage and/or theft of data or information.

1 Safety

1.1 Safety information

1.1.1 Limitation of liability

Limitation of liability

Any information given in this manual regarding safety must not be construed as a warranty by ABB that the industrial robot will not cause injury or damage even if all safety instructions are complied with.

The information does not cover how to design, install and operate a robot system, nor does it cover all peripheral equipment that can influence the safety of the robot system.

In particular, liability cannot be accepted if injury or damage has been caused for any of the following reasons:

- Use of the robot in other ways than intended.
- Incorrect operation or maintenance.
- Operation of the robot when the safety devices are defective, not in their intended location or in any other way not working.
- When instructions for operation and maintenance are not followed as intended.
- Non-authorized design modifications of the robot.
- Repairs on the robot and its spare parts carried out by in-experienced or non-qualified personnel.
- Foreign objects.
- Force majeure.

Spare parts and equipment

ABB supplies original spare parts and equipment which have been tested and approved for their intended use. The installation and/or use of non-original spare parts and equipment can negatively affect the safety, function, performance, and structural properties of the robot. ABB is not liable for damages caused by the use of non-original spare parts and equipment.

1 Safety

1.1.2 Requirements on personnel

1.1.2 Requirements on personnel

General

Only personnel with appropriate training are allowed to install, maintain, service, repair, and use the robot. This includes electrical, mechanical, hydraulics, pneumatics, and other hazards identified in the risk assessment.

Persons who are under the influence of alcohol, drugs or any other intoxicating substances are not allowed to install, maintain, service, repair, or use the robot.

The plant liable must make sure that the personnel is trained on the robot, and on responding to emergency or abnormal situations.

Personal protective equipment

Use personal protective equipment, as stated in the instructions.

1.2 Safety signals and symbols

1.2.1 Safety signals in the manual







Introduction to safety signals

This section specifies all safety signals used in the user manuals. Each signal consists of:

- A caption specifying the hazard level (DANGER, WARNING, or CAUTION) and the type of hazard.
- Instruction about how to reduce the hazard to an acceptable level.
- A brief description of remaining hazards, if not adequately reduced.

Hazard levels

The table below defines the captions specifying the hazard levels used throughout this manual.


| Symbol | Designation | Significance |
|---|-------------------------------|---|
|  | DANGER | Signal word used to indicate an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in serious injury. |
|  | WARNING | Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in serious injury. |
|  | ELECTRICAL SHOCK | Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation related to electrical hazards which, if not avoided, could result in serious injury. |
|  | CAUTION | Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in slight injury. |
|  | ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) | Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in severe damage to the product. |
|  | NOTE | Signal word used to indicate important facts and conditions. |

Continues on next page

1 Safety

1.2.1 Safety signals in the manual

Continued

| Symbol | Designation | Significance |
|---|-------------|---|
|  | TIP | Signal word used to indicate where to find additional information or how to do an operation in an easier way. |

1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels

Introduction to symbols

This section describes safety symbols used on labels (stickers) on the manipulator. Symbols are used in combinations on the labels, describing each specific warning. The descriptions in this section are generic, the labels can contain additional information such as values.



Note

The symbols on the labels on the product must be observed. Additional symbols added by the integrator must also be observed.




Types of symbols

Both the manipulator and the controller are marked with symbols, containing important information about the product. This is important for all personnel handling the robot, for example during installation, service, or operation.

The safety labels are language independent, they only use graphics. See [Symbols on safety labels on page 21](#).

The information labels can contain information in text.

Symbols on safety labels

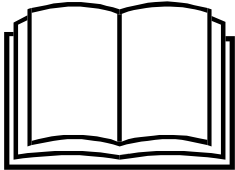
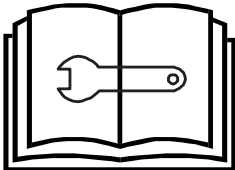
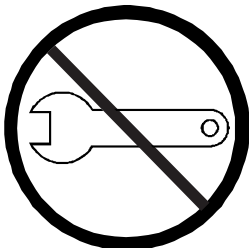
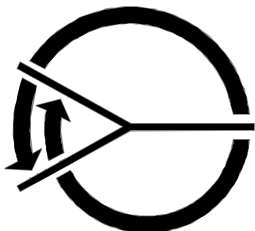

| Symbol | Description |
|---|--|
|  xx0900000812 | Warning! Warns that an accident <i>may</i> occur if the instructions are not followed that can lead to serious injury, possibly fatal, and/or great damage to the product. It applies to warnings that apply to danger with, for example, contact with high voltage electrical units, explosion or fire risk, risk of poisonous gases, risk of crushing, impact, fall from height, etc. |
|  xx0900000811 | Caution! Warns that an accident may occur if the instructions are not followed that can result in injury and/or damage to the product. It also applies to warnings of risks that include burns, eye injury, skin injury, hearing damage, crushing or slipping, tripping, impact, fall from height, etc. Furthermore, it applies to warnings that include function requirements when fitting and removing equipment where there is a risk of damaging the product or causing a breakdown. |
|  xx0900000839 | Prohibition Used in combinations with other symbols. |

Continues on next page

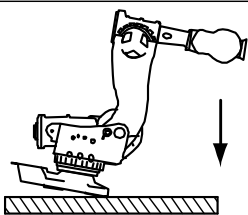

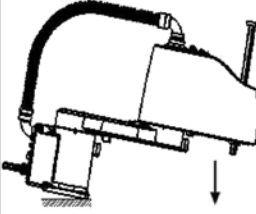


1 Safety

1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels

Continued



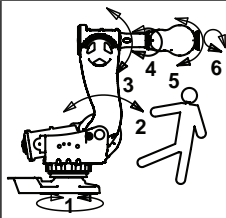
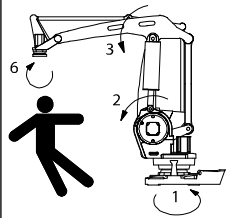
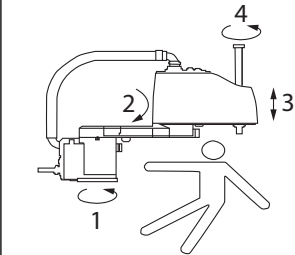
| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
|  xx0900000813 | See user documentation Read user documentation for details. Which manual to read is defined by the symbol: <ul style="list-style-type: none">No text: <i>Product manual</i>. |
|  xx0900000816 | Before disassembly, see product manual |
|  xx0900000815 | Do not disassemble Disassembling this part can cause injury. |
|  xx0900000814 | Extended rotation This axis has extended rotation (working area) compared to standard. |
|  xx0900000808 | Brake release Pressing this button will release the brakes. This means that the robot arm can fall down. |

Continues on next page

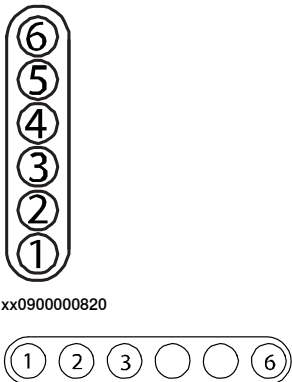





| Symbol | Description |
|--|--|
|  <p>xx0900000810</p>   <p>3HAC 057068-001</p> <p>xx1500002402</p> | <p>Tip risk when loosening bolts The robot can tip over if the bolts are not securely fastened.</p> |
|   <p>xx0900000817</p> | <p>Crush Risk of crush injuries.</p> |

1 Safety

1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels
Continued

| Symbol | Description |
|--|---|
| <div> xx0900000818</div> <div> xx1300001087</div> | <p>Heat Risk of heat that can cause burns. (Both signs are used)</p> |
| <div> xx0900000819</div> <div> xx1000001141</div> <div> xx1500002616</div> | <p>Moving robot The robot can move unexpectedly.</p> |

Continues on next page



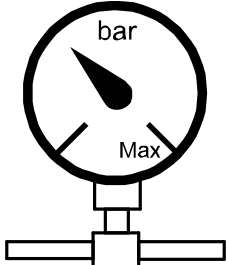
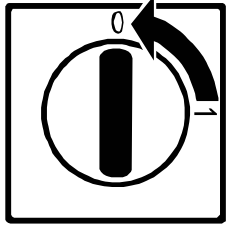

| Symbol | Description |
|---|---|
|  <p>xx0900000820</p> <p>xx1000001140</p> | Brake release buttons |
|  <p>xx0900000821</p> | Lifting bolt |
|  <p>xx1000001242</p> | Adjustable chain sling with shortener |
|  <p>xx0900000822</p> | Lifting of robot |
|  <p>xx0900000823</p> | Oil Can be used in combination with prohibition if oil is not allowed. |
|  <p>xx0900000824</p> | Mechanical stop |

Continues on next page

1 Safety

1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels

Continued

| Symbol | Description |
|---|--|
|  xx1000001144 | No mechanical stop |
|  xx0900000825 | Stored energy Warns that this part contains stored energy. Used in combination with <i>Do not disassemble</i> symbol. |
|  xx0900000826 | Pressure Warns that this part is pressurized. Usually contains additional text with the pressure level. |
|  xx0900000827 | Shut off with handle Use the power switch on the controller. |
|  xx1400002648 | Do not step Warns that stepping on these parts can cause damage to the parts. |

1.3 Robot stopping functions

Protective stop and emergency stop

The protective stops and emergency stops are described in the product manual for the controller.

For more information see:

- *Product manual - OmniCore C30*

1 Safety

1.4 Safety during installation and commissioning

1.4 Safety during installation and commissioning

National or regional regulations

The integrator of the robot system is responsible for the safety of the robot system.

The integrator is responsible that the robot system is designed and installed in accordance with the safety requirements set forth in the applicable national and regional standards and regulations.

The integrator of the robot system is required to perform a risk assessment.

Layout

The robot integrated to a robot system shall be designed to allow safe access to all spaces during installation, operation, maintenance, and repair.

If robot movement can be initiated from an external control panel then an emergency stop must also be available.

Consider exposure to hazards, such as slipping, tripping, and falling.

Hazards due to the working position and posture for a person working with or near the robot shall be considered.

Hazards due to noise emission from the robot needs to be considered.

Allergenic material

See [Environmental information on page 700](#) for specification of allergenic materials in the product, if any.

Securing the robot to the foundation

The robot must be properly fixed to its foundation/support, as described in the respective product manual.

When the robot is installed at a height, hanging, or other than mounted directly on the floor, there will be additional hazards.

Electrical safety

Incoming mains must be installed to fulfill national regulations.

The power supply wiring to the robot must be sufficiently fused and if necessary, it must be possible to disconnect it manually from the mains power.

The power to the robot must be turned off with the main switch and the mains power disconnected when performing work inside the controller cabinet. Lock and tag shall be considered.

Harnesses between controller and manipulator shall be fixed and protected to avoid tripping and wear.

Wherever possible, power on/off or rebooting the robot controller shall be performed with all persons outside the safeguarded space.



Note

Use a CARBON DIOXIDE (CO₂) extinguisher in the event of a fire in the robot.

Continues on next page

Safety devices

The integrator is responsible for that the safety devices necessary to protect people working with the robot system are designed and installed correctly.

When integrating the robot with external devices to a robot system:

- The integrator of the robot system must ensure that emergency stop functions are interlocked in accordance with applicable standards.
- The integrator of the robot system must ensure that safety functions are interlocked in accordance with applicable standards.

Other hazards

The risk assessment should also consider other hazards arising from the application, such as, but not limited to:

- Water
- Compressed air
- Hydraulics

End-effector hazards require particular attention for applications which involve close human collaboration with the robot.

Verify the safety functions

Before the robot system is put into operation, verify that the safety functions are working as intended and that any remaining hazards identified in the risk assessment are mitigated to an acceptable level.

1 Safety

1.5 Safety during operation

1.5 Safety during operation

Automatic operation

Verify the application in the operating mode manual reduced speed, before changing mode to automatic and initiating automatic operation.

Unexpected movement of robot arm



WARNING

Hazards due to the use of brake release devices and/or gravity beneath the manipulator shall be considered.

1.6 Safety during maintenance and repair

1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair

General

Corrective maintenance must only be carried out by personnel trained on the robot. Maintenance or repair must be done with all electrical, pneumatic, and hydraulic power switched off, that is, no remaining hazards.


Make sure that there are no loose screws, turnings, or other unexpected parts remaining after work on the robot has been performed.

When the work is completed, verify that the safety functions are working as intended.

Hot surfaces

Surfaces can be hot after running the robot, and touching these may result in burns. Allow the surfaces to cool down before maintenance or repair.

Allergic reaction

| Warning | Description | Elimination/Action |
|---|---|---|
|  Allergic reaction | When working with lubricants there is a risk of an allergic reaction. | Make sure that protective gear like goggles and gloves are always worn. |



Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease)

When handling oil, grease, or other chemical substances the safety information of the respective manufacturer must be observed.



Note

Take special care when handling hot lubricants.




| Warning | Description | Elimination/Action |
|---|--|--|
|  Hot oil or grease | Changing and draining gearbox oil or grease may require handling hot lubricant heated up to 90 °C. | Make sure that protective gear like goggles and gloves are always worn during this activity. |
|  Allergic reaction | When working with lubricants there is a risk of an allergic reaction. | Make sure that protective gear like goggles and gloves are always worn. |

Continues on next page

1 Safety

1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair

Continued

| Warning | Description | Elimination/Action |
|--|---|---|
|  Possible pressure build-up in gearbox | When opening the oil or grease plug, there may be pressure present in the gearbox, causing lubricant to spray from the opening. | Open the plug carefully and keep away from the opening. Do not overfill the gearbox when filling. |
|  Do not overfill | Overfilling of gearbox lubricant can lead to internal over-pressure inside the gearbox which in turn may: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• damage seals and gaskets• completely press out seals and gaskets• prevent the robot from moving freely. | Make sure not to overfill the gearbox when filling it with oil or grease. After filling, verify that the level is correct. |
|  Specified amount depends on drained volume | The specified amount of oil or grease is based on the total volume of the gearbox. When changing the lubricant, the amount refilled may differ from the specified amount, depending on how much has previously been drained from the gearbox. | After filling, verify that the level is correct. |

Hazards related to batteries

Under rated conditions, the electrode materials and liquid electrolyte in the batteries are sealed and not exposed to the outside.

There is a hazard in case of abuse (mechanical, thermal, electrical) which leads to the activation of safety valves and/or the rupture of the battery container. As a result under certain circumstances, electrolyte leakage, electrode materials reaction with moisture/water or battery vent/explosion/fire may follow.

Do not short circuit, recharge, puncture, incinerate, crush, immerse, force discharge or expose to temperatures above the declared operating temperature range of the product. Risk of fire or explosion.

Operating temperatures are listed in [Operating conditions, robot on page 41](#).

See safety instructions for the batteries in *Material/product safety data sheet - Battery pack (3HAC043118-001)*.

Related information

See also the safety information related to installation and operation.

1.6.2 Emergency release of the robot axes

Description

In an emergency situation, the brakes on a robot axis can be released manually by pushing a brake release button.

How to release the brakes is described in the section:

- [Manually releasing the brakes on page 58.](#)

1.6.3 Brake testing

When to test

During operation, the holding brake of each axis normally wears down. A test can be performed to determine whether the brake can still perform its function.

How to test

The function of the holding brake of each axis motor may be verified as described below:

- 1 Run each axis to a position where the combined weight of the manipulator and any load is maximized (maximum static load).
- 2 Switch the motor to the MOTORS OFF.
- 3 Inspect and verify that the axis maintains its position.

If the manipulator does not change position as the motors are switched off, then the brake function is adequate.



Note

It is recommended to run the service routine *BrakeCheck* as part of the regular maintenance, see the operating manual for the robot controller.

For robots with the option SafeMove, the *Cyclic Brake Check* routine is recommended. See the manual for SafeMove in [References on page 10](#).

1.7 Safety during troubleshooting

General

When troubleshooting requires work with power switched on, special considerations must be taken:

- Safety circuits might be muted or disconnected.
- Electrical parts must be considered as *live*.
- The manipulator can move unexpectedly at any time.



DANGER

Troubleshooting on the controller while powered on must be performed by personnel trained by ABB or by ABB field engineers.

A risk assessment must be done to address both robot and robot system specific hazards.

Related information

See also the safety information related to installation, operation, maintenance, and repair.

1 Safety

1.8 Safety during decommissioning

1.8 Safety during decommissioning

General

See section [Decommissioning on page 699](#).

If the robot is decommissioned for storage, take extra precaution to reset safety devices to delivery status.

2 Manipulator description

2.1 About CRB 1100

Introduction

The CRB 1100 is one of ABB Robotics latest generation of 6-axis robot, with a payload of 4 kg, designed based on industrial robot platform. It bridges the gap between industrial robots and robots designed for collaborative applications. Combining ABB SafeMove solution, safety separation technology and speed control with safety laser scanner(s) and lead-through programming with a lead-through device, CRB 1100 enables safe collaborative operations and harmless contacts between robot and the operator. The robot has an open structure that is especially adapted for flexible use, and can communicate extensively with external systems.

2 Manipulator description

2.2 Technical data

2.2 Technical data

Weight, robot

The table shows the weight of the robot.

| Robot model | Nominal weight |
|-------------|----------------|
| CRB 1100 | 21.1 kg |



Note

The weight does not include additional options, tools and other equipment fitted on the robot.

Mounting positions

The table shows valid mounting positions and the installation (mounting) angle for the manipulator.

| Mounting position | Installation angle |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| Floor mounted | Any angle |
| Wall mounted | Any angle |
| Suspended | Any angle |
| Table mounted | Any angle |



Note

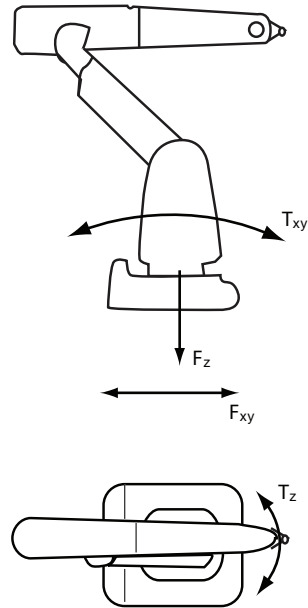
The actual mounting angle must always be configured in the system parameters, otherwise the performance and lifetime is affected. See [Setting the system parameters for an inverted or a tilted robot on page 60](#).

Loads on foundation, robot

The illustration shows the directions of the robots stress forces.

Continues on next page

The directions are valid for all floor mounted, table mounted, wall mounted and suspended robots.



xx1100000521

| | |
|----------|---|
| F_{xy} | Force in any direction in the XY plane |
| F_z | Force in the Z plane |
| T_{xy} | Bending torque in any direction in the XY plane |
| T_z | Bending torque in the Z plane |

The table shows the various forces and torques working on the robot during different kinds of operation.



Note

These forces and torques are extreme values that are rarely encountered during operation. The values also never reach their maximum at the same time!



WARNING

The robot installation is restricted to the mounting options given in following load table(s).

Floor mounted

| Force | Endurance load (in operation) | Maximum load (emergency stop) |
|-----------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Force xy | ±420 N | ±710N |
| Force z | +210 ±380 N | +210 ±510 N |
| Torque xy | ±180 Nm | ±330 Nm |
| Torque z | ±90 Nm | ±140 Nm |

Continues on next page

2 Manipulator description

2.2 Technical data

Continued

Wall mounted

| Force | Endurance load (in operation) | Max. load (emergency stop) |
|-----------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Force xy | +210 ±370 N | +210 ±660 N |
| Force z | ±370 N | ±540 Nm |
| Torque xy | ±200 Nm | ±370Nm |
| Torque z | ±90 Nm | ±140 Nm |

Suspended


| Force | Endurance load (in operation) | Max. load (emergency stop) |
|-----------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Force xy | ±420 N | ±710 N |
| Force z | -210 ±380 N | -210 ±510 N |
| Torque xy | ±180 Nm | ±330 Nm |
| Torque z | ±90 Nm | ±140 Nm |

Table mounted

| Force | Endurance load (in operation) | Maximum load (emergency stop) |
|-----------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Force xy | ±420 N | ±710N |
| Force z | +210 ±380 N | +210 ±510 N |
| Torque xy | ±180 Nm | ±330 Nm |
| Torque z | ±90 Nm | ±140 Nm |

Requirements, foundation

The table shows the requirements for the foundation where the weight of the installed robot is included:

| Requirement | Value | Note |
|--------------------------------|--|---|
| Flatness of foundation surface | 0.1/500 mm | Flat foundations give better repeatability of the resolver calibration compared to original settings on delivery from ABB. The value for levelness aims at the circumstance of the anchoring points in the robot base. In order to compensate for an uneven surface, the robot can be recalibrated during installation. If resolver/encoder calibration is changed this will influence the absolute accuracy. |
| Minimum resonance frequency | 22 Hz  Note It may affect the manipulator lifetime to have a lower resonance frequency than recommended. | The value is recommended for optimal performance. Due to foundation stiffness, consider robot mass including equipment. ⁱ For information about compensating for foundation flexibility, see the description of <i>Motion Process Mode</i> in the manual that describes the controller software option, see References on page 10 . |

Continues on next page

| Requirement | Value | Note |
|--|---------|------|
| Minimum foundation material yield strength | 150 MPa | |

- ⁱ The minimum resonance frequency given should be interpreted as the frequency of the robot mass/inertia, robot assumed stiff, when a foundation translational/torsional elasticity is added, i.e., the stiffness of the pedestal where the robot is mounted. The minimum resonance frequency should not be interpreted as the resonance frequency of the building, floor etc. For example, if the equivalent mass of the floor is very high, it will not affect robot movement, even if the frequency is well below the stated frequency. The robot should be mounted as rigid as possible to the floor.
- Disturbances from other machinery will affect the robot and the tool accuracy. The robot has resonance frequencies in the region 10 – 20 Hz and disturbances in this region will be amplified, although somewhat damped by the servo control. This might be a problem, depending on the requirements from the applications. If this is a problem, the robot needs to be isolated from the environment.

Storage conditions, robot

The table shows the allowed storage conditions for the robot:

| Parameter | Value |
|--|--|
| Minimum ambient temperature | -25 °C (-13 °F) |
| Maximum ambient temperature | +55 °C (+131 °F) |
| Maximum ambient temperature (less than 24 hrs) | +70 °C (+158 °F) |
| Maximum ambient humidity | 95% at constant temperature (gaseous only) |

Operating conditions, robot

The table shows the allowed operating conditions for the robot:

| Parameter | Value |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Minimum ambient temperature | +5 °C ⁱ (41 °F) |
| Maximum ambient temperature | +45 °C (113 °F) |
| Maximum ambient humidity | 95% at constant temperature |

- ⁱ At low environmental temperature (below 10 °C) a warm-up phase is recommended to be run with the robot. Otherwise there is a risk that the robot stops or runs with lower performance due to temperature dependent oil and grease viscosity.

Protection classes, robot

The table shows the available protection types of the robot, with the corresponding protection class.

| Protection type | Protection class ⁱ |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Manipulator, protection type Standard | IP40 |

- ⁱ According to IEC 60529.

Environmental information

The product complies with IEC 63000. *Technical documentation for the assessment of electrical and electronic products with respect to the restriction of hazardous substances.*

2 Manipulator description

2.3 Safety data

2.3 Safety data

Prevailing standards and directives

For the use of industrial robots, regulations must be fulfilled as described in the following standards and directives:

- EN ISO 10218-1:2011

Risk assessment

The results of a risk assessment performed on the robot and its intended application may determine that a safety-related control system performance other than that stated in ISO 10218 is warranted for the application.

Safety functions and safety related data

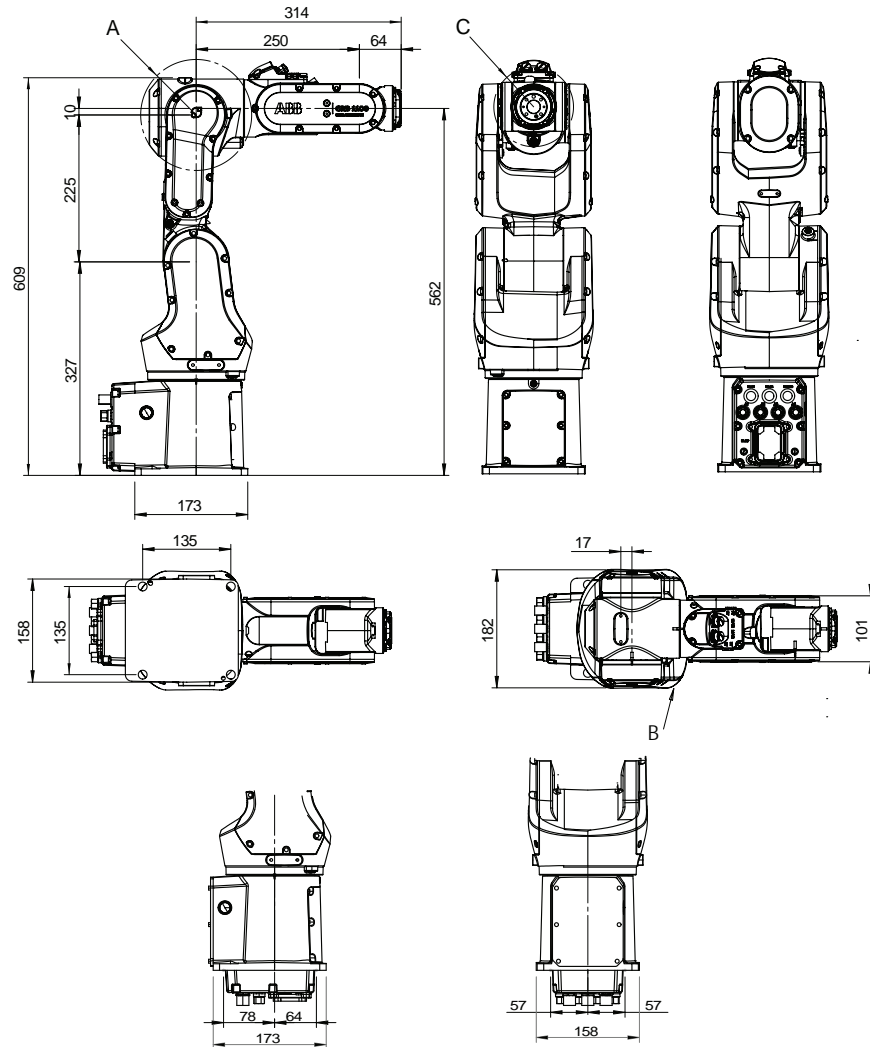
Safety functions and safety related data for CRB 1100 rely on the controller and safety laser scanners.

Safety data for the controller is detailed in the product manual of the robot controller, see [References on page 10](#).

Safety data for the safety laser scanners is detailed in the user manual from the vendor, see *Operating instructions microScan3 - PROFINET* and *Operating instructions microScan3 - Pro I/O* that are available on *SICK®* website.

2.4 Dimensions

Main dimensions of CRB 1100-4/0.475



xx2000002545

| Pos | Description |
|-----|----------------------|
| A | Turning radius: R85 |
| B | Turning radius: R109 |
| C | Turning radius: R61 |

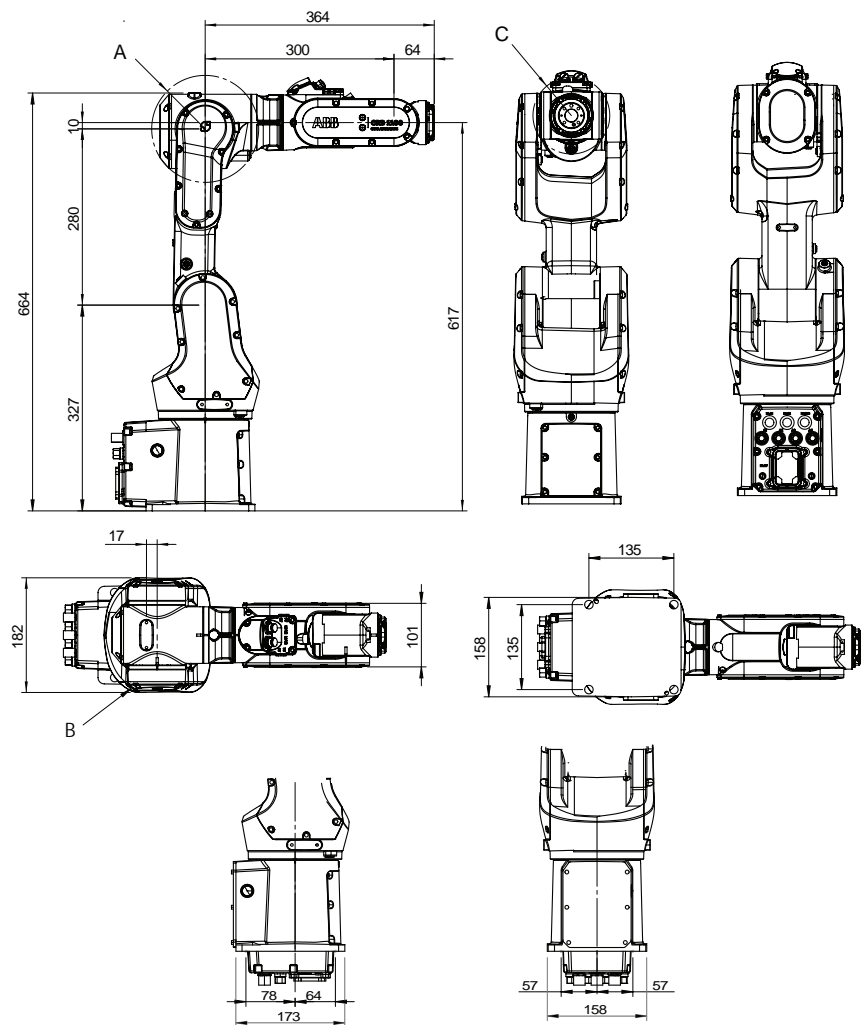
Continues on next page

2 Manipulator description

2.4 Dimensions

Continued

Main dimensions of CRB 1100-4/0.58



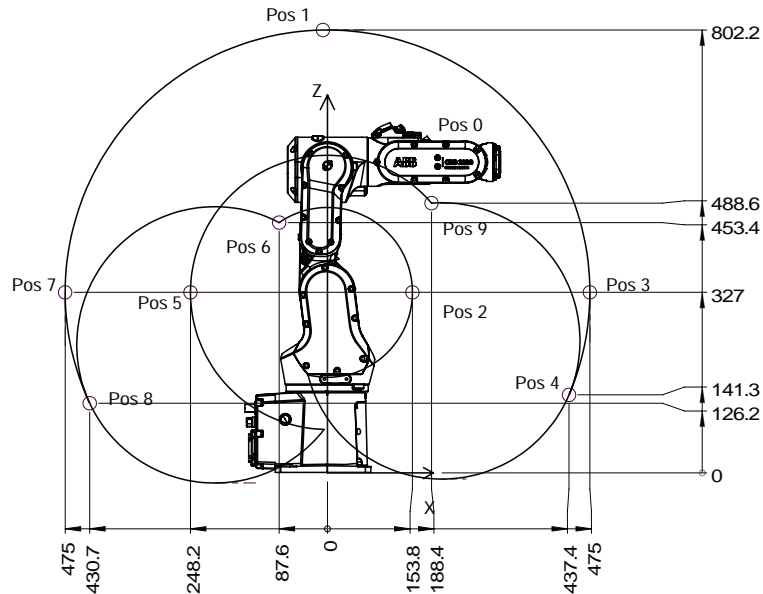
xx2000002546

| Pos | Description |
|-----|----------------------|
| A | Turning radius: R85 |
| B | Turning radius: R109 |
| C | Turning radius: R61 |

2.5 Working range

Illustration, working range CRB 1100-4/0.475

This illustration shows the unrestricted working range of the robot.



xx2000002543

Positions at wrist center and angle of axes 2 and 3

| Position in the figure | Positions at wrist center (mm) | | Angle (degrees) | |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|-------|-----------------|--------|
| | X | Z | axis 2 | axis 3 |
| pos0 | 314 | 562 | 0° | 0° |
| pos1 | 0 | 802 | 0° | -87.7° |
| pos2 | 53.8 | 327 | 9.7° | 55° |
| pos3 | 475 | 327 | 90° | -87.7° |
| pos4 | 437.4 | 141.3 | 113° | -87.7° |
| pos5 | -248.2 | 327 | -26.4° | -205° |
| pos6 | -87.6 | 453.4 | -115° | 55° |
| pos7 | -475 | 327 | -90° | -87.7° |
| pos8 | -430.7 | 126.2 | -115° | -87.7° |
| pos9 | 188.4 | 488.6 | 113° | -205° |

Continues on next page

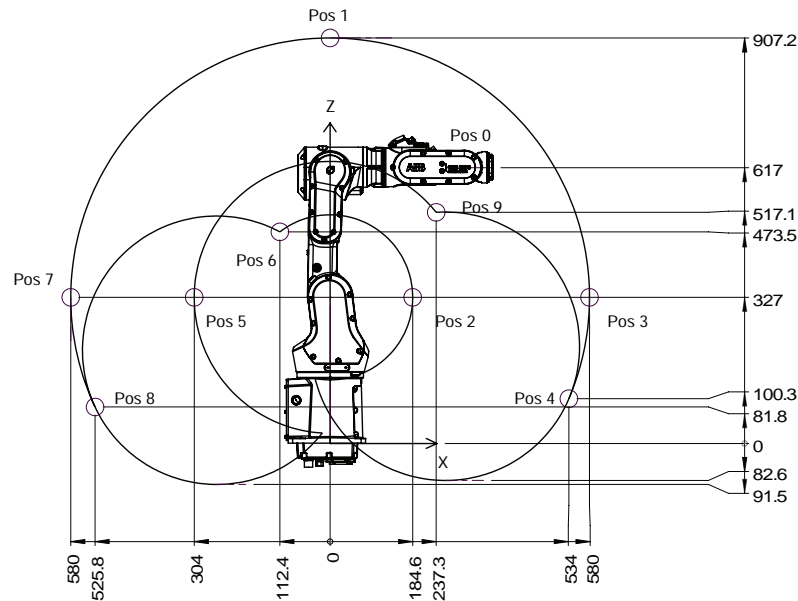
2 Manipulator description

2.5 Working range

Continued

Illustration, working range CRB 1100-4/0.58

This illustration shows the unrestricted working range of the robot.



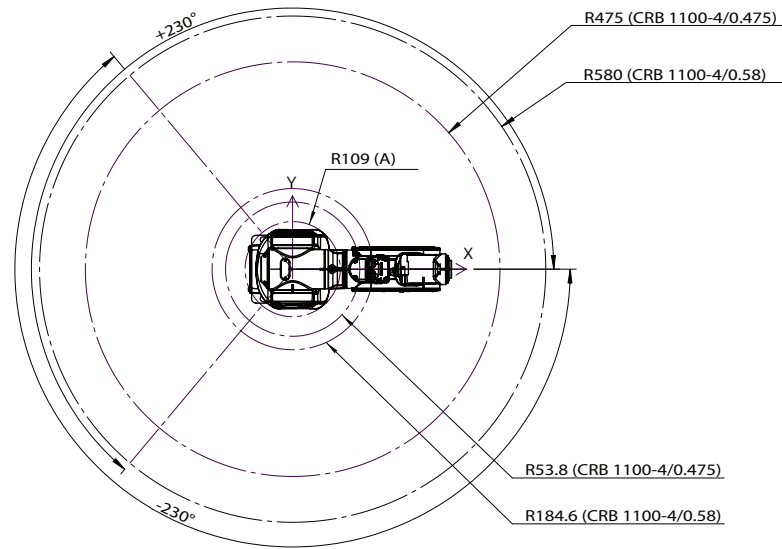
xx2000002544

Positions at wrist center and angle of axes 2 and 3

| Position in the figure | Positions at wrist center (mm) | | Angle (degrees) | |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|-------|-----------------|--------|
| | X | Z | axis 2 | axis 3 |
| pos0 | 364 | 617 | 0° | 0° |
| pos1 | 0 | 907.2 | 0° | -88° |
| pos2 | 184.6 | 327 | 12.5° | 55° |
| pos3 | 580 | 327 | 90° | -88° |
| pos4 | 534 | 100.3 | 113° | -88° |
| pos5 | -304 | 327 | -28.3° | -205° |
| pos6 | -112.4 | 473.5 | -115° | 55° |
| pos7 | -580 | 327 | -90° | -88° |
| pos8 | -525.8 | 81.8 | -115° | -88° |
| pos9 | 237.3 | 517.1 | 113° | -205° |

Continues on next page

Top view of working range



xx2100002541

Working range

| Axis | Working range | Note |
|--------|---------------------------|--|
| Axis 1 | $\pm 230^\circ$ | Wall mounted robot has a work area for axis 1 that depends on payload and the positions of other axes. Simulation in RobotStudio is recommended. |
| Axis 2 | $-115^\circ / +113^\circ$ | |
| Axis 3 | $-205^\circ / +55^\circ$ | |
| Axis 4 | $\pm 230^\circ$ | |
| Axis 5 | $-125^\circ / +120^\circ$ | |
| Axis 6 | $\pm 400^\circ$ | Default value. |
| | ± 242 | Maximum revolution value. The default working range for axis 6 can be extended by changing parameter values in the software. |

2 Manipulator description

2.6 The unit is sensitive to ESD

2.6 The unit is sensitive to ESD

Description

ESD (electrostatic discharge) is the transfer of electrical static charge between two bodies at different potentials, either through direct contact or through an induced electrical field. When handling parts or their containers, personnel not grounded may potentially transfer high static charges. This discharge may destroy sensitive electronics.

Safe handling

Use one of the following alternatives:

- Use a wrist strap.

Wrist straps must be tested frequently to ensure that they are not damaged and are operating correctly.

- Use an ESD protective floor mat.

The mat must be grounded through a current-limiting resistor.

- Use a dissipative table mat.

The mat should provide a controlled discharge of static voltages and must be grounded.

3 Installation and commissioning

3.1 Introduction to installation and commissioning

General

This chapter contains assembly instructions and information for installing the CRB 1100 at the working site.

See also the product manual for the robot controller.

The installation must be done by qualified installation personnel in accordance with the safety requirements set forth in the applicable national and regional standards and regulations.

The technical data is detailed in section [Technical data on page 38](#).

Safety information

Before any installation work is commenced, all safety information must be observed. There are general safety aspects that must be read through, as well as more specific safety information that describes the danger and safety risks when performing the procedures. Read the chapter [Safety on page 17](#) before performing any installation work.



Note

Always connect the CRB 1100 and the robot to protective earth and residual current device (RCD) before connecting to power and starting any installation work.

For more information see:

- *Product manual - OmniCore C30*

3 Installation and commissioning

3.2.1 Pre-installation procedure

3.2 Unpacking

3.2.1 Pre-installation procedure

Introduction


This section is intended for use when unpacking and installing the robot for the first time. It also contains information useful during later re-installation of the robot.

Prerequisites for installation personnel

Installation personnel working with an ABB product must:

- Be trained by ABB and have the required knowledge of mechanical and electrical installation/maintenance/repair work.
- Conform to all national and local codes.

Checking the pre-requisites for installation

| | Action |
|----|---|
| 1 | Make a visual inspection of the packaging and make sure that nothing is damaged. |
| 2 | Remove the packaging. |
| 3 | Check for any visible transport damage.  Note Stop unpacking and contact ABB if transport damages are found. |
| 4 | Clean the unit with a lint-free cloth, if necessary. |
| 5 | Make sure that the lifting accessory used (if required) is suitable to handle the weight of the robot as specified in: Weight, robot on page 38 |
| 6 | If the robot is not installed directly, it must be stored as described in: Storage conditions, robot on page 41 |
| 7 | Make sure that the expected operating environment of the robot conforms to the specifications as described in: Operating conditions, robot on page 41 |
| 8 | Before taking the robot to its installation site, make sure that the site conforms to: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Loads on foundation, robot on page 38• Protection classes, robot on page 41• Requirements, foundation on page 40 |
| 9 | Before moving the robot, please observe the stability of the robot: Risk of tipping/stability on page 51 |
| 10 | When these prerequisites are met, the robot can be taken to its installation site as described in section: On-site installation on page 53 |
| 11 | Install required equipment, if any. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Installation of lead-through device on page 71• Installation of laser scanner on page 78 |

3.2.2 Risk of tipping/stability

Risk of tipping

If the robot is not fastened to the foundation while moving the arm, the robot is not stable in the whole working area. Moving the arm will displace the center of gravity, which may cause the robot to tip over.

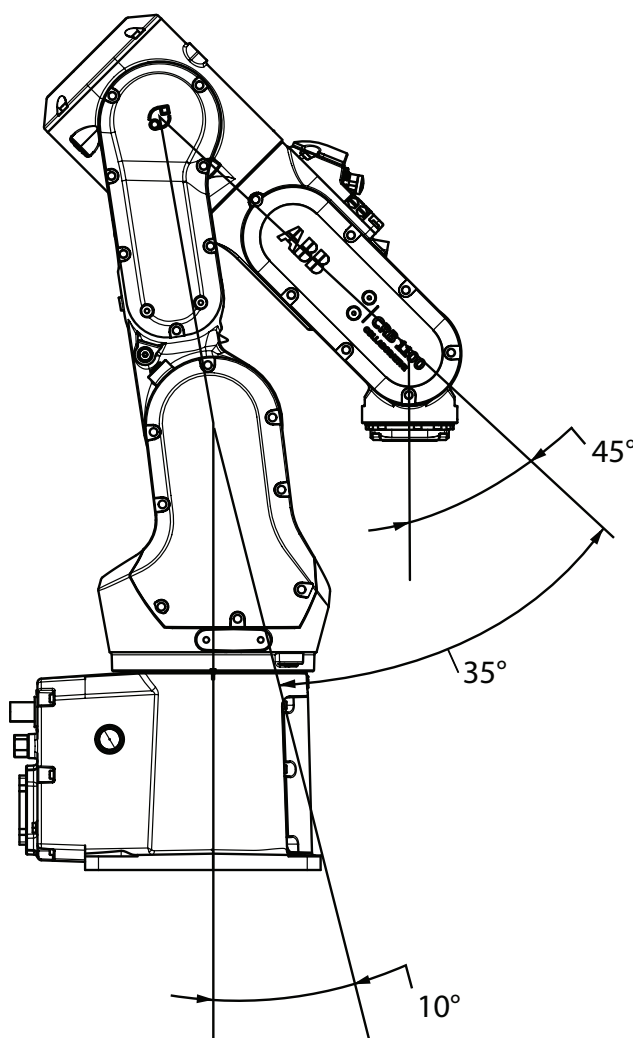
The transportation position is the most stable position.

Do not change the robot position before securing it to the foundation!

Transportation position

This figure shows the robot in its transportation position.

CRB 1100-4/0.475



xx2100000153

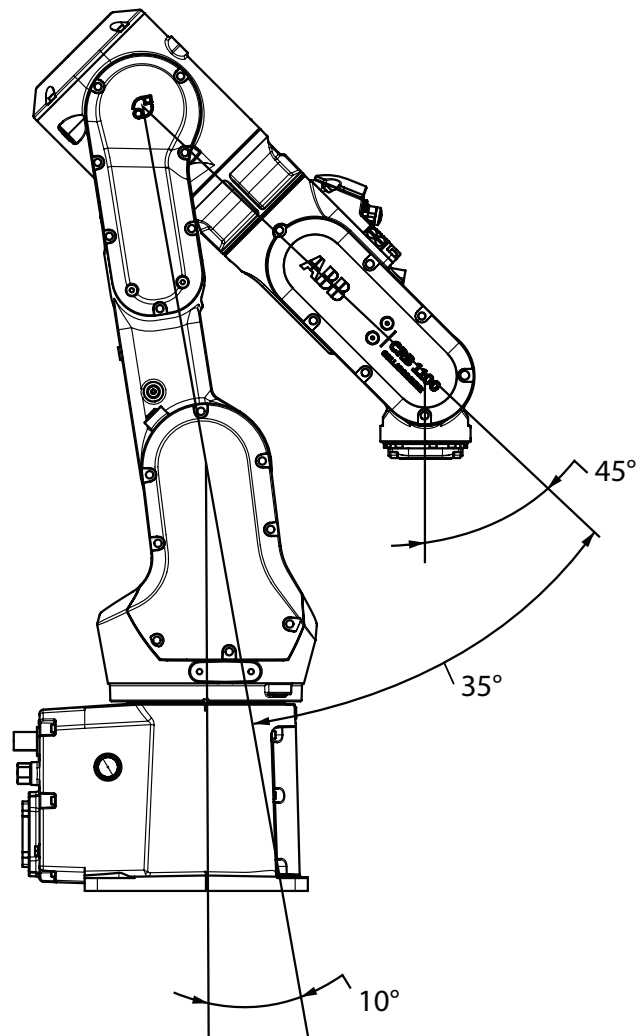
Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.2.2 Risk of tipping/stability

Continued

CRB 1100-4/0.58



xx2100000154



Note

The robot might be positioned in a different position at delivery, due to actual configurations and options (for example DressPack).



WARNING

The robot is likely to be mechanically unstable if not secured to the foundation.

3.3 On-site installation

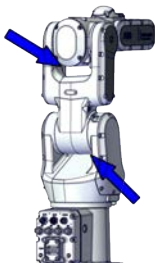
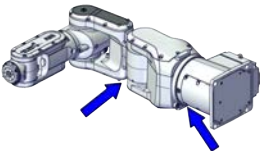
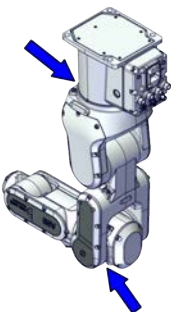
3.3.1 Lifting the robot

3.3.1.1 Lifting the robot by one person

General

This section describes how to lift the robot and move it by one person.

Grasping location

| Position | Grasping location | Note |
|---------------|---|--|
| Stand on foot |  xx2100000155 | When the robot stands on its foot, grasp the robot with one hand holding the lower arm and the other hand holding the swing. |
| By side |  xx2100000156 | When the robot lies by side, grasp the robot with one hand holding the lower arm and the other hand supporting at the base. It is recommended to hold the robot between your arm and body. |
| Inverted |  xx2100000157 | When the robot is inverted, grasp the robot with one hand supporting at the housing and the other hand holding the base. |



Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.1.1 Lifting the robot by one person

Continued

Lifting and transporting the robot

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 |  CAUTION The CRB 1100 weighs, 21.1 kg and can be lifted by one person. |
| 2 | Grasp the robot as instructed in Grasping location on page 53 . |
| 3 | Lift the robot. |
| 4 | Move the robot to desired position.  CAUTION Be careful so that the robot does not bump into something while lifting and transporting. It could damage the robot. |
| 5 | Secure the robot on a workbench according to section Orienting and securing the robot on page 56 . |

3.3.1.2 Lifting and rotating a suspended mounted robot

Introduction

How to lift and turn the robot to a **suspended** position: Contact ABB for more information.

How to lift and turn the robot into position for **wall** position: Contact ABB for more information.

3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.2 Orienting and securing the robot

3.3.2 Orienting and securing the robot

General

This section describes how to orient and secure the robot to the base plate or foundation in order to run the robot safely.

Attachment screws

The table below specifies the type of securing screws and washers to be used for securing the robot to the base plate/foundation.



All hardware is enclosed in the robot delivery.

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Suitable screws | M12x25 (robot installation directly on foundation) |
| Quantity | 4 pcs |
| Quality | 8.8 |
| Suitable washer | 4 pcs, 24 x 13 x 2.5 |
| Guide pins | 2 pcs, article number 3HNP00449-1 |
| Tightening torque | 50 Nm±5 Nm |
| Length of thread engagement | Minimum 12.5 mm for ground with material yield strength 150 MPa |
| Level surface requirements | 0.1/500 mm ⁱ |

ⁱ See [Requirements, foundation on page 40](#).

Securing a floor mounted robot

Use this procedure to orient and secure the robot floor mounted.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Make sure the installation site for the robot conforms to the specifications in section Technical data on page 38 . | |
| 2 | Prepare the installation site with attachment holes. The foundation surface must be clean and unpainted. | The hole configuration of the base is shown in the figure in Hole configuration, base on page 57 . |
| 3 |  CAUTION The weight of the CRB 1100 robot is 21.1 kg All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly. | |
| 4 |  CAUTION When the robot is put down after being lifted or transported, there is a risk of it tipping, if not properly secured. | |
| 5 | Lift the robot. | See Lifting the robot on page 53 . |
| 6 | Fit two pins to the holes in the base. | 2 pcs, article number 3HNP00449-1 |

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

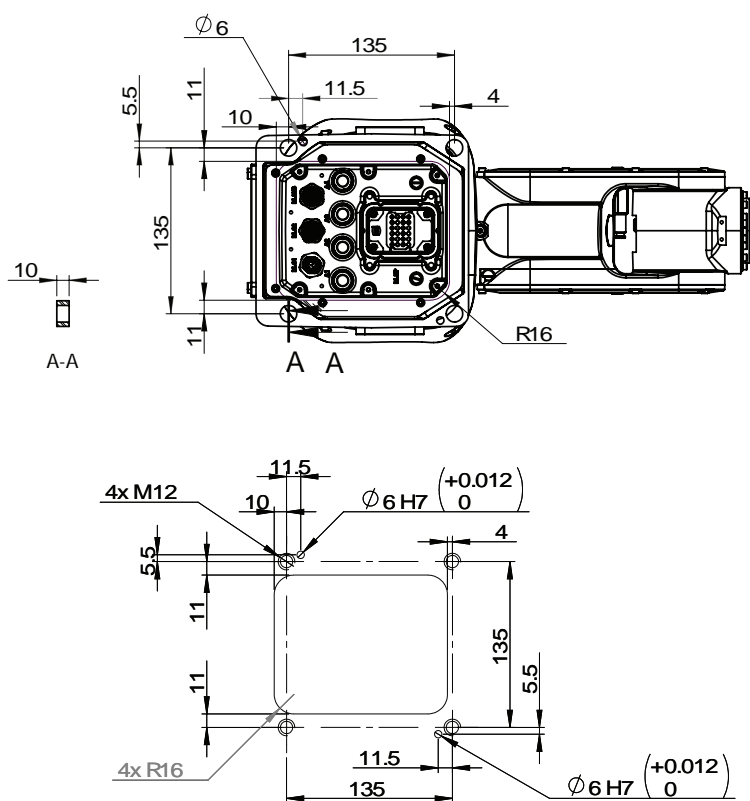
3.3.2 Orienting and securing the robot

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 7 | Guide the robot gently, using the attachment screws while lowering it into its mounting position. | Make sure the robot base is correctly fitted onto the pins. |
| 8 | Fit the securing screws and washers in the attachment holes of the base. | Screws: M12x25 (robot installation directly on foundation), 4 pcs, quality 8.8 Washers: 4 pcs, 24 x 13 x 2.5 |
| 9 | Tighten the bolts in a crosswise pattern to ensure that the base is not distorted. | Tightening torque: 50 Nm±5 Nm |

Hole configuration, base

This illustration shows the hole configuration used when securing the robot.



xx1800002448

3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.3 Manually releasing the brakes

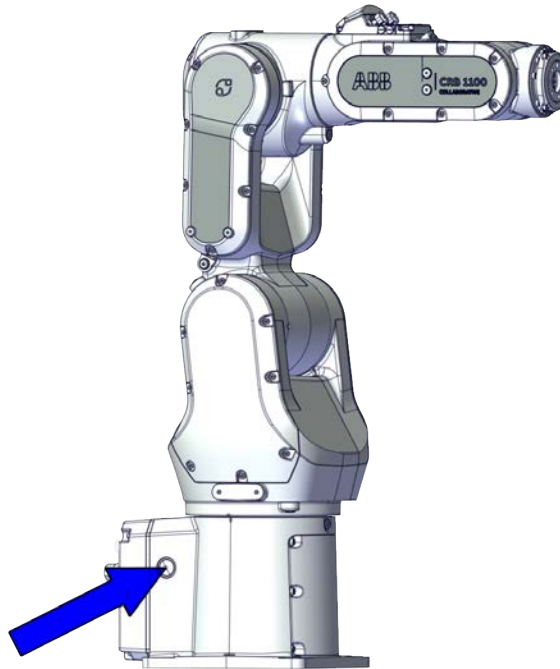
3.3.3 Manually releasing the brakes

Introduction to manually releasing the brakes

This section describes how to release the holding brakes for the axes motors.

Location of the brake release unit



The brake release unit is located as shown in the figure.




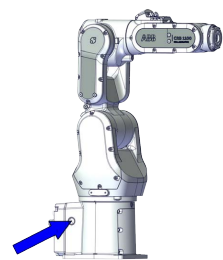
xx2100000158

Releasing the brakes

This procedure describes how to release the holding brakes when the robot is equipped with a brake release unit.



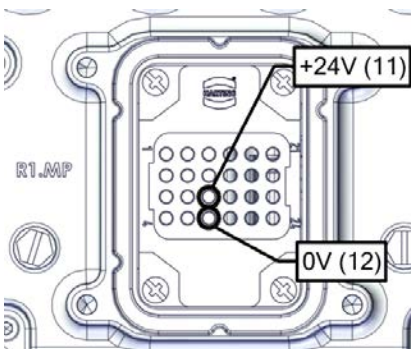
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 |  Note If the robot is not connected to the controller, power must be supplied to the connector R1.MP according to the section Supplying power to connector R1.MP on page 59 . | |
| 2 |  DANGER When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unexpected ways. Make sure no personnel is near or beneath the robot. | |

Continues on next page

| Action | Note |
|--|---|
| <p>3 Release the holding brake of all axes by pressing the brake release button.</p> <p>The brake will be enable as soon as the button is released.</p> <p> WARNING</p> <p>Pressing the brake release button will release the holding brakes on all axes simultaneously.</p> |  <p>xx2100000158</p> |

Supplying power to connector R1.MP

If the robot is not connected to the controller, power must be supplied to connector R1.MP on the robot, in order to enable the brake release buttons.

| Action | Note |
|--|---|
| <p>1  DANGER</p> <p>Incorrect connections, such as supplying power to the wrong pin, may cause all brakes to be released simultaneously and instantly!</p> | |
| <p>2 Supply</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0V on pin 12. • 24V on pin 11. <p> Note</p> <p>Do not interchange the 24V and 0V pins.</p> <p>If they are mixed up, damage can be caused to internal electrical components.</p> |  <p>xx1800002443</p> |
| <p>3 Use the brake releasing button as described in Releasing the brakes on page 58.</p> | |

3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.4 Setting the system parameters for an inverted or a tilted robot

3.3.4 Setting the system parameters for an inverted or a tilted robot

General

The robot is configured for mounting parallel to the floor, without tilting, on delivery. If the robot is mounted in any other angle than 0° , then the system parameters that describe the mounting angle (how the robot is oriented relative to the gravity) must be re-defined.



Note

With inverted installation, make sure that the gantry or corresponding structure is rigid enough to prevent unacceptable vibrations and deflections, so that optimum performance can be achieved.



Note

The mounting positions are described in [Mounting positions on page 38](#), and the requirements on the foundation are described in [Requirements, foundation on page 40](#).

System parameters



Note

The mounting angle must be configured correctly in the system parameters so that the robot system can control the movements in the best possible way. An incorrect definition of the mounting angle will result in:

- Overloading the mechanical structure.
- Lower path performance and path accuracy.
- Some functions will not work properly, for example *Load Identification* and *Collision detection*.

Gravity Beta

When the robot is mounted other than floor-standing (rotated around the y-axis), the robot base frame and the system parameter *Gravity Beta* must be redefined. If the robot is mounted upside down (inverted), then *Gravity Beta* should be π (+3.141593).

If the robot is mounted on a wall, then *Gravity Beta* should be $\pm\pi/2$ (± 1.570796).

The *Gravity Beta* is a positive rotation direction around the y-axis in the base coordinate system. The value is set in radians.

Gravity Alpha

If the robot is mounted on a wall (rotated around the x-axis), then the robot base frame and the system parameter *Gravity Alpha* must be redefined. The value of *Gravity Alpha* should then be $\pm\pi/2$ (± 1.570796).

Continues on next page

The *Gravity Alpha* is a positive rotation direction around the x-axis in the base coordinate system. The value is set in radians.



Note

The system parameter *Gravity Alpha* is not supported for all robot types. If the robot does not support *Gravity Alpha*, then use *Gravity Beta* along with the re-calibration of axis 1 to define the rotation of the robot around the x-axis.



Note

The parameter is supported for all robots on track when the system parameter *7 axes high performance motion* is set, see *Technical reference manual - System parameters*.

Gamma Rotation

Gamma Rotation defines the orientation of the robot foot on the travel carriage (track motion).

Mounting angles and values

The parameter *Gravity Beta* (or *Gravity Alpha*) specifies the mounting angle of the robot in radians. It is calculated in the following way.

$\text{Gravity Beta} = A^\circ \times 3.141593/180 = B \text{ radians}$, where *A* is the mounting angle in degrees and *B* is the mounting angle in radians.

| Example of position | Mounting angle (A °) | Gravity Beta |
|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| Floor mounted | 0° | 0.000000 (Default) |
| Wall mounted | 90° | 1.570796 |
| Inverted mounting | 180° | 3.141593 |

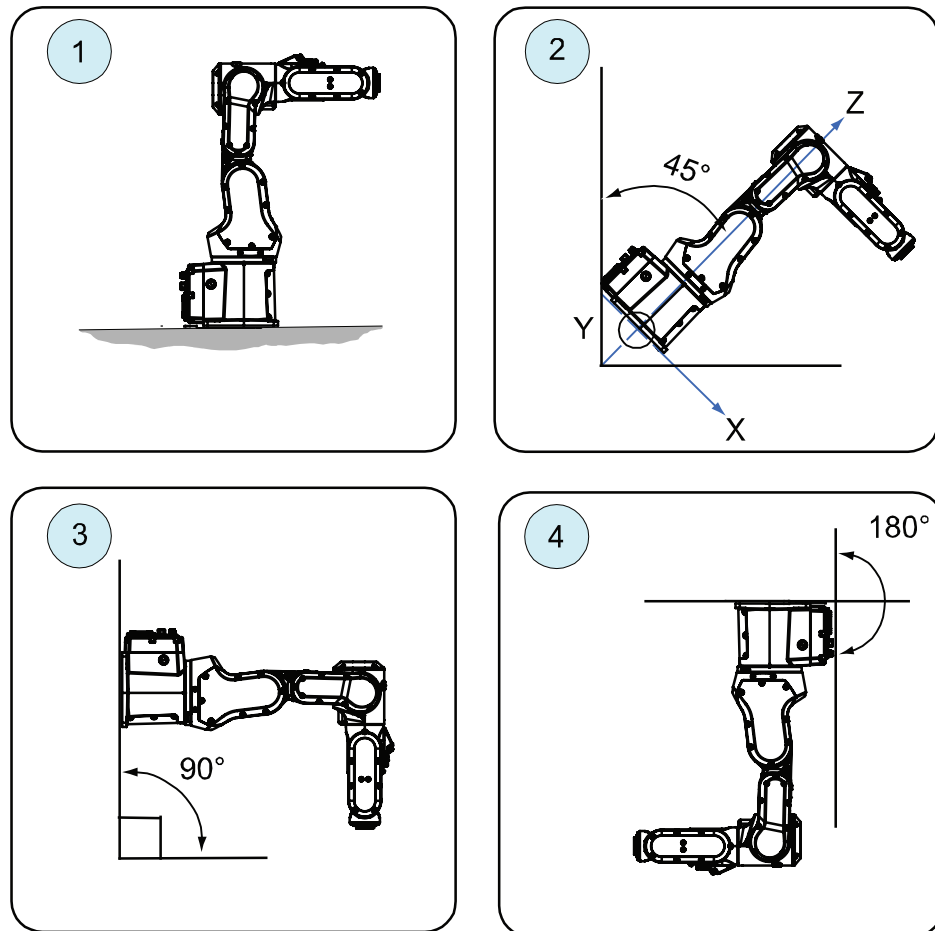
Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.4 Setting the system parameters for an inverted or a tilted robot

Continued

Examples of mounting angles tilted around the Y axis (*Gravity Beta*)



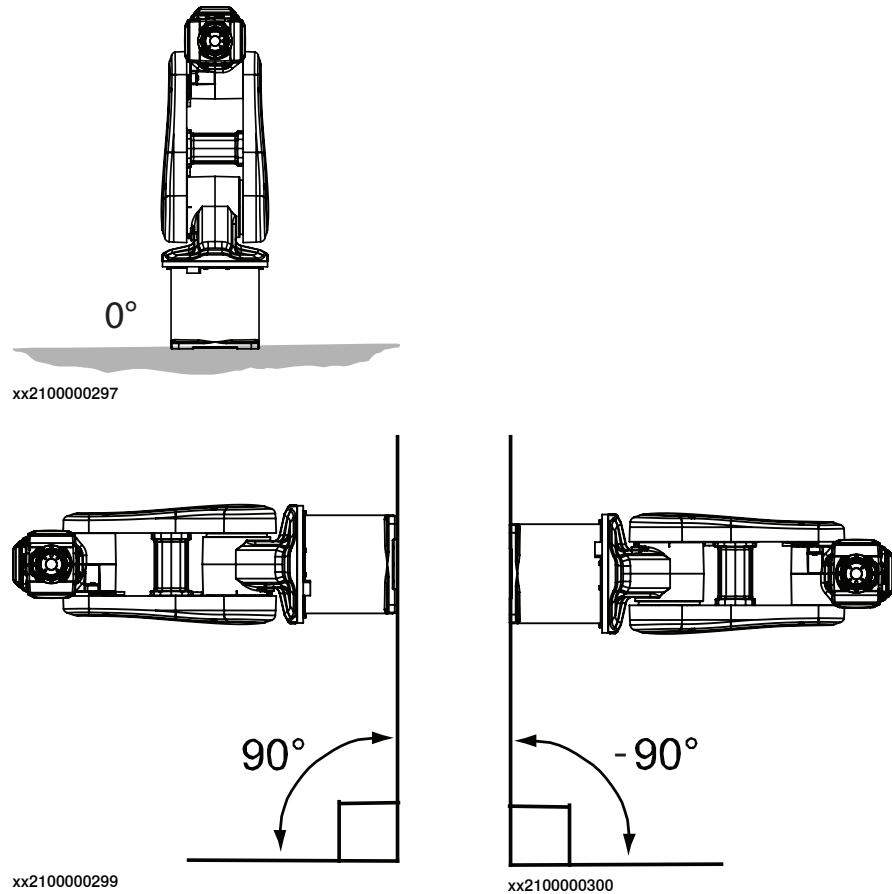
xx1800002454

| | |
|-------|---------------------------------|
| Pos 1 | Floor mounted |
| Pos 2 | Mounting angle 45° (Tilted) |
| Pos 3 | Mounting angle 90° (Wall) |
| Pos 4 | Mounting angle 180° (Suspended) |

Continues on next page

Examples of mounting angles tilted around the X axis (*Gravity Alpha*)

The following illustration shows the IRB 120, but the same principle applies for all robots.



| Mounting angle | Gravity Alpha |
|--------------------|---------------|
| 0° (Floor mounted) | 0 |
| 90° (Wall) | 1.570796 |
| -90° (Wall) | -1.570796 |



Note

For suspended robots (180°), it is recommended to use *Gravity Beta* instead of *Gravity Alpha*.

Limitations in working area

If mounting the robot on a wall, the working range of axis 1 is limited. These limitations are specified in the table [Working range on page 47](#).

Defining the system parameters in RobotWare

The value of the system parameters that define the mounting angle must be redefined when changing the mounting angle of the robot. The parameters belong to the type *Robot*, in the topic *Motion*.

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.4 Setting the system parameters for an inverted or a tilted robot

Continued

The system parameters are described in *Technical reference manual - System parameters*.

The system parameters are configured in RobotStudio or on the FlexPendant.

3.3.5 Loads fitted to the robot, stopping time and braking distances

Define loads carefully

Any loads mounted on the robot must be defined correctly and carefully (with regard to the position of center of gravity and mass moments of inertia) in order to avoid jolting movements and overloading motors, gears and structure.



CAUTION

Incorrectly defined loads may result in operational stops or major damage to the robot.

Load diagrams, permitted extra loads (equipment) and their positions are specified in the product specification. The loads must be defined in the software.

Stopping time and braking distances

The performance of the motor brake depends on if there are any loads attached to the robot.

See the product specification for the robot, listed in [References on page 10](#).

3 Installation and commissioning

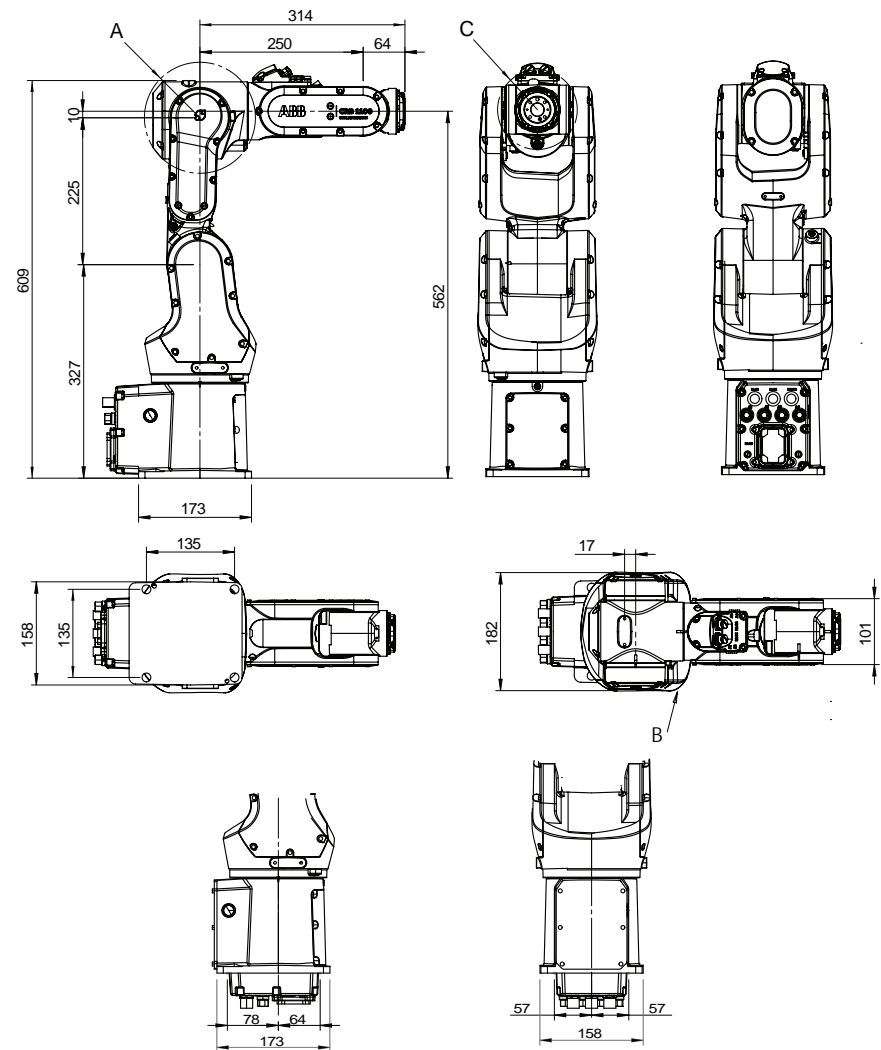
3.3.6 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions)

3.3.6 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions)

Robot dimensions

Dimensions CRB 1100-4/0.475

The figure shows the dimension of the CRB 1100-4/0.475.



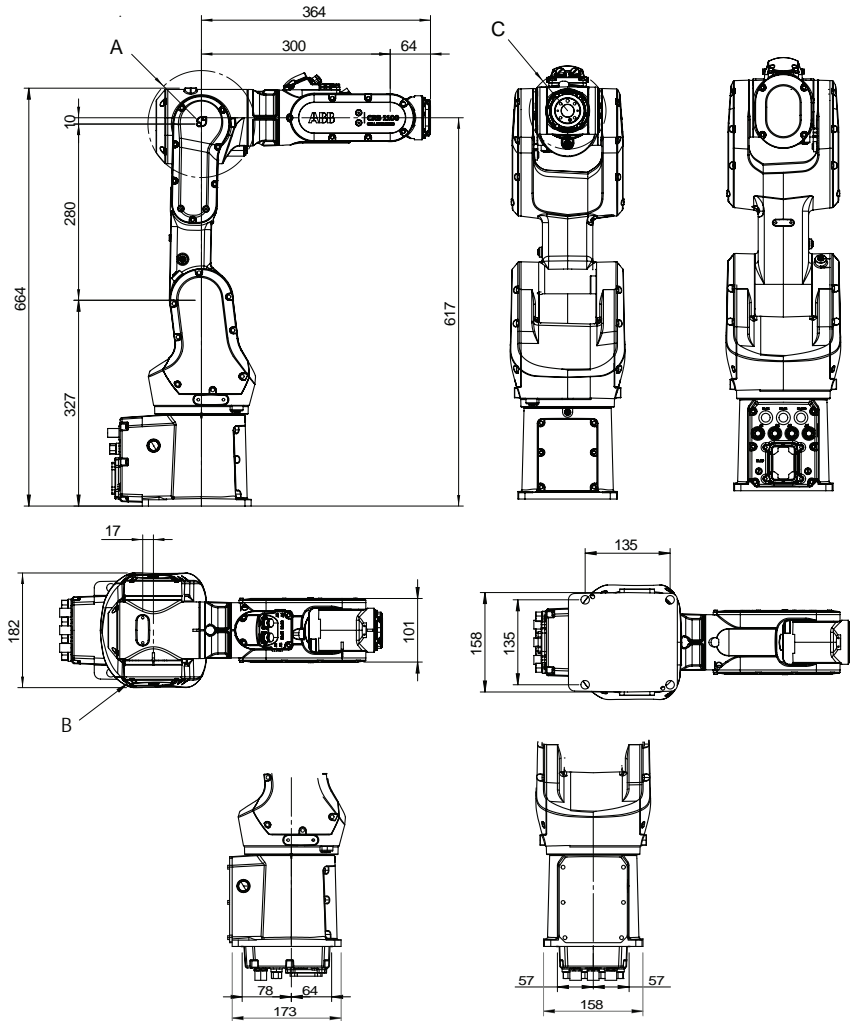
xx2000002545

| Pos | Description |
|-----|----------------------|
| A | Turning radius: R85 |
| B | Turning radius: R109 |
| C | Turning radius: R61 |

Continues on next page

Dimensions CRB 1100-4/0.58

The figure shows the dimension of the CRB 1100-4/0.58.



xx2000002546

| Pos | Description |
|-----|----------------------|
| A | Turning radius: R85 |
| B | Turning radius: R109 |
| C | Turning radius: R61 |

Attachment holes and dimensions

Extra loads can be mounted on robot. Definitions of dimensions and masses are shown in the following figures. The robot is supplied with holes for fitting extra equipment.

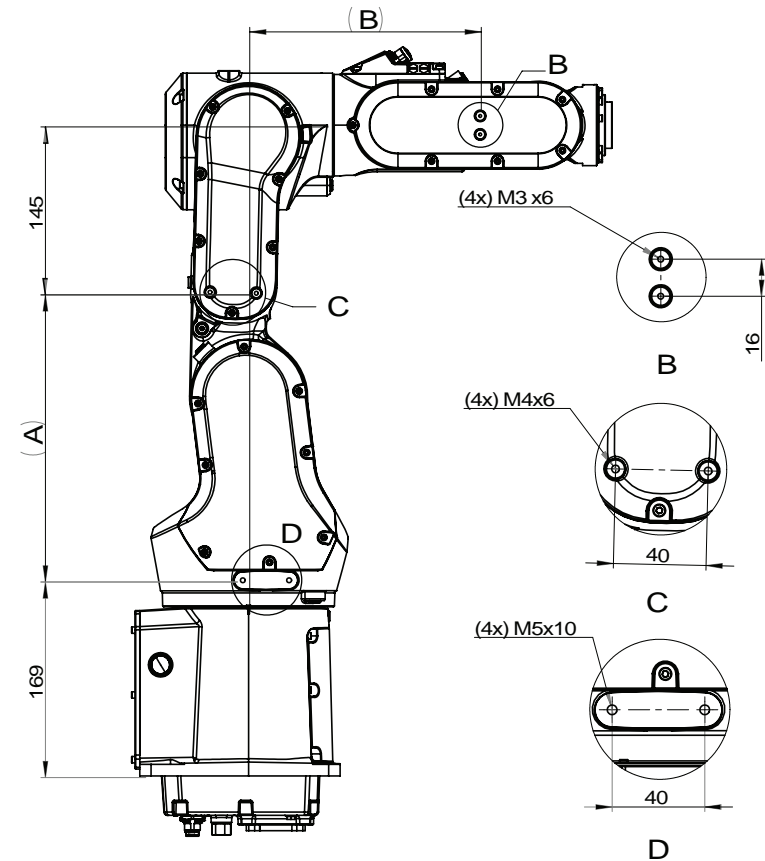
Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.6 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions)
Continued

Maximum allowed arm load depends on center of gravity of arm load and robot payload.

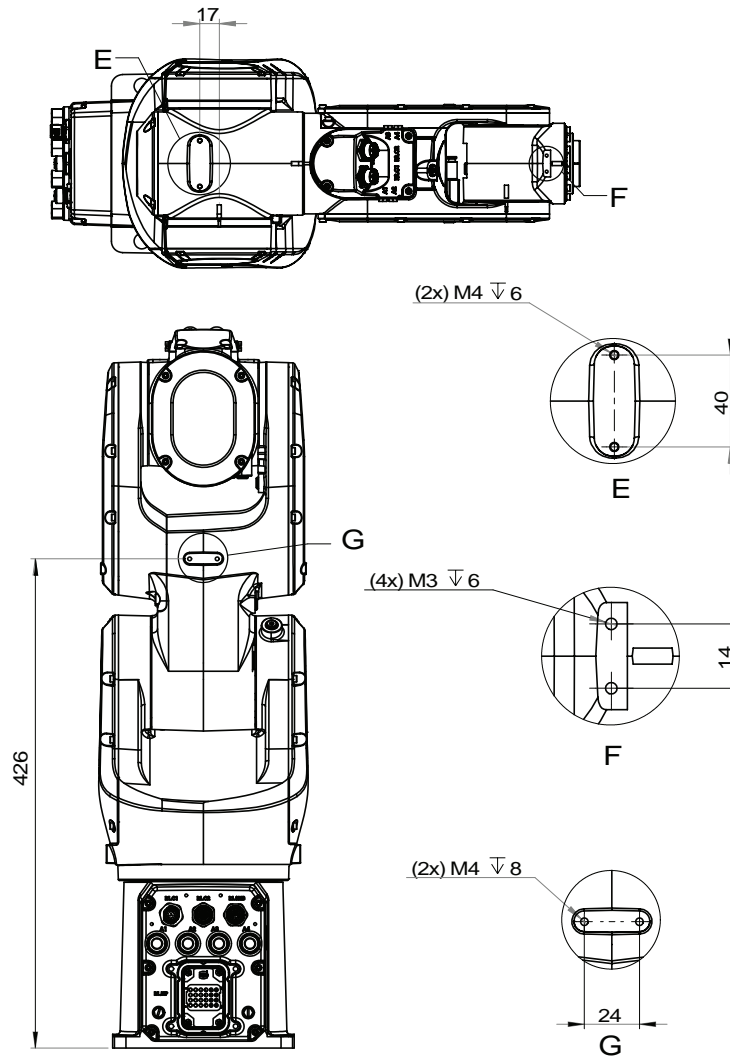
Holes for fitting extra equipment



xx1800002449

| Pos | CRB 1100-4/0.475 | CRB 1100-4/0.58 |
|-----|------------------|-----------------|
| A | 248 | 303 |
| B | 200 | 250 |

Continues on next page



xx1800002450

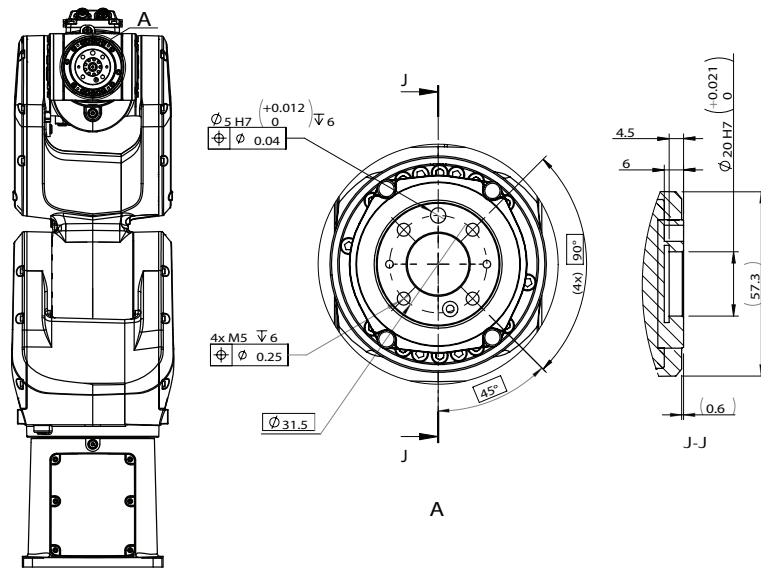
Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.6 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions)

Continued

Tool flange standard



xx1800002451



CAUTION

To calibrate the axis 6, the notch on the wrist must be aligned with the marked pin hole on the tool flange. Before installing a tool on the tool flange, make sure a visible mark has been made to the tool at the corresponding position.

For details about the synchronization mark, see [Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 657](#).

Fastener quality

When fitting tools on the tool flange, only use screws with quality 12.9. For other equipment use suitable screws and tightening torque for your application.

3.3.7 Installation of lead-through device

Introduction

The lead-through functionality is available for the CRB 1100 by mounting a lead-through device on axis 6. With the lead-through functionality enabled, you can hold the handler of the lead-through device and move the robot arm manually to the desired position, as an alternative to jogging.

To use lead-through, make sure the system is running in manual mode; otherwise, the functionality cannot be enabled. If running the system in auto mode, always remove the lead-through device from the robot first to prevent any unexpected damages.



CAUTION

Be careful not to stretch or squeeze the device cabling when moving the robot with the lead-through device, especially to extreme positions. Otherwise, it will cause cabling damages.



Note

Two types are available to the lead-through device used with the CRB 1100, no-button-type and two-button-type. The actual delivered device type varies according to the order time. Unless otherwise stated, the instructions of installing and configuring the device are applicable to both no-button-type device and two-button-type device. Always read the instructions carefully to install and configure your device based on the actual device type.

Continues on next page

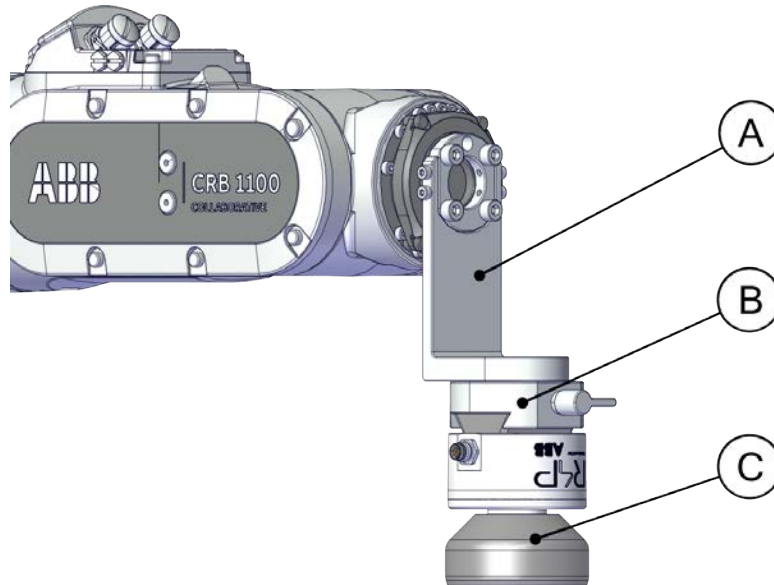
3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.7 Installation of lead-through device

Continued

Location of lead-through device

The lead-through device is located as shown in the figure.



xx2100000159

| | |
|---|--|
| A | Adapter |
| B | Lead-through device base Note: base for no-button-type lead-through device is shown as an example. |
| C | Lead-through device Note: no-button-type lead-through device is shown as an example. |

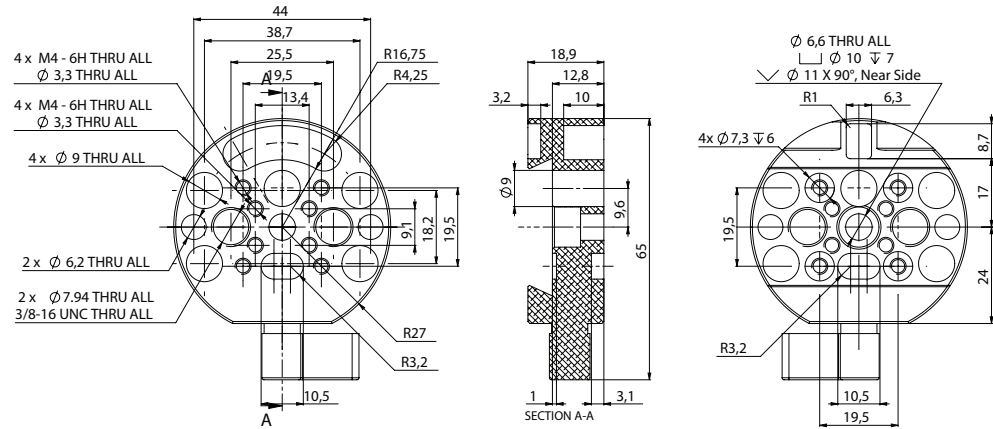
Preparing the adapter

The lead-through device is mounted to the device base and then to the robot tool flange through an adapter. Customers can use an L-shape adapter offered by ABB (option 3314-1) or design adapters according to actual requirements. During adapter design, hole dimensions on the device base and robot tool flange shall be considered.

Continues on next page

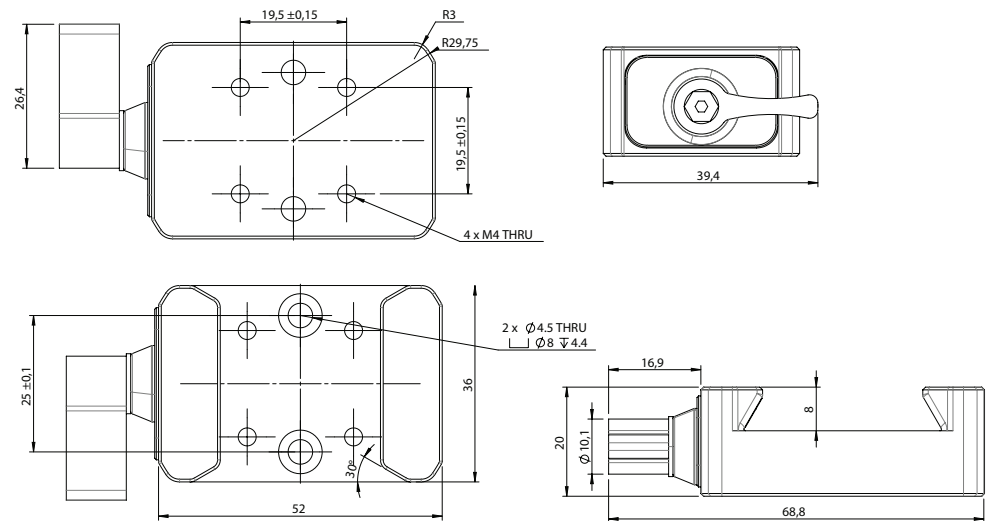
The following figure illustrates the hole dimensions on lead-through device base.

For no-button type



xx2100000164

For two-button type



xx2200000767

For the hole dimensions on robot tool flange, see [Tool flange standard on page 70](#).

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|---------------------|----------------|------|
| Lead-through device | 3HAC075974-001 | |

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.7 Installation of lead-through device

Continued

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|------|
| Lead-through device base (for no-button type) | 3HAC075975-001 | |
| Lead-through device with buttons | 3HAC082590-001 | |
| Lead-through device base (for two-button type) | 3HAC082591-001 | |
| Cabling M8-M12, 500 mm (for lead-through device) | 3HAC077018-001 | |
| Ethernet cable M12- RJ45, 7m (for lead-through device) | 3HAC077020-001 | |

Installing the lead-through device


Use the following procedure to install the lead-through device.



Note

The lead-through device can be installed in any position according to actual applications. Figures in the following procedures only illustrate an example position.

Preparations before installing the lead-through device


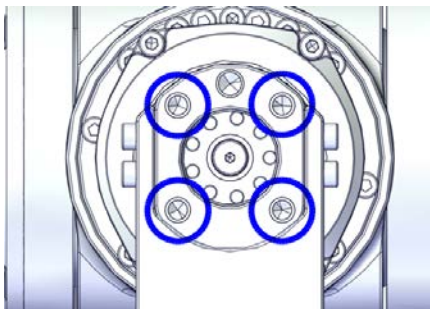
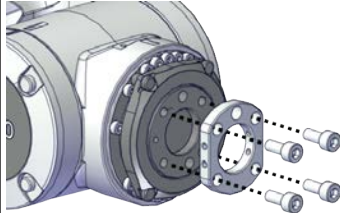
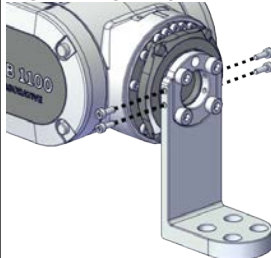
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Remove all tools from the mounting flange. | |
| 2 | Jog the robot to the synchronization position. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |
| 3 | <p>Prepare the lead-through device adapter.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>To calibrate the axis 6, the notch on the wrist must be aligned with the marked pin hole on the tool flange. Before installing the adapter on the tool flange, make sure a visible mark has been made to the adapter at the corresponding position.</p> <p>For details about the synchronization mark, see Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 657.</p> | Refer to Preparing the adapter on page 72 . |

Continues on next page

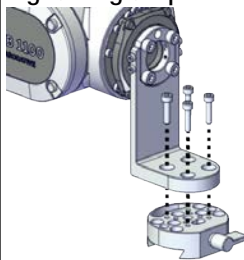
3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.7 Installation of lead-through device

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 4 | <p>Install the adapter to mounting flange.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Secure the adapter to the tool flange using the screw holes circled in the following figure if there are no other tools to be fitted. Otherwise, the tools should use these holes as via holes to be fitted to the robot.</p>  <p>xx2100000167</p> | <p>Following figures illustrate installation of the offered L-shape adapter (option 3314-1).</p> <p>Specification and tightening torque of screws fixing the adapter to the tool flange vary according to actual applications.</p>  <p>xx2100000281</p> <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx2000002222</p> |

Installing the lead-through device (no-button type)



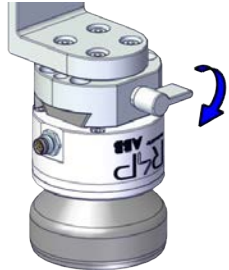
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | <p>Install the device base to the adaptor.</p> | <p>Screw: M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 3 Nm</p>  <p>xx2000002223</p> |

Continues on next page

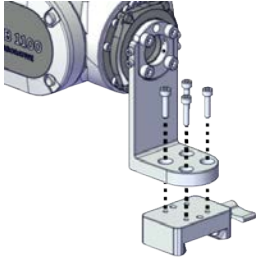
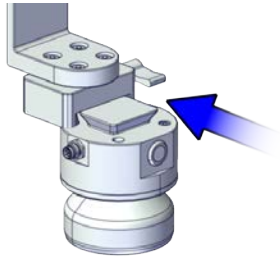
3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.7 Installation of lead-through device



Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Insert the lead-through device to the base. |  xx2000002224 |
| 3 | Turn the adjusting knob to lock the lead-through device.  Note Do not use excessive force! The arrow in the figure indicates the direction of locking the lead-through device. |  xx2000002225 |

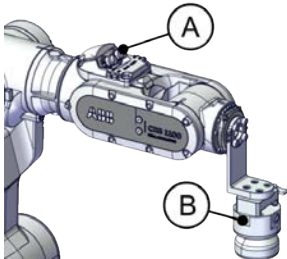


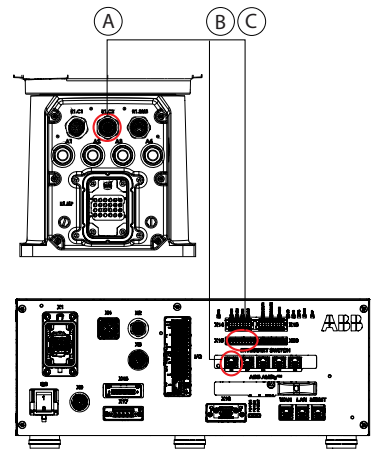
Installing the lead-through device (two-button type)

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Install the device base to the adaptor. | Screw: M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 3 Nm  xx2200000763 |
| 2 | Insert the lead-through device to the base. |  xx2200000764 |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | <p>Turn the adjusting knob to lock the lead-through device.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not use excessive force!</p> <p>The arrow in the figure indicates the direction of locking the lead-through device.</p> |  <p>xx2200000765</p> |

Connecting the cables

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Connect the cabling between the lead-through device and robot.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> R2.C2 connector on process hub of robot (A) Lead through device connector (B) |  <p>xx2200000766</p> |
| 2 | <p>Connect the cable between robot and controller.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> R1.C2 connector on robot base (A) Ethernet switch port on controller (B) X19 connector on controller (C) <p> Note</p> <p>Ethernet switch port is available for use only when the 5 Port Ethernet switch option is selected. Otherwise, connect the cable to the MGMT port.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Pins 3 and 4 of X19 connector are used for the lead-through device connection while pins 1 and 2 are occupied by the CP/CS cable for lamp unit.</p> |  <p>xx2100000292</p> |

Configuring the lead-through functionality

The lead-through functionality is predefined for robots that are delivered with the option 3313-1 Lead-through Device ordered.

If the lead-through option is newly ordered for an existing robot and the robot system is operating in RobotWare 7.6 or later, the Collaborative Speed Control add-in must be installed to the system to activate the lead-through functionality.

For details about how to install the add-in and configure the lead-through functionality, see [Lead-through on page 97](#).

3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.8 Installation of laser scanner

3.3.8 Installation of laser scanner

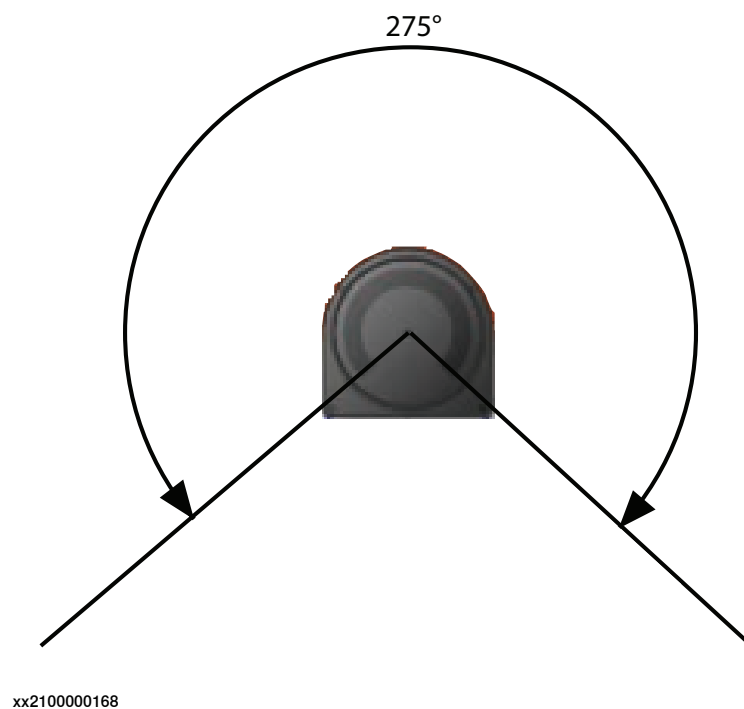
Overview

The safety separation technology and speed control for CRB 1100 is based on the connection and communication of one or two safety laser scanners in the robot. Laser scanner(s) provides a timely and continuous monitor on the activities within its scanning area and forms a protective field. One laser scanner can provide a scanning range of approximately 275°. The system integrator shall investigate the site environment and place the laser scanner to a suitable location according to the actual requirements.



CAUTION

Safety in the area that not in the scanning range must always be considered. The system integrator shall assess the potential risks within this area and make sure that proper measures have been applied to reduce risks.



Laser scanner types

The following laser scanner package options are available:

- 1 PROFSafe-based laser scanner (option 3051-1 PROFSafe scanner)
- 2 PROFSafe-based laser scanners (option 3051-3 Dual PROFSafe scanner)
- 1 SafetyIO-based laser scanner (option 3051-2 I/O scanner)
- 2 SafetyIO-based laser scanners (option 3051-4 Dual I/O scanner)

Continues on next page

Connection between PROFIsafe-based laser scanners and the OmniCore controller differs according to the PROFINET options selected and installed in the system.

- If only options [3020-2] PROFINET Device and [3023-2] PROFIsafe Device are selected and installed, the laser scanners shall connect to a PLC acting as a master first and then to the OmniCore controller with SafeMove via the PROFINET safe (PROFIsafe) network. Users need to prepare a safety PLC of their own.
- If options [3020-1] PROFINET Controller and [3023-1] PROFIsafe Controller are selected and installed, the laser scanner could communicate with the OmniCore controller directly via the WAN port.

SafetyIO-based laser scanners connects to the OmniCore controller with SafeMove and installed with the scalable I/O device DSQC1042 Safety digital base (option 3037-2). For details about the scalable I/O device, see the product specification of the controller and *Application manual - Scalable I/O*.

The supported PROFINET- and SafetyIO-base laser scanners are *SICK® microScan 3 Core* and *SICK® microScan 3 Pro*, respectively. Detailed scanner model can be obtained on the scanner nameplate. Other scanner types or models might not provide full functionality.

For more details about the safety laser scanners, see *Operating instructions microScan3 - PROFINET* and *Operating instructions microScan3 - Pro I/O* from the vendor, which are available on *SICK®* website.

Connecting the laser scanner(s)

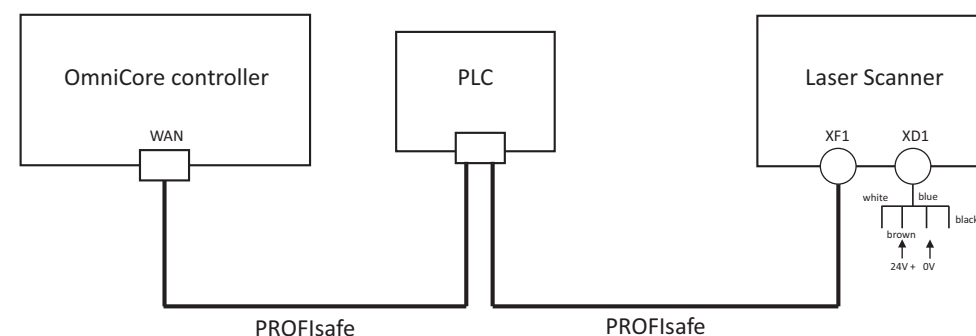
Safety laser scanners shall be connected properly according to the scanner type and system setup.



Note

External 24V power supply shall be prepared for power connection of laser scanners.

1 PROFIsafe-based laser scanner (option 3051-1), with PLC connected



xx2100000160

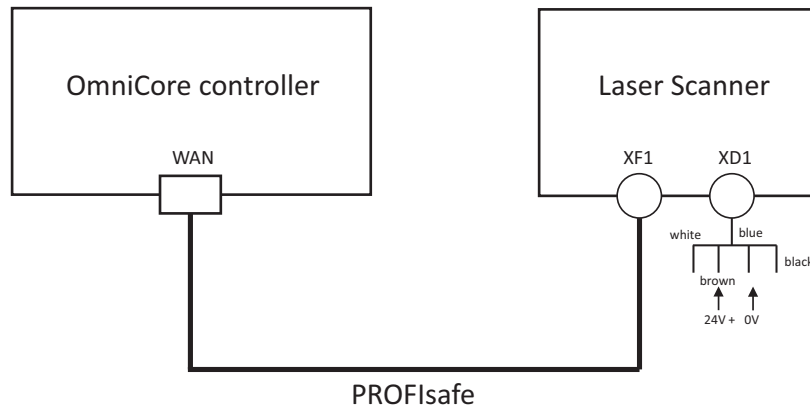
Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.8 Installation of laser scanner

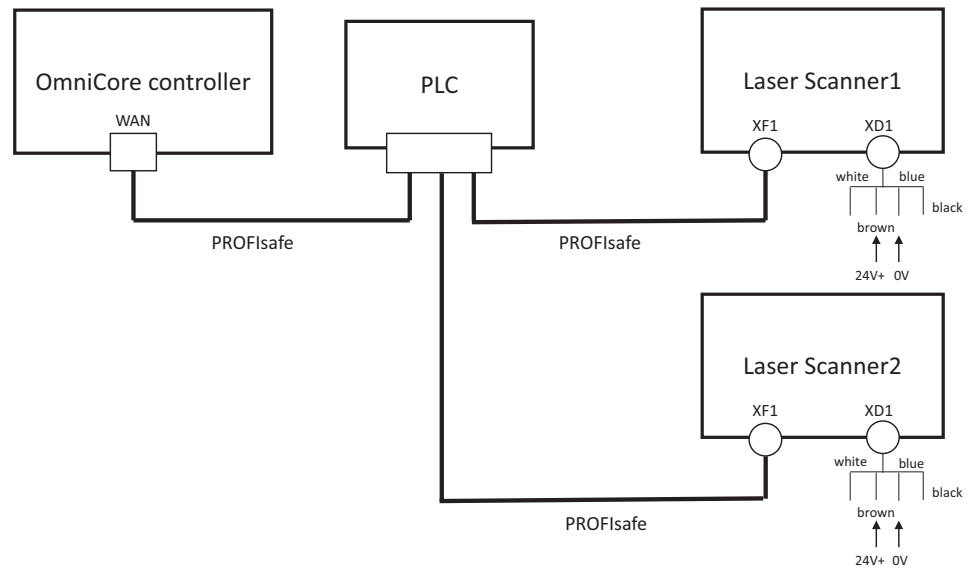
Continued

1 PROFI-safe-based laser scanner (option 3051-1), without PLC connected



xx2300000226

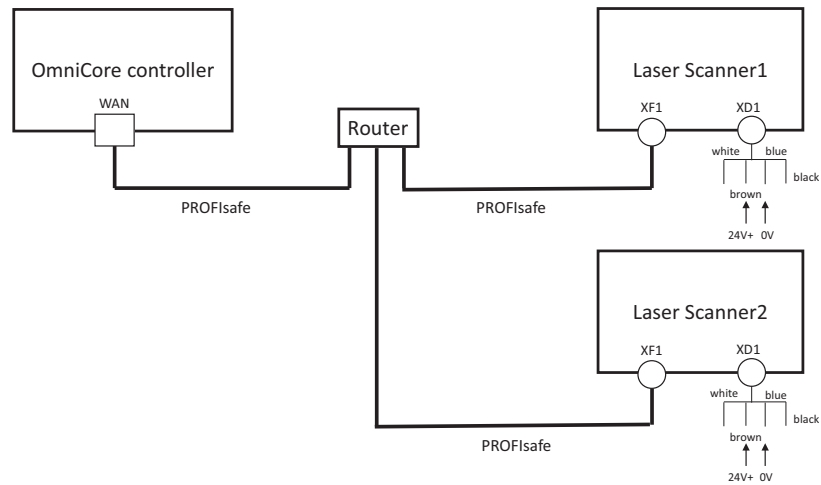
2 PROFI-safe-based laser scanners (option 3051-3), with PLC connected



xx2200000298

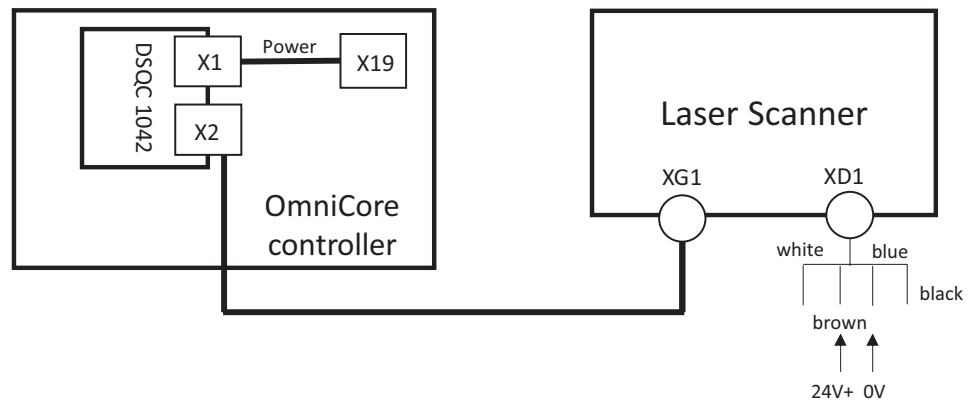
Continues on next page

2 PROFIsafe-based laser scanners (option 3051-3), without PLC connected



xx2300000227

1 SafetyIO-based laser scanner (option 3051-2)



xx2200000299

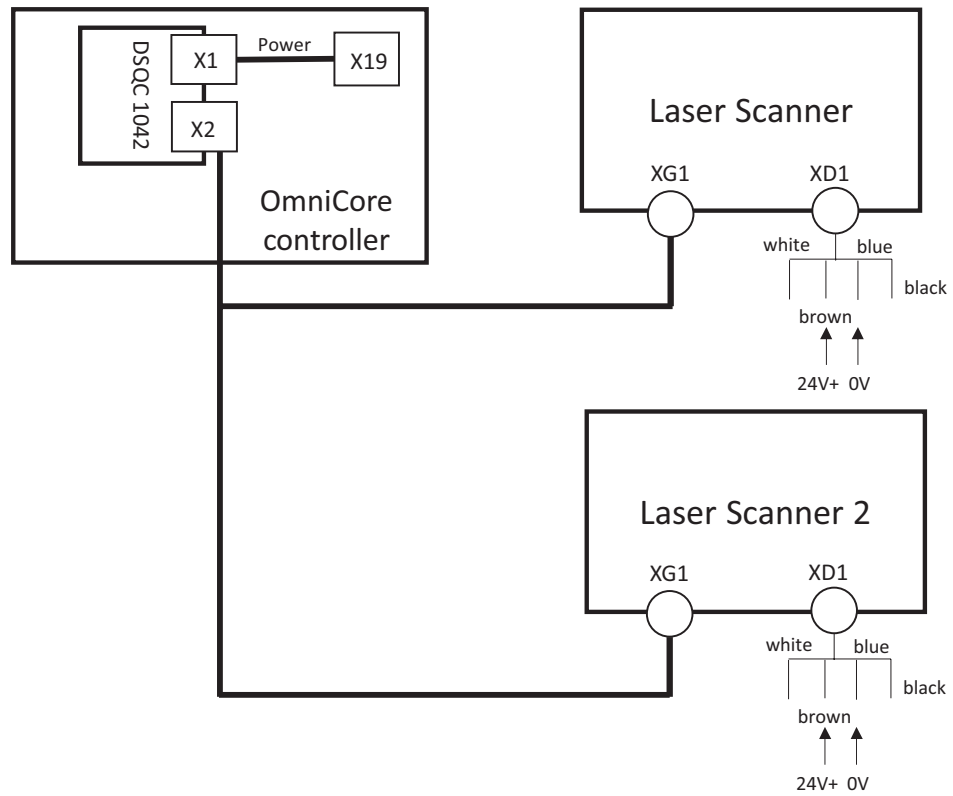
Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.8 Installation of laser scanner

Continued

2 SafetyIO-based laser scanners (option 3051-4)



xx2200000300



Note

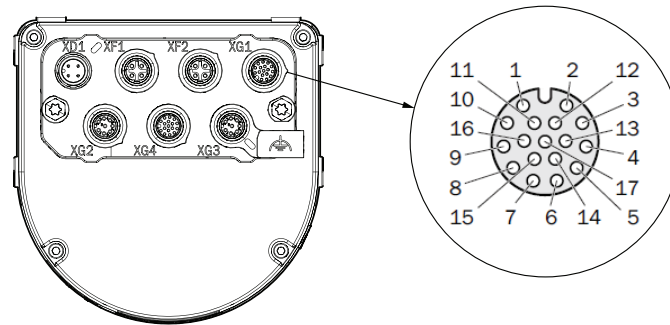
If there are additional scalable I/O devices available, install and configure the additional devices by following the detailed procedures in *Application manual - Scalable I/O*.

Continues on next page

Connector information

Pin assignment on XG1 of SafetyIO-based laser scanners

XG1 connector on SafetyIO-based laser scanner is a 17-pin, A-coded M12 female connector. Pins 1-4 and pin 17 on XG1 are occupied for connecting the laser scanner and scalable I/O device, while other 12 pins can be used for local inputs and outputs.



xx2300000750

| Pin | Description | Wiring color |
|-----|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1 | OSSD pair 1, OSSD A | Brown |
| 2 | OSSD pair 1, OSSD B | Blue |
| 3 | OSSD pair 2, OSSD A | White |
| 4 | OSSD pair 2, OSSD B | Green |
| 5 | Universal input 1 | Pink |
| 6 | Universal input 2 | Yellow |
| 7 | Universal input 3 | Black |
| 8 | Universal input 4 | Grey |
| 9 | Universal input 5 | Red |
| 10 | Universal input 6 | Violet |
| 11 | Universal input 7 | Grey with pink |
| 12 | Universal input 8 | Red with blue |
| 13 | Universal input 9 | White with green |
| 14 | Universal input 10 | Brown with green |
| 15 | Universal output 1 | White with yellow |
| 16 | Universal output 2 | Yellow with brown |
| 17 | Voltage 0 V DC | White with grey |

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.3.8 Installation of laser scanner

Continued




Configuring the laser scanner(s)

Laser scanner configuration depends on the type and number of scanners connecting to the robot and RobotWare version. Refer to the following table for applicable scenario and proceed to specific section for configuration details.

| Scanner type | Works with... | | | Number of connected scanners | RobotWare version | Re-require... | Refer to... |
|-----------------|---------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------|---|
| | PLC | Scalable I/O device DSQC1042 | OmniCore controller with SafeMove | | | Collaborative Speed Control add-in | |
| PROFIsafe-based | Y | N | Y | 1 | RobotWare 7.5 or earlier | N | Configuration of one PROFINET-base laser scanner (RobotWare 7.5 or earlier) on page 119 |
| | Y | N | Y | 1 | RobotWare 7.6 or later | Y | Configuration of one PROFIsafe-based laser scanner (RobotWare 7.6 or later and PLC acting as Master) on page 125 |
| | Y | N | Y | 2 | RobotWare 7.6 or later | Y | Configuration of two PROFIsafe-based laser scanners (RobotWare 7.6 or later and PLC acting as Master) on page 129 |
| | N | N | Y | 1 | RobotWare 7.10 or later | Y | Configuration of one PROFIsafe-based laser scanner (RobotWare 7.10 or later and OmniCore acting as Master) on page 133 |
| | N | N | Y | 2 | RobotWare 7.10 or later | Y | Configuration of two PROFIsafe-based laser scanners (RobotWare 7.10 or later and OmniCore acting as Master) on page 137 |
| SafetyIO-based | N | Y | Y | 1 | RobotWare 7.6 or later | Y | Configuration of one SafetyIO-base laser scanner (RobotWare 7.6 or later) on page 141 |
| | N | Y | Y | 2 | RobotWare 7.6 or later | Y | Configuration of two SafetyIO-base laser scanners (RobotWare 7.6 or later) on page 146 |

Continues on next page

The following table lists the required actions for specific scenarios such as RobotWare upgrade or rollback.

| Scenario | Actions |
|---|---|
| RobotWare 7.5 or an earlier version upgraded to RobotWare 7.6 or a later version |  Note Applicable only when using PROFI-safe-based laser scanners <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Install the Collaborative Speed Control add-in. See Information about Collaborative Speed Control add-in on page 96. 2 Reconfigure the PLC and laser scanner. See Configuration of one PROFI-safe-based laser scanner (RobotWare 7.6 or later and PLC acting as Master) on page 125. |
| RobotWare 7.6 or a later version rolled back to RobotWare 7.5 or an earlier version |  Note Applicable only when using PROFI-safe-based laser scanners Reconfigure the PLC and laser scanner. See Configuration of one PROFINET-base laser scanner (RobotWare 7.5 or earlier) on page 119 . |
| Adding a new laser scanner | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Connect the new laser scanner in the same type as the one existing in the system. See Connecting the laser scanner(s) on page 79. 2 Configure the new laser scanner. See Configuration of two PROFI-safe-based laser scanners (RobotWare 7.6 or later and PLC acting as Master) on page 129 or Configuration of two SafetyIO-base laser scanners (RobotWare 7.6 or later) on page 146. |
| Connection via a PLC changed to direct connection with the OmniCore Controller |  Note Applicable only when using PROFI-safe-based laser scanners <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Upgrade the robot system to RobotWare 7.10 or later, and install the options [3020-1] PROFINET Controller and [3023-1] PROFI-safe Controller to the system. 2 Reconfigure the laser scanners. See Configuration of one PROFI-safe-based laser scanner (RobotWare 7.10 or later and OmniCore acting as Master) on page 133 or Configuration of two PROFI-safe-based laser scanners (RobotWare 7.10 or later and OmniCore acting as Master) on page 137. |

3 Installation and commissioning

3.4.1 Adjusting the working range

3.4 Restricting the working range

3.4.1 Adjusting the working range

Reasons for adjusting the manipulator working range

The working range of each manipulator axis is configured in the software. If there is a risk that the manipulator may collide with other objects at installation site, its working space should be limited. The manipulator must always be able to move freely within its entire working space.

Working range configurations

The parameter values for the axes working range can be altered within the allowed working range and according to available options for the robot, either to limit or to extend a default working range. Allowed working ranges and available options for each manipulator axis are specified in [Working range on page 47](#).

Mechanical stops on the manipulator

Mechanical stops are and can be installed on the manipulator as limiting devices to ensure that the manipulator axis does not exceed the working range values set in the software parameters.



Note

The mechanical stops are only installed as safety precaution to physically stop the robot from exceeding the working range set. A collision with a mechanical stop always requires actions for repair and troubleshooting.

| Axis | Fixed mechanical stop ⁱ | Movable mechanical stop ⁱⁱ |
|--------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Axis 1 | yes | no |
| Axis 2 | yes | no |
| Axis 3 | yes | no |
| Axis 4 | no | no |
| Axis 5 | yes | no |
| Axis 6 | no | no |

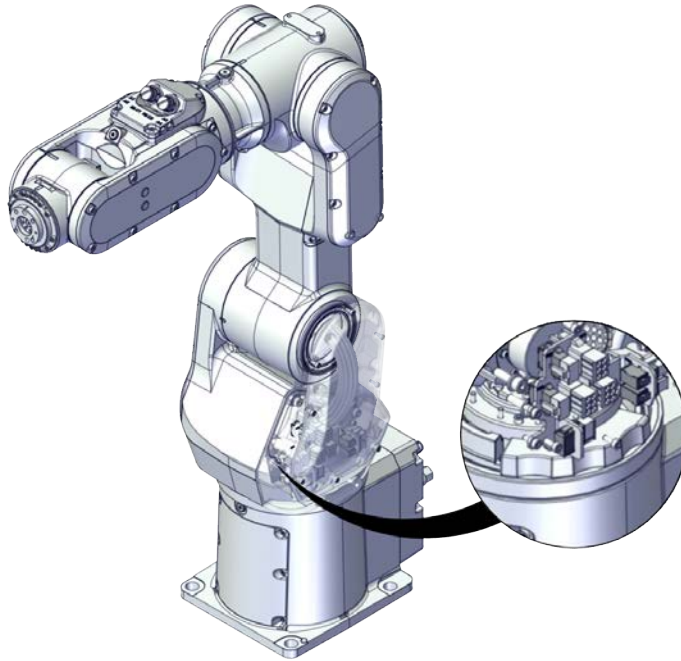
ⁱ Part of the casting or fixed on the casting and can not /should not be removed.

ⁱⁱ Can be installed in one or more than one position, to ensure a reduced working range, or be removed to allow extended working range.

3.4.2 Mechanically restricting the working range

Location of the mechanical stops

Only axis 1 has a replaceable mechanical stop.



xx1800002452

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|-------------------------|----------------|---------------------|
| Mechanical stop, axis 1 | 3HAC061947-001 | Replace if damaged. |

Replacement of the axis-1 mechanical stop

The axis-1 mechanical stop is accessible after removing the base, see [Replacing the base on page 277](#).

3 Installation and commissioning

3.5.1 Robot cabling and connection points

3.5 Electrical connection

3.5.1 Robot cabling and connection points

Introduction

Connect the robot and controller to each other after securing them to the foundation. The lists below specify which cables to use for each respective application.



DANGER

Turn off the main power before connecting any cables.



CAUTION

Verify that the robot serial number is according to the number(s) in the *Declaration of Incorporation (DoI)*.

Main cable categories

The following table specifies cabling categories between the robot and the controller. Some of the cabling belong to optional applications.

| Cable category | Description |
|-----------------|---|
| Robot cables | Handles power supply to and control of the robot's motors as well as feedback from the serial measurement board. Specified in the table Robot cables on page 88 . |
| Customer cables | Handles communication with equipment fitted on the robot by the customer, low voltage signals and high voltage power supply + protective ground. The customer cables also handle databus communication. The customer cables also include the air hose. See the product manual for the controller, see document number in References on page 10 . |
| Air hoses | The hose for compressed air is integrated with the manipulator cable harness. |

Robot cables

These cables are included in the standard delivery. They are completely pre-manufactured and ready to plug in.

| Cable sub-category | Description | Connection point, cabinet | Connection point, robot |
|----------------------|--|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| Robot cables, power | Transfers drive power from the drive units in the control cabinet to the robot motors. | X1 | R1.MP |
| Robot cable, signals | Transfers resolver data from and power supply to the serial measurement board. | X2 | R1.SMB |

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.5.1 Robot cabling and connection points

Continued

Robot cable, power

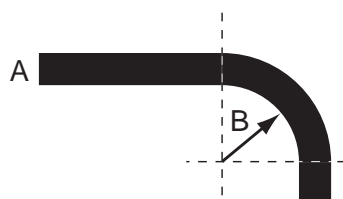
| Power cable length | Article number |
|---------------------------------------|----------------|
| Power cable, straight connector, 3 m | 3HAC077245-001 |
| Power cable, straight connector, 7 m | 3HAC077245-002 |
| Power cable, straight connector, 15 m | 3HAC077245-003 |
| Power cable, angled connector, 3 m | 3HAC077247-001 |
| Power cable, angled connector, 7 m | 3HAC077247-002 |
| Power cable, angled connector, 15 m | 3HAC077247-003 |

Robot cable, signals

| Signal cable length | Article number |
|------------------------------|----------------|
| Signal cable, shielded: 3 m | 3HAC067446-001 |
| Signal cable, shielded: 7 m | 3HAC067446-002 |
| Signal cable, shielded: 15 m | 3HAC067446-003 |

Bending radius for static floor cables

The minimum bending radius is 10 times the cable diameter for static floor cables.



xx1600002016

| | |
|---|--------------|
| A | Diameter |
| B | Diameter x10 |

Continues on next page

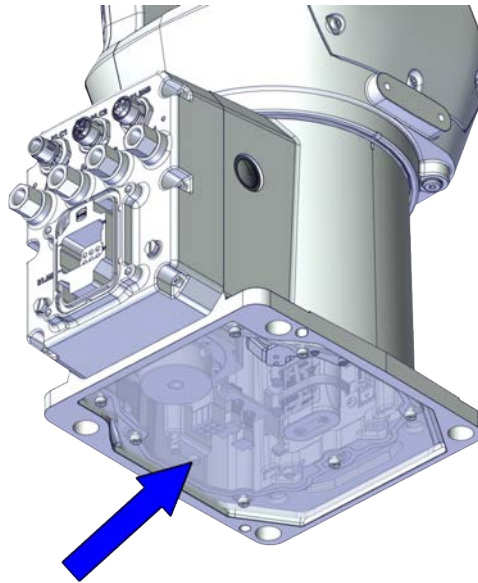
3 Installation and commissioning

3.5.1 Robot cabling and connection points

Continued

Grounding and bonding point on manipulator

There is a grounding/bonding point on the manipulator base. The grounding/bonding point is used for potential equalizing between control cabinet, manipulator and any peripheral devices.



xx1800002453

Customer cables - CP/CS cable

| CP/CS cable length ⁱ | Article number |
|---------------------------------|----------------|
| 3 m, with lamp unit cabling | 3HAC078069-001 |
| 7 m, with lamp unit cabling | 3HAC078069-002 |
| 15 m, with lamp unit cabling | 3HAC078069-003 |

ⁱ CP/CS cable for CRB 1100 also includes lamp unit cabling used for communication with the lamp unit on the process hub. The cable is also designed with free ends for more I/O connections and shall always be used properly in applications. It is recommended to shield the free ends not in use. Do not use other types of CP/CS cables or use in an improper way; otherwise, the lamp unit will not work and other unknown faulty may be raised.

Customer cables - Ethernet floor cable

| Ethernet floor cable length ⁱ | Article number |
|--|----------------|
| 7 m, with lead-through device cabling | 3HAC077020-001 |

ⁱ Ethernet floor cable for CRB 1100 is used for communication with the lead-through device when installed. Another Ethernet cable of 500 mm is used between the lead-through device and R2.C2 connector on robot wrist.

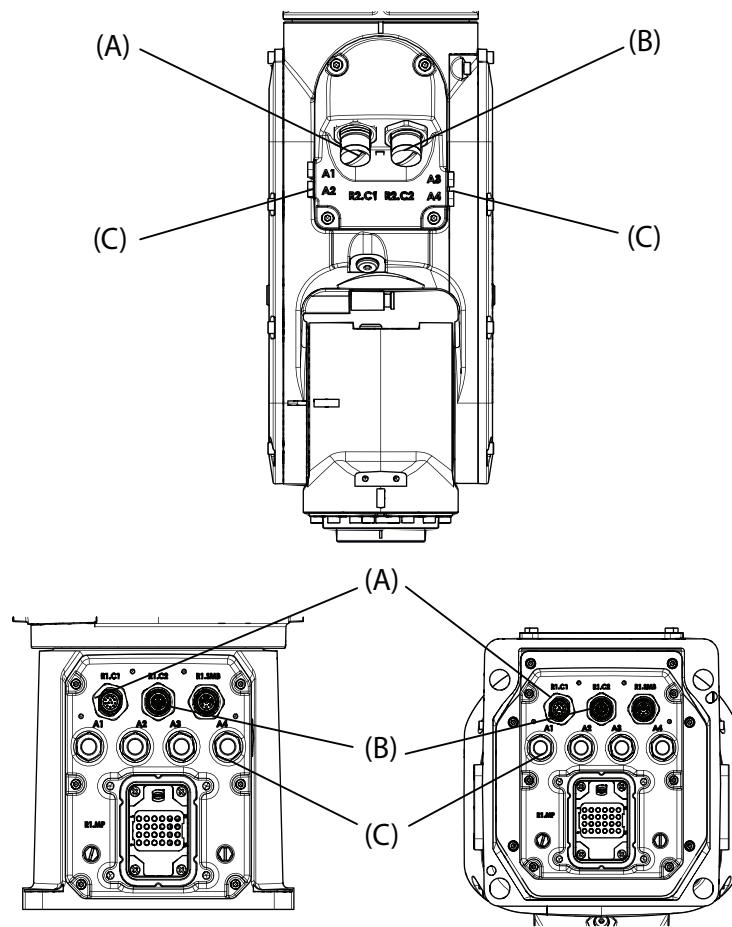
3.5.2 Customer connections

Introduction to customer connections

The cables for customer connection are integrated in the robot and the connectors are placed on the wrist and one at the base. There is one connector R2.C1 at the wrist. Corresponding connector R1.C1 is located at the base.

There is also connections for Ethernet, one connector R2.C2 at the wrist and the corresponding connector R1.C2 located at the base.

Hose for compressed air is also integrated into the manipulator. There are 4 inlets at the base (R1/8") and 4 outlets (M5) on the wrist.



xx1900000131

| Position | Connection | Description | Number | Value |
|----------|------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| A | (R1)R2.C1 | Customer power/signal | 4 wires ⁱ | 30 V, 1.5 A |
| B | (R1)R2.C2 | Customer power/signal or Ethernet | 8 wires ⁱⁱ | 30 V, 1 A or 1 Gbits/s |
| C | Air | Max. 6 bar | 4 | Outer diameter of air hose: 4 mm |

ⁱ The connector has 12 pins. Only pins 5 to 8 are available for use. Pins 1 to 4 are used for LED indicator, and pins 9 to 12 are not connected internally.

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.5.2 Customer connections

Continued

- ii If the lead-through device is installed, the C2 connector will be used for the lead-through device and 6 wires are occupied.

Connector kits (optional)

Connector kits, wrist

The table describes the CP/CS and Ethernet (if any) connector kits for wrist.

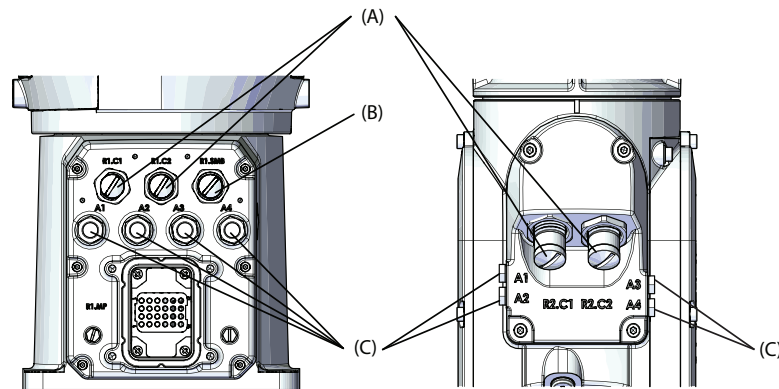
| Position | Description | | Art. no. |
|----------------|-------------|---|----------------|
| Connector kits | CP/CS | M12 CPCS Male straight connector kits | 3HAC066098-001 |
| | | M12 CPCS Male angled connector kits | 3HAC066099-001 |
| | Ethernet | M12 Ethernet Cat5e Male straight connector kits | 3HAC067413-001 |
| | | M12 Ethernet Cat5e Male angled connector kits | 3HAC067414-001 |

Protection covers

Protection covers for water and dust proofing

Protection covers are delivered together with the robot and must be well fitted to the connectors in any application requiring water and dust proofing.

Always remember to refit the protection covers after removing them.



xx1900000132

| | |
|---|---|
| A | CP/CS or Ethernet connector protection covers |
| B | SMB connector protection cover |
| C | Air hose connector protection covers |

3.6 Start of robot in cold environments

Introduction

This section describes how to start the robot in a cold environment if it is not starting the normal way.

Problems with starting the robot

Event message from Motion Supervision

Use this procedure if an event message indicates a problem with Motion supervision at start-up. More information about Motion Supervision is found in *Technical reference manual - System parameters*.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 | Turn off Motion Supervision. | |
| 2 | Start the robot. | |
| 3 | When the robot has reached normal working temperature, the Motion Supervision can be turned on again. | |

Robot stopping with other event message

Use this procedure if the robot is not starting.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Start the robot with its normal program but with reduced speed. | The speed can be regulated with the RAPID instruction <code>VelSet</code> . |

Adjusting the speed and acceleration during warm-up

Depending on how cold the environment is and what program is being used, the speed might need to be ramped up until reached maximum. The table shows examples of how to adjust the speed:

| Work cycles | AccSet | Speed/velocity |
|-------------------------|----------|-------------------|
| 3 Work cycles | 20, 20 | v100 (100 mm/s) |
| 5 Work cycles | 40, 40 | v400 (400 mm/s) |
| 5 Work cycles | 60, 60 | v600 (600 mm/s) |
| 5 Work cycles | 100, 100 | v1000 (1000 mm/s) |
| More than 5 Work cycles | 100, 100 | Max. |

If the program consists of large wrist movements, it is possible that the reorientation velocity, which is always high in predefined velocities, needs to be included in the ramping up.

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7 Configuring the software

3.7 Configuring the software

Overview

This section is intended for guiding users to set up robot system and configure necessary software for CRB 1100. It also contains information of some customizable safety configurations.

A general software configuration procedure is listed as below.

| | Action | Reference to... |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Configure RobotWare as required. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Information about RobotWare and CRB 1100 on page 95• Operating manual - Integrator's guide OmniCore |
| 2 | For robots operating in RobotWare 7.6 or later Download the Collaborative Speed Control add-in and install required options. | Information about Collaborative Speed Control add-in on page 96 |
| 3 | Configure the lead-through functions. | Lead-through on page 97 |
| 4 | Configure SafeMove. For PROFSafe-based scenarios with a PLC acting as the master connected (any supported RobotWare version) For SafetyIO-based scenarios Upload the template SafeMove configuration file using the SafeMove configurator app on FlexPendant. For PROFSafe-based scenarios with the controller acting as the master (RobotWare 7.10 or later) Configure the template SafeMove configuration file using Visual SafeMove in RobotStudio and upload to the controller. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The SafeMove configurator app on FlexPendant on page 104• Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove• Configuration of SafeMove using Visual SafeMove in RobotStudio on page 114• Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove |
| 5 | Configure laser scanner(s) and apply speed control strategies. | Speed control on page 119 |
| 6 | Get knowledge of the robot status indications shown by the lamp unit. | Robot status indication on page 154 |
| 7 | If required, modify customizable safety configurations. | Use cases of safety configurations on page 156 |

Continues on next page

3.7.1 Information about RobotWare and CRB 1100

Overview

CRB 1100 is designed to simplify collaborative applications. Therefore some software features work somewhat different compared with standard industrial robots. Some of them are listed in this section.

How to configure RobotWare is described in *Operating manual - Integrator's guide OmniCore*.

SafeMove

See *Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove*.

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.2 Information about Collaborative Speed Control add-in

3.7.2 Information about Collaborative Speed Control add-in

Overview



Note

The Collaborative Speed Control add-in is required only for robots operating in RobotWare 7.6 or later.

The Collaborative Speed Control add-in is integrated in the robot system at delivery if option 3313-1 Lead-through device or any of laser scanner options 3351-X are ordered. It is also available separately in the add-ins section in RobotStudio. To add it to an existing controller or do an update, see the installation procedure to install and add it to the robot.

With the Collaborative Speed Control add-in installed, the configuration of the lamp indicator, lead-through, and speed control are activated for the robot.

For PROFI-safe-based scenarios where a PLC is connected to act as a master and SafetyIO-based scenarios, after the add-in is installed, a predefined template SafeMove configuration file is also available for easy configuration of basic SafeMove functions.

Installing the Collaborative Speed Control add-in

Perform the following procedure to install the Collaborative Speed Control add-in:

- 1 Start RobotStudio and open the **Add-Ins** tab. The **Gallery** window is displayed.
- 2 In the displayed **Gallery** window, use the **Search** function or **Common tags** to find the Collaborative Speed Control add-in.
- 3 Click the displayed add-in icon.
- 4 In the right pane, click **Add**.
The package is automatically installed and listed in the **Add-in** navigation tree in the left pane of the window.
- 5 In the **Controller** tab page, choose **Installation Manager 7** from the **Installation Manager** list in the **Configuration** group.
- 6 In the **Installation Manager** window, connect to a real controller or select/create a virtual controller.
- 7 Proceed to the **Options** window and access the **Applications** tab page.
- 8 In the **Collaborative Features** group, choose the required option checkbox.
- 9 Click **Next** to go to the **Confirmation** window.
- 10 Select **Apply** to confirm and save the changes.

The add-in is displayed in the controller overview if it is successfully added to the controller.

3.7.3 Lead-through

What is lead-through?

The lead-through functionality is available for robots designed for collaborative applications. Using lead-through, you can move the robot manually to a desired position, as an alternative to jogging.

Using lead-through

**Note**

For robots newly ordered with option 3313-1 Lead-through Device and operating in RobotWare 7.6 or later, install the Collaborative Speed Control add-in with the option *[3313-1] Lead-through Device* selected first. See [Installing the Collaborative Speed Control add-in on page 96](#).

Checking lead-through status

The lead-through device is not configured by default. Users can perform the following procedure to check the configuration status:

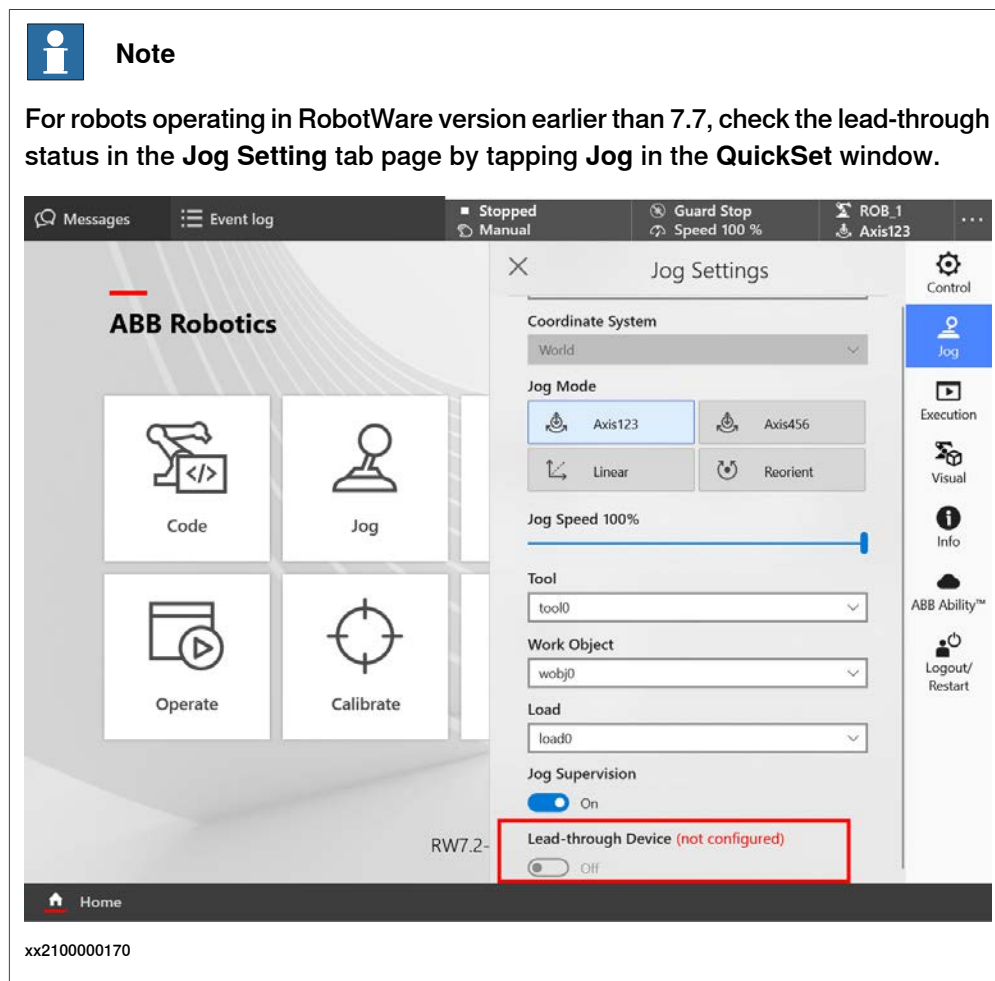
- 1 In the FlexPendant, on the status bar, tap the **QuickSet** button.
The **QuickSet** window is displayed.
- 2 Tap **Lead-through**.
The **Lead-through Settings** tab page is displayed.
- 3 Check the lead-through device setting.
The device is not configured by default and the **Enable Lead-through** switch is unavailable for use.

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.3 Lead-through

Continued



Configuring installation information of the lead-through device

Use the following procedure to configure the installation information of the lead-through device and get it ready for use:

- 1 Tap **Settings** on the home page of the FlexPendant.
- 2 Tap **Lead-through Device**.
- 3 For robots installing with the Collaborative Speed Control add-in in version 1.1 or later, choose the lead-through device type from the drop-down list.



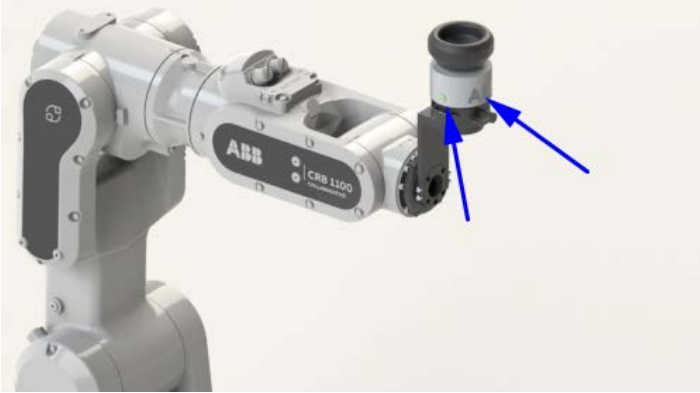

Tip

You can click **About the versions** and refer to the pictures to figure out your device type.

- 4 In the **Installation** page of the displayed window, select the installation position of the lead-through device.

Continues on next page

Four installation configurations are predefined, **Up**, **Right**, **Down** and **Left**. Observe your device and refer to the following table to make sure the actual device installation position is consistent with the selected configuration.



| Device type | Observe... |
|----------------|--|
| No-button type | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The ABB logo on the device is in the correct direction. The indicator on the lead-through is in the correct relative position with the lamp unit on the process hub. <p>The following figure takes the configuration Up as an example.</p>  <p>xx2100000173</p> <p>The device details are as follows.</p>  <p>xx2200000597</p> |

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.3 Lead-through

Continued

| Device type | Observe... |
|-----------------|--|
| Two-button type | <p>The indicator and locking knob on the lead-through are in the correct relative position with the lamp unit on the process hub. The following figure takes the configuration Up as an example.</p>  <p>xx2200000577</p> <p>The device details are as follows.</p>  <p>xx2200000598</p> |

- 5 If users want to define customized installation position, tap **Advanced installation**.
- 6 In the displayed window, set corresponding parameters according to actual requirements.
 - For robots operating in RobotWare version earlier than 7.7, the device offset and orientation are available to set.
 - For robots operating in RobotWare version 7.7 or later, the device offset, orientation, tool load mass and mass center are available to set.
- 7 Tap **Apply**.

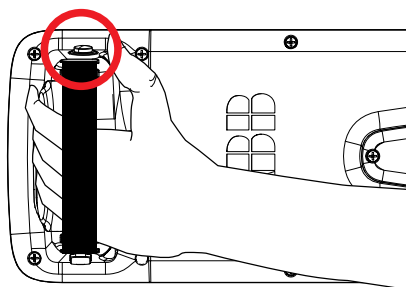
Enabling lead-through

Use the following procedure to enable lead-through:

- 1 Make sure the robot is in Manual mode.

Continues on next page

- 2 Enable lead-through in one of the following ways:
 - Press the thumb button on the FlexPendant.



xx2100000331

- On the start screen, tap **Jog** and select the **Lead-through** menu.
- In the **QuickSet** menu, select the **Lead-through** tab.



Note

If the robot is in motors off state, set the controller to Motors On state first by pressing the three-position enabling device or changing the state in the **Control Panel** tab page.



Note

For robots operating in RobotWare version earlier than 7.7, the lead-through device can only be enabled from the **Jog Setting** tab page by tapping **Jog** in the **QuickSet** window.

- 3 In the **Lead-through Mode** section select a mode.
- 4 If required, in the **Lead-through lock** section use the lock button next to a axis to lock it.
- 5 Hold the handle of the lead-through device and gently move the robot to the desired position.

The robot moves to the selected position. If the **Lead-through lock** option is selected, the robot moves in such a way that the movement is restricted in the locked direction.



Note

You can feel if an axis reaches its end position. Do not try to force the axis beyond this position.

- 6 If desired, save the position.

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.3 Lead-through

Continued



Note

The speed at which the robot moves when using the Lead-through functionality is managed using the horizontal scroll bar available in the **Lead-through Speed** section.

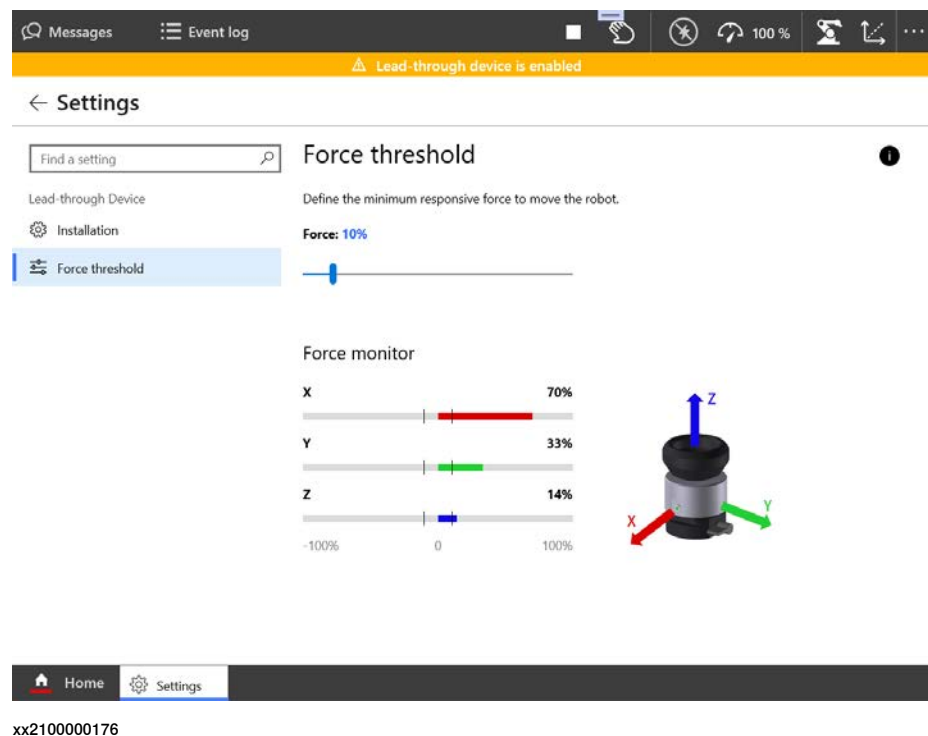
Setting force threshold

In actual applications, some strong background noises, for example, EMC and radiation, may be treated as a force by the lead-through device, which may result in an unexpected movement of the robot. To reduce such affections, users are allowed to set a force threshold. All the forces that are lower than the threshold will be filtered out.

Use the following procedure to set the force threshold:

- 1 Tap **Settings** on the home page of the FlexPendant.
- 2 Tap **Lead-through Device**.
- 3 Tap **Force threshold** on the left pane.
- 4 In the displayed window, drag the **Force** slider to define a response force to move the robot.

The default force threshold is 10%.



- 5 Observe the forces applied on the lead-through device in real time in the **Force monitor** area.

Continues on next page

Configuring button functions



Note

The procedure is valid only for two-button type lead-through device.

The button-type lead-through device provides two buttons, flat and raised, for users to configure specific functions according to application requirements. The button function configuration is only available to robots:

- operating in RobotWare version 7.6.1 or later, and,
- installing with the Collaborative Speed Control add-in in version 1.1 or later

Use the following procedure to configure the button functions:

- 1 Tap **Settings** on the home page of the FlexPendant.
- 2 Tap **Lead-through Device**.
- 3 Tap **Configurable buttons** on the left pane.
- 4 Select desired function from the drop-down list for the required button.
 - **Add a move location:** a **Move** block will be added to Wizard app. This is the default configuration for the flat button.
 - **Linear / Reorient:** the lead-through mode will be changed between linear and reorient. This is the default configuration for the raised button.
 - **Lock Z:** the movement along the Z direction will be locked.
 - **Lock XY:** the movement along the X and Y directions will be locked.

After selection, configured action takes effect when pressing the button.

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.4.1 The SafeMove configurator app on FlexPendant

3.7.4 SafeMove

3.7.4.1 The SafeMove configurator app on FlexPendant

Introduction

The application **SafeMove** on the FlexPendant offers an intuitive way to visualize and configure a safety configuration for systems with the option *SafeMove Collaborative*. This includes stop functions and *Cyclic Brake Check*. To get started, see [Use cases on page 107](#).



Tip

Use the online user guide tool, included in the SafeMove configurator app, for help with the SafeMove configuration setup process.



Note

The SafeMove configurator app is available for the following robots:

- CRB 1100
- CRB 1300
- CRB 15000

The configuration follows the same principles as when using Visual SafeMove in RobotStudio but the functionality is not as extensive.

Overview of the user interface

The user interface consists of a configurator and a 3D model that visualizes the robot with the configured encapsulations and zones. The first time that the app is opened, a default factory setting is loaded. If a safety configuration is loaded, this will be shown.

- The tab **Robot Encapsulation** contains the configuration of the encapsulations of the robot itself.
- The tab **Tool Encapsulation** contains the configuration of the encapsulations of the tools.
- The tab **Tool Data** contains the configuration for the tools.
- The tab **Safe Zones** contains the configuration of the safe zones.
- The tab **Global Settings** contains the configuration for Cyclic Brake Check and supervision settings.
- The tab **Synchronization** contains functions for software synchronization.
- The **Context** menu (...) contains functionality for loading, saving, and viewing configurations, and to reset the configuration.

The functionality is described in detail in *Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove*.

Continues on next page

Prerequisites

- The option *SafeMove Collaborative* is required.
- To edit a configuration, the grant *Safety Services* is required. A user without this grant can view a configuration, but not modify, write it to the controller, or apply it to the controller.

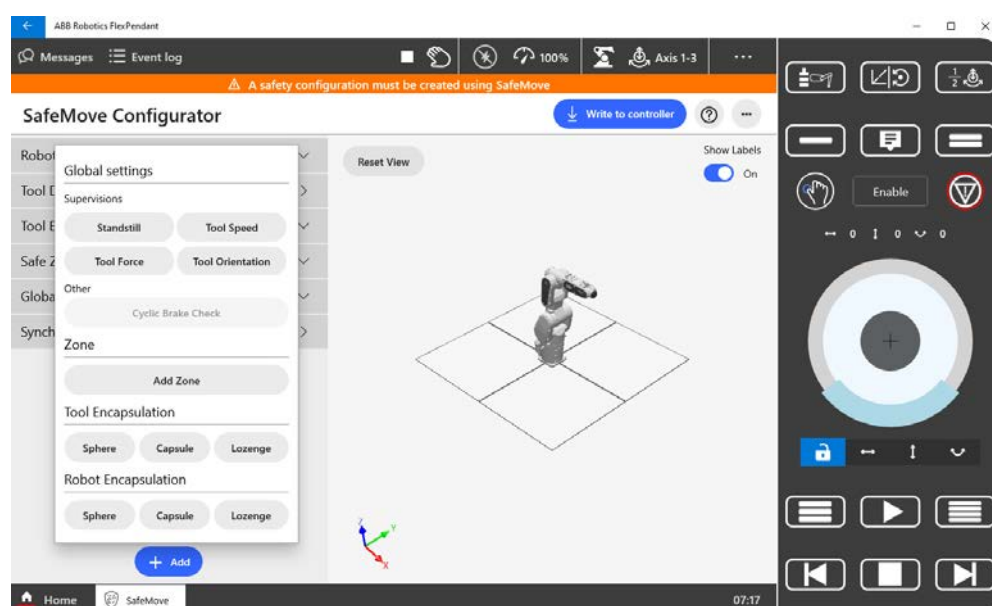
Template configurations

The template configuration is adapted for the specific manipulator, and typically contains one or two encapsulations of the arm, one encapsulation of the wrist (intended for the tool), one or two safe zones, and a Cyclic Brake Check setting. This configuration is typically a good start for a generic application with a smaller tool.

The factory setting is an empty safety configuration. A loaded configuration can be removed and the system is then reset to the factory setting.

Encapsulations

The encapsulations are geometries that can be in the shape of a sphere, capsule, or lozenge. A sphere or capsule encapsulation can be modified in dimension and position. A lozenge capsule can be modified in dimension, position, and rotation.



xx2200000445



Note

For the CRB 1100 and CRB 1300, the SafeMove configurator app offers the same functionality. The screenshots used in the manual can therefore show either one of the robots.

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

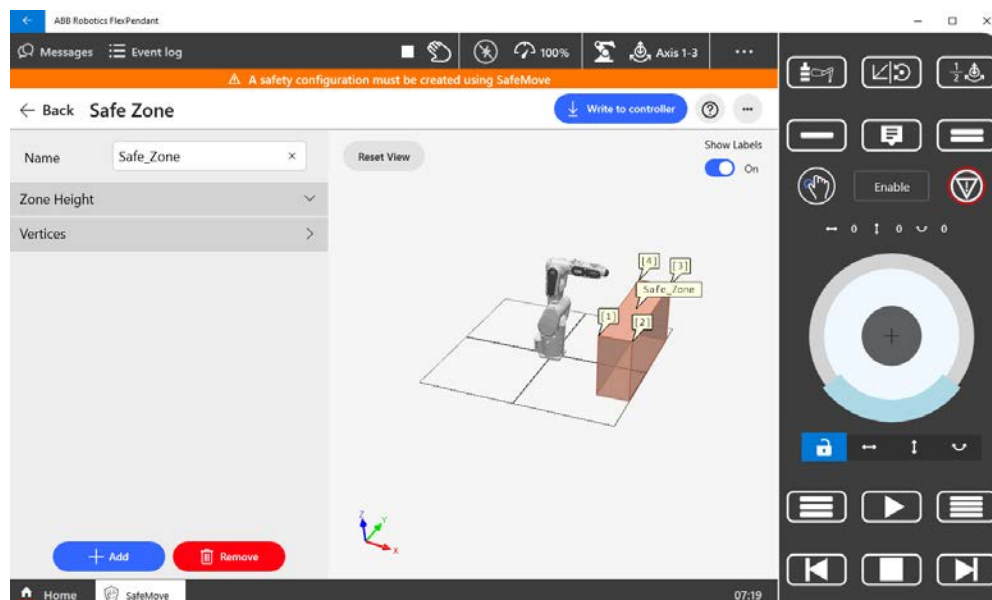
3.7.4.1 The SafeMove configurator app on FlexPendant

Continued

Safe zones

The default safe zone is a rectangular box with four vertices. The vertices defines the shape of the safe zone, and the position in space. More vertices can be added to define the safe zone. The minimum number of vertices is 4, and the maximum is 24.

Each vertex can be edited in x and y values.



xx2200000446

Each vertex is numbered, from 1 and up. When a new vertex is added between two existing vertices the vertex numbers will be automatically adjusted so that they come in order. For example, if a new vertex is added between vertices 2 and 3, the vertex with index 3 will change to 4 and the new vertex will be indexed 3.

Supervision functions

The global supervision functions are not connected to a specific safe zone or safe range. They can be added, modified, and deactivated.

For more information about the global supervision functions, see *Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove*.

Synchronization

The **Synchronization** tab is used to manually set the current joint positions for the robot.

For more information about synchronization, see *Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove*.

Recommended working procedure

Use this procedure when configuring SafeMove in the configurator app on FlexPendant.

- 1 Log in as a user with safety user grants.
- 2 Start the SafeMove configurator app.

Continues on next page

- 3 Load a template configuration or an existing configuration from the **Context** menu (...).
- 4 Configure encapsulations.
- 5 Configure zones and the supervision functions.
- 6 Load the configuration to the safety controller.
The robot controller is automatically restarted in this step.
- 7 Validate the configuration.
- 8 Set the safety configuration to validated and lock it.

For more details, see [Use cases on page 107](#).

For functionality not supported in the SafeMove configurator app, use Visual SafeMove in RobotStudio.

Use cases

Starting the SafeMove configurator app

The SafeMove configurator app is available on the home screen of the FlexPendant for systems with the option *SafeMove Collaborative*. If the app is not shown, then review the system settings in RobotStudio Installation Manager and add the option.

The first time that the app is opened, a default factory setting is loaded. This contains only the manipulator with *Cyclic Brake Check* activated. There are no encapsulations, safe zones, or tool data defined.

The factory setting can always be resumed, if needed.

To continue and create a safety configuration, see [Use the template configuration on page 107](#).

Use the template configuration

Use the following procedure to load and apply the template configuration to the robot controller.

- 1 Select **Enable Edit Mode** to edit the safety configuration.

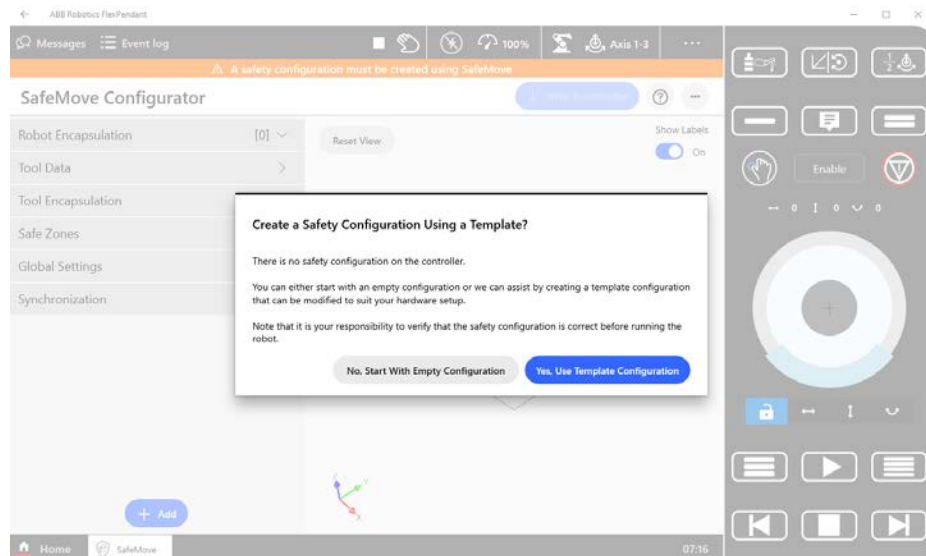
Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.4.1 The SafeMove configurator app on FlexPendant

Continued

2 Select Template configuration.



xx2200000447

- 3 Review that the template configuration is suitable for the intended application. If modifications are needed, see [Modify a configuration on page 108](#).



Note

A SafeMove configuration must always be validated to verify that the desired safety is achieved. If no validation is performed, or the validation is inadequate, the configuration cannot be relied on for personal safety.

- 4 If the template configuration is suitable, select **Write to controller**.
The safety report is presented on the screen.
- 5 Save the safety report. Print out and sign this safety report.
See [ABB Safety Configuration Report on page 113](#). More information about the safety report and how to validate is described in *Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove*.
- 6 Select **Apply to controller** to proceed.
The controller is automatically restarted when applying the configuration.

Modify a configuration

Use the following procedure to modify a loaded configuration and apply it to the robot controller.

- 1 Select **Enable Edit Mode** to edit the safety configuration.
- 2 If no configuration is loaded, load an empty configuration or a template configuration.
- 3 To add or modify an encapsulation, tap **Add** and select a geometry for **Robot Encapsulation** or **Tool Encapsulation**.
To modify the encapsulation, select it and modify the attributes.
- 4 To add or modify a zone, tap **Add** and **Add Zone**.

Continues on next page

Select the safe zone and modify the attributes. See [Modify a safe zone on page 109](#).

- 5 To add or modify a global setting, tap **Add** and select which supervision to modify.

- 6 When the configuration is done, select **Write to controller**.

The safety report is presented on the screen.



Note

A SafeMove configuration must always be validated to verify that the desired safety is achieved. If no validation is performed, or the validation is inadequate, the configuration cannot be relied on for personal safety.

- 7 Save the safety report. Print out and sign this safety report.

The safety report and how to validate is described in detail in *Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove*.

- 8 Apply the configuration to the controller.

The controller is automatically restarted when applying the configuration.

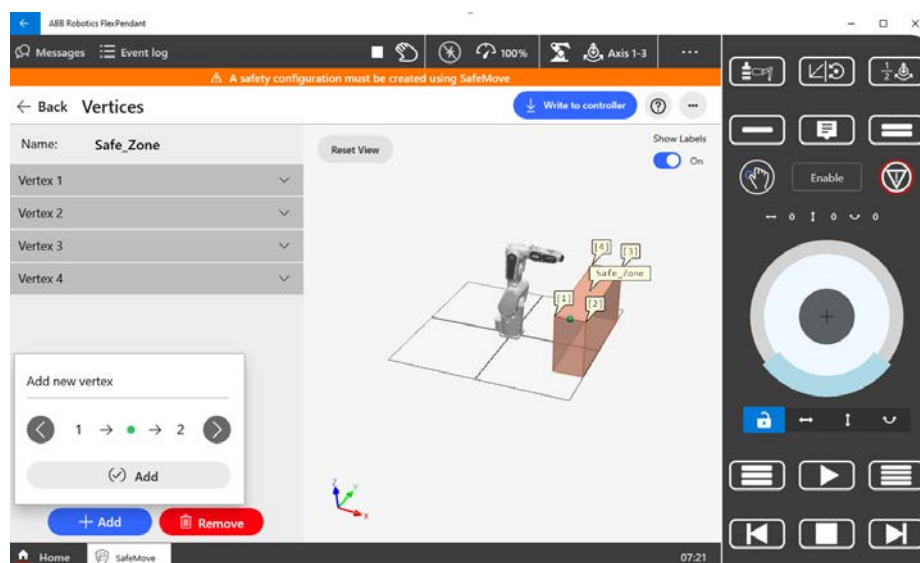
Modify a safe zone

Use the following procedure to modify a safe zone.

- 1 Add a new safe zone or select an existing safe zone.
- 2 Tap **Safe Zones** to open the attributes.
- 3 Add, modify, or remove vertices as needed to create the desired shape of the safe zone.

The green dot in the 3D visualization shows where the new vertex is located. Use the arrows to change the position (index).

Tap the grey **Add** button to place the vertex.



xx2200000448

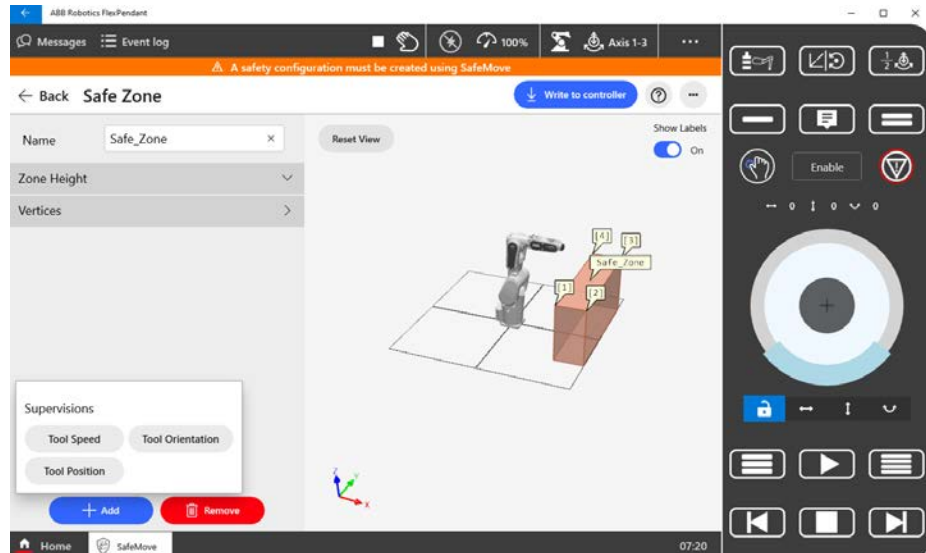
Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.4.1 The SafeMove configurator app on FlexPendant

Continued

- 4 To add a supervision to a safe zone, tap to select the safe zone in the 3D view, then tap **Add**.
- 5 Select a supervision function or guide.



xx2200000449

- 6 For supervision functions, select stop category, signal, and any other available setting applicable for the function.



Tip

The functionality is described in detail in *Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove*.

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

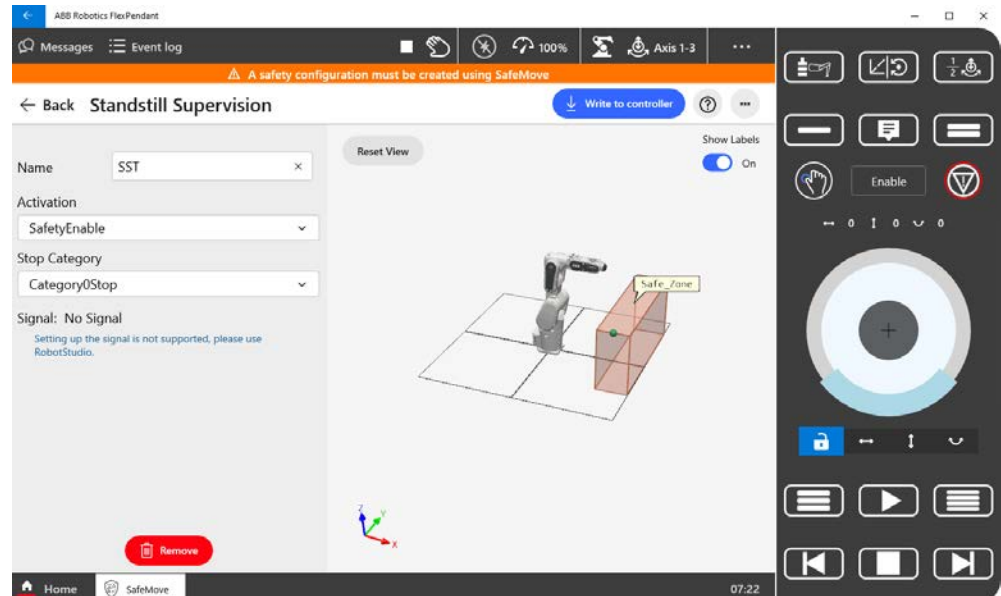
3.7.4.1 The SafeMove configurator app on FlexPendant

Continued

Modify the Standstill Supervision settings

The Standstill Supervision functionality is not active by default. It can be added, modified, and deactivated.

The CRB 1100 has support for both category 0 stop and category 1 stop.



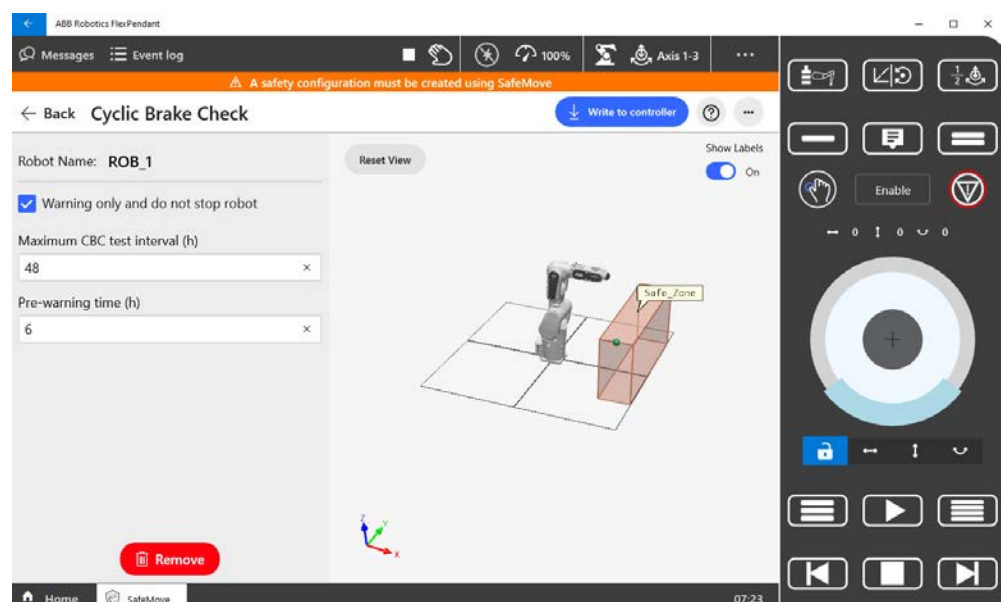
xx2200000450

Modify the global supervision settings

The global supervision functions are not connected to a specific safe zone or safe range. They can be added, modified, and deactivated.

Modify the Cyclic Brake Check settings

The Cyclic Brake Check functionality is active by default. It can be modified and deactivated.



xx2200000451

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.4.1 The SafeMove configurator app on FlexPendant

Continued

Viewing the configuration report

The configuration report is available both on the FlexPendant and on the controller. It can be viewed from the **Context** menu.

Loading and exporting a safety configuration

An existing safety configuration on the FlexPendant can be exported from the **Context** menu, **Save Configuration To File**. It is also possible to load a safety configuration from a file.

Validate the safety configuration



DANGER

A SafeMove configuration must always be validated to verify that the desired safety is achieved. If no validation is performed, or the validation is inadequate, the configuration cannot be relied on for personal safety.

Each new or modified safety configuration must be validated before running in production. The validation should verify that the following is configured correctly:

- All I/O settings and signals used for safety interlocking including connected functionality
- All Stop configuration functions
- All safety zones with connected supervision functions and signals used for safety interlocking
- All global supervision functions
- All tools with corresponding supervision functions



Note

Depending on the combination of functions, the validation procedures have to be modified for the specific configuration.

A more detailed description of validation of the safety configuration is found in *Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove*.

After safety configuration is validated, it must be set to validated and locked in the system.

Preparations before validation

Do the following checks before you start the validation procedure:

- 1 Carry out the synchronization procedure.
- 2 If configured, run the service routine for the function Cyclic Break Check.
- 3 Turn off the *SafeMove Assistant* functionality, with the system parameter *Disable SafeMove Assistant*.
- 4 Turn off collision detection during validation of any tool force supervision
- 5 Start the validation procedure.

If using protected groups in the safety configuration, only the modified parts must be validated.

Continues on next page

ABB Safety Configuration Report

The validation of each function should be documented in the safety report by signature of the validator.

The safety configuration report lists all parameters that are set for the installation. The report also includes a visual representation of the installation, a floor plan. This shows the robot and safety zones as seen from above.

The configuration report includes the checksum (multiple checksums if using protected groups in the safety configuration). The checksum can also be read using the RAPID function `SafetyControllerGetChecksum` or `SafetyControllerGetGroupChecksum`.

Setting the configuration to validated

When the safety technician has validated the configuration and signed the safety report, the status of the configuration shall be changed to **Validated** on the FlexPendant.

- 1 Log in as a user with the grant **Safety Services**.
- 2 In the **Settings** app, select the **Safety Controller**, and then **Configuration**.
- 3 Select the check box **Validated**.

Setting the configuration to locked

When the responsible safety user has approved the validation of the configuration, the status of the configuration should be changed to **Locked** on the FlexPendant. Running the robot in auto mode with the configuration unlocked will result in a warning message.

- 1 Log in as a user with the grant **Lock Safety Controller Configuration**.
- 2 In the **Settings** app, select the **Safety Controller**, and then **Configuration**.
- 3 Select the check box **Locked**.

Concluding steps

After the validation is concluded, turn on the the *SafeMove Assistant* functionality, with the system parameter *Disable SafeMove Assistant*.

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.4.2 Configuration of SafeMove using Visual SafeMove in RobotStudio

3.7.4.2 Configuration of SafeMove using Visual SafeMove in RobotStudio

General

This section describes SafeMove configuration using Visual SafeMove for scenarios with PROFI-safe-based laser scanners connected and OmniCore controller acting as master.

What is Visual SafeMove

Visual SafeMove is the configuration tool for SafeMove and the functional safety options. The tool is completely integrated into the RobotStudio user interface and takes full advantage of the user interface elements such as tabs, browsers, and 3D graphics.

Visual SafeMove is enabled for robots with the safety module. It offers an intuitive way to visualize and configure safety zones. Zones can be adjusted by direct manipulation in the 3D window. Users with previous experience from SafeMove will recognize the same terminology used as before.

Visual SafeMove is used to configure safety stops. For this purpose, the SafeMove options are not required, that is, this functionality is available for all robots. More information about the configuration is available in the product manual for the robot controller.

Visual SafeMove works both with the real controller and the virtual controller. For a virtual controller, a RobotStudio station should be used, which allows zones to be generated automatically. When not running a RobotStudio station, **Online Monitor** is used to visualize the robot.

Starting Visual SafeMove

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | Start RobotStudio with a virtual controller (with or without a station) or connect a real controller. <ul style="list-style-type: none">The user account logging in the controller must be granted with the Safety Services permission.The write access to the controller is also requested |
| 2 | In the Controller tab, click Online Monitor . (Not needed when running a RobotStudio station.) |
| 3 | In the Controller tab, click Safety , then select Visual SafeMove . |

Configuring SafeMove

Configuring pre logic

- On the **Visual SafeMove** tab page, click **Safe IO Configurator** in the **Configuration** group.
- Click **Pre Logic** view in the **Safe IO Configuration** page.
- Click **New expression** and create the following expressions.
 - ISH_Activate_SST
 - ISH_Activate_TSP
 - ISH_Delay_SST

Continues on next page

- ISH_Delay_TSP
- ISH_EnableDelay_Protecting
- ISH_EnableDelay_Warning
- ISH_Combination_Protecting
- ISH_Combination_Waning

In which, the expressions *ISH_Combination_Protecting* and *ISH_Combination_Waning* are required only when two PROFIsafe-based laser scanners are connected.

- 4 At the bottom of the **Safe IO Configuration** page, type the corresponding logical expression in the text box for each expression and click **Create signals**.

| Expression | Logic |
|------------------|---|
| ISH_Activate_SST | Valid for scenarios with 1 PROFIsafe-based laser scanner connected ISH_Supervise_SST := ((NOT EDGE((NOT ProtectingArea1),ISH_Delayed_SST)) OR (NOT ISH_Enabler_Delay_SST)) |
| | Valid for scenarios with 2 PROFIsafe-based laser scanners connected ISH_Supervise_SST := ((NOT EDGE((NOT ProtectingAreaSM),ISH_Delayed_SST)) OR (NOT ISH_Enabler_Delay_SST)) |
| ISH_Activate_TSP | Valid for scenarios with 1 PROFIsafe-based laser scanner connected ISH_Supervise_TSP := ((NOT EDGE((NOT WarningArea1),ISH_Delayed_TSP)) OR (NOT ISH_Enabler_Delay_TSP)) |
| | Valid for scenarios with 2 PROFIsafe-based laser scanners connected ISH_Supervise_TSP := ((NOT EDGE((NOT WarningAreaSM),ISH_Delayed_TSP)) OR (NOT ISH_Enabler_Delay_TSP)) |
| ISH_Delay_SST | Valid for scenarios with 1 PROFIsafe-based laser scanner connected DELAY(ISH_Enabler_Delay_SST,ProtectingArea1,(ISH_AtUser_Period_ms_Until_SST / ISH_SMctrl_Frequency),ISH_Count-Delay_SST,ISH_Delayed_SST) |
| | Valid for scenarios with 2 PROFIsafe-based laser scanners connected DELAY(ISH_Enabler_Delay_SST,ProtectingAreaSM,(ISH_AtUser_Period_ms_Until_SST / ISH_SMctrl_Frequency),ISH_Count-Delay_SST,ISH_Delayed_SST) |

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.4.2 Configuration of SafeMove using Visual SafeMove in RobotStudio

Continued

| Expression | Logic |
|--|--|
| ISH_Delay_TSP | Valid for scenarios with 1 PROFIsafe-based laser scanner connected DELAY(ISH_Enabler_Delay_TSP,WarningArea1,(ISH_AtUser_Period_ms_Until_TSP / ISH_SMctrl_Frequency),ISH_Count-Delay_TSP,ISH_Delayed_TSP) Valid for scenarios with 2 PROFIsafe-based laser scanners connected DELAY(ISH_Enabler_Delay_TSP,WarningAreaSM,(ISH_AtUser_Period_ms_Until_TSP / ISH_SMctrl_Frequency),ISH_Count-Delay_TSP,ISH_Delayed_TSP) |
| ISH_EnableDelay_Protecting ⁱ | ISH_Enabler_Delay_SST := (NOT ISH_User-MODE_bNot_IntermitCollab) |
| ISH_EnableDelay_Warning ⁱ | ISH_Enabler_Delay_TSP := ((NOT ISH_User-MODE_bNot_Cooperation) OR (NOT ISH_User-MODE_bNot_IntermitCollab)) |
| ISH_Combination_Protecting ⁱⁱ | ProtectingAreaSM := (ProtectingArea1 AND ProtectingArea2) |
| ISH_Combination_Warning ⁱⁱ | WarningAreaSM := (WarningArea1 AND WarningArea2) |

ⁱ Required no matter one or two PROFIsafe-based laser scanners are connected.

ⁱⁱ Required only when two PROFIsafe-based laser scanners are connected.

- Click **Signals** view in the **Safe IO Configuration** page and then click **Global signals** to expand the signal list.
- Click on the **Create new signal** row and create the following signals.
 - ISH_TFO_Active
 - ISH_TSP_Active
 - ISH_TSP_Viol
 - ISH_SST_Active
 - ISH_SST_Viol
- Change the default value of following signals.

| Signal | Default value |
|--------------------------------|---------------|
| ISH_AtUser_Period_ms_Until_SST | 650 |
| ISH_AtUser_Period_ms_Until_TSP | 550 |
| ISH_SMctrl_Frequency | 4 |
| ISH_UserMODE_bNot_Cooperation | 1 |

Creating encapsulation

- In the **Visual SafeMove** browser on the left pane of the window, select the robot (ROB_1) and click **Capsule** in the **Visual SafeMove** ribbon tab.
- Set capsule properties for the robot.

| Parameter | Value |
|-------------|-------|
| Radius (mm) | 150 |
| Length (mm) | 650 |

Continues on next page

| Parameter | | Value |
|---------------------------------|---------|-------|
| Start (Flange coordinates) (mm) | X value | 0 |
| | Y value | 0 |
| | Z value | 0 |
| End (Flange coordinates) (mm) | X value | 650 |
| | Y value | 0 |
| | Z value | 0 |

- 3 In the **Visual SafeMove** browser, select the tool and click **Capsule** in the **Visual SafeMove** ribbon tab.
- 4 Set capsule properties for the tool.

| Parameter | | Value |
|---------------------------------|---------|-------|
| Radius (mm) | | 150 |
| Length (mm) | | 300 |
| Start (Flange coordinates) (mm) | X value | 0 |
| | Y value | 0 |
| | Z value | 0 |
| End (Flange coordinates) (mm) | X value | 0 |
| | Y value | 300 |
| | Z value | 300 |

Configuring Cyclic Brake Check

- 1 In the **Visual SafeMove** ribbon tab, click **Cyclic Brake Check**.
- 2 Select the **Warning only, no stop** check box, enable CBC for all the joints, and set other cyclic brake check properties.

| Parameter | Value |
|---------------------------|-------|
| Max CRC test interval (h) | 48 |
| Pre warning time (h) | 6 |
| Standstill tolerance | 2 |
| Supervision threshold | 0.02 |

Configuring the supervision functions

- 1 In the **Visual SafeMove** ribbon tab, choose **Create Safe Zone** from the **Safe Zone** list.
- 2 Set zone properties.

| Parameter | | Value |
|---------------------------------|--------------|------------|
| Tool Speed Supervision Priority | | BASE |
| Reference | | Task frame |
| Bottom, Top (mm) | Bottom value | 0.000 |
| | Top value | 2100.000 |

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.4.2 Configuration of SafeMove using Visual SafeMove in RobotStudio

Continued

| Parameter | | Value |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|--------------|
| Vertices X, Y (mm) | X and Y values for vertices 1 | -1400, -1400 |
| | X and Y values for vertices 2 | 1400, -1400 |
| | X and Y values for vertices 3 | 1400, 1400 |
| | X and Y values for vertices 4 | -1400, 1400 |

- 3 Click **Tool Position Supervision** in the **Modify** ribbon tab and set the properties.

| Parameter | | Value |
|------------------------|---------------|--|
| Activation | | PermanentlyActive |
| Function active status | | No signal |
| Violation action | Stop category | Category1Stop |
| | Signal | No signal |
| Settings | | Checked the Include upper arm geometry and Allow inside check boxes. |

- 4 In the **Visual SafeMove** browser, right-click **Tool Speed Supervisions** and choose **Create Global Tool Speed Supervision**.

| Parameter | | Value |
|------------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| Activation | | ISH_Supervise_TSP |
| Function active status | | ISH_TSP_Active |
| Violation action | Stop category | Category1Stop |
| | Signal | ISH_TSP_Viol |
| Settings | Max speed (mm/s) | 250.000 |
| | Min speed (mm/s) | Leave blank |

- 5 In the **Visual SafeMove** browser, right-click **Stand Still Supervisions** and choose **Create Global Stand Still Supervision**.

| Parameter | | Value |
|------------------------|---------------|---|
| Activation | | ISH_Supervise_SST |
| Function active status | | ISH_SST_Active |
| Violation action | Stop category | Category0Stop |
| | Signal | ISH_SST_Viol |
| Tolerances | | Enabled for all joints and remain default tolerance values. |

Uploading the settings to the controller

- 1 In the **Visual SafeMove** ribbon tab, click **Controller** in the **Configuration** group.
- 2 Click **Write to controller**.

The configurations are uploaded to the controller after the controller restarts.

3.7.5 Speed control

3.7.5.1 Configuration of one PROFINET-base laser scanner (RobotWare 7.5 or earlier)

Preparing the robot system

Required options for system setup

When setting up the system using **Installation Manager** in RobotStudio, select the options *[3020-2] PROFINET Device*, *[3023-2] PROFIsafe Device* and *[3043-3] SafeMove Collaborative*, and the correct robot variant. The option *Drive System IRB Small Robot* is selected automatically after the robot type is determined.

Supported parameters for connections to scanner and PLC

Both the laser scanner and the PLC uses a PC-based software tool to configure the connection parameters that are used to connect to the OmniCore system. The supported parameters of the OmniCore system are predefined in the configuration file which could be loaded to after the Collaborative Speed Control add-in is installed, see [Information about Collaborative Speed Control add-in on page 96](#). The I/O configuration can be seen using I/O Engineering Tool in RobotStudio.

The following list shows the configuration parameters. They need to be correctly configured in the software tools to enable communication between the scanner, PLC, and OmniCore system.

- After the robot system is set up, the default IP address of the WAN port is automatically configured as 192.168.10.10/24. Make sure the scanner and PLC are also configured in the 192.168.10.XXX segment.
- In RobotStudio, open the configuration editor: Controller > Configuration > I/O Engineering Tool, and get the:
 - PROFIsafe parameter values

| Device slot | Parameter | Value |
|-------------|---------------------|-------|
| SDO | Source address | 2 |
| SDO | Destination address | 3 |
| SDI | Source address | 4 |
| SDI | Destination address | 5 |

- device mapping information

| Signal name | Device mapping (default) | Category | Device | Device slot |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|-----------|-------------------|-------------|
| ProtectingArea | 64 | ProfiSafe | OmniCore_Internal | SDI |
| WarningArea | 65 | ProfiSafe | OmniCore_Internal | SDI |
| ProtectingAreaSST | 66 | ProfiSafe | OmniCore_Internal | SDI |
| WarningAreaTSP | 67 | ProfiSafe | OmniCore_Internal | SDI |
| SafetyCommunicationEnable | 68 | ProfiSafe | OmniCore_Internal | SDI |

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.5.1 Configuration of one PROFINET-base laser scanner (RobotWare 7.5 or earlier)

Continued

- The PROFINET device name of the controller must be set to *omnicoreprofisafe*.



Tip

Previous device mapping information is based on the default setting that is configured with 8 byte DI, 8 byte DO, 8 byte SDI and 8 byte SDO. The LED control module needs to occupy 5 bits in the 8 byte SDI for the signals.

If the 8 byte DI is insufficient for the actual application, users can delete the default DI device slot and add a larger one, then, reallocate the device mapping addresses to the five signals. The signal names and corresponding functions must be the same as that defined in the default setting. This is to make sure that the LED control module can still work properly.

Take the expansion to 256 byte DI and 256 byte DO as an example. If the user expands both DI and DO to 256 byte, the possible device mapping addresses for the ProtectingArea, WarningArea, ProtectingAreaSST, WarningAreaTSP and SafetyCommunicationEnable signals in 8 byte SDI device slot should be 2048, 2049, 2050, 2051 and 2052, respectively.

GSD file

The GSD file, *GSDML-V2.xx-ABB-Robotics-OmniCore-YYYYMMDD.xml*, can be obtained from the RobotStudio or the OmniCore controller.

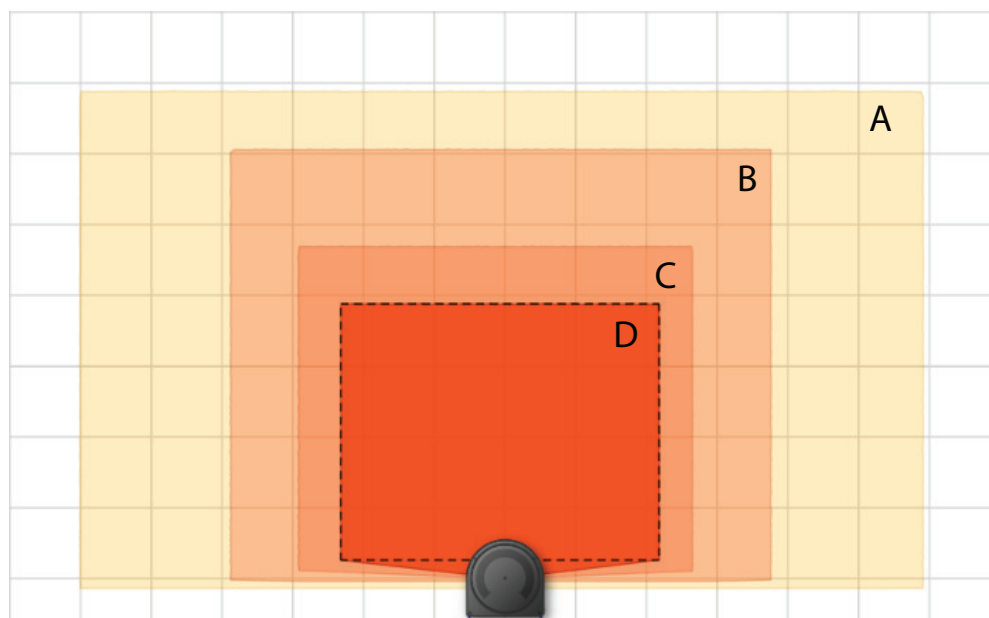
- **In the RobotWare installation folder in RobotStudio:**
...\\DistributionPackages\\ABB.RobotWare-x.x.x-xxx\\RobotPackages\\RobotControl_x.x.xxx\\utility\\service\\GSDML\\
- **On the OmniCore Controller:**
...\\products\\RobotControl_x.x.x\\utility\\service\\GSDML\\

Continues on next page

Configuring the laser scanner

Protection fields

Four protection fields are defined to provide a progressive safety protection. The following figure illustrates the field ranges.



xx2100000165

| | Field | Device mapping (default) | Lamp color | Description |
|---|----------------|--------------------------|------------|---|
| A | WarningArea | 65 | Yellow | The warning area field defines the largest range, but it shall be within the scanning range of the scanner. Within in this field range, the lamp unit on the process hub lights up yellow, and the robot movement speed reduces to a lower speed that is set by the user. |
| B | WarningAreaTSP | 67 | Yellow | Within in this field range, the lamp unit still lights up yellow, but Tool Speed Supervision (TSP) is enabled. If the robot moves in the speed that is out of the defined range for TSP, the motor is off. For details about TSP, see <i>Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove</i> . |
| C | ProtectingArea | 64 | Red | Within this field range, the lamp unit turns to red and the robot movement speed is reduced to 0. The robot stands still. |

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.5.1 Configuration of one PROFINET-base laser scanner (RobotWare 7.5 or earlier)

Continued

| | Field | Device mapping (default) | Lamp color | Description |
|---|-------------------|--------------------------|------------|--|
| D | ProtectingAreaSST | 66 | Red | <p>The protecting stop SST field defines the smallest range. However, this range shall be larger than the minimum stopping distance on the basis of the response time for a small scanning cycle time. For details about how to calculate the range, see the user manual from the vendor. For details about the stopping distance and response time, see <i>Product specification - Robot stopping distances according to ISO 10218-1</i>.</p> <p>Within this field range, the lamp unit still lights up red, but Stand Still Supervision (SST) is enabled. If the robot axes move exceeding the maximum range setting in SST, the motor is off.</p> <p>For details about SST, see <i>Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove</i>.</p> |

Configuration procedure

Before starting the configuration, obtain the *microScan 3 Core - PROFINET GSDML* file and the software tool *Safety Designer®* from SICK's website first. Make sure both the file and the software tool are in the latest versions.

Detailed procedures about how to configure the laser scanner are detailed in *SICK microScan3 Siemens PLC integration instruction manual - TIA Portal* and *SICK microScan3 Siemens PLC integration instruction manual - SIMATIC Step 7*.

Following described roughly:

- 1 Connect the laser scanner to the PLC and controller.
See the physical connection in [Connecting the laser scanner\(s\) on page 79](#).
- 2 Open configuration software tool *Safety Designer®*.
- 3 Set IP address and PROFINET name in **Configuration > Addressing**.
 - The scanner IP address must be in the same network segment with the PLC and controller, that is, 192.168.10.XXX.
 - The PROFINET name must be the same in the PLC configuration.
- 4 Set **F-destination address** to 12 in **PROFINET** area in **Configuration > Protocol Settings**.
- 5 Define the four protection fields in **Configuration > Fields**.
- 6 Define the source for input signals of the scanner and configure basic settings for the inputs and outputs in **Configuration > Inputs and outputs**.
The **Use one input source** checkbox must be selected and choose **Rx: Process image (6 Bytes)** from the drop-down list.
- 7 Create monitoring cases and assign the fields that are to be monitored to each monitoring cases in **Configuration > Monitoring cases**.

Continues on next page

Configuring the PLC

The safety PLC connecting to the laser scanner and controller must support PROFIsafe and can act as a master. Before configuration, make sure the PLC is loaded with the GSD files of the controller and laser scanner.

Detailed procedures about how to add an external device to the PLC and how to configure detailed settings, see the user manual from the vendor. Following lists the necessary settings during PLC configuration:

- Add the scanner to the PLC by adding a **mS3 6Byte In/Out PROFIsafe V2.6.1** module.

The parameters `f_dest_address` and `f_source_address` are set to 12 and 1, respectively.

- Add the controller to the PLC by adding the **DI 8 bytes, DO 8 bytes, SDI 8 bytes and SDO 8 bytes** modules.

The parameters `f_dest_address` and `f_source_address` for the SDI are set to 3 and 2, respectively, and for the SDO are set to 5 and 4, respectively.

- Make sure the address for the SDO signal is the first address of **SDO 8 bytes** slot.
- Create variables.

| Name | Type | Example address ⁱ |
|---------------------------|------|------------------------------|
| ProtectingTrigger | Bool | %I3.0 |
| WarningTrigger | Bool | %I4.1 |
| ProtectingSSTTrigger | Bool | %I3.2 |
| WarningTSPTTrigger | Bool | %I3.3 |
| ProtectingArea | Bool | %Q68.0 |
| WarningArea | Bool | %Q68.1 |
| ProtectingAreaSST | Bool | %Q68.2 |
| WarningAreaTSP | Bool | %Q68.3 |
| SafetyCommunicationEnable | Bool | %Q68.4 |
| ActivateScanner | Bool | %Q3.0 |

ⁱ %I3.X and %I4.X are the addresses of the laser scanner; %Q68.X is the address of the OmniCore controller.

%Q3.0 is for activating the monitoring cases of the laser scanner.

- Check the communication between the PLC and controller is well and activate the laser scanner; set up the communication between the laser scanner, PLC and OmniCore controller.

Configuring SafeMove

With RobotStudio

Basic steps for configuring SafeMove are as follows:

- 1 Make some initial preparations.
- 2 Configure system parameters.
- 3 Set the input and output size and name of the PROFINET internal device.

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.5.1 Configuration of one PROFINET-base laser scanner (RobotWare 7.5 or earlier)

Continued

For CRB 1100, required settings for communication between laser scanner, PLC and OmniCore controller are predefined in the configuration file.

4 Set up safety user grants.

Users must have access grants to lock safety controller configurations, safety services and software synchronization.

5 Configure robot properties.

6 Configure the synchronization position.

7 Configure the SafeMove tool definitions.

8 Configure safe I/O signals.



Note

For the first time configuring safe I/O signals using **Visual SafeMove**, make sure the **I/O Engineering Tool** is opened first. In this case, the configured safe I/O signals can be displayed in the **Visual SafeMove** window.

9 Configure zones and/or ranges.

10 Configure the supervision functions.

Tool Speed Supervision (TSP) and Stand Still Supervision (SST) must be configured.

11 Configure other functions.

12 Load the configuration to the safety controller.

13 Restart the robot controller.

Detailed configuration procedures are specified in *Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove*.

With FlexPendant

1 Log in the FlexPendant.

The user logging in must have access grants to lock safety controller configurations, safety services and software synchronization.

2 Tap **Settings** on the home page.

3 Tap **Safety Controller**.

4 Tap **Synchronization** in the left pane.

5 Jog the robot to match the **Actual Positions** values with the **Sync Positions** values. Make sure they are the same.

6 Tap **Synchronize**.

3.7.5.2 Configuration of one PROFINET-based laser scanner (RobotWare 7.6 or later and PLC acting as Master)

3.7.5.2 Configuration of one PROFINET-based laser scanner (RobotWare 7.6 or later and PLC acting as Master)

Preparing the robot system

Required options for system setup

When setting up the system using **Installation Manager** in RobotStudio, select the options *[3020-2] PROFINET Device*, *[3023-2] PROFINET Device*, *[3043-3] SafeMove Collaborative* and *[3051-1] Profisafe Package*, and the correct robot variant. The option *Drive System IRB Small Robot* is selected automatically after the robot type is determined.

Supported parameters for connections to scanner and PLC

Both the laser scanner and the PLC uses a PC-based software tool to configure the connection parameters that are used to connect to the OmniCore system. The supported parameters of the OmniCore system are predefined in the configuration file which could be loaded after the Collaborative Speed Control add-in is installed, see [Information about Collaborative Speed Control add-in on page 96](#). The I/O configuration can be seen using I/O Engineering Tool in RobotStudio.

The following list shows the configuration parameters. They need to be correctly configured in the software tools to enable communication between the scanner, PLC, and OmniCore system.

- After the robot system is set up, the default IP address of the WAN port is automatically configured as 192.168.10.10/24. Make sure the scanner and PLC are also configured in the 192.168.10.XXX segment.
- In RobotStudio, open the configuration editor: Controller > Configuration > I/O Engineering Tool, and get the:
 - PROFINET parameter values

| Device slot | Parameter | Value |
|-------------|---------------------|-------|
| SDI | Source address | 4 |
| SDI | Destination address | 5 |

- device mapping information

| Signal name | Device mapping (default) | Category | Device | Device slot |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|-----------|-------------------|-------------|
| ProtectingArea | 0 | ProfiSafe | OmniCore_Internal | SDI |
| WarningArea | 1 | ProfiSafe | OmniCore_Internal | SDI |
| SafetyCommunicationEnable | 2 | ProfiSafe | OmniCore_Internal | SDI |

- The PROFINET device name of the controller must be set to *omnicoreprofisafe*.

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.5.2 Configuration of one PROFI-safe-based laser scanner (RobotWare 7.6 or later and PLC acting as Master)

Continued

GSD file

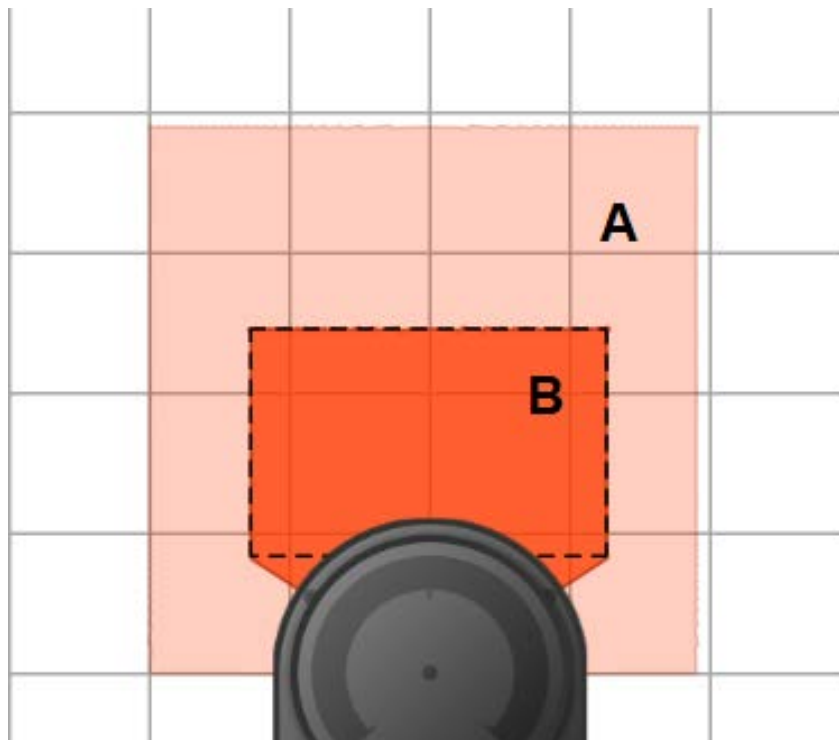
The GSD file, *GSDML-V2.xx-ABB-Robotics-OmniCore-YYYYMMDD.xml*, can be obtained from the RobotStudio or the OmniCore controller.

- **In the RobotWare installation folder in RobotStudio:**
...\\DistributionPackages\\ABB.RobotWare-x.x.x-xxx\\RobotPackages\\RobotControl_x.x.xxx\\utility\\service\\GSDML\\
- **On the OmniCore Controller:**
...\\products\\RobotControl_x.x.x\\utility\\service\\GSDML\\

Configuring the laser scanner

Protection fields

Two protection fields are defined to provide a progressive safety protection. The following figure illustrates the field ranges.



xx2200000301

| | Field | Device mapping (default) | Lamp color | Description |
|---|----------------|--------------------------|------------|--|
| A | WarningArea | 1 | Yellow | The warning area field defines the largest range, but it shall be within the scanning range of the scanner. Within in this field range, the lamp unit on the process hub lights up yellow, and the robot movement speed reduces to a lower speed that is set by the user. |
| B | ProtectingArea | 0 | Red | Within this field range, the lamp unit turns to red and the robot movement speed is reduced to 0. The robot stands still. |

Continues on next page

3.7.5.2 Configuration of one PROFIsafe-based laser scanner (RobotWare 7.6 or later and PLC acting as Master)

Continued

Configuration procedure

Before starting the configuration, obtain the *microScan 3 Core - PROFINET GSDML* file and the software tool *Safety Designer®* from SICK's website first. Make sure both the file and the software tool are in the latest versions.

Detailed procedures about how to configure the laser scanner are detailed in *SICK microScan3 Siemens PLC integration instruction manual - TIA Portal* and *SICK microScan3 Siemens PLC integration instruction manual - SIMATIC Step 7*.

Following described roughly:

- 1 Connect the laser scanner to the PLC and controller.
See the physical connection in [Connecting the laser scanner\(s\) on page 79](#).
- 2 Open configuration software tool *Safety Designer®*.
- 3 Set IP address and PROFINET name in **Configuration > Addressing**.
 - The scanner IP address must be in the same network segment with the PLC and controller, that is, 192.168.10.XXX.
 - The PROFINET name must be the same in the PLC configuration.
- 4 Set **F-destination address** to 12 in **PROFINET** area in **Configuration > Protocol Settings**.
- 5 Define the two protection fields in **Configuration > Fields**.
- 6 Define the source for input signals of the scanner and configure basic settings for the inputs and outputs in **Configuration > Inputs and outputs**.
The **Use one input source** checkbox must be selected and choose **Rx: Process image (6 Bytes)** from the drop-down list.
- 7 Create monitoring cases and assign the fields that are to be monitored to each monitoring cases in **Configuration > Monitoring cases**.

Configuring the PLC

The safety PLC connecting to the laser scanner and controller must support PROFIsafe and can act as a master. Before configuration, make sure the PLC is loaded with the GSD files of the controller and laser scanner.

Detailed procedures about how to add an external device to the PLC and how to configure detailed settings, see the user manual from the vendor. Following lists the necessary settings during PLC configuration:

- Add the scanner to the PLC by adding a **mS3 6Byte In/Out PROFIsafe V2.6.1** module.
The parameters **f_dest_address** and **f_source_address** are set to 12 and 1, respectively.
- Add the controller to the PLC by adding the **DI 8 bytes**, **DO 8 bytes**, **SDI 8 bytes** and **SDO 8 bytes** modules.
The parameters **f_dest_address** and **f_source_address** for the SDI are set to 3 and 2, respectively, and for the SDO are set to 5 and 4, respectively.
- Make sure the address for the SDO signal is the first address of **SDO 8 bytes** slot.

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.5.2 Configuration of one PROFIsafe-based laser scanner (RobotWare 7.6 or later and PLC acting as Master)

Continued

- Create variables.

| Name | Type | Example address ⁱ |
|---------------------------|------|------------------------------|
| ProtectingTrigger | Bool | %I3.0 |
| WarningTrigger | Bool | %I4.1 |
| ProtectingArea | Bool | %Q68.0 |
| WarningArea | Bool | %Q68.1 |
| SafetyCommunicationEnable | Bool | %Q68.2 |
| ActivateScanner | Bool | %Q3.0 |

ⁱ %I3.X and %I4.X are the addresses of the laser scanner; %Q68.X is the address of the OmniCore controller.
%Q3.0 is for activating the monitoring cases of the laser scanner.

- Check the communication between the PLC and controller is well and activate the laser scanner; set up the communication between the laser scanner, PLC and OmniCore controller.

Configuring SafeMove

To enable SafeMove, perform the following procedure:

- 1 Log in the FlexPendant.
Make sure the user logged in have access grants to lock safety controller configurations, safety services and software synchronization.
- 2 Tap **SafeMove** on the home page.
- 3 Tap **Load** in the pop-up message box to confirm loading of template SafeMove configuration files.
The controller restarts.
- 4 After the controller is restarted, tap **Settings** on the home page.
- 5 Tap **Safety Controller**.
- 6 Tap **Synchronization** in the left pane.
- 7 Jog the robot to match the **Actual Positions** values with the **Sync Positions** values.
Make sure the values are the same.
- 8 Tap **Synchronize**.

3.7.5.3 Configuration of two PROFINET-based laser scanners (RobotWare 7.6 or later and PLC acting as Master)

3.7.5.3 Configuration of two PROFINET-based laser scanners (RobotWare 7.6 or later and PLC acting as Master)

Preparing the robot system

Required options for system setup

When setting up the system using **Installation Manager** in RobotStudio, select the options *[3020-2] PROFINET Device*, *[3023-2] PROFINET Device*, *[3043-3] SafeMove Collaborative* and *[3051-3] Dual Profisafe Package*, and the correct robot variant. The option *Drive System IRB Small Robot* is selected automatically after the robot type is determined.

Supported parameters for connections to scanners and PLC

Both laser scanners and the PLC uses a PC-based software tool to configure the connection parameters that are used to connect to the OmniCore system. The supported parameters of the OmniCore system are predefined in the configuration file which could be loaded after the Collaborative Speed Control add-in is installed, see [Information about Collaborative Speed Control add-in on page 96](#). The I/O configuration can be seen using I/O Engineering Tool in RobotStudio.

The following list shows the configuration parameters. They need to be correctly configured in the software tools to enable communication between the scanners, PLC, and OmniCore system.

- After the robot system is set up, the default IP address of the WAN port is automatically configured as 192.168.10.10/24. Make sure the scanners and PLC are also configured in the 192.168.10.XXX segment.
- In RobotStudio, open the configuration editor: Controller > Configuration > I/O Engineering Tool, and get the:
 - PROFINET parameter values

| Device slot | Parameter | Value |
|-------------|---------------------|-------|
| SDI | Source address | 4 |
| SDI | Destination address | 5 |

- device mapping information

| Signal name | Device mapping (default) | Category | Device | Device slot |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|-----------|-------------------|-------------|
| ProtectingArea | 0 | ProfiSafe | OmniCore_Internal | SDI |
| WarningArea | 1 | ProfiSafe | OmniCore_Internal | SDI |
| SafetyCommunicationEnable | 2 | ProfiSafe | OmniCore_Internal | SDI |

- The PROFINET device name of the controller must be set to *omnicoreprofisafe*.

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.5.3 Configuration of two PROFI-safe-based laser scanners (RobotWare 7.6 or later and PLC acting as Master)

Continued

GSD file

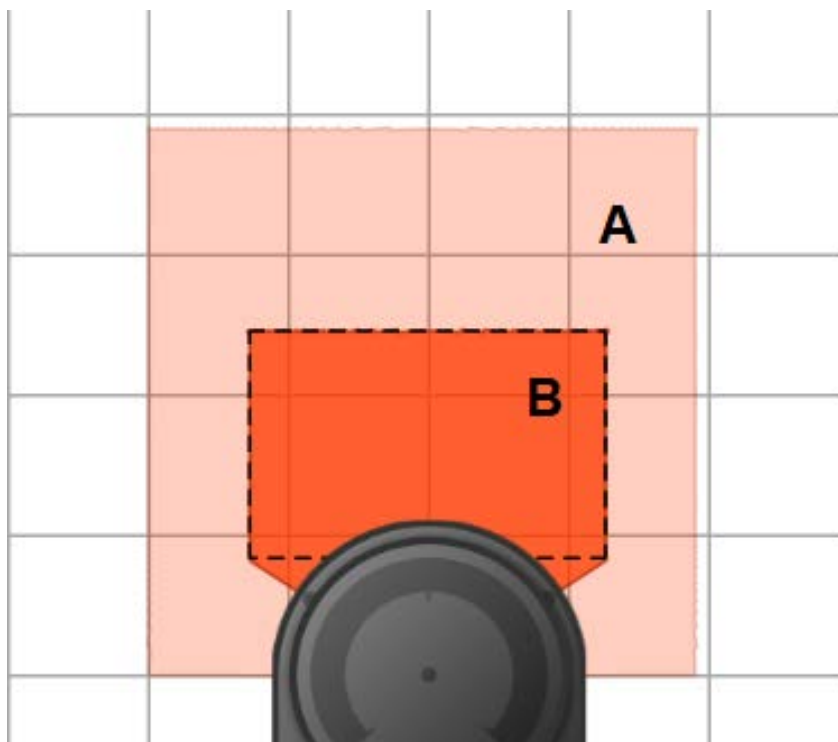
The GSD file, *GSDML-V2.xx-ABB-Robotics-OmniCore-YYYYMMDD.xml*, can be obtained from the RobotStudio or the OmniCore controller.

- **In the RobotWare installation folder in RobotStudio:**
...\\DistributionPackages\\ABB.RobotWare-x.x.x-xxx\\RobotPackages\\RobotControl_x.x.xxx\\utility\\service\\GSDML\\
- **On the OmniCore Controller:**
...\\products\\RobotControl_x.x.x\\utility\\service\\GSDML\\

Configuring the laser scanner

Protection fields

Two protection fields are defined to provide a progressive safety protection. The following figure illustrates the field ranges.



xx2200000301

| | Field | Device mapping (default) | Lamp color | Description |
|---|----------------|--------------------------|------------|--|
| A | WarningArea | 1 | Yellow | The warning area field defines the largest range, but it shall be within the scanning range of the scanner. Within in this field range, the lamp unit on the process hub lights up yellow, and the robot movement speed reduces to a lower speed that is set by the user. |
| B | ProtectingArea | 0 | Red | Within this field range, the lamp unit turns to red and the robot movement speed is reduced to 0. The robot stands still. |

Continues on next page

3.7.5.3 Configuration of two PROFIsafe-based laser scanners (RobotWare 7.6 or later and PLC acting as Master) *Continued*

Configuration procedure

Before starting the configuration, obtain the *microScan 3 Core - PROFINET GSDML* file and the software tool *Safety Designer®* from SICK's website first. Make sure both the file and the software tool are in the latest versions.

Detailed procedures about how to configure the laser scanners are detailed in *SICK microScan3 Siemens PLC integration instruction manual - TIA Portal* and *SICK microScan3 Siemens PLC integration instruction manual - SIMATIC Step 7*. Following described roughly:

- 1 Connect the laser scanners to the PLC and controller.
See the physical connection in [Connecting the laser scanner\(s\) on page 79](#).
- 2 Open configuration software tool *Safety Designer®*.
- 3 Set IP address, F-destination and PROFINET name in **Configuration > Addressing**.
 - The scanner IP address must be in the same network segment with the PLC and controller, that is, 192.168.10.XXX.
 - The PROFINET name must be the same in the PLC configuration.
 - The two scanners must be set to different IP address, F-destination and PROFINET name.
- 4 Set **F-destination address** to 12 for the first scanner and to 13 for the second scanner, in **PROFINET** area in **Configuration > Protocol Settings**.
- 5 Define the two protection fields for each scanners in **Configuration > Fields**.
- 6 Define the source for input signals of each scanner and configure basic settings for the inputs and outputs in **Configuration > Inputs and outputs**.
The **Use one input source** checkbox must be selected and choose **Rx: Process image (6 Bytes)** from the drop-down list.
- 7 Create monitoring cases and assign the fields that are to be monitored to each monitoring cases in **Configuration > Monitoring cases**.

Configuring the PLC

The safety PLC connecting to the laser scanners and controller must support PROFIsafe and can act as a master. Before configuration, make sure the PLC is loaded with the GSD files of the controller and laser scanners.

Detailed procedures about how to add an external device to the PLC and how to configure detailed settings, see the user manual from the vendor. Following lists the necessary settings during PLC configuration:

- Add two scanners to the PLC by adding two **mS3 6Byte In/Out PROFIsafe V2.6.1** modules.
 - The parameters **f_dest_address** and **f_source_address** are set to 12 and 1, for the first scanner, respectively.
 - The parameters **f_dest_address** and **f_source_address** are set to 13 and 1, for the second scanner, respectively.
- Add the controller to the PLC by adding the **DI 8 bytes, DO 8 bytes, SDI 8 bytes** and **SDO 8 bytes** modules.

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.5.3 Configuration of two PROFIsafe-based laser scanners (RobotWare 7.6 or later and PLC acting as Master)

Continued

The parameters `f_dest_address` and `f_source_address` for the SDI are set to 3 and 2, respectively, and for the SDO are set to 5 and 4, respectively.

- Make sure the address for the SDO signal is the first address of **SDO 8 bytes** slot.
- Create variables.

| Name | Type | Example address ⁱ |
|------------------------------|------|------------------------------|
| ProtectingTrigger | Bool | %I3.0 |
| WarningTrigger | Bool | %I4.1 |
| ProtectingTrigger1 | Bool | %I14.0 |
| WarningTrigger1 | Bool | %I15.1 |
| ProtectingArea ⁱⁱ | Bool | %Q68.0 |
| WarningArea ⁱⁱⁱ | Bool | %Q68.1 |
| SafetyCommunicationEnable | Bool | %Q68.2 |
| ActivateScanner | Bool | %Q3.0 |
| ActivateScanner1 | Bool | %Q14.0 |

ⁱ %I3.X, %I4.X, %I14.X and %I15.X are the addresses of laser scanners; %Q68.X is the address of the OmniCore controller.

%Q3.0 and %Q14.0 are for activating the monitoring cases of the laser scanners.

ⁱⁱ Value of ProtectingArea depends on logic AND value of ProtectingTrigger and ProtectingTrigger1.

ⁱⁱⁱ Value of WarningArea depends on logic AND value of WarningTrigger and WarningTrigger1.

- Check the communication between the PLC and controller is well and activate the laser scanner; set up the communication between the laser scanner, PLC and OmniCore controller.

Configuring SafeMove

To enable SafeMove, perform the following procedure:

- 1 Log in the FlexPendant.
Make sure the user logged in have access grants to lock safety controller configurations, safety services and software synchronization.
- 2 Tap **SafeMove** on the home page.
- 3 Tap **Load** in the pop-up message box to confirm loading of template SafeMove configuration files.
The controller restarts.
- 4 After the controller is restarted, tap **Settings** on the home page.
- 5 Tap **Safety Controller**.
- 6 Tap **Synchronization** in the left pane.
- 7 Jog the robot to match the **Actual Positions** values with the **Sync Positions** values.
Make sure the values are the same.
- 8 Tap **Synchronize**.

3.7.5.4 Configuration of one PROFINET-based laser scanner (RobotWare 7.10 or later and OmniCore acting as Master)

3.7.5.4 Configuration of one PROFINET-based laser scanner (RobotWare 7.10 or later and OmniCore acting as Master)

Preparing the robot system

Required options for system setup

When setting up the system using **Installation Manager** in RobotStudio, select the options [3020-1] *PROFINET Controller*, [3023-1] *PROFINET Controller*, [3043-3] *SafeMove Collaborative* and [3051-1] *Profisafe Package*, and the correct robot variant. The option *Drive System IRB Small Robot* is selected automatically after the robot type is determined.

Configuring supported parameters of the robot system

The laser scanner needs to use a PC-based software tool to configure the connection parameters that are used to connect to the OmniCore system. The supported parameters of the OmniCore system are configured using *I/O Engineering Tool* in RobotStudio. Use the following procedure to perform the configuration:

- 1 Start RobotStudio and connect the controller.
 - The user account logging in the controller must be granted with the Safety Services permission.
 - The write access to the controller is requested.

- 2 In the **Controller** tab, click **I/O Engineering**.

The *I/O Engineering* window is displayed.

- 3 In the **Configuration** tab page on the left pane of the window, right-click **PROFINET** under **I/O system** and select **Scan Network**.

The connected laser scanner is displayed.

- 4 Right-click on the laser scanner and choose **Add as**.

The laser scanner is added under **Controller** in the **Configuration** tab page.



Note

Two device names are displayed in the list by default. You shall right-click on the device name *mS3 12Byte In/Out PROFINET V2.6.1* and choose **Delete** to delete it. The name may vary according to the actual laser scanner connected.

- 5 Click the laser scanner with the asterisk(*) mark, and then in the **Device Catalog** tab page on the right pane of the window, double-click **mS3 6Byte In/Out PROFINET V2.6.1**.

- 6 In the displayed **Signal Editor** tab page, add signals with following settings.

| Name | Type of Signal | Device Mapping ⁱ | Default value |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------------------|---------------|
| ActiveDevice1 | Digital Output | 8 | 1 |
| ProtectingArea1 | Digital Input | 17 | 0 |
| WarningArea1 | Digital Input | 8 | 0 |

ⁱ The mappings are only for examples. Refer to the cut-off setting defined in the *Safety Designer* software and enter the actual value.

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.5.4 Configuration of one PROFIsafe-based laser scanner (RobotWare 7.10 or later and OmniCore acting as Master)

Continued

A new device name *mS3 6Byte In/Out PROFIsafe V2.6.1* is displayed under the scanner in the **Configuration** tab page.

- 7 Click the new device name and check the settings in the **Properties** tab page on the right pane of the window.

Make sure the Destination value is the same as the F-Destination address value for the scanner in the *Safety Designer* software.

- 8 In the **I/O Engineering** tab, click **Cross Connections** in the **Configuration** group, and check the created signals.

Make sure the created signals are in the same name as the displayed signals.

- 9 In the **I/O Engineering** tab, click **Write Config** to write the configurations to the controller.

- 10 Restart the controller.

- 11 After the controller is restarted, check the laser scanner name in the RAPID program *InternalSpeedHandling_User* in task *T_ROB1*, and make sure it is consistent with the name that the user defines for the laser scanner.

If the names are inconsistent, use the following steps to modify:

- a In the **Controller** pane, double-click the RAPID program *InternalSpeedHandling_User* in task *T_ROB1*.

The RAPID program is displayed in the right pane.

- b Find the parameter *Scanner1* and modify its value to the user-defined laser scanner name.

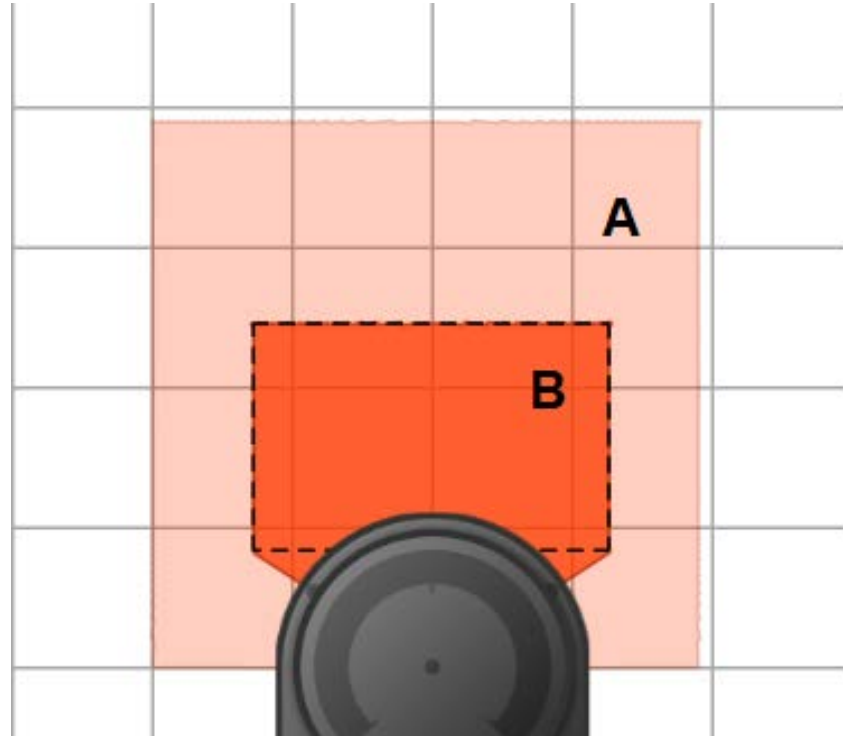
Continues on next page

3.7.5.4 Configuration of one PROFI-safe-based laser scanner (RobotWare 7.10 or later and OmniCore acting as Master) Continued

Configuring the laser scanner

Protection fields

Two protection fields are defined to provide a progressive safety protection. The following figure illustrates the field ranges.



xx2200000301

| | Field | Device mapping (default) | Lamp color | Description |
|---|----------------|--------------------------|------------|--|
| A | WarningArea | 1 | Yellow | The warning area field defines the largest range, but it shall be within the scanning range of the scanner. Within in this field range, the lamp unit on the process hub lights up yellow, and the robot movement speed reduces to a lower speed that is set by the user. |
| B | ProtectingArea | 0 | Red | Within this field range, the lamp unit turns to red and the robot movement speed is reduced to 0. The robot stands still. |

Configuration procedure

Before starting the configuration, obtain the *microScan 3 Core - PROFINET GSDML* file and the software tool *Safety Designer®* from SICK's website first. Make sure both the file and the software tool are in the latest versions.

Detailed procedures about how to configure the laser scanner are detailed in *Operating instructions microScan3 - PROFINET*. Following described roughly:

- 1 Connect the laser scanner to the PC using a network cable.

See the physical connection in [Connecting the laser scanner\(s\) on page 79](#).

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.5.4 Configuration of one PROFIsafe-based laser scanner (RobotWare 7.10 or later and OmniCore acting as Master)

Continued

- 2 Open configuration software tool *Safety Designer®*.
- 3 Set IP address and PROFINET name in **Configuration > Addressing**.
The scanner IP address must be in the same network segment with the controller, that is, 192.168.10.XXX.
- 4 Set **F-destination address** to 12 in **PROFINET** area in **Configuration > Protocol Settings**.
- 5 Define the two protection fields in **Configuration > Fields**.
- 6 Define the source for input signals of the scanner and configure basic settings for the inputs and outputs in **Configuration > Inputs and outputs**.
The **Use one input source** checkbox must be selected and choose **Rx: Process image (6 Bytes)** from the drop-down list.
- 7 Create monitoring cases and assign the fields that are to be monitored to each monitoring cases in **Configuration > Monitoring cases**.

Configuring SafeMove

To enable SafeMove, perform the following procedure:

- 1 Start RobotStudio and connect the controller.
 - The user account logging in the controller must be granted with the Safety Services permission.
 - The write access to the controller is requested.
- 2 In the **Controller** tab, click **Safety**, then select **Visual SafeMove**.
- 3 In the **Visual SafeMove** window, configure SafeMove function as instructed in [Configuration of SafeMove using Visual SafeMove in RobotStudio on page 114](#).

3.7.5.5 Configuration of two PROFINET-based laser scanners (RobotWare 7.10 or later and OmniCore acting as Master)

Preparing the robot system

Required options for system setup

When setting up the system using **Installation Manager** in RobotStudio, select the options *[3020-1] PROFINET Controller*, *[3023-1] PROFINET Controller*, *[3043-3] SafeMove Collaborative* and *[3051-3] Dual Profisafe Package*, and the correct robot variant. The option *Drive System IRB Small Robot* is selected automatically after the robot type is determined.

Configuring supported parameters of the robot system

The laser scanners need to use a PC-based software tool to configure the connection parameters that are used to connect to the OmniCore system. The supported parameters of the OmniCore system are configured using **I/O Engineering Tool** in RobotStudio. Use the following procedure to perform the configuration:

- 1 Start RobotStudio and connect the controller.
 - The user account logging in the controller must be granted with the Safety Services permission.
 - The write access to the controller is requested.

- 2 In the **Controller** tab, click **I/O Engineering**.

The **I/O Engineering** window is displayed.

- 3 In the **Configuration** tab page on the left pane of the window, right-click **PROFINET** under **I/O system** and select **Scan Network**.

The connected laser scanners are displayed.

- 4 Right-click one of the laser scanners and choose **Add as**.

The laser scanner is added under **Controller** in the **Configuration** tab page.



Note

Two device names are displayed in the list by default. You shall right-click on the device name *mS3 12Byte In/Out PROFINET V2.6.1* and choose **Delete** to delete it. The name may vary according to the actual laser scanner connected.

- 5 Click the laser scanner with the asterisk(*) mark, and then in the **Device Catalog** tab page on the right pane of the window, double-click **mS3 6Byte In/Out PROFINET V2.6.1**.
- 6 In the displayed **Signal Editor** tab page, add signals with following settings.

| Name | Type of Signal | Device Mapping ⁱ | Default value |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------------------|---------------|
| ActiveDevice1 | Digital Output | 8 | 1 |
| ProtectingArea1 | Digital Input | 17 | 0 |
| WarningArea1 | Digital Input | 8 | 0 |

ⁱ The mappings are only for examples. Refer to the cut-off setting defined in the *Safety Designer* software and enter the actual value.

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.5.5 Configuration of two PROFIsafe-based laser scanners (RobotWare 7.10 or later and OmniCore acting as Master)

Continued

A new device name *mS3 6Byte In/Out PROFIsafe V2.6.1* is displayed under the scanner in the **Configuration** tab page.

- 7 Click the new device name and check the settings in the **Properties** tab page on the right pane of the window.

Make sure the Destination value is the same as the F-Destination address value for the scanner in the *Safety Designer* software.

- 8 In the **I/O Engineering** tab, click **Cross Connections** in the **Configuration** group, and check the created signals.

Make sure the created signals are in the same name as the displayed signals.

- 9 Repeat steps 4 to 8 to add the other laser scanner, for which the signal settings shall be as follows.

| Name | Type of Signal | Device Mapping ⁱ | Default value |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------------------|---------------|
| ActiveDevice2 | Digital Output | 8 | 1 |
| ProtectingArea2 | Digital Input | 17 | 0 |
| WarningArea2 | Digital Input | 8 | 0 |

ⁱ The mappings are only for examples. Refer to the cut-off setting defined in the *Safety Designer* software and enter the actual value.

- 10 In the **I/O Engineering** tab, click **Write Config** to write the configurations to the controller.

- 11 Restart the controller.

- 12 After the controller is restarted, check the laser scanner name in RAPID program *InternalSpeedHandling_User* in task *T_ROB1*, and make sure it is consistent with the name that the user defines for the laser scanner.

If the names are inconsistent, use the following steps to modify:

- a In the **Controller** pane, double-click the RAPID program *InternalSpeedHandling_User* in task *T_ROB1*.
The RAPID program is displayed in the right pane.
- b Find the parameters *Scanner1* and *Scanner2*, and modify their values to the user-defined laser scanner names.

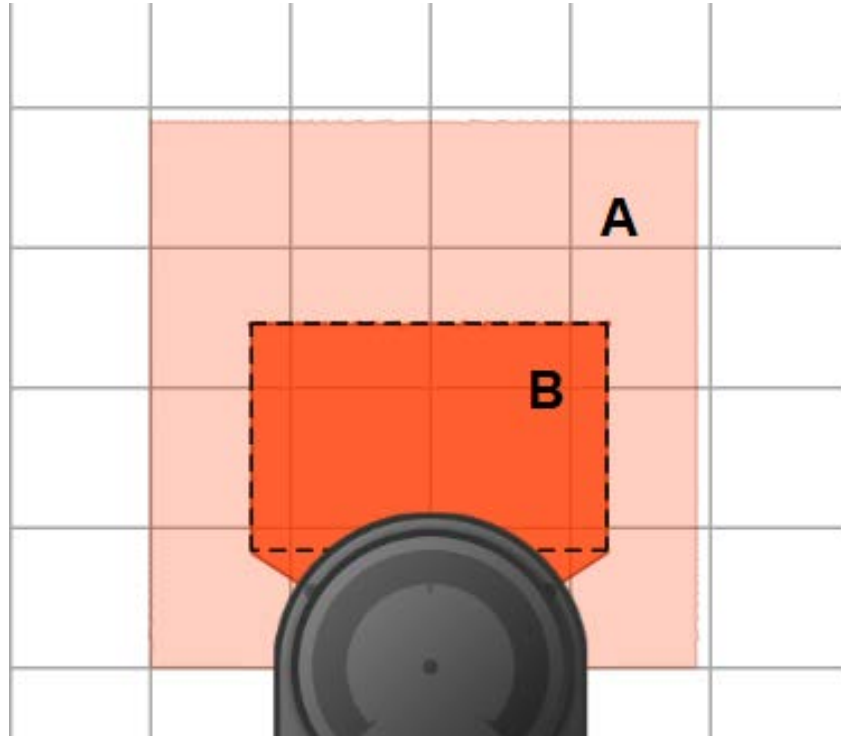
Continues on next page

3.7.5.5 Configuration of two PROFI-safe-based laser scanners (RobotWare 7.10 or later and OmniCore acting as Master) Continued

Configuring the laser scanner

Protection fields

Two protection fields are defined to provide a progressive safety protection. The following figure illustrates the field ranges.



xx2200000301

| | Field | Device mapping (default) | Lamp color | Description |
|---|----------------|--------------------------|------------|--|
| A | WarningArea | 1 | Yellow | The warning area field defines the largest range, but it shall be within the scanning range of the scanner. Within in this field range, the lamp unit on the process hub lights up yellow, and the robot movement speed reduces to a lower speed that is set by the user. |
| B | ProtectingArea | 0 | Red | Within this field range, the lamp unit turns to red and the robot movement speed is reduced to 0. The robot stands still. |

Configuration procedure

Before starting the configuration, obtain the *microScan 3 Core - PROFINET GSDML* file and the software tool *Safety Designer®* from SICK's website first. Make sure both the file and the software tool are in the latest versions.

Detailed procedures about how to configure the laser scanner are detailed in *Operating instructions microScan3 - PROFINET*. Following described roughly:

- 1 Connect the laser scanner to the controller using a network cable.

See the physical connection in [Connecting the laser scanner\(s\) on page 79](#).

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.5.5 Configuration of two PROFI-safe-based laser scanners (RobotWare 7.10 or later and OmniCore acting as Master)

Continued

- 2 Open configuration software tool *Safety Designer®*.
- 3 Set IP address, F-destination and PROFINET name in **Configuration > Addressing**.
 - The scanner IP address must be in the same network segment with the controller, that is, 192.168.10.XXX.
 - The two scanners must be set to different IP address, F-destination and PROFINET name.
- 4 Set **F-destination address** to 12 for the first scanner and to 13 for the second scanner, in **PROFINET** area in **Configuration > Protocol Settings**.
- 5 Define the two protection fields in **Configuration > Fields**.
- 6 Define the source for input signals of the scanner and configure basic settings for the inputs and outputs in **Configuration > Inputs and outputs**.

The **Use one input source** checkbox must be selected and choose **Rx: Process image (6 Bytes)** from the drop-down list.
- 7 Create monitoring cases and assign the fields that are to be monitored to each monitoring cases in **Configuration > Monitoring cases**.

Configuring SafeMove

To enable SafeMove, perform the following procedure:

- 1 Start RobotStudio and connect the controller.
 - The user account logging in the controller must be granted with the Safety Services permission.
 - The write access to the controller is requested.
- 2 In the **Controller** tab, click **Safety**, then select **Visual SafeMove**.
- 3 In the **Visual SafeMove** window, configure SafeMove function as instructed in [Configuration of SafeMove using Visual SafeMove in RobotStudio on page 114](#).

3.7.5.6 Configuration of one SafetyIO-base laser scanner (RobotWare 7.6 or later)

Preparing the robot system

Required options for system setup

When setting up the system using **Installation Manager** in RobotStudio, select the options *[3043-3] SafeMove Collaborative* and *[3051-2] IO Package*, and the correct robot variant. The option *Drive System IRB Small Robot* is selected automatically after the robot type is determined.

Supported parameters for connections to scanners and scalable I/O device

The laser scanner uses a PC-based software tool to configure the connection parameters that are used to connect to the OmniCore system. The supported parameters of the OmniCore system are predefined in the configuration file which could be loaded to the system after the Collaborative Speed Control add-in is installed, see [Information about Collaborative Speed Control add-in on page 96](#).

The I/O configuration can be seen using I/O Engineering Tool in RobotStudio.

The following table lists the device mapping information of Scalable_IO signals, which are automatically configured after the add-in installation.

| Signal name | Device mapping | Device |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI1 ⁱ | 0 | ABB_Scalable_IO |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI2 ⁱ | 1 | ABB_Scalable_IO |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI3 ⁱⁱ | 2 | ABB_Scalable_IO |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI4 ⁱⁱ | 3 | ABB_Scalable_IO |

ⁱ Value of ProtectingArea depends on logic AND value of ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI1 and ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI2. For definition of ProtectingArea, see [Configuring the laser scanner on page 142](#).

ⁱⁱ Value of WarningArea depends on logic AND value of ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI3 and ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI4. For definition of WarningArea, see [Configuring the laser scanner on page 142](#).

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

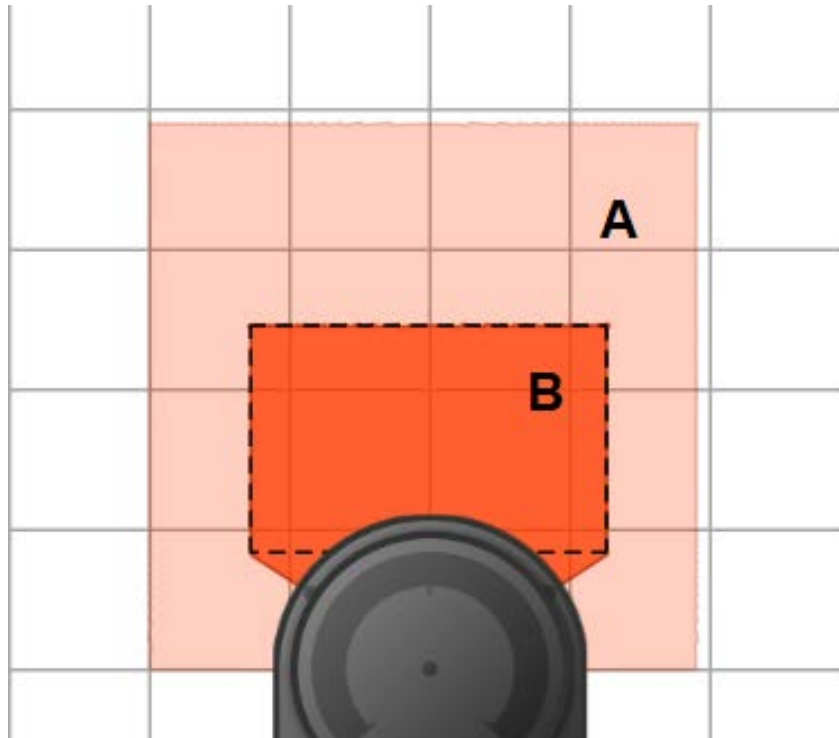
3.7.5.6 Configuration of one SafetyIO-base laser scanner (RobotWare 7.6 or later)

Continued

Configuring the laser scanner

Protection fields

Two protection fields are defined to provide a progressive safety protection. The following figure illustrates the field ranges.



xx2200000301

| | Field | Lamp color | Description |
|---|----------------|------------|--|
| A | WarningArea | Yellow | The warning area field defines the largest range, but it shall be within the scanning range of the scanner. Within in this field range, the lamp unit on the process hub lights up yellow, and the robot movement speed reduces to a lower speed that is set by the user. |
| B | ProtectingArea | Red | Within this field range, the lamp unit turns to red and the robot movement speed is reduced to 0. The robot stands still. |

Configuration procedure

Before starting the configuration, obtain the software tool *Safety Designer®* from SICK's website first. Make sure the software tool is in the latest version.

Detailed procedures about how to configure the laser scanner are detailed in *Operating instructions microScan3 - Pro I/O* from the vendor. Following described the procedure roughly:

- 1 Open configuration software tool *Safety Designer®*.
- 2 Set IP address in **Configuration > Addressing**.

Make sure the scanner IP address is in the same network segment with the PC used for configuring the scanner.

Continues on next page

- 3 Define the two protection fields for the scanner in **Configuration > Fields**.
- 4 Define the source for input signals of the scanner and configure basic settings for the inputs and outputs in **Configuration > Inputs and outputs**.
- 5 Select one OSSD pair from the **Signals** panel to pin1 and pin2, and select another OSSD pair to pin3 and pin4.

The two OSSD pairs will be used for defining the monitoring cases.

- 6 Create monitoring cases and assign the fields that are to be monitored to each monitoring cases in **Configuration > Monitoring cases**.
- 7 Refer to the following table to obtain the pins defined to OSSD pairs. The pins are from a 17-pin cable that will be used to connect the laser scanner and scalable I/O device.

| Pin | Wiring color | Name | Function |
|-----|-----------------|--------|---------------------|
| 1 | Brown | OSSD1A | OSSD pair 1, OSSD A |
| 2 | Blue | OSSD1B | OSSD pair 1, OSSD B |
| 3 | White | OSSD2A | OSSD pair 2, OSSD A |
| 4 | Green | OSSD2B | OSSD pair 2, OSSD B |
| 17 | White with grey | 0 V DC | 0 DC |

- 8 Connect the laser scanner to scalable I/O device with the defined pins.

| Pin in cable | Pin position number in X2 connector of the device ⁱ |
|---------------|--|
| Pin1 (OSSD1A) | D101+ |
| Pin2 (OSSD1B) | D102+ |
| Pin3 (OSSD2A) | D103+ |
| Pin4 (OSSD2B) | D104+ |
| Pin17 | Circuit of D101-, D102-, D103- and D104- |

ⁱ For detailed information of pin definitions in connector X2 Digital inputs of the scalable I/O device DSQC1042, see the product specification of the controller and *Application manual - Scalable I/O*.

Configuring the scalable I/O device

Detailed procedures about how to connect and configure the scalable I/O device DSQC1042 are specified in *Application manual - Scalable I/O*. Following provides a rough procedure:

- 1 Make sure that the laser scanner and scalable I/O device is connected as instructed in previous configuration procedure of laser scanner.
- 2 Connect the process power supply to connector X1 of the scalable I/O device via pin locations PWR DO and GND DO.
- 3 Connect the logic power supply to connector X4 of the scalable I/O device via pin locations PWR and GND.
- 4 Connect the Ethernet cable from the robot controller to connector X5.

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.5.6 Configuration of one SafetyIO-base laser scanner (RobotWare 7.6 or later)

Continued

- 5 Log in the RobotStudio using the admin use account and configure the device to make sure the device communication works.

- a Click the **Controller** tab and, in the **Controller** pane, choose **I/O System > EtherNetIP**.

Information of three devices can be observed:

- CabinetIO is used for the I/O device DSQC1030, and the communication status is normal.
- ABB_Scalable_IO and ABB_Scalable_IO1 are used for the I/O device DSQC1042, and the communication status is abnormal.

- b Check the IP address and serial numbers associated with ABB_Scalable_IO and ABB_Scalable_IO1, which will display as follows.

| Device name | IP address | Serial number |
|------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| ABB_Scalable_IO | 192.168.125.130 | 0 |
| ABB_Scalable_IO1 | 192.168.125.131 | Actual serial number of the device |

- c Right-click **ABB_Scalable_IO1** and choose **Configure** from the shortcut menu.
- d In the displayed dialog box, choose the **Configure as replacement device** option and select **ABB_Scalable_IO** from the drop-down list.
- e Remove the texts in the **Create new I/O signals using name prefix** text box and then click **OK**.

Information of two devices can be observed, CabinetIO and ABB_Scalable_IO. Communication status of ABB_Scalable_IO will turn to normal after the SafeMove template file is uploaded using the SafeMove configurator app.



Note

The configuration could also be done using the I/O application in FlexPendant.



Note

If there are additional scalable I/O devices available, install and configure the additional devices by following the detailed procedures in *Application manual - Scalable I/O*.

Configuring SafeMove

To enable SafeMove, perform the following procedure:

- 1 Log in the FlexPendant.

Make sure the user logged in have access grants to lock safety controller configurations, safety services and software synchronization.

- 2 Tap **SafeMove** on the home page.

Continues on next page

3.7.5.6 Configuration of one SafetyIO-base laser scanner (RobotWare 7.6 or later)

Continued

- 3 Tap **Load** in the pop-up message box to confirm loading of template SafeMove configuration files.

The controller restarts.

- 4 After the controller is restarted, tap **Settings** on the home page.

- 5 Tap **Safety Controller**.

- 6 Tap **Synchronization** in the left pane.

- 7 Jog the robot to match the **Actual Positions** values with the **Sync Positions** values.

Make sure the values are the same.

- 8 Tap **Synchronize**.

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.5.7 Configuration of two SafetyIO-base laser scanners (RobotWare 7.6 or later)

3.7.5.7 Configuration of two SafetyIO-base laser scanners (RobotWare 7.6 or later)

Preparing the robot system

Required options for system setup

When setting up the system using **Installation Manager** in RobotStudio, select the options [3043-3] *SafeMove Collaborative* and [3051-4] *Dual IO Package*, and the correct robot variant. The option *Drive System IRB Small Robot* is selected automatically after the robot type is determined.

Supported parameters for connections to scanners and scalable I/O device

The laser scanners use a PC-based software tool to configure the connection parameters that are used to connect to the OmniCore system. The supported parameters of the OmniCore system are predefined in the configuration file which could be loaded to the system after the Collaborative Speed Control add-in is installed, see [Information about Collaborative Speed Control add-in on page 96](#). The I/O configuration can be seen using I/O Engineering Tool in RobotStudio. The following table lists the device mapping information of Scalable_IO signals, which are automatically configured after the add-in installation.

| Signal name | Device mapping | Device |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI1 ⁱ | 0 | ABB_Scalable_IO |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI2 ⁱ | 1 | ABB_Scalable_IO |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI3 ⁱⁱ | 2 | ABB_Scalable_IO |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI4 ⁱⁱ | 3 | ABB_Scalable_IO |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI5 ⁱ | 4 | ABB_Scalable_IO |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI6 ⁱ | 5 | ABB_Scalable_IO |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI7 ⁱⁱ | 6 | ABB_Scalable_IO |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI8 ⁱⁱ | 7 | ABB_Scalable_IO |

ⁱ Value of ProtectingArea depends on logic AND value of ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI1, ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI2, ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI5 and ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI6. For definition of ProtectingArea, see [Configuring the laser scanner on page 147](#).

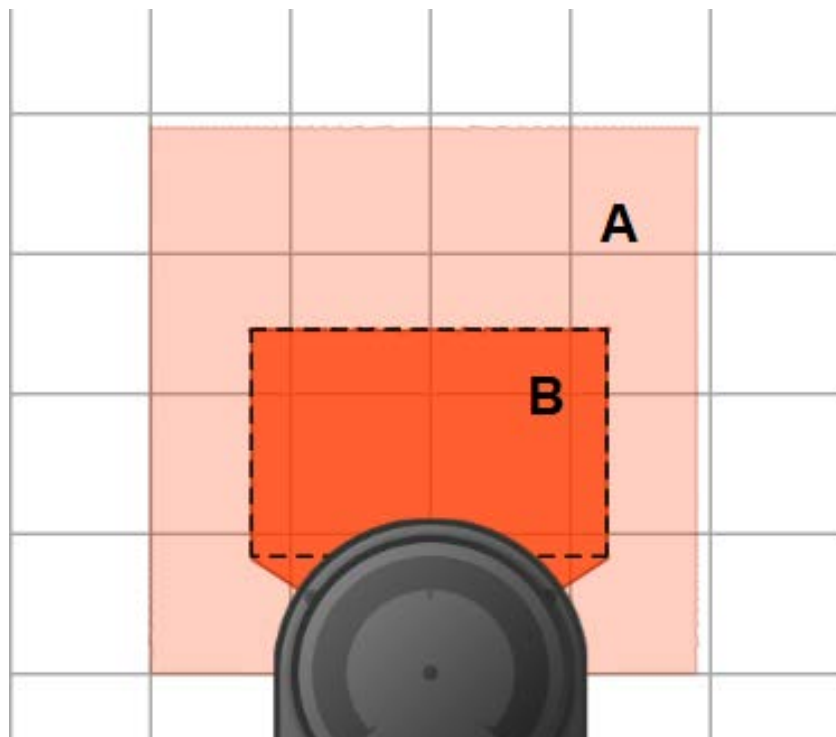
ⁱⁱ Value of WarningArea depends on logic AND value of ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI3, ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI4, ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI7 and ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI8. For definition of WarningArea, see [Configuring the laser scanner on page 147](#).

Continues on next page

Configuring the laser scanner

Protection fields

Two protection fields are defined to provide a progressive safety protection. The following figure illustrates the field ranges.



xx2200000301

| | Field | Lamp color | Description |
|---|----------------|------------|--|
| A | WarningArea | Yellow | The warning area field defines the largest range, but it shall be within the scanning range of the scanner. Within in this field range, the lamp unit on the process hub lights up yellow, and the robot movement speed reduces to a lower speed that is set by the user. |
| B | ProtectingArea | Red | Within this field range, the lamp unit turns to red and the robot movement speed is reduced to 0. The robot stands still. |

Configuration procedure

Before starting the configuration, obtain the software tool *Safety Designer®* from SICK's website first. Make sure the software tool is in the latest version.

Detailed procedures about how to configure the laser scanners are detailed in *Operating instructions microScan3 - Pro I/O* from the vendor. Following described the procedure roughly:

- 1 Open configuration software tool *Safety Designer®*.
- 2 Set IP address in **Configuration > Addressing**.
 - Make sure the scanner IP addresses are in the same network segment with the PC used for configuring the scanner.

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.5.7 Configuration of two SafetyIO-base laser scanners (RobotWare 7.6 or later)

Continued

- The two scanners must be set to different IP addresses.
- 3 Define the two protection fields for each scanner in **Configuration > Fields**.
- 4 Define the source for input signals of each scanner and configure basic settings for the inputs and outputs in **Configuration > Inputs and outputs**.
- 5 For both scanners, select one OSSD pair from the **Signals** panel to pin1 and pin2, and select another OSSD pair to pin3 and pin4.
The two OSSD pairs will be used for defining the monitoring cases.
- 6 Create monitoring cases and assign the fields that are to be monitored to each monitoring cases in **Configuration > Monitoring cases**.
- 7 Refer to the following table to obtain the pins defined to OSSD pairs. The pins are from a 17-pin cable that will be used to connect a laser scanner and scalable I/O device.

| Pin | Wiring color | Name | Function |
|-----|-----------------|--------|---------------------|
| 1 | Brown | OSSD1A | OSSD pair 1, OSSD A |
| 2 | Blue | OSSD1B | OSSD pair 1, OSSD B |
| 3 | White | OSSD2A | OSSD pair 2, OSSD A |
| 4 | Green | OSSD2B | OSSD pair 2, OSSD B |
| 17 | White with grey | 0 V DC | 0 DC |

- 8 Connect the laser scanners to safety module with the defined pins.

| Scanner | Pin in cable | Pin position number in X2 connector of the device ⁱ |
|-----------|---------------|--|
| Scanner 1 | Pin1 (OSSD1A) | D101+ |
| | Pin2 (OSSD1B) | D102+ |
| | Pin3 (OSSD2A) | D103+ |
| | Pin4 (OSSD2B) | D104+ |
| | Pin17 | Circuit of D101-, D102-, D103- and D104- |
| Scanner 2 | Pin1 (OSSD1A) | D105+ |
| | Pin2 (OSSD1B) | D106+ |
| | Pin3 (OSSD2A) | D107+ |
| | Pin4 (OSSD2B) | D108+ |
| | Pin17 | Circuit of D105-, D106-, D107- and D108- |

ⁱ For detailed information of pin definitions in connector X2 Digital inputs of the scalable I/O device DSQC1042, see the product specification of the controller and *Application manual - Scalable I/O*.

Configuring the scalable I/O device

Detailed procedures about how to connect and configure the scalable I/O device DSQC1042 are specified in *Application manual - Scalable I/O*. Following provides a rough procedure:

- 1 Make sure that the laser scanner and scalable I/O device is connected as instructed in previous configuration procedure of laser scanner.

Continues on next page

- 2 Connect the process power supply to connector X1 of the scalable I/O device via pin locations PWR DO and GND DO.
- 3 Connect the logic power supply to connector X4 of the scalable I/O device via pin locations PWR and GND.
- 4 Connect the Ethernet cable from the robot controller to connector X5.
- 5 Log in the RobotStudio using the admin use account and configure the device to make sure the device communication works.

- a Click the **Controller** tab and, in the **Controller** pane, choose **I/O System > EtherNetIP**.

Information of three devices can be observed:

- CabinetIO is used for the I/O device DSQC1030, and the communication status is normal.

- ABB_Scalable_IO and ABB_Scalable_IO1 are used for the I/O device DSQC1042, and the communication status is abnormal.

- b Check the IP address and serial numbers associated with ABB_Scalable_IO and ABB_Scalable_IO1, which will display as follows.

| Device name | IP address | Serial number |
|------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| ABB_Scalable_IO | 192.168.125.130 | 0 |
| ABB_Scalable_IO1 | 192.168.125.131 | Actual serial number of the device |

- c Right-click **ABB_Scalable_IO1** and choose **Configure** from the shortcut menu.
- d In the displayed dialog box, choose the **Configure as replacement device** option and select **ABB_Scalable_IO** from the drop-down list.
- e Remove the texts in the **Create new I/O signals using name prefix** text box and then click **OK**.

Information of two devices can be observed, CabinetIO and ABB_Scalable_IO. Communication status of ABB_Scalable_IO will turn to normal after the SafeMove template file is uploaded using the SafeMove configurator app.



Note

The configuration could also be done using the I/O application in FlexPendant.



Note

If there are additional scalable I/O devices available, install and configure the additional devices by following the detailed procedures in *Application manual - Scalable I/O*.

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.5.7 Configuration of two SafetyIO-base laser scanners (RobotWare 7.6 or later)

Continued

Configuring SafeMove

To enable SafeMove, perform the following procedure:

- 1 Log in the FlexPendant.
Make sure the user logged in have access grants to lock safety controller configurations, safety services and software synchronization.
- 2 Tap **SafeMove** on the home page.
- 3 Tap **Load** in the pop-up message box to confirm loading of template SafeMove configuration files.
The controller restarts.
- 4 After the controller is restarted, tap **Settings** on the home page.
- 5 Tap **Safety Controller**.
- 6 Tap **Synchronization** in the left pane.
- 7 Jog the robot to match the **Actual Positions** values with the **Sync Positions** values.
Make sure the values are the same.
- 8 Tap **Synchronize**.

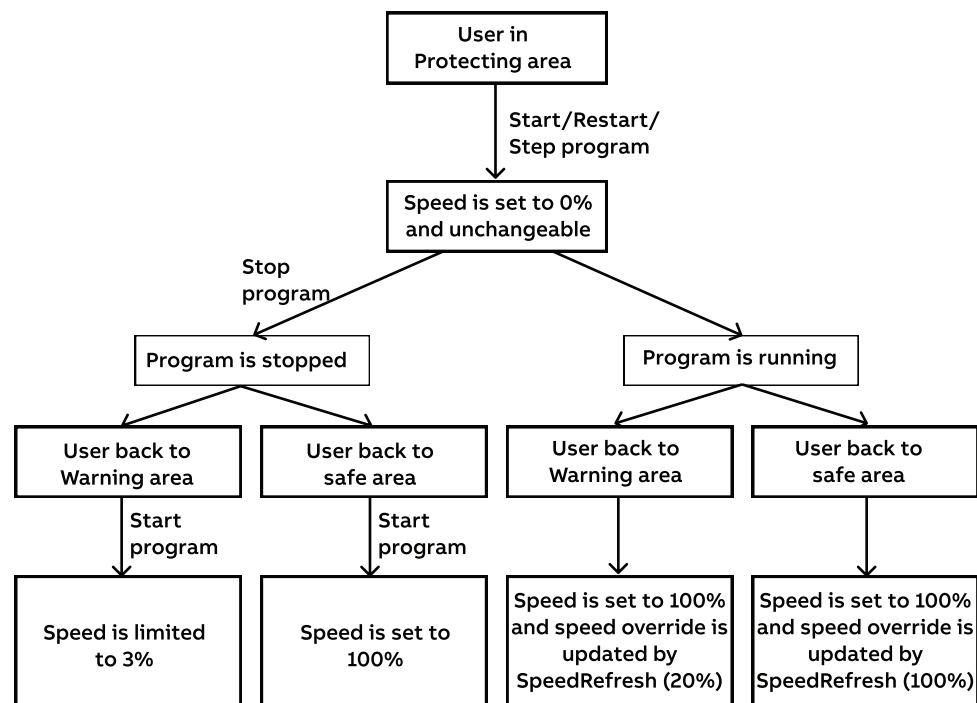
3.7.5.8 Speed control strategies

General

The speed control of CRB 1100 is affected by several factors, such as, the RobotWare version, the speed setting in the FlexPendant, the speed setting in motion instruction and the `SpeedRefresh` value. Users in different protection fields defined for laser scanner to monitor and perform different program execution actions may result in different movement speed. This section describes the speed control strategies for typical scenarios.

Strategies (RobotWare 7.5)

Users in Protecting area



xx2100000512

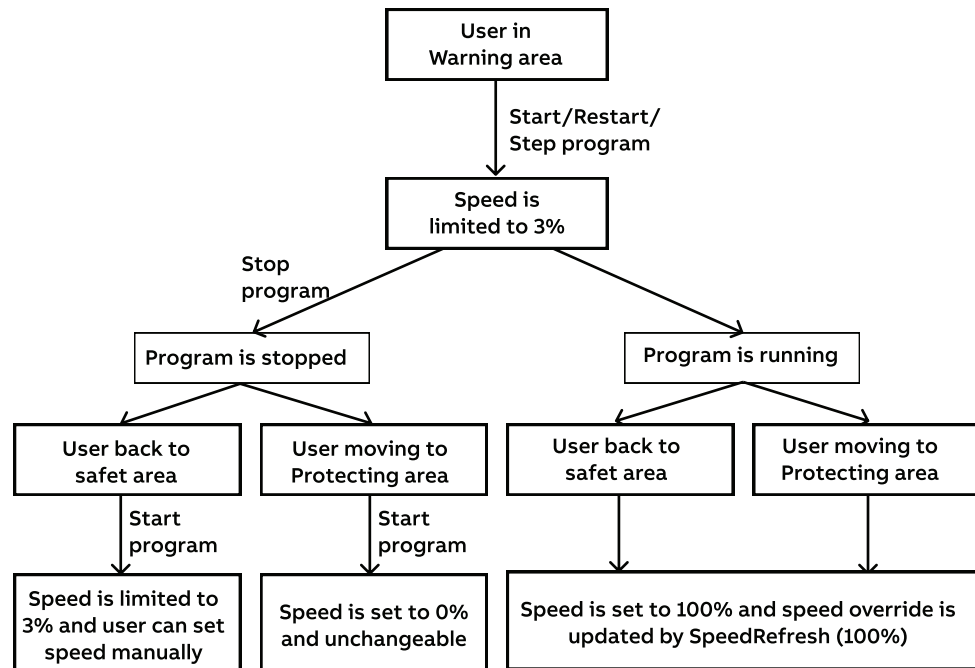
Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.5.8 Speed control strategies

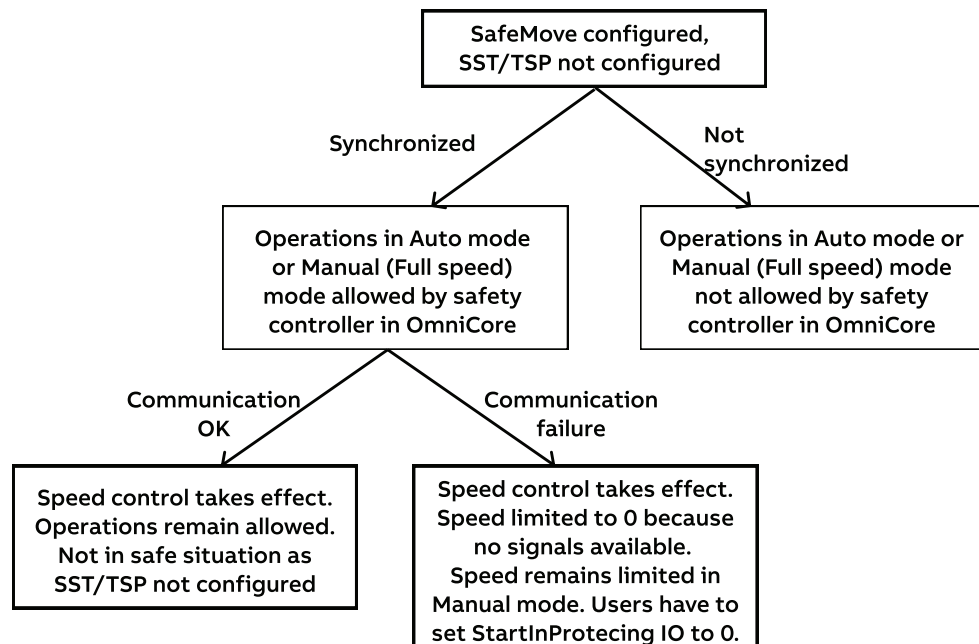
Continued

Users in Warning area



xx2100000513

SafeMove triggered but SST/TSP not configured

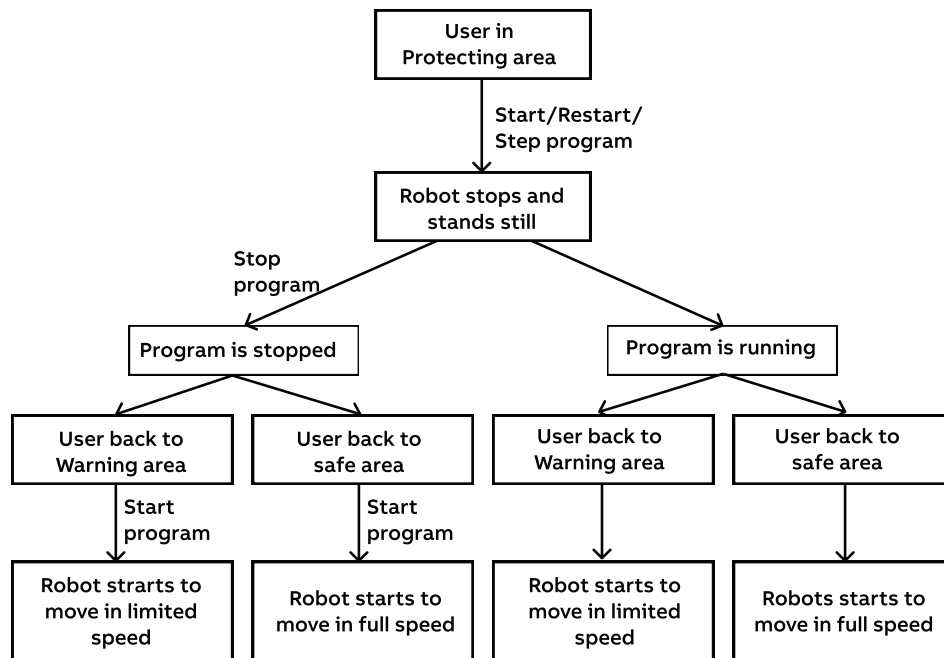


xx2100000514

Continues on next page

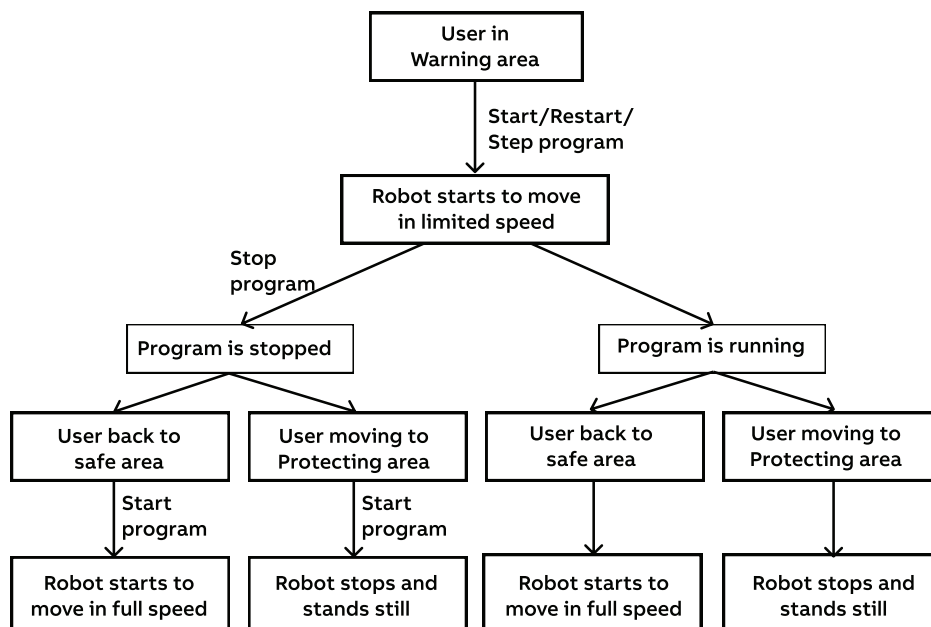
Strategies (RobotWare 7.6 or later)

Users in Protecting area



xx2200000302

Users in Warning area



xx2200000303

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.6 Robot status indication

3.7.6 Robot status indication

Description

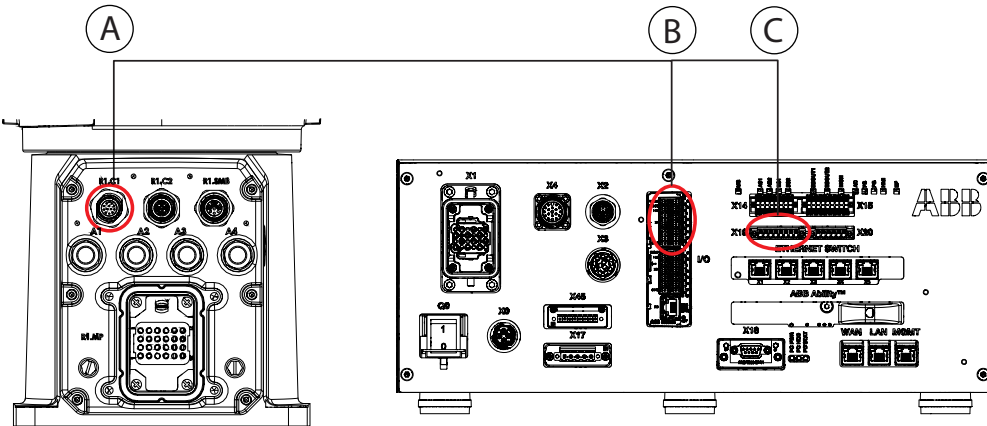
The lamp unit on process hub of CRB 1100 indicates robot status in four colors. Operators should always be aware of the indicator color and handle the situation correspondingly.

Cabling

The lamp unit cabling is integrated in the CP/CS cable. Do not use other types of CP/CS cables that are not provided by ABB; otherwise, the lamp unit will not work. See [Robot cabling and connection points on page 88](#).

The cable end connecting the manipulator connects to the R1.C1 connector on the robot base; the other end of the cable is divided to two connectors, which connect to the X1 connector of the base I/O device (DSQC 1030) and X19 connector on the controller respectively.

The following figure illustrates the lamp unit cabling connection between the manipulator base and controller with base I/O module configured. For more details about cabling, see the circuit diagram of the manipulator.



xx2100000291

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| A | R1.C1 connector on robot base | |
| B | X1 connector of I/O module on controller | Pins GND, DO1, DO2 and DO3 are occupied for lamp unit |
| C | X19 connector on controller | Pins 1 and 2 are occupied for lamp unit |

Functionality

| Color | Manual mode | Automatic mode | Manual full speed mode |
|--------|---|---|------------------------|
| White | Standby (in motor on/off state and program is stopped, available for users to perform next actions) | | |
| Green | Program is executing | | |
| Yellow | Lead-through function is enabled | Yellow warning area is triggered (manipulator speed will be limited according to the actual configured value) | |

Continues on next page

| Color | Manual mode | Automatic mode | Manual full speed mode |
|-------|-----------------------------------|---|------------------------|
| Red | Emergency stop or error is raised | Emergency stop, error is raised or red protecting area is triggered. For RobotWare 7.5 or earlier, the manipulator will reduce to 0% speed and stands still. For RobotWare 7.6 or later, the speed shown on the FlexPendant remains but the manipulator will stand still. | |

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.7 Use cases of safety configurations

3.7.7 Use cases of safety configurations

General

Configurations of lamp indicator and speed control are allowed to be modified in RAPID programs, which are loaded to the system after the Collaborative Speed Control add-in is installed.



Note

Safety configurations can only be modified for robots running in RobotWare 7.6 and later versions.

Modified configuration must always be validated to verify that the desired safety is achieved. If no validation is performed, or the validation is inadequate, the configuration cannot be relied on for personal safety.

Modifying lamp indicator colors

RGB of the LED lamp is controlled by values defined in RAPID instruction SWIFTI_SetCustomizedLEDColor in routine SWIFTI_LedMain, which can affect the color that the lamp shows. The routine exists in the system module SWIFTI_Main of task T_SWIFTI_LED.

```
T_SWIFTI_LED/SWIFTI_Main* x
1  MODULE SWIFTI_Main(SYSMODULE)
2      PROC SWIFTI_LedMain()
3          SWIFTI_SetCustomizedLEDColor TRUE,FALSE,FALSE;
4          SWIFTI_DefaultCtrlMain;
5      ENDPROC
6  ENDMODULE
```

xx2200000434

The following table lists the logical value combinations and corresponding lamp colors.

| Color | Parameter value 1 | Parameter value 2 | Parameter value 3 |
|--------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| White | TRUE | TRUE | TRUE |
| Blue | FALSE | FALSE | TRUE |
| Green | FALSE | TRUE | FALSE |
| Red | TRUE | FALSE | FALSE |
| Yellow | TRUE | TRUE | FALSE |
| Cyan | FALSE | TRUE | TRUE |
| Purple | TRUE | FALSE | TRUE |

Continues on next page

Deactivating the SpeedHandling function



Note

Modified configuration must always be validated to verify that the desired safety is achieved. If no validation is performed, or the validation is inadequate, the configuration cannot be relied on for personal safety.

The SpeedHandling function is activated by default after the Collaborative Speed Control add-in is installed and the SafeMove template is loaded. The function is used to enable or disable speed-related actions for speed control.

It is possible to use the following procedure to deactivate the SpeedHandling function based on risk assessment of the final application:

- 1 In RobotStudio, open the RAPID program InternalSpeedHandling_User in task T_ROB1.
- 2 Navigate to the function ISH_b_FunctionalityIsUsed and set its value from default TRUE to FALSE.

```
T_ROB1/InternalSpeedHandling_User
49  ! In addition, the SafeMove Parameters must be set correctly!
50  ! Following Global-SafeMove-Signals need to be configured::
51  ! -> AtUser_MODE_IsNot_Cooperation
52  ! -> AtUser_MODE_IsNot_IntermitCollab
53  ! -> AtUser_Period_ms_Until_SST
54  ! -> AtUser_Period_ms_Until_TSP
55
56  ! DEFAULT is 250 mm/s, change according to the TSP max velocity set in SafeMove Configuration
57  TASK PERS num ISH_n_Speed_In_WarningArea_mm_s := 250;
58  ! DEFAULT is TRUE, set to FALSE to disable the InternalSpeedHandling completely
59  TASK PERS bool ISH_b_FunctionalityIsUsed := FALSE;
60  ! DEFAULT is TRUE, set to FALSE if you don't want to get logs from the InternalSpeedHandling
61  TASK PERS bool ISH_b_ErrorLogShownIsUsed := TRUE;
62  ! DEFAULT is TRUE, set to FALSE if you don't want to get TPWrite notifications from the InternalSpeedHandling displayed
63  TASK PERS bool ISH_b_TPinformationIsUsed := TRUE;
64
```

xx2200000435

- 3 Save the change and apply to the controller.

SafeMove configurations also affect the speed control on the robot to achieve further safety. SafeMove is still functional after the SpeedHandling function in RAPID program is deactivated.

Use the following procedure to disable the speed control function provided by SafeMove:

- 1 Open the RobotStudio.
- 2 Log in the controller using the Admin account and request the write access.
- 3 In the **Controller** tab, choose **Visual SafeMove** from the **Safety** group in the **Configuration** category.
- 4 In the **Visual SafeMove** tab, click **Safe IO Configurator** in the **Configuration** group.

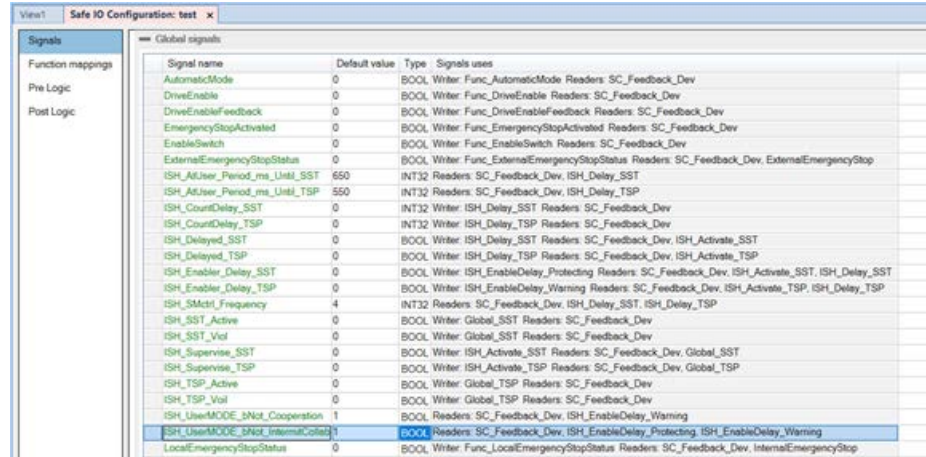
Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.7 Use cases of safety configurations

Continued

- 5 In the displayed **Safe IO Configuration** window, go to the signal **ISH_UserMODE_bNot_IntemitCollab** in the global signal list and set the value to 1.



| Signal name | Default value | Type | Signals uses |
|---------------------------------|---------------|-------|--|
| AutomaticMode | 0 | BOOL | Writer: Func_AutomaticMode Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev |
| DriveEnable | 0 | BOOL | Writer: Func_DriveEnable Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev |
| DriveEnableFeedback | 0 | BOOL | Writer: Func_DriveEnableFeedback Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev |
| EmergencyStopActivated | 0 | BOOL | Writer: Func_EmergencyStopActivated Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev |
| EnableSwitch | 0 | BOOL | Writer: Func_EnableSwitch Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev |
| ExternalEmergencyStopStatus | 0 | BOOL | Writer: Func_ExternalEmergencyStopStatus Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev, ExternalEmergencyStop |
| ISH_Active_Period_ms_Until_SST | 650 | INT32 | Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev, ISH_Delay_SST |
| ISH_Active_Period_ms_Until_TSP | 550 | INT32 | Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev, ISH_Delay_TSP |
| ISH_CountDelay_SST | 0 | INT32 | Writer: ISH_Delay_SST Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev |
| ISH_CountDelay_TSP | 0 | INT32 | Writer: ISH_Delay_TSP Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev |
| ISH_Delayed_SST | 0 | BOOL | Writer: ISH_Delay_SST Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev, ISH_Activate_SST |
| ISH_Delayed_TSP | 0 | BOOL | Writer: ISH_Delay_TSP Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev, ISH_Activate_TSP |
| ISH_EnableDelay_SST | 0 | BOOL | Writer: ISH_EnableDelay_Protecting Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev, ISH_Activate_SST, ISH_Delay_SST |
| ISH_EnableDelay_TSP | 0 | BOOL | Writer: ISH_EnableDelay_Protecting Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev, ISH_Activate_TSP, ISH_Delay_TSP |
| ISH_SST_Frequency | 4 | INT32 | Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev, ISH_Delay_SST, ISH_Delay_TSP |
| ISH_SST_Active | 0 | BOOL | Writer: Global_SST Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev |
| ISH_SST_Viol | 0 | BOOL | Writer: Global_SST Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev |
| ISH_Supervise_SST | 0 | BOOL | Writer: ISH_Activate_SST Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev, Global_SST |
| ISH_Supervise_TSP | 0 | BOOL | Writer: ISH_Activate_TSP Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev, Global_TSP |
| ISH_TSP_Active | 0 | BOOL | Writer: Global_TSP Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev |
| ISH_TSP_Viol | 0 | BOOL | Writer: Global_TSP Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev |
| ISH_UserMODE_bNot_IntemitCollab | 1 | BOOL | Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev, ISH_EnableDelay_Protecting, ISH_EnableDelay_Warning |
| LocalEmergencyStopStatus | 0 | BOOL | Writer: Func_LocalEmergencyStopStatus Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev, InternalEmergencyStop |

xx2200000436

- 6 Apply the configuration to the controller by clicking **Write to Controller** in the **Controller** group in the **Configuration** category.

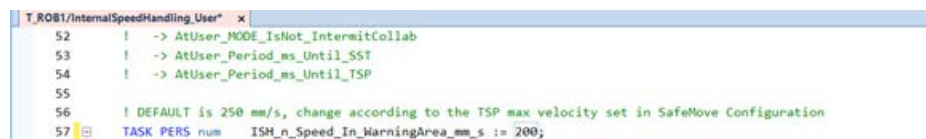
If the **SpeedHandling** function requires to be reactivated after deactivation, make sure:

- the signal **ISH_UserMODE_bNot_IntemitCollab** in **SafeMove** configuration is set to 0, and,
- the function **ISH_b_FunctionalityIsUsed** in **RAPID** program is set to **TRUE**.

Changing the speed limit when **WarningArea** is triggered

When users enter the warning area, the robot speed is limited to 250 mm/sec by default. Use the following procedure to change the speed limit based on risk assessment of the final application:

- 1 In **RobotStudio**, open the **RAPID** program **InternalSpeedHandling_User** in task **T_ROB1**.
- 2 Navigate to the function **ISH_n_Speed_In_WarningArea_mm_s** and set its value from default 250 to any required value.



```
52 | ! -> AtUser_MODE_IsNot_IntemitCollab
53 | ! -> AtUser_Period_ms_Until_SST
54 | ! -> AtUser_Period_ms_Until_TSP
55 |
56 | ! DEFAULT is 250 mm/s, change according to the TSP max velocity set in SafeMove Configuration
57 | TASK_PERS num ISH_n_Speed_In_WarningArea_mm_s := 200;
```

xx2200000437

- 3 Save the change and apply to the controller.

The speed limit can also be changed in **SafeMove** configurations using the following procedure:

- 1 Open the **RobotStudio**.
- 2 Log in the controller using the **Admin** account and request the write access.

Continues on next page

- 3 In the **Controller** tab, choose **Visual SafeMove** from the **Safety** group in the **Configuration** category.
- 4 In the left pane of the window, choose **Global_TSP** under the **Tool Speed Supervisions** from the navigation tree.



xx2200000438

- 5 In the **Visual SafeMove Properties** window, set the **Max speed (mm/s)** in the **Speed limits** area to a required value.



xx2200000439

- 6 Apply the configuration to the controller by clicking **Write to Controller** in the **Controller** group in the **Configuration** category.

Continues on next page

3 Installation and commissioning

3.7.7 Use cases of safety configurations

Continued

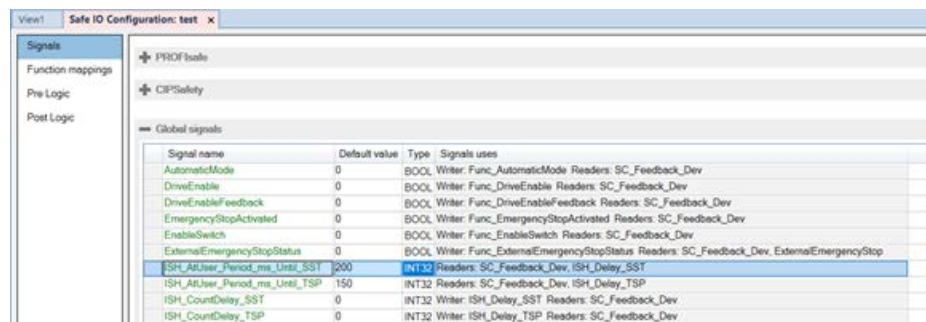
Changing the execution delay time in template SafeMove configuration file

Configurations of SST and TSP are predefined in the template SafeMove configuration file as two global signals ISH_AtUser_Period_ms_Until_SST and ISH_AtUser_Period_ms_Until_TSP.

- ISH_AtUser_Period_ms_Until_SST: default value is 650 ms. If a period of 650 ms elapses after ProtectingArea is triggered but the robot still moves, the SST will be triggered to stop robot movement immediately.
- ISH_AtUser_Period_ms_Until_TSP: default value is 550 ms. If a period of 550 ms elapses after WarningArea is triggered but the robot still moves in a speed larger than the defined speed limit value, the TSP will be triggered to stop robot movement immediately.

It is possible to change the values of ISH_AtUser_Period_ms_Until_SST and ISH_AtUser_Period_ms_Until_TSP according to application requirements using the following procedure. The change must be based on the risk assessment of the final application.

- 1 Open the RobotStudio.
- 2 Log in the controller using the Admin account and request the write access.
- 3 In the **Controller** tab, choose **Visual SafeMove** from the **Safety** group in the **Configuration** category.
- 4 In the **Visual SafeMove** tab, click **Safe IO Configurator** in the **Configuration** group.
- 5 In the displayed **Safe IO Configuration** window, go to the signals **ISH_AtUser_Period_ms_Until_SST** and **ISH_AtUser_Period_ms_Until_TSP** in the global signal list and reset the value as required.



| Signal name | Default value | Type | Signal uses |
|--------------------------------|---------------|-------|--|
| AutomaticMode | 0 | BOOL | Writer: Func_AutomaticMode Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev |
| DriveEnable | 0 | BOOL | Writer: Func_DriveEnable Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev |
| DriveEnableFeedback | 0 | BOOL | Writer: Func_DriveEnableFeedback Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev |
| EmergencyStopActivated | 0 | BOOL | Writer: Func_EmergencyStopActivated Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev |
| EnableSwitch | 0 | BOOL | Writer: Func_EnableSwitch Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev |
| ExternalEmergencyStopStatus | 0 | BOOL | Writer: Func_ExternalEmergencyStopStatus Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev, ExternalEmergencyStop |
| ISH_AtUser_Period_ms_Until_SST | 200 | INT32 | Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev, ISH_Delay_SST |
| ISH_AtUser_Period_ms_Until_TSP | 150 | INT32 | Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev, ISH_Delay_TSP |
| ISH_CountDelay_SST | 0 | INT32 | Writer: ISH_Delay_SST Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev |
| ISH_CountDelay_TSP | 0 | INT32 | Writer: ISH_Delay_TSP Readers: SC_Feedback_Dev |

xx2200000440

- 6 Apply the configuration to the controller by clicking **Write to Controller** in the **Controller** group in the **Configuration** category.

3.8 Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair

Safe handling

Use the following procedure after installation, maintenance, or repair, before initiating motion.



DANGER

Initiating motion without fulfilling the following aspects, may increase the risk for injury or cause damage to the robot.

| | Action |
|---|--|
| 1 | Remove all tools and foreign objects from the robot and its working area. |
| 2 | Verify that the robot is properly secured to its position by all screws, before it is powered up. |
| 3 | Verify that any safety equipment installed to secure the position or restrict the robot motion during service activity is removed. |
| 4 | Verify that the fixture and work piece are well secured, if applicable. |
| 5 | Verify that no personnel is leaning on, or have their head or neck close to the robot. |
| 6 | Verify that all arm covers and paddings, if any, are properly secured to the robot. |
| 7 | If maintenance or repair has been done, verify the function of the part that was maintained. |
| 8 | Verify the application in the operating mode manual reduced speed. |

This page is intentionally left blank

4 Maintenance

4.1 Introduction

Structure of this chapter

This chapter describes all the maintenance activities recommended for the CRB 1100.

It is based on the maintenance schedule found at the beginning of the chapter. The schedule contains information about required maintenance activities including intervals, and refers to procedures for the activities.

Each procedure contains all the information required to perform the activity, including required tools and materials.

The procedures are gathered in different sections and divided according to the maintenance activity.

Safety information

Observe all safety information before conducting any service work.

There are general safety aspects that must be read through, as well as more specific safety information that describes the danger and safety risks when performing the procedures. Read the chapter [Safety on page 17](#) before performing any service work.

The maintenance must be done by qualified personnel in accordance with the safety requirements set forth in the applicable national and regional standards and regulations.



Note

If the CRB 1100 is connected to power, always make sure that the CRB 1100 is connected to protective earth and a residual current device (RCD) before starting any maintenance work.

For more information see:

- *Product manual - OmniCore C30*
- [Robot cabling and connection points on page 88.](#)

4 Maintenance

4.2.1 Specification of maintenance intervals

4.2 Maintenance schedule and expected component life

4.2.1 Specification of maintenance intervals

Introduction

The intervals are specified in different ways depending on the type of maintenance activity to be carried out and the working conditions of the CRB 1100:

- Calendar time: specified in months regardless of whether the system is running or not.
- Operating time: specified in operating hours. More frequent running means more frequent maintenance activities.
- SIS: specified by the robot's SIS (Service Information System). A typical value is given for a typical work cycle, but the value will differ depending on how hard each part is run.

The SIS used in OmniCore is further described in the *Operating manual - OmniCore*.

Robots with the functionality *Service Information System* activated can show active counters in the device browser in RobotStudio, or on the FlexPendant.

4.2.2 Maintenance schedule

Scheduled and non-predictable maintenance

The robot must be maintained regularly to ensure proper function. The maintenance activities and intervals are specified in the table below.

Non-predictable situations also give rise to inspections of the robot. Any damages must be attended to immediately!

Life of each component

The inspection intervals *do not* specify the life of each component. Values for these are specified in the section [Expected component life on page 167](#)

Maintenance schedule

| Maintenance activities | Regularly ⁱ | Every 12 months | Every 36 months | Every 30,000 hours ⁱⁱ | Reference |
|--|------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------------------------|--|
| Cleaning the robot | x | | | | Cleaning the CRB 1100 on page 168 |
| Inspecting the robot | x | | | | Check for abnormal wear or contamination. |
| Inspecting the laser scanners | x | | | | Check for damages, defective or lack of effectiveness. |
| Inspecting the information labels | | x | | | Inspecting the information labels on page 169 |
| Inspecting the timing belt ⁱⁱⁱ | | | x | | Inspecting timing belts on page 172 |
| Inspecting the robot harness | | x ^{iv} | | | Inspecting the robot cabling on page 171 |
| Lubricating the robot harness | | x ^v | | | Lubricating the cable package on page 176 |
| Replacing the SMB battery pack | | | x ^{vi} | | Replacing the battery pack on page 178 |
| Running the <i>Cyclic Brake Check</i> routine ^{vii} | x ^{viii} | | | | Recommended to robots with the SafeMove option. See <i>Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove</i> . |
| Overhaul of complete robot | | | | x | |

ⁱ "Regularly" implies that the activity is to be performed regularly, but the actual interval may not be specified by the robot manufacturer. The interval depends on the operation cycle of the robot, its working environment and movement pattern. Generally, the more contaminated environment, the shorter intervals. The more demanding movement pattern (sharper bending cable harness), the shorter intervals.

ⁱⁱ Operating hours counted by the DTC = Duty time counter.

ⁱⁱⁱ Axis-1 and axis-4 timing belts can be accessed and inspected only after the axis-1 and axis-4 motors are removed. It is recommended to inspect the timing belts when replacing the motors.

Continues on next page

4 Maintenance

4.2.2 Maintenance schedule

Continued

- iv Replace when damage or cracks is detected or life limit is approaching.
- v Replace when damage or cracks is detected or life limit is approaching.
- vi The battery is to be replaced at given maintenance interval or at battery low alert.
- vii Not needed separately if already included in the application.
- viii Recommended test interval is within the range 8-48 hours.

4.2.3 Expected component life

Expected life depends on usage

The expected life of a specific component of the robot can vary greatly depending on how hard it is run.

Expected component life

| Component | Expected life | Note |
|---|---------------------------|------|
| Cable harness, normal usage ⁱ | 30000 hours ⁱⁱ | |
| Cable harness, extreme usage ⁱⁱⁱ | 30000 hours ⁱⁱ | |
| Gearboxes | 30000 hours | |

ⁱ Examples of "normal usage" in regard to movement: most material handling applications and limited use of bending backwards mode of axis 3.

ⁱⁱ Severe chemical or thermal environments, or similar environments, can result in shortened life expectancy.

ⁱⁱⁱ Examples of "extreme usage" in regard to movement: press tending, very severe palletizing applications, major use of axis 1 movement and major use of bending backwards of axis 3.

4 Maintenance

4.3.1 Cleaning the CRB 1100

4.3 Cleaning activities

4.3.1 Cleaning the CRB 1100

General

To secure high uptime it is important that the CRB 1100 is cleaned regularly. The frequency of cleaning depends on the environment in which the manipulator works. Different cleaning methods are allowed depending on the type of protection of the CRB 1100.



Note

Always verify the protection type of the robot before cleaning.



WARNING

Turn off all electrical power supplies to the robot before starting the cleaning.

Special cleaning considerations

This section specifies some special considerations when cleaning the robot.

- Always use cleaning equipment as specified. Any other cleaning equipment may shorten the life of the robot.
- Always check that all protective covers are fitted to the robot before cleaning.
- Do not point the water jet at connectors, joints, sealings or gaskets.
- Do not use compressed air to clean the robot.
- Do not use solvents that are not approved by ABB to clean the robot.
- Do not remove any covers or other protective devices before cleaning the robot.

Cleaning methods

This following table defines what cleaning methods are allowed for ABB manipulators depending on the protection type.

| Protection type | Cleaning method | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| | Vacuum cleaner | Wipe with cloth | Rinse with water | High pressure water, steam or spray |
| Standard | Yes | Yes. With light cleaning detergent. | No | No |

Cables

Movable cables need to be able to move freely:

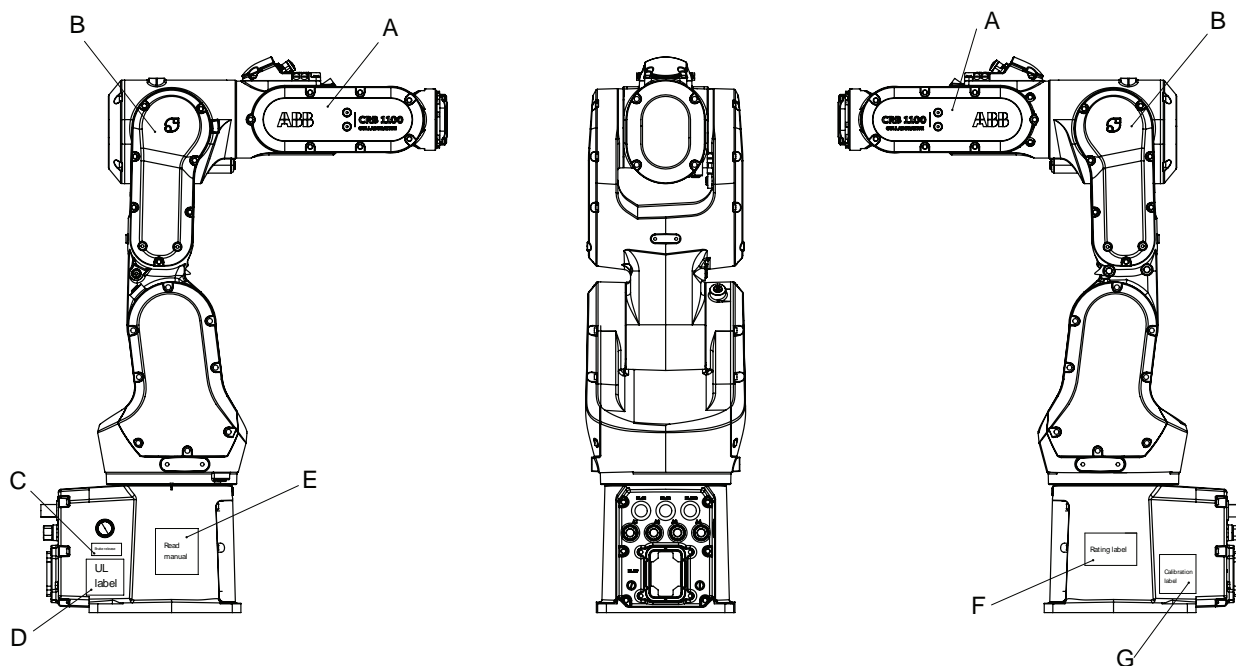
- Remove waste material, such as sand, dust and chips, if it prevents cable movement.
- Clean the cables if they have a crusty surface, for example from dry release agents.

4.4 Inspection activities

4.4.1 Inspecting the information labels

Location of labels

These figures show the location of the information labels to be inspected. The symbols are described in section [Safety symbols on manipulator labels on page 21](#).



xx2100000161

| | |
|---|---|
| A | ABB logo, also specifying robot type |
| B | Cobot label |
| C | Instruction label Brake release |
| D | UL label |
| E | Read manual label, also specifying warning labels |
| F | Rating label, CE label and AbsAcc label |
| G | Calibration label |

Required tools and equipment

Visual inspection, no tools are required.


Continues on next page

4 Maintenance

4.4.1 Inspecting the information labels

Continued

Inspecting, labels

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• electric power supply• hydraulic pressure supply• air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. | |
| 2 | Inspect the labels, located as shown in the figures. | |
| 3 | Replace any missing or damaged labels. | Article numbers for the labels and plate set is specified in Spare parts on page 713 . |

4.4.2 Inspecting the robot cabling


Required tools and equipment

Visual inspection, no tools are required.

Other tools and procedures may be required if the spare part needs to be replaced. These are specified in the replacement procedure.

Inspection, robot cabling

Use this procedure to inspect the robot cabling.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• electric power supply to the robot• hydraulic pressure supply to the robot• air pressure supply to the robot Before entering the robot working area. | |
| 2 | Visually inspect: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• the control cabling between the robot and control cabinet• the cabling to motors 1 and 2. Look for abrasions, cuts or crush damage. | |
| 3 | Replace the cabling if wear or damage is detected. | |

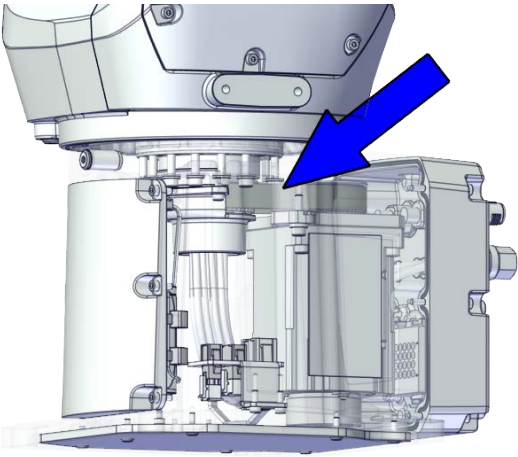
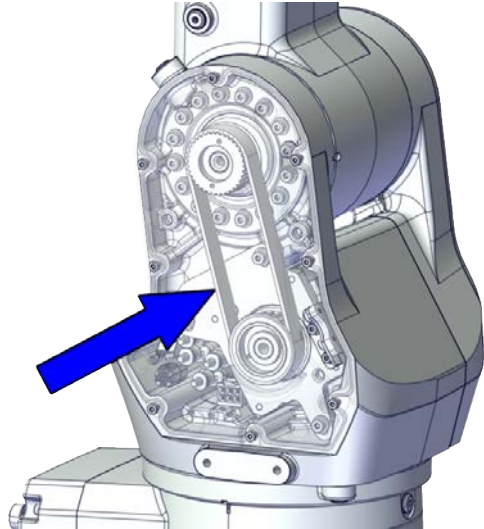
4 Maintenance

4.4.3 Inspecting timing belts

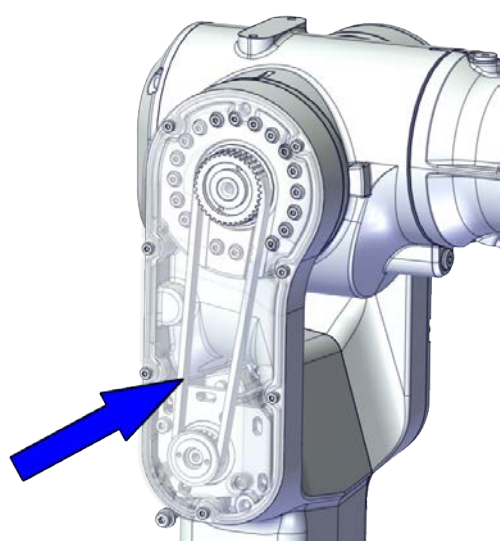
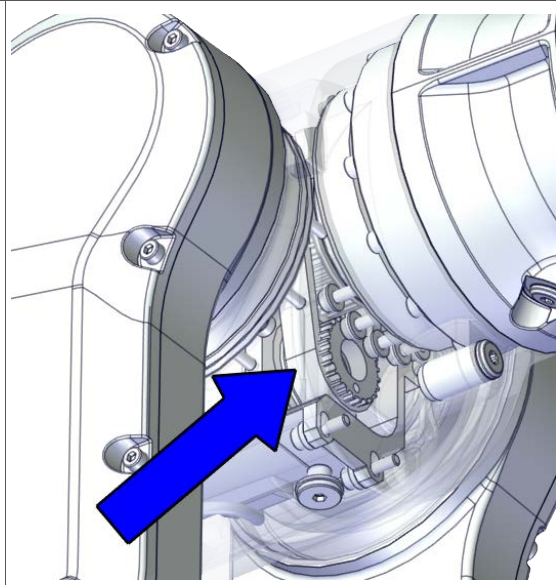
4.4.3 Inspecting timing belts

Location of timing belts

The timing belts are located as shown in the figures.

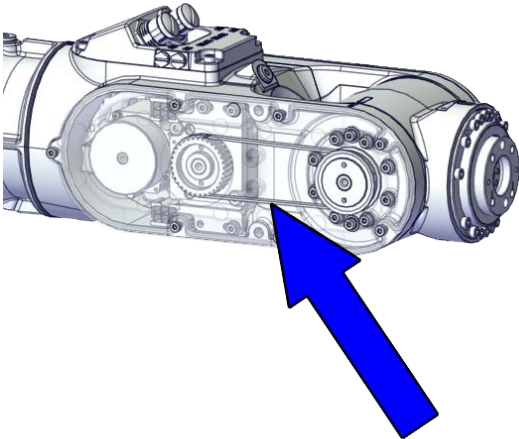
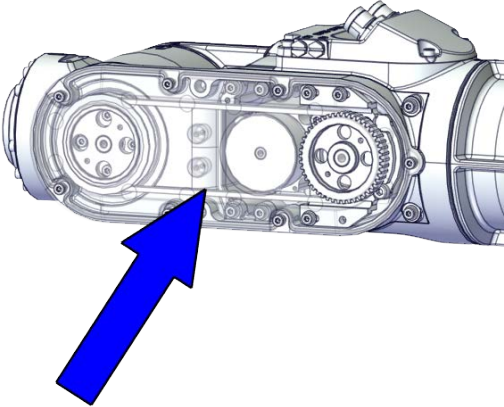
| Axis | Location |
|------|---|
| 1 | <div></div> <div>xx1800002457</div> |
| 2 | <div></div> <div>xx1800002458</div> |

Continues on next page

| Axis | Location |
|------|---|
| 3 |  <p>xx1800002459</p> |
| 4 |  <p>xx1800002460</p> |

4 Maintenance

4.4.3 Inspecting timing belts
Continued

| Axis | Location |
|------|---|
| 5 |  xx1800002461 |
| 6 |  xx1800002462 |

Required tools and equipment

| Equipment | Note |
|--|--|
| Standard toolkit | The content is defined in the section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Other tools and procedures may be required if the spare part needs to be replaced. These are specified in the replacement procedure. | |

Continues on next page

Timing belt tension


The table describes the timing belt tension.

| Axis | Force | | Frequency | |
|--------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| | Used timing belt ⁱ | New timing belt | Used timing belt ⁱ | New timing belt |
| Axis 1 | 58.24-63.56 N | 83.2-90.8 N ⁱⁱ | 255-273 Hz ⁱⁱ | 281-359 Hz |
| Axis 2 | 68.18-75.04 N ⁱⁱ | 97.4-107.2 N | 163-174 Hz | 180-229 Hz ⁱⁱ |
| Axis 3 | 21.7-23.94 N ⁱⁱ | 31-34.2 N | 102-109 Hz | 113-143 Hz ⁱⁱ |
| Axis 4 | 20.09-22.05 N | 28.7-31.5 N | 285-304 Hz ⁱⁱ | 314-400 Hz ⁱⁱ |
| Axis 5 | 13.58-14.84 N ⁱⁱ | 19.4-21.2 N | 151-162 Hz | 167-213 Hz ⁱⁱ |
| Axis 6 | 8.96-9.8 N ⁱⁱ | 12.8-14 | 81.3-86.9 Hz | 90-114 Hz ⁱⁱ |

- ⁱ Used belt is the one having been installed and used for more than 12 hours.
Compared with the new timing belt, the force value decreases 15% and the frequency value decreases 28% when the timing belt has been installed and used for more than 12 hours but less than 150 hours. When the timing belt has been installed and used for more than 150 hours, both the force and frequency values decrease 30%.
- ⁱⁱ The value range is only for reference.

Inspecting timing belts

Use this procedure to inspect timing belts.

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area. | |
| 2 | Gain access to each <i>timing belt</i> by removing the cover. | |
| 3 | Check the timing belts for damage or wear. | |
| 4 | Check the <i>timing belt pulleys</i> for damage. | |
| 5 | If any damage or wear is detected, the part must be replaced! | |
| 6 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. If the belt has no tension, adjust it! | See Timing belt tension on page 175 . |

4 Maintenance

4.5.1 Lubricating the cable package

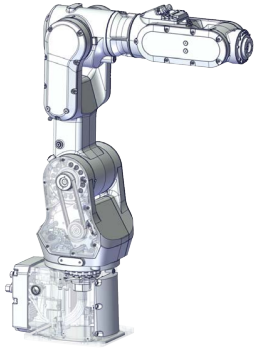
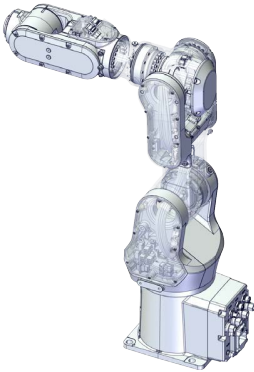
4.5 Lubricating activities

4.5.1 Lubricating the cable package

Location of the cable package

The CRB 1100 main cable package has two segments, upper and lower. Inside the swing there is a division point.

The cable packages are located as shown in the figure.

| Lower cable package | Upper cable package |
|--|---|
|  xx1800002465 |  xx1800002466 |

Required tools and equipment


| Equipment | Note |
|--|--|
| Standard toolkit | The content is defined in the section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Other tools and procedures may be required if the spare part needs to be replaced. These are specified in the replacement procedure. | |

Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|------------|----------------|--------|
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |

Lubricating the cable package

Use this procedure to lubricate the cable package.

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|-------------|
| 1 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• electric power supply• hydraulic pressure supply• air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the robot working area. | |

Continues on next page

4.5.1 Lubricating the cable package

Continued

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | Gain access to the cable package by removing the covers. | |
| 3 | Check the cable package for damage or wear. | |
| 4 | If any damage or wear is detected, the part must be replaced! | See Replacing the upper cable package on page 191 and Replacing the lower cable package on page 235 . |
| 5 | Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package. | |
| 6 | Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package. | |

4 Maintenance

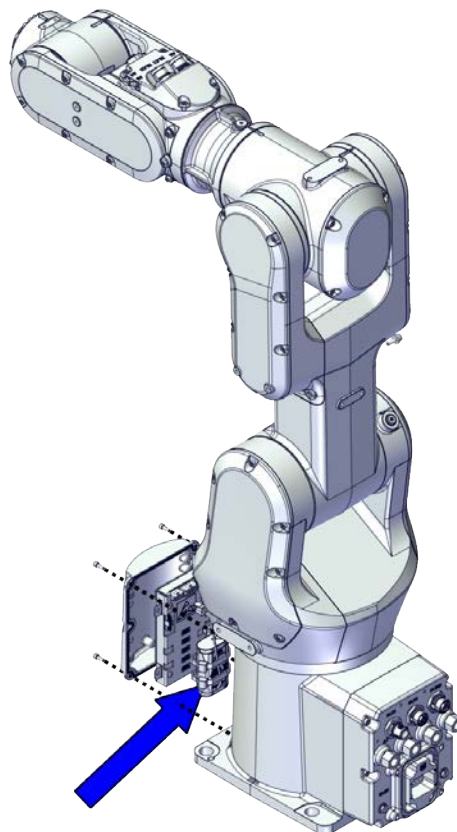
4.6.1 Replacing the battery pack

4.6 Replacing/changing activities

4.6.1 Replacing the battery pack

Location of the battery pack

The battery pack is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002463

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--------------|----------------|---|
| Battery pack | 3HAC044075-001 | Battery includes protection circuits. Only replace with the specified spare part or an ABB-approved equivalent. |

Continues on next page

Required tools and equipment

| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |

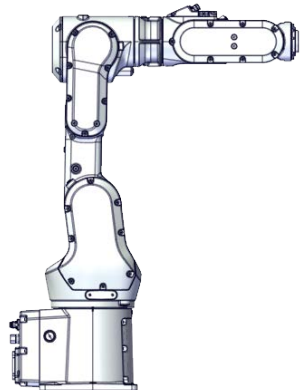
Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|--------------|----------------|--------|
| Cable straps | - | |
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |

Removing the battery pack

Use these procedures to remove the battery pack.

Preparations before removing the battery pack


| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |
| 2 | Jog all axes to zero position. |  xx1800003288 |

Continues on next page





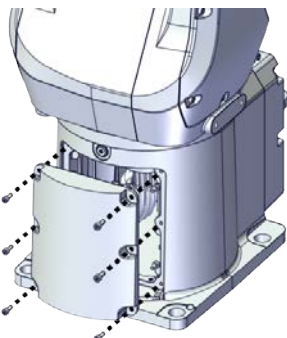

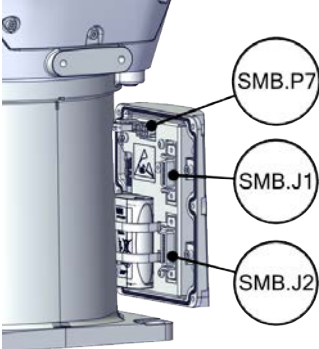
4 Maintenance

4.6.1 Replacing the battery pack

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 3 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• electric power supply• hydraulic pressure supply• air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. | |



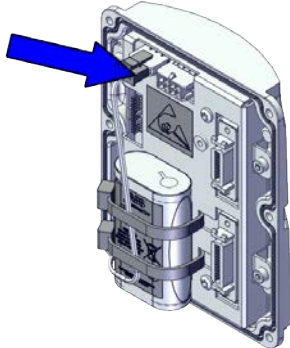
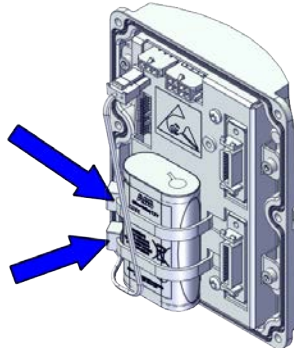
Disconnecting the SMB connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 48 . | |
| 3 | Remove the SMB cover attachment screws and carefully open the cover.  CAUTION Clean cover from metal residues before opening. Metal residues can cause shortage on the boards which can result in hazardous failures.  CAUTION There are cabling attached to the cover. The cover cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed. |  xx1800002467 |
| 4 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• SMB.P7• SMB.J1• SMB.J2  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  xx1800002468 |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 5 | Remove the SMB cover completely from the base. | |

Removing the battery pack

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 48 . | |
| 3 | Disconnect the battery cable. |  xx1800002469 |
| 4 | Remove the battery pack by cutting the cable strap. |  xx1800002470 |

Continues on next page

4 Maintenance


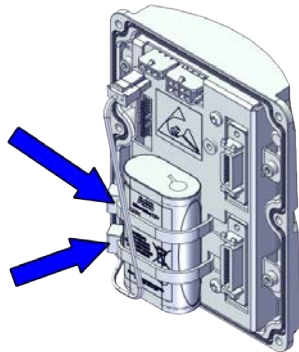
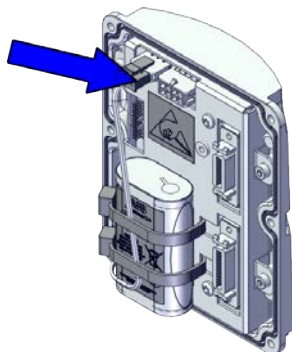
4.6.1 Replacing the battery pack

Continued


Refitting the battery pack

Use these procedures to refit the battery pack.


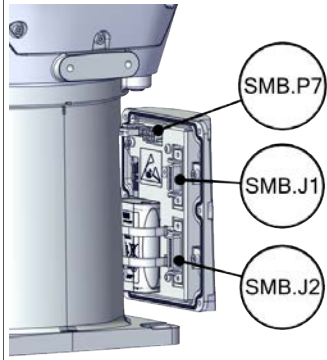

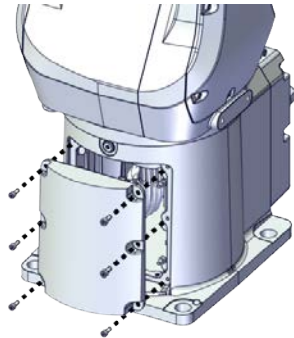
Refitting the battery pack

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 48</i> . | |
| 2 | Secure the battery pack using the cable strap. |  xx1800002470 |
| 3 | Reconnect the battery cable. |  xx1800002469 |


Reconnecting the SMB connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 |  ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 48</i> . | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002468</p> |
| 3 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |
| 4 | <p>Refit the SMB cover to the base.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002467</p> |

Concluding procedure

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Recalibrate the robot. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |
| 2 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 161.</p> | |

This page is intentionally left blank

5 Repair

5.1 Introduction

Structure of this chapter

This chapter describes repair activities for the CRB 1100. Each procedure contains the information required to perform the activity, for example spare parts numbers, required special tools, and materials.



WARNING

Repair activities not described in this chapter must only be carried out by ABB.

Report replaced units



Note

When replacing a part on the CRB 1100, report to your local ABB the serial number, the article number, and the revision of both the replaced unit and the replacement unit.

This is particularly important for safety equipment to maintain the safety integrity of the installation.

Safety information

Make sure to read through the chapter [Safety on page 17](#) before commencing any service work.



Note

If the CRB 1100 is connected to power, always make sure that the CRB 1100 is connected to protective earth and a residual current device (RCD) before starting any repair work.

For more information see:

- *Product manual - OmniCore C30*

5 Repair

5.2.1 Mounting instructions for sealings

5.2 General procedures

5.2.1 Mounting instructions for sealings

General

This section describes how to mount different types of sealings.

Equipment

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|------------|----------------|---|
| Grease | 3HAC031695-001 | Harmonic Grease 4B No.2 Used to lubricate the seals. |

Rotating sealings

The following procedures describe how to fit rotating sealings.



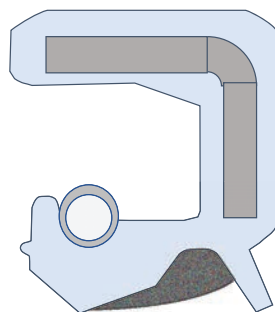
CAUTION

Please observe the following before commencing any assembly of sealings:

- Protect the sealing during transport and mounting, especially the main lip on radial sealings.
- Keep the sealing in its original wrappings or protect it well before actual mounting.
- The fitting of sealings and gears must be carried out on clean workbenches.
- Use a protective sleeve for the main lip during mounting, when sliding over threads, keyways or other sharp edges.

Radial sealings

A radial sealing consists of a flexible rubber lip bonded to a rigid metal case. Only one side of the sealing is static with a metal insert.



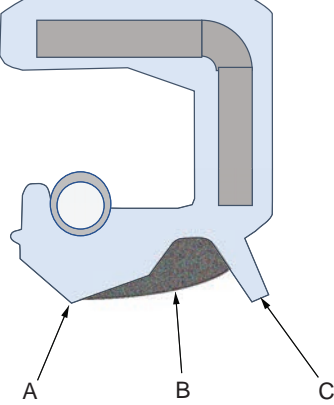
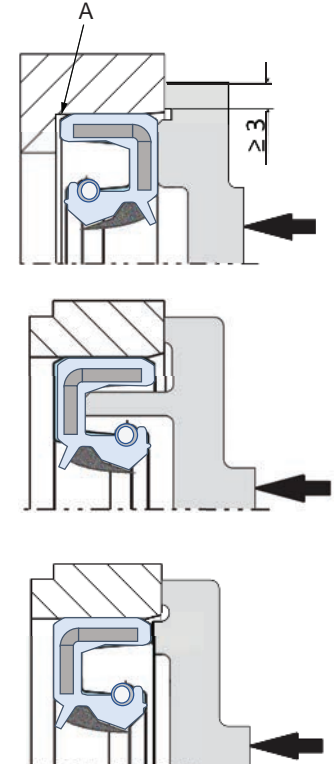
xx2300000433

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 | Check the sealing to ensure that: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The sealing is of the correct type.• There is no damage on the main lip. | |

Continues on next page

5.2.1 Mounting instructions for sealings

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | Inspect the shaft surface before mounting. If scratches or damage are found, the shaft must be replaced since it may result in future leakage. Do not try to grind or polish the shaft surface to get rid of the defect. | |
| 3 | <p>Lubricate the sealing with grease just before fitting. (Not too early - there is a risk of dirt and foreign particles adhering to the sealing.)</p> <p>Fill 2/3 of the space between the dust lip and the main lip with grease. If the sealing is without dust lip, just lubricate the main lip with a thin layer of grease.</p> | <p>Article number is specified in Equipment on page 186.</p>  <p>xx2000000071</p> <p>A Main lip B Grease C Dust lip</p> |
| 4 | Mount the sealing correctly with a mounting tool. Never hammer directly on the sealing as this may result in leakage. |  <p>xx2000000072</p> <p>A Gap</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.2.1 Mounting instructions for sealings

Continued

Flange sealings and static sealings

The following procedure describes how to fit flange sealings and static sealings.

| | Action |
|---|---|
| 1 | Check the flange surfaces. They must be even and free from pores. It is easy to check flatness using a gauge on the fastened joint (without sealing compound). If the flange surfaces are defective, the parts may not be used because leakage could occur. |
| 2 | Clean the surfaces properly in accordance with the recommendations of ABB. |
| 3 | Distribute the sealing compound evenly over the surface. |
| 4 | Tighten the screws evenly when fastening the flange joint. |

O-rings

The following procedure describes how to fit o-rings.

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Ensure that the correct o-ring size is used. | |
| 2 | Check the o-ring for surface defects, burrs, shape accuracy, or deformation. | Defective o-rings, including damaged or deformed o-rings, may not be used. |
| 3 | Check the o-ring grooves and mating surfaces. They should be free of pores, contamination and obvious scratches/damage. | |
| 4 | Lubricate the o-ring with grease. | |
| 5 | Tighten the screws evenly while assembling. | |
| 6 | Check that the o-ring is not squashed outside the o-ring groove. | |

5.2.2 Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts

5.2.2 Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts

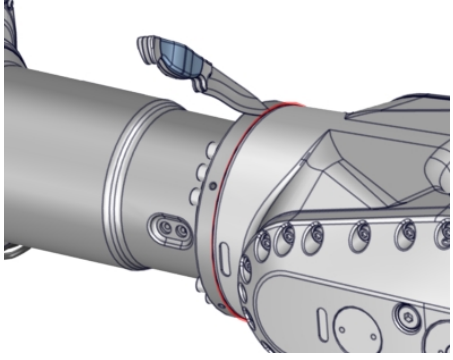
General

Follow the procedures in this section whenever breaking the paint of the robot during replacement of parts.

Required equipment

| Equipment | Spare parts | Note |
|-----------------|-------------|---------|
| Cleaning agent | | Ethanol |
| Knife | | |
| Lint free cloth | | |

Removing

| | Action | Description |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Cut the paint with a knife in the joint between the part that will be removed and the structure, to avoid that the paint cracks. |  xx2300000950 |
| 2 | Carefully grind the paint edge that is left on the structure to a smooth surface. | |

5 Repair

5.3 Cable harness

5.3 Cable harness

General

The CRB 1100 main cable package has two segments, upper and lower. Inside the swing there is a division point.

The lower cable package runs from the base and up through into the swing. The upper cable package runs from the swing, up through the lower arm, into the housing and then into the wrist.

The main cable package includes the cabling for all the six motors. Optional air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling can also be included.

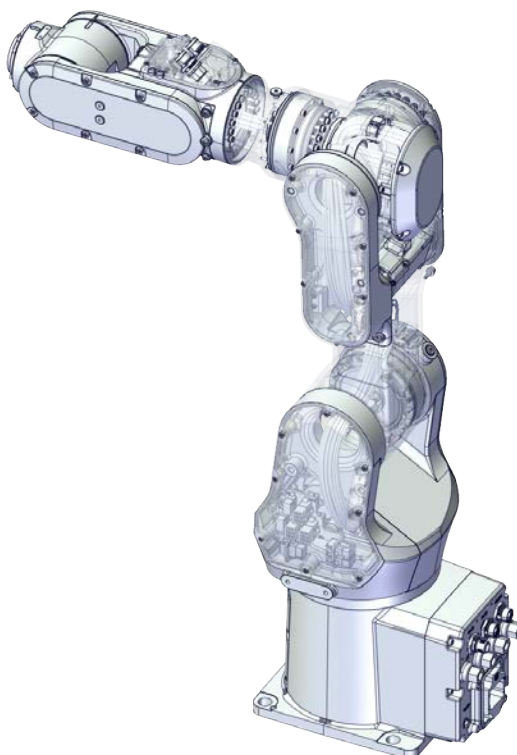
As standard feature, the connector interface is located at the rear of the base. The interface can also be bottom mounted, as an option. This section describes both configurations.

Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Location of the upper cable package

The upper cable package is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002466

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|---|----------------|-----------------------------|
| Upper cable harness (CP/CS and air hose, with Ethernet) | 3HAC060419-003 | Used with CRB 1100-4/0.475. |
| Extension upper cable harness (CP/CS and air hose, with Ethernet) | 3HAC060416-003 | Used with CRB 1100-4/0.58. |
| Process hub with lamp unit (CP/CS and air hose, with Ethernet) | 3HAC077335-001 | |
| Multi-color lamp unit (14 mm) | 3HAC076495-001 | |
| Lamp unit cover | 3HAC075972-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 2 | 3HAC083588-001 | . |
| Timing belt, axis 2 | 3HAC061935-001 | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|---|
| Motor with flange, axis 3 | 3HAC083587-001 | |
| Timing belt, axis 3 | 3HAC061936-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 6 | 3HAC083584-001 | |
| Timing belt, axis 6 | 3HAC061939-001 | |
| Swing cover | 3HAC069051-001 | |
| Swing support cover | 3HAC069052-001 | |
| Wrist cover | 3HAC069061-001 | |
| Housing cover | 3HAC069054-001 | |
| Lower arm cover | 3HAC069057-001 | |
| Lower arm support cover | 3HAC069059-001 | |
| Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors | 3HAC071020-001 | Cooling pads are wear parts. One cooling pad sheet contains 6 pieces of small pad. Replace if damaged with one piece each time. |
| Cooling pad for axis-3 and -4 motors | 3HAC071021-001 | Cooling pads are wear parts. One cooling pad sheet includes 10 pieces of small pad. Replace if damaged with one piece each time. |
| Washer | 3HAC063985-001 | 9x4.3x1, Steel |
| Washer | 3HAC064765-001 | 7x3.2x1.5, Steel |

Required tools and equipment

| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |
| Sonic tension meter | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| Dynamometer | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| M3x25 eye bolt | - | Included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001. |

Continues on next page


| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|-------------------------------|----------------|---|
| J5.C2 connector assembly tool | - | Included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001. Used to remove and refit the J5.C2 connector, if the Ethernet cabling is equipped. |

Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|----------------|----------------|--|
| Cable straps | - | |
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |
| Locking liquid | - | Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243) |

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. |  Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mounting flange is used for installation of the calibration tool. |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 664 . |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. | |

Removing the upper cable package

Use these procedures to remove the upper cable package.

Preparations before removing the upper cable package

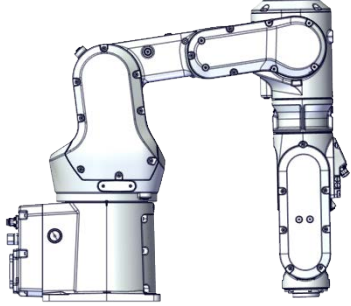

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |

Continues on next page



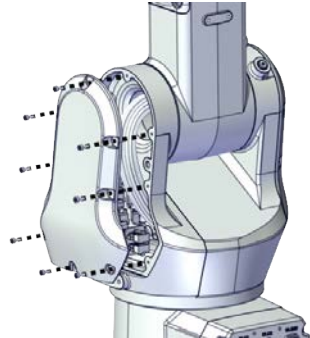
5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | <p>Jog the robot to the specified position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Axis 1: 0° • Axis 2: 110° (CRB 1100-4/0.475) / 95° (CRB 1100-4/0.58) • Axis 3: -20° (CRB 1100-4/0.475) / -6° (CRB 1100-4/0.58) • Axis 4: 0° • Axis 5: 0° • Axis 6: No significance. |  <p>xx1800003289</p> |
| 3 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p> | |


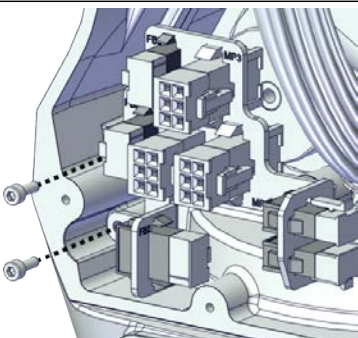

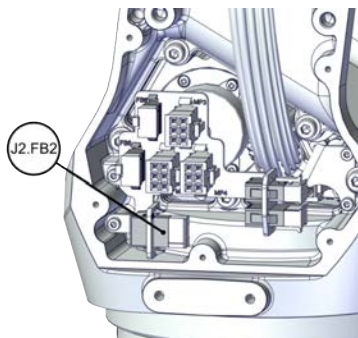
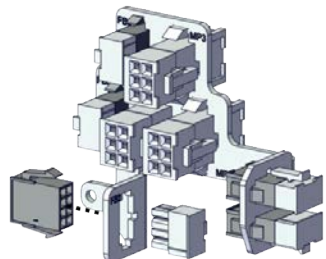
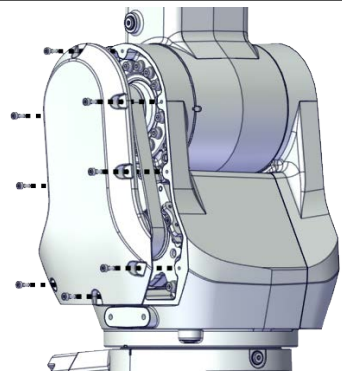
Removing the axis-2 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |
| 2 | <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down.</p> <p>Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors.</p> | |
| 3 | Remove the swing support cover. |  <p>xx1800002488</p> |

Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued


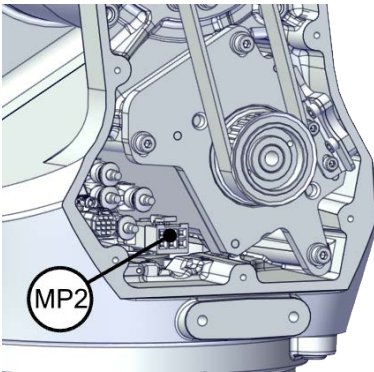
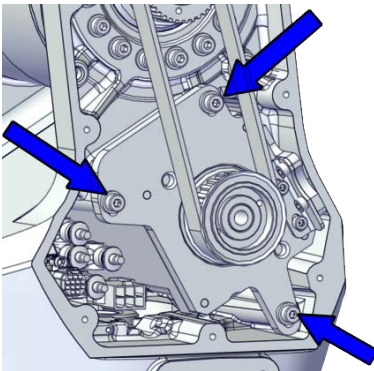
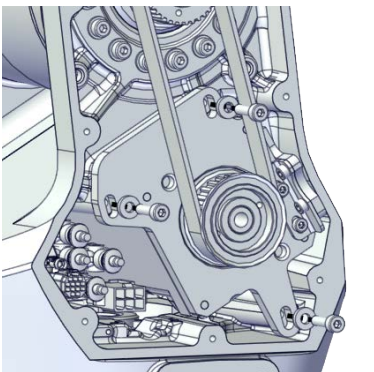


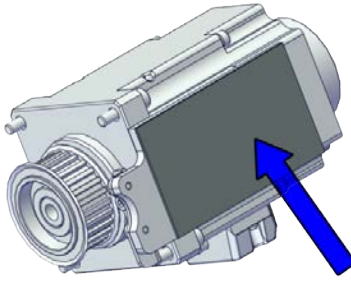
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | <p>Remove the connector plate.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cablings that are attached to the connector plate! The connector plate cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed from the plate.</p> |  <p>xx1800002489</p> |
| 5 | <p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> J2.FB2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> |  <p>xx1800002490</p> |
| 6 | <p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the connector plate.</p> |  <p>xx1800002491</p> |
| 7 | <p>Remove the swing cover.</p> |  <p>xx1800002492</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

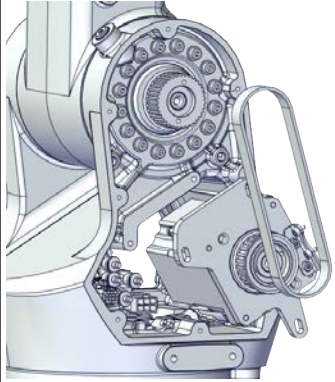
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|---|---|
| 8 | <p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MP2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> |  <p>xx1800002495</p> |
| 9 | <p>Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt.</p> |  <p>xx1800002493</p> |
| 10 | <p>Remove the screws and washers.</p> |  <p>xx1800002494</p> |
| 11 | <p>Carefully lift out the motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the motor cabling. The motor cannot be removed completely until the connector is disconnected, as shown in following step.</p> | <p>Cooling pad location</p>  <p>xx1800003603</p> |



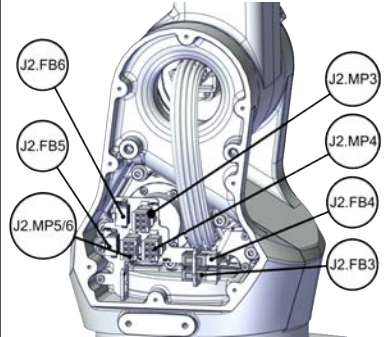
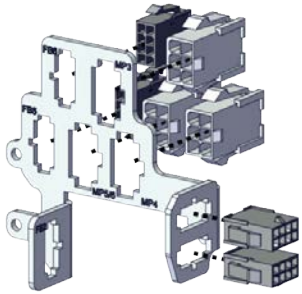
Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|--|---|
| 12 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  <p>xx1800002496</p> |

Disconnecting the connectors at the division point

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.FB3,4,5,6 • J2.MP3,4,5/6  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  <p>xx1800002497</p> |
| 3 | Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the connector plate. |  <p>xx1800002498</p> |


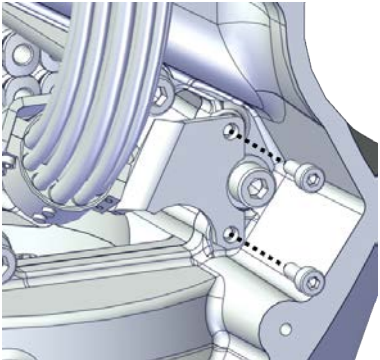
Continues on next page

5 Repair


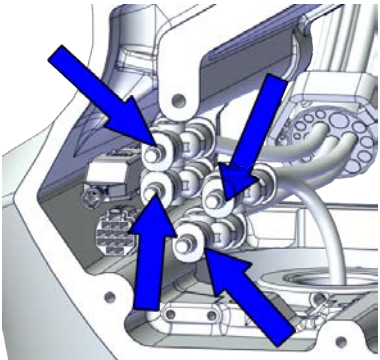
5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

Separating the cable package from the swing

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the cable bracket. |  xx1800002499 |



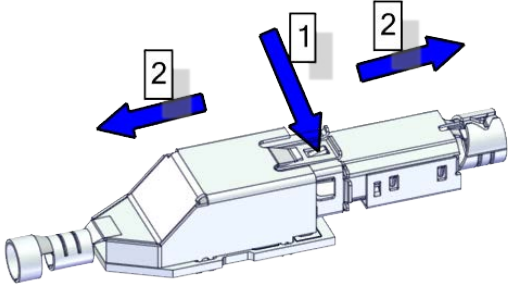
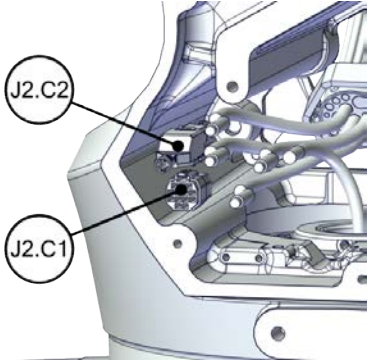
Disconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Disconnect the air hoses from the Y-shaped connectors. |  xx1800002500 |



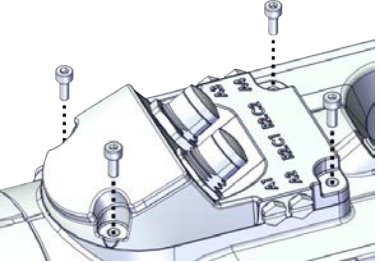
Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | <p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.C1 • J2.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the J2.C2 (for Ethernet cabling).</p>  <p>xx1800002943</p> |  <p>xx1800002501</p> |

Removing the process hub

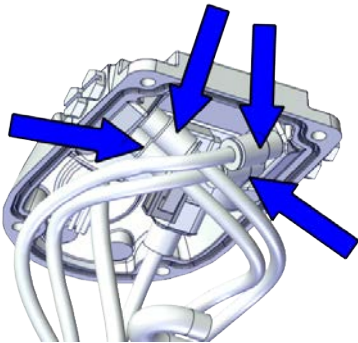
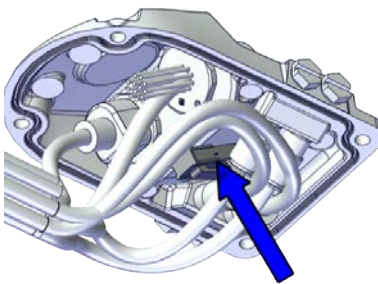
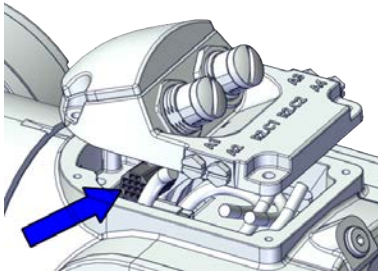
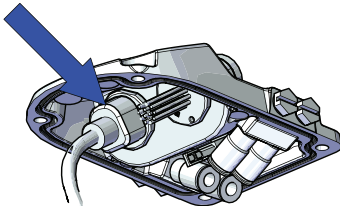
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |
| 2 | <p>Remove the screws and carefully open the cover.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps.</p> |  <p>xx2000002219</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | Disconnect the air hoses. |  xx1800002945 |
| 4 | Carefully pull out lamp unit connector behind the air hose connectors and disconnect the connector J5.UL. |  xx1800002946 |
| 5 | For robots with CP/CS cabling Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• J5.C1 |  xx2100000293 |
| 6 | For robots with Ethernet cabling Disconnect the connector J5.C2 using the tool. | J5.C2 connector assembly tool: -  xx1800002948 |

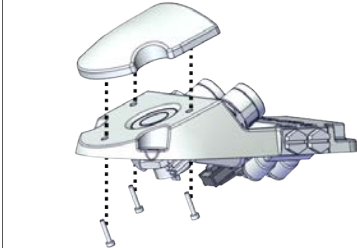
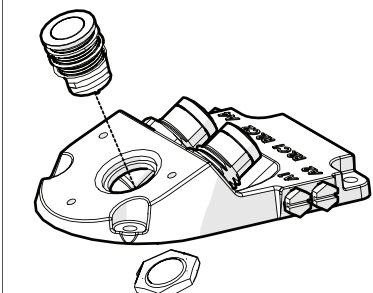
Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package


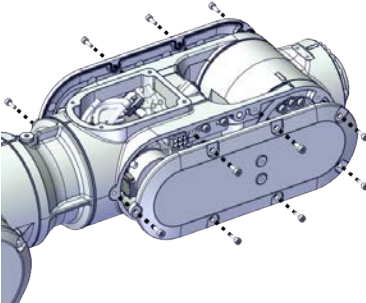
Continued

Removing the lamp unit

Notice that the procedure is valid only when the lamp unit needs a replacement.

| | Action | Note |
|---|-----------------------------|--|
| 1 | Remove the lamp unit cover. |  xx2000002220 |
| 2 | Remove the lamp unit. |  xx2000002221 |

Removing the wrist covers

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the wrist covers from both sides. |  xx1800002949 |


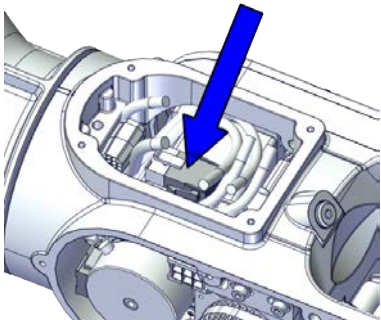
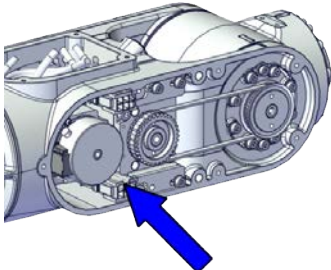
Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

Disconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Access the connector FB5 from the process hub and disconnect the connector. |  xx1800002950 |
| 3 | Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• MP5 |  xx1800002993 |

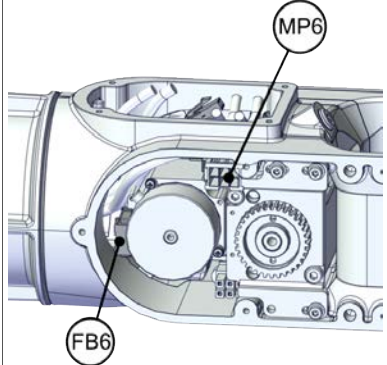
Disconnecting the axis-6 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |



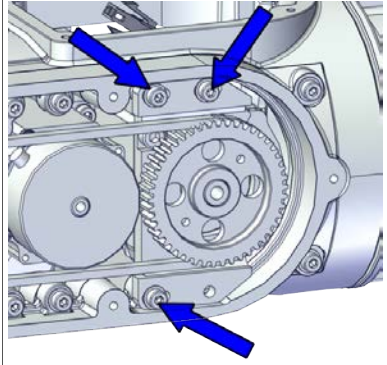
Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MP6 • FB6 |  <p>xx1800002994</p> |

Removing the axis-6 motor

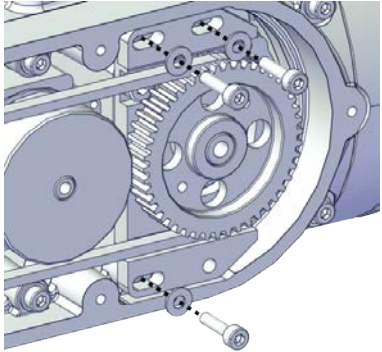
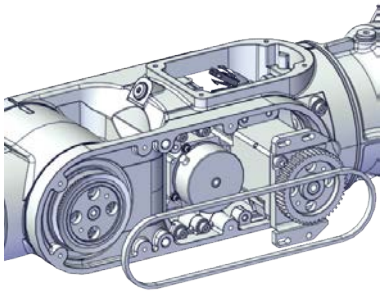
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  <p>xx1800002995</p> |

Continues on next page


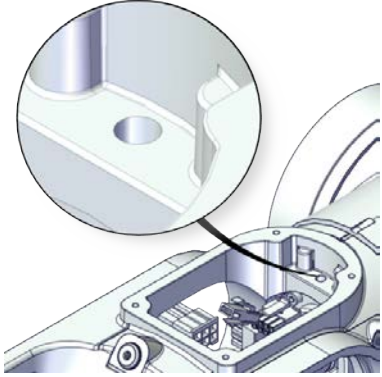
5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 4 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800002996 |
| 5 | Carefully lift out the motor. | |
| 6 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800002997 |

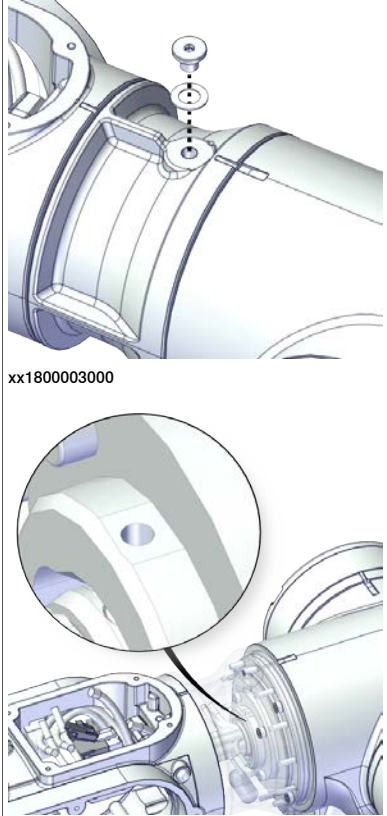
Loosening the cable package from axis-4 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.475 Access the cable package locking screw on the axis-4 gearbox from the wrist and then loosen the locking screw. |  xx1800003031 |


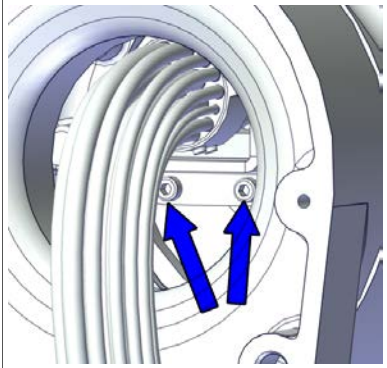
Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 3 | <p>Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58</p> <p>Remove the plug screw and washer on the extender unit to access the cable package locking screw on the axis-4 gearbox and then loosen the locking screw.</p> |  <p>xx1800003000</p> <p>xx1800003001</p> |

Separating the upper cable harness from the axis-2 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |
| 2 | Remove the cable bracket. |  <p>xx1800003002</p> |


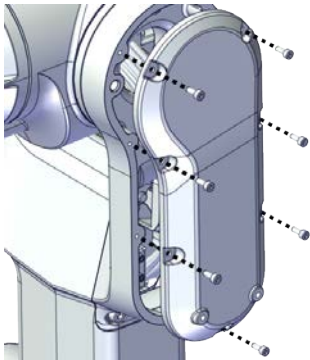

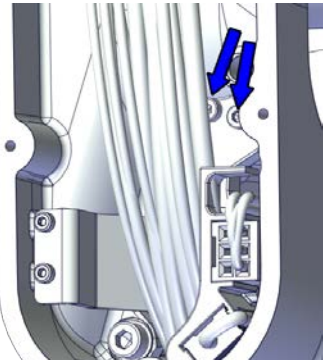

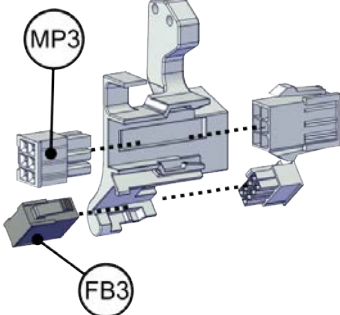
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

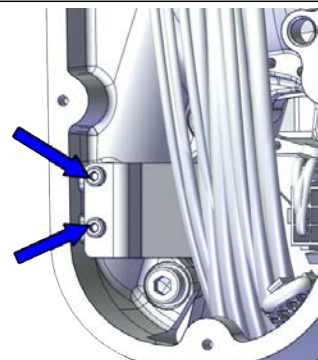
Continued

Disconnecting the axis-3 motor connectors



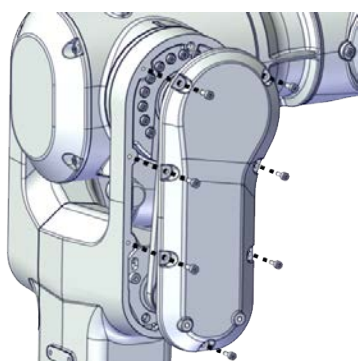
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the lower arm support cover. |  xx1800003003 |
| 3 | Remove the connector plate.  CAUTION Be aware of the cablings that are attached to the connector plate! The connector plate cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed from the plate, as shown in following step. |  xx1800003004 |
| 4 | Slide the connectors out of the connector plate and disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• FB3• MP3  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  xx1800003005 |

Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package *Continued*

| | Action | Note |
|---|---------------------------|---|
| 5 | Remove the cable bracket. |  xx1800003006 |

Removing the axis-3 motor

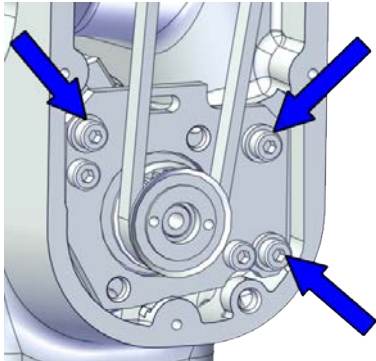
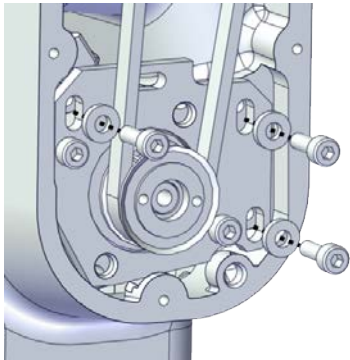

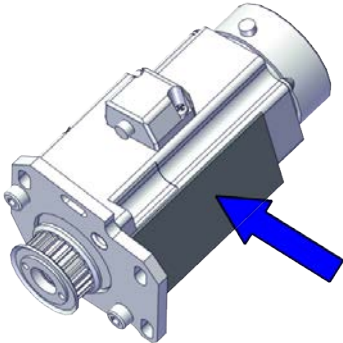
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Remove the lower arm cover. |  xx1800003007 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

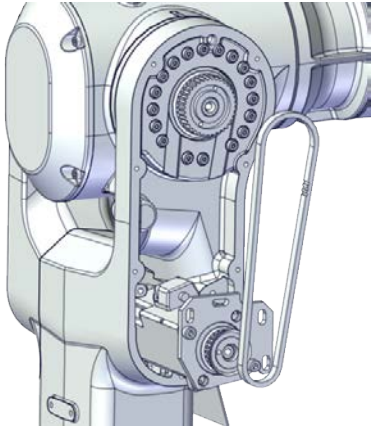
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 4 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800003008 |
| 5 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800003009 |
| 6 | Carefully lift out the motor.  CAUTION A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad. | Cooling pad location  xx1800003604 |


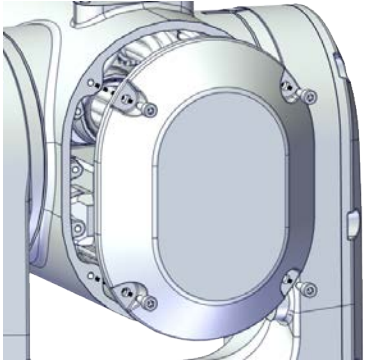
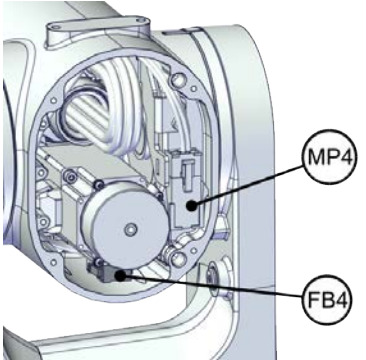
Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 7 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  <p>xx1800003010</p> |

Disconnecting the axis-4 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the housing cover. |  <p>xx1800003011</p> |
| 3 | Disconnect the motor connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB4 • MP4 |  <p>xx1800003012</p> |


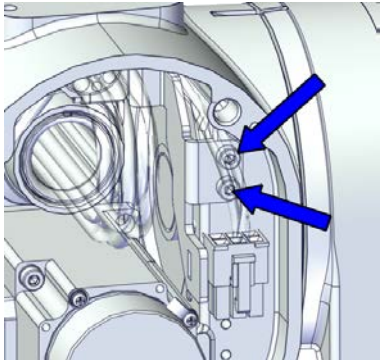
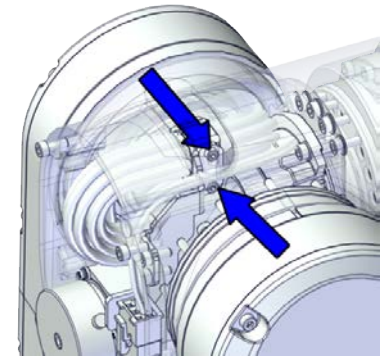
Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

Separating the upper cable package from the housing

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the cable bracket. |  xx1800003013  xx1800003014 |

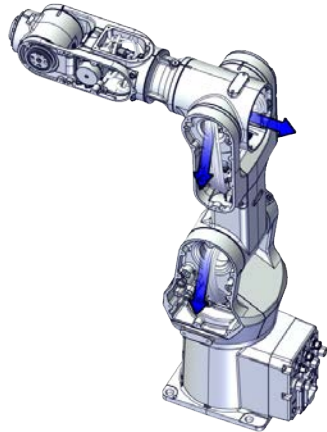
Pulling out the upper cable harness

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Pull out the upper cable harness from the robot in the direction shown in the figure. |  xx1800003015 |

Continues on next page



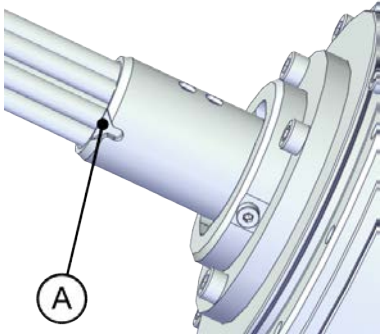
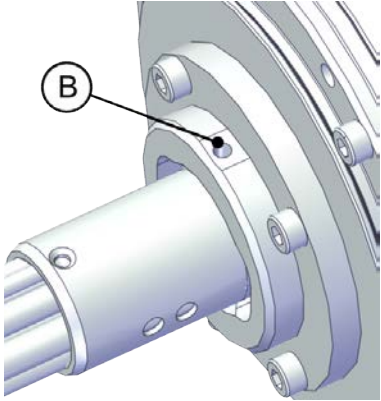
5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package
Continued

Refitting the upper cable package

Use these procedures to refit the upper cable package.

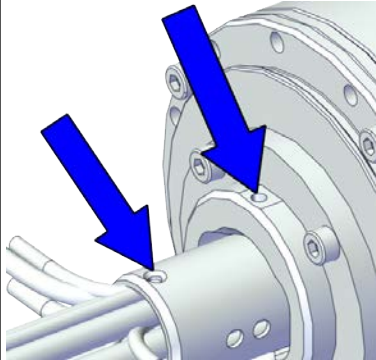
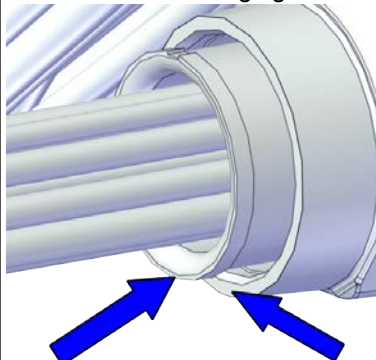
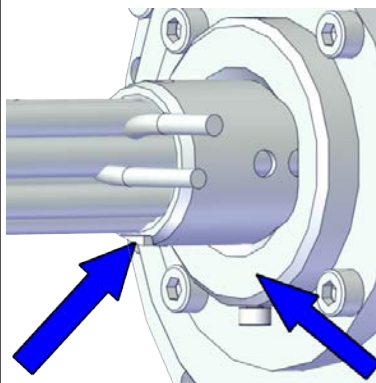
Refitting the upper cable harness through the axis-4 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | <p>Insert the cable package in the housing and through the axis-4 gearbox.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p> | <p>Cable protection tube orientation: use the notch (A) on the cable protection tube as a reference when inserting the cable package, which should be at the opposite direction to the locking screw hole (B) on the gearbox.</p>  <p>xx1800003017</p>  <p>xx1800003601</p> |

Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package
Continued

Securing the upper cable package to the axis-4 gearbox



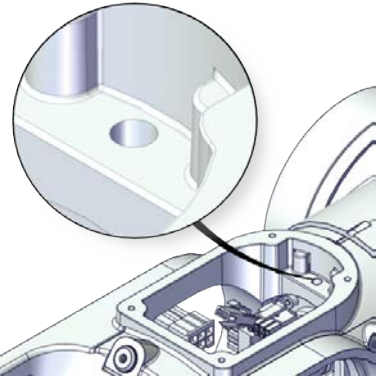
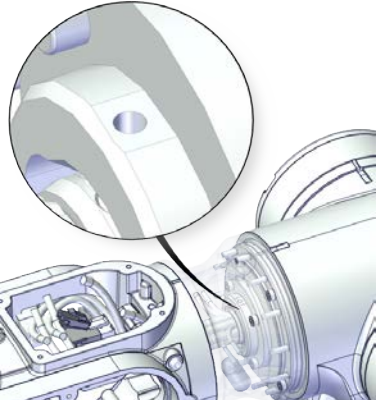
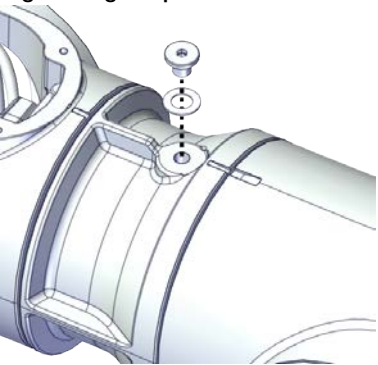
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Make sure that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The hole on the cable protection tube is aligned with the locking screw hole on the gearbox. The cable protection tube surface is completely parallel with the pulley cover at one side and with the flange at the other side. | <p>Holes to be aligned are shown in the following figure.</p>  <p>xx1800003018</p> <p>Surfaces to be paralleled are shown in the following figures.</p>  <p>xx1800003019</p>  <p>xx1800003020</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued



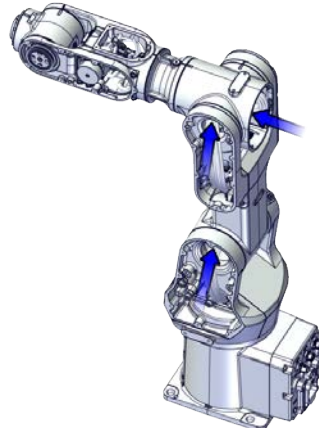
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | <p>Apply a little Loctite 243 to the locking screw and refit the locking screw.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Make sure the locking screw header is parallel with flange surface.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>If there is locking liquid residues on the screw or screw hole, please clean it before refitting. Remove residual locking liquid after refitting.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 (1 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.475</p>  <p>xx1800003031</p> <p>Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58</p>  <p>xx1800003001</p> |
| 3 | <p>Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58</p> <p>Refit the plug screw and washer on the extender unit.</p> | <p>Plug screw: 3HAC064146-001 Tightening torque: 2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003000</p> |

Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

Guiding the upper cable package down to the swing

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Guide the upper cable package to go through from the housing, through the lower arm, down to the swing.</p> <p>When inserting the cable package, leave the axis-4 motor connectors in the housing and the axis-3 motor connectors in the lower arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>It is possible to remove the lower arm support and swing support for easy routing of the cable package. Remember to refit the lower arm support and swing support after the cable package is inserted to place.</p> |  <p>xx1800003016</p> |

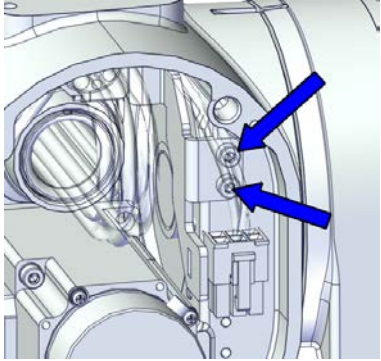
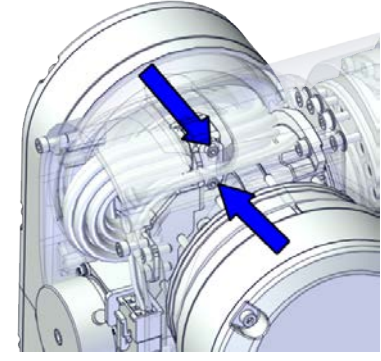

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

Securing the upper cable package to the housing

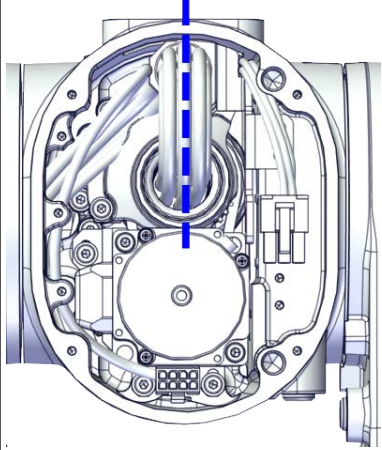

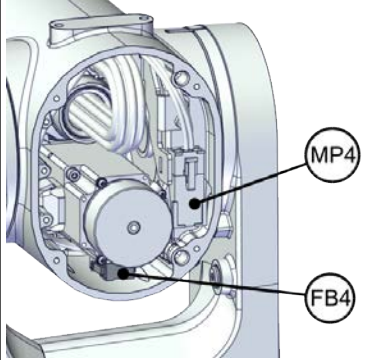
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Refit the cable bracket. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003013</p> <p>Screw: M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003014</p> |
| 2 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |

Continues on next page

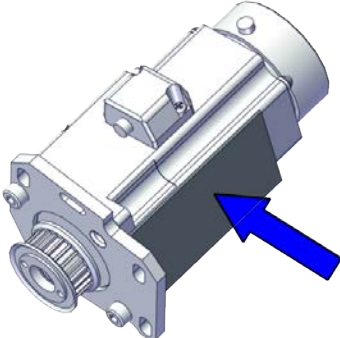
5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

Reconnecting the axis-4 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | <p>Check the cabling status. Make sure the cabling is in vertical state and is not twisted.</p> |  <p>xx1800003618</p> |
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB4 • MP4 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003012</p> |

Refitting the axis-3 motor

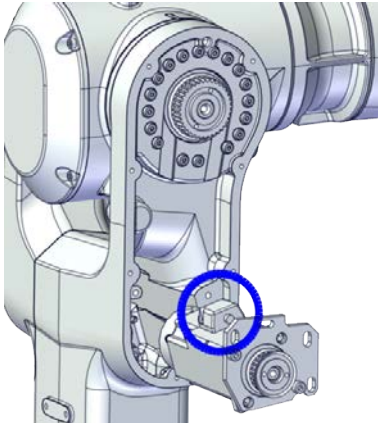

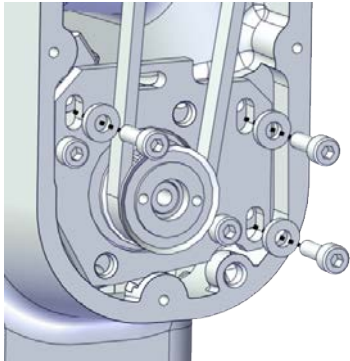
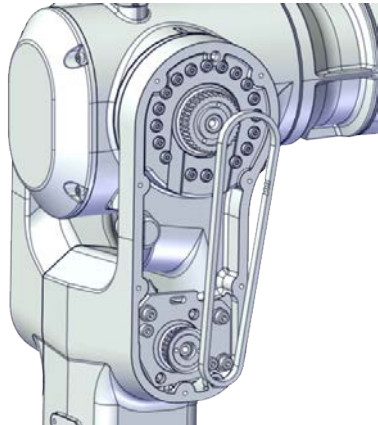
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Check that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages • the motor is clean and undamaged. | |
| 2 | <p>Check the cooling pad. Replace if damaged.</p> | <p>Cooling pad for axis-3 and -4 motors: 3HAC071021-001</p>  <p>xx1800003604</p> |

Continues on next page


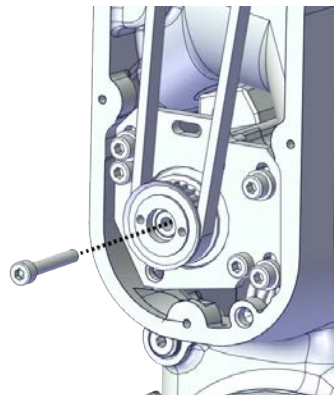
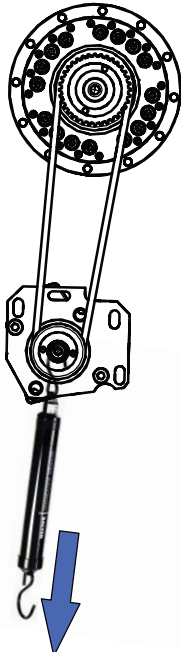
5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the lower arm. | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003021</p> |
| 4 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washer, 3HAC063985-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800003009</p> |
| 5 | Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys. |  <p>xx1800003022</p> |

Continues on next page

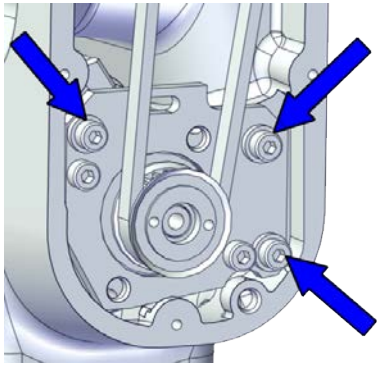
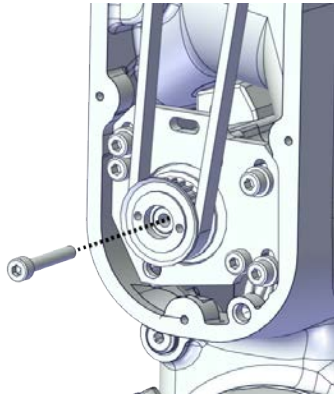
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 6 | <p>Install an M4x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not insert the entire screw to the hole.</p> |  <p>xx1900000009</p> |
| 7 | <p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force.</p> | <p>Initial referenced force for used belt: 21.7-23.94 N (for reference only)</p> <p>Initial referenced force for new belt: 31-34.2 N</p>  <p>xx1900000028</p> |

Continues on next page


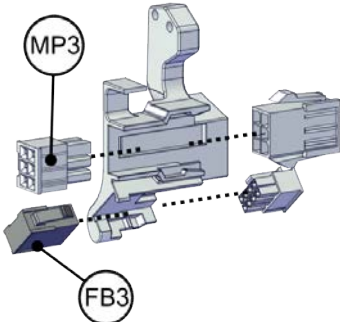
5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|---|--|
| 8 | Secure the motor with the screws. | <p>Tightening torque: 3 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003008</p> |
| 9 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. | <p>Used belt: 102-109 Hz New belt: 113-143 Hz (for reference only)</p> |
| 10 | If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust. | |
| 11 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  <p>xx1900000009</p> |


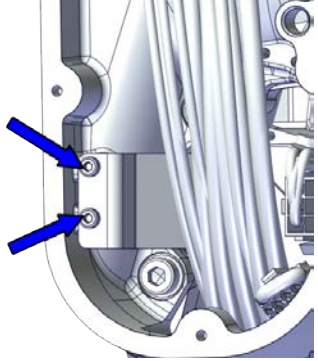
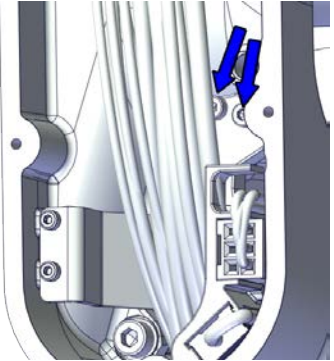
Reconnecting the axis-3 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Slide the connectors into the connector plate and reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB3 • MP3 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003005</p> |

Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |
| 3 | Refit the cable bracket. | Screw: M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm  xx1800003006 |
| 4 | Refit the connector plate. | Screw: M3x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm  xx1800003004 |

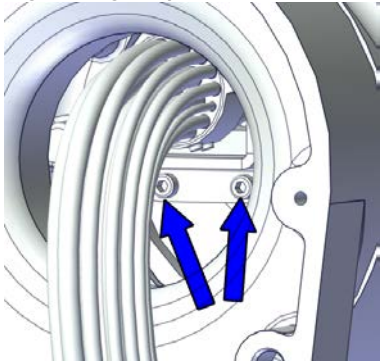
Continues on next page

5 Repair


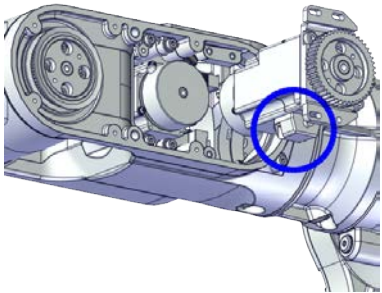
5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

Securing the upper cable package to the axis-2 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|--------------------------|--|
| 1 | Refit the cable bracket. | <p>Screw: M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003002</p> |


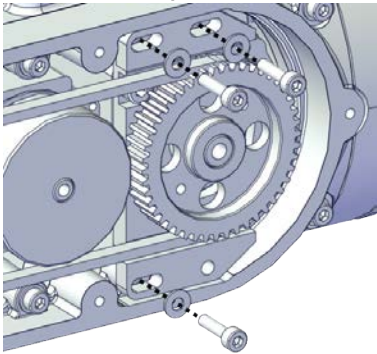
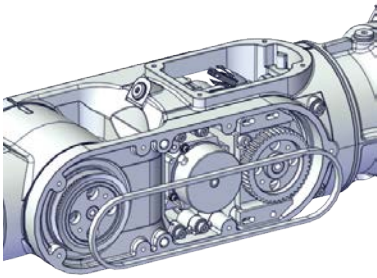

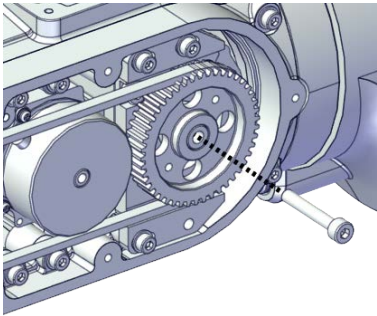
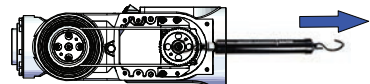
Refitting the axis-6 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Check that: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages• the motor is clean and undamaged. | |
| 2 | <p>Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the lower arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Leave the connectors FB5 and FB6 accessible from the process hub and the connectors MP5 and MP6 accessible from wrist side.</p> | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003023</p> |

Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

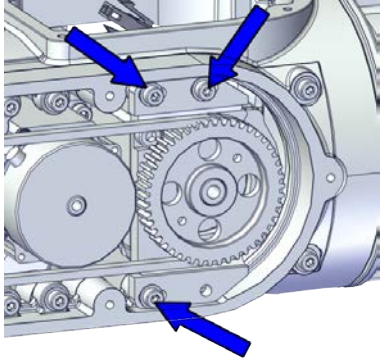
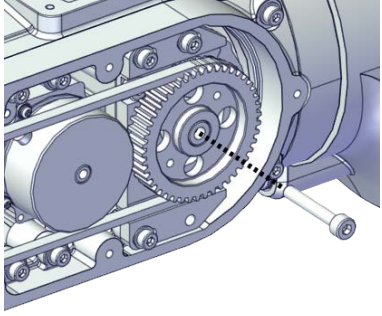
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 3 | Refit the screws and washers.  Note Do not tighten the screws yet. | Screw: M3x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)  xx1800002996 |
| 4 | Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys. |  xx1800003024 |
| 5 | Install an M4x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.  Note Do not insert the entire screw to the hole. |  xx1900000007 |
| 6 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force. | Initial referenced force for used belt: 8.96-9.8 N (for reference only) Initial referenced force for new belt: 12.8-14  xx1900000026 |

Continues on next page


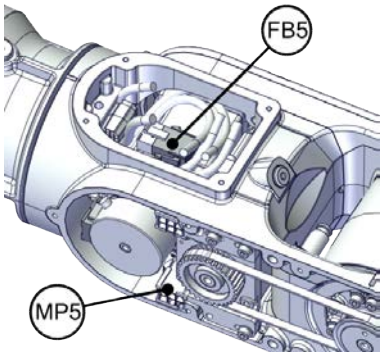
5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|---|--|
| 7 | Secure the motor with the screws. | <p>Tightening torque: 1.4 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002995</p> |
| 8 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. | <p>Used belt: 81.3-86.9 Hz New belt: 90-114 Hz (for reference only)</p> |
| 9 | If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust. | |
| 10 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  <p>xx1900000007</p> |


Reconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB5 • MP5 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003025</p> |


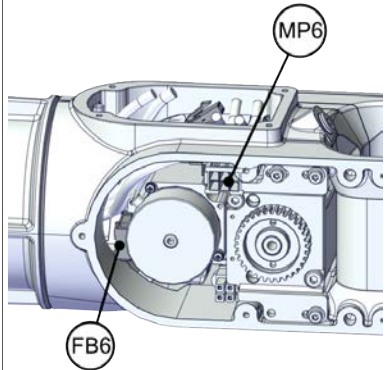

Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

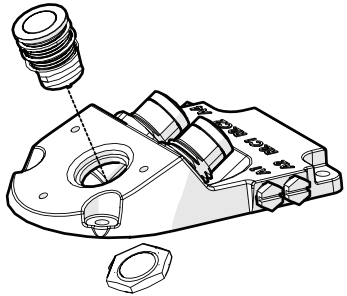
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 2 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |
| 3 | Insert the cabling and connectors into the wrist. | |

Reconnecting the axis-6 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Reconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB6 • MP6  Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector. |  xx1800002994 |
| 2 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |
| 3 | Insert the cabling and connectors into the wrist. | |

Refitting the lamp unit

Notice that the procedure is valid only when the lamp unit needs a replacement.

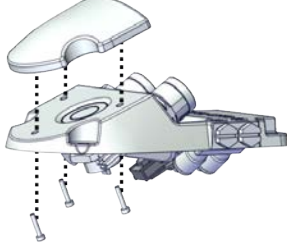
| | Action | Note |
|---|----------------------|---|
| 1 | Refit the lamp unit. | Multi-color lamp unit (14 mm): 3HAC076495-001  xx2000002221 |

Continues on next page

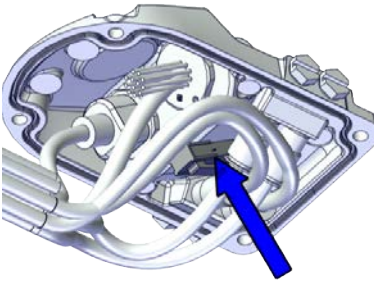

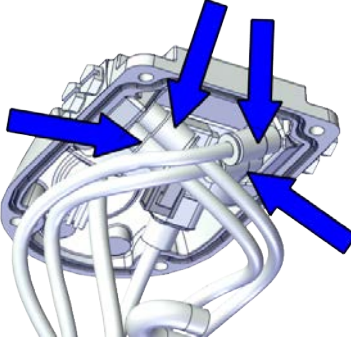
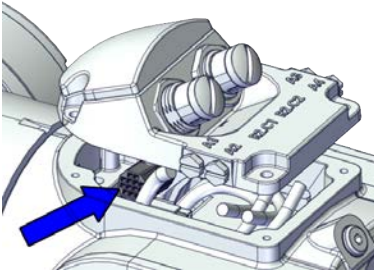
5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|----------------------------|---|
| 2 | Refit the lamp unit cover. | <p>Lamp unit cover: 3HAC075972-001 Screw: M2x8 12.9 Gleitmo 605 (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2000002220</p> |

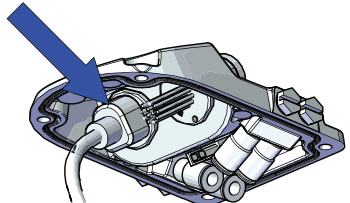

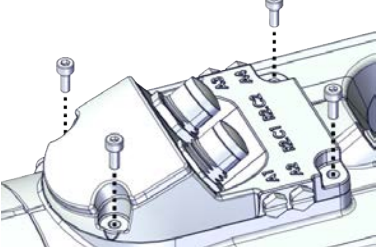
Refitting the process hub

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Reconnect the lamp unit connector J5.UL and place the connector behind the air hose connectors. |  <p>xx1800002946</p> |
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses. The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800002945</p> |
| 3 | <p>For robots with CP/CS cabling</p> <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> J5.C1 |  <p>xx2100000293</p> |


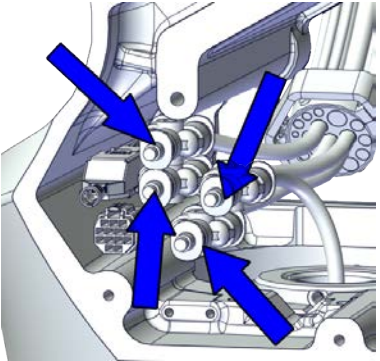
Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 4 | For robots with Ethernet cabling Reconnect the connector J5.C2 using the tool. | J5.C2 connector assembly tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001  xx1800002948 |
| 5 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |
| 6 | Refit the cover. | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx2000002219 |

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)


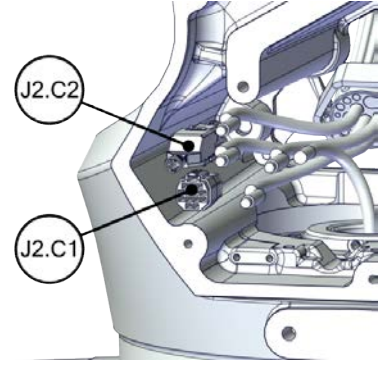
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern to the Y-shaped connectors.  Tip See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses. The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector. |  xx1800002500 |

Continues on next page

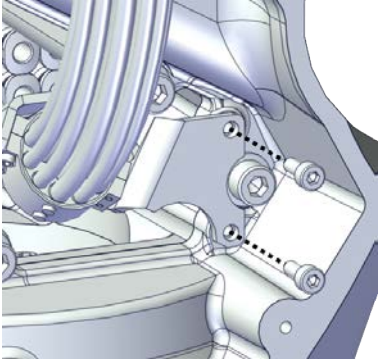
5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• J2.C1• J2.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800002501</p> |

Securing the cable package to the swing

| | Action | Note |
|---|--------------------------|--|
| 1 | Refit the cable bracket. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002499</p> |

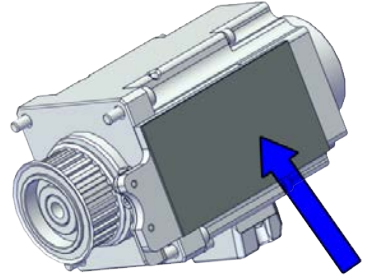
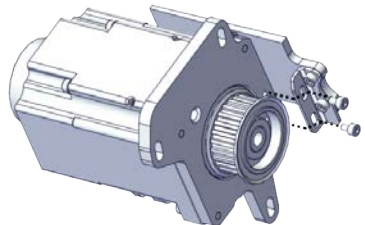

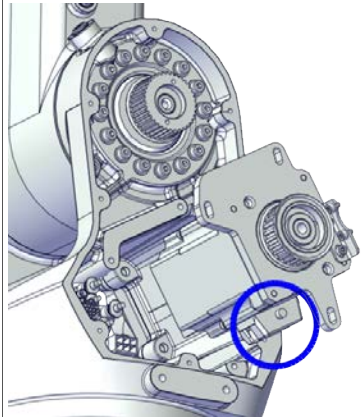
Refitting the axis-2 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | <p>Check that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages• the motor is clean and undamaged. | |

Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued


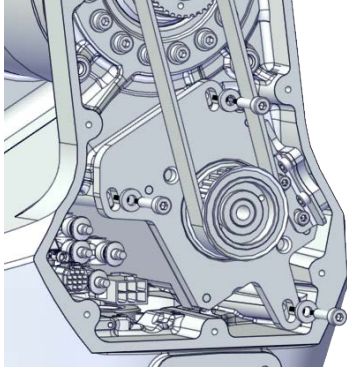
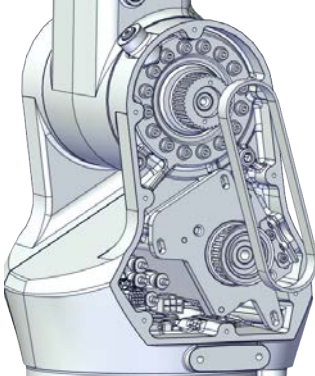

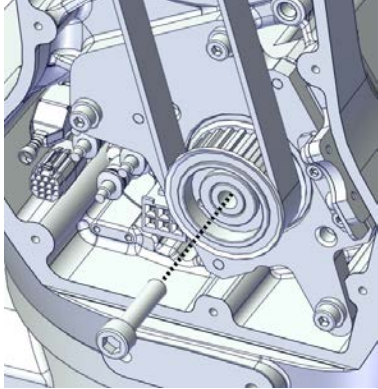
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Check the cooling pad. Replace if damaged, as shown in the following step. | <p>Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors: 3HAC071020-001</p>  <p>xx1800003603</p> |
| 3 | Remove the screws. Replace with a new cooling pad and then refit the screws. | <p>Screw: M3x5 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003026</p> |
| 4 | <p>Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the swing.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Bend the motor signal cable back towards the swing support.</p> | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003027</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

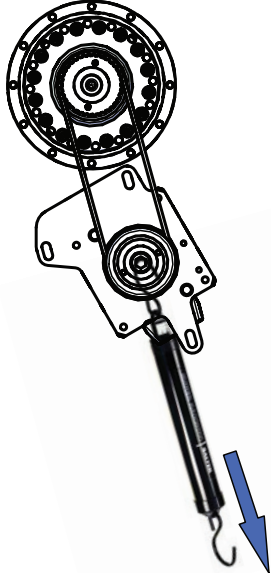
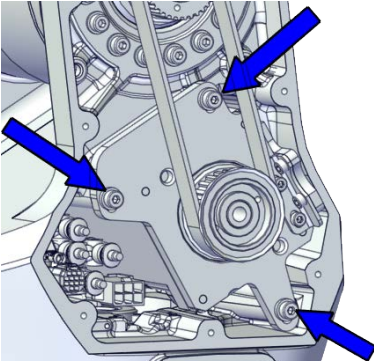
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 5 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washer, 3HAC063985-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800002494</p> |
| 6 | <p>Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys.</p> |  <p>xx1800003028</p> |
| 7 | <p>Install an M6x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not insert the entire screw to the hole.</p> |  <p>xx1900000010</p> |

Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

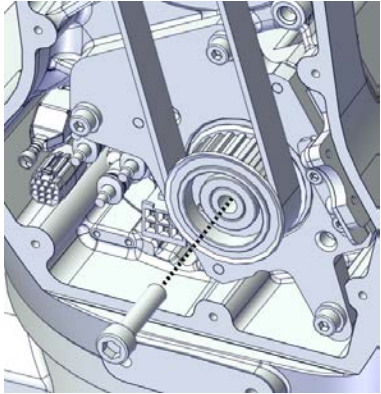

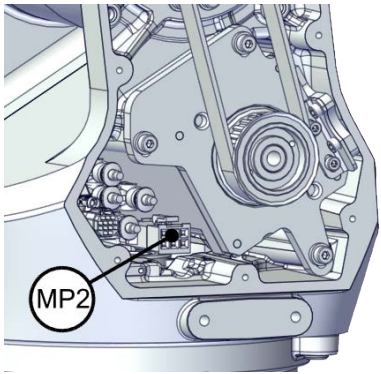
| | Action | Note |
|----|---|--|
| 8 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force. | <p>Initial referenced force for used belt: 68.18-75.04 N (for reference only) Initial referenced force for new belt: 97.4-107.2 N</p>  <p>xx1900000029</p> |
| 9 | Secure the motor with the screws. | <p>Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002493</p> |
| 10 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. | <p>Used belt: 163-174 Hz New belt: 180-229 Hz (for reference only)</p> |
| 11 | If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust. | |

Continues on next page

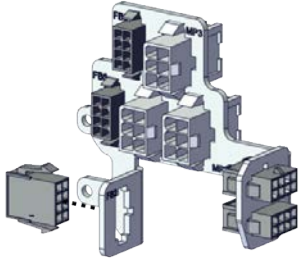
5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|--|--|
| 12 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  xx1900000010 |
| 13 | Reconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• MP2  Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector. |  xx1800002495 |


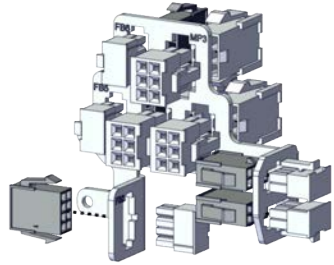

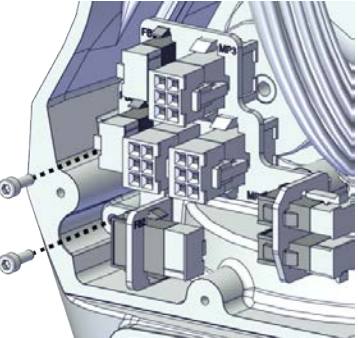
Reconnecting the connectors at the division point

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Insert the female header of the connectors to the connector plate. |  xx1800003029 |

Continues on next page

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.FB2,3,4,5,6 • J2.MP3,4,5/6 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003030</p> |
| 3 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |
| 4 | <p>Refit the connector plate.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002489</p> |

Refitting the covers

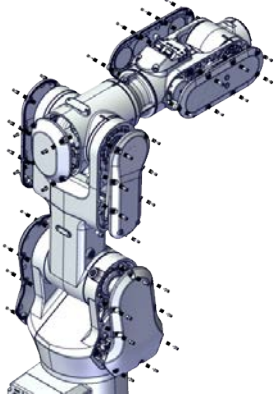
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 | <p>Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.</p> | |
| 2 | <p>Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package.</p> | |

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.3.1 Replacing the upper cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | Refit the covers. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Wrist covers• Housing cover• Lower arm cover• Lower arm support cover• Swing cover• Swing support cover | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003606</p> |

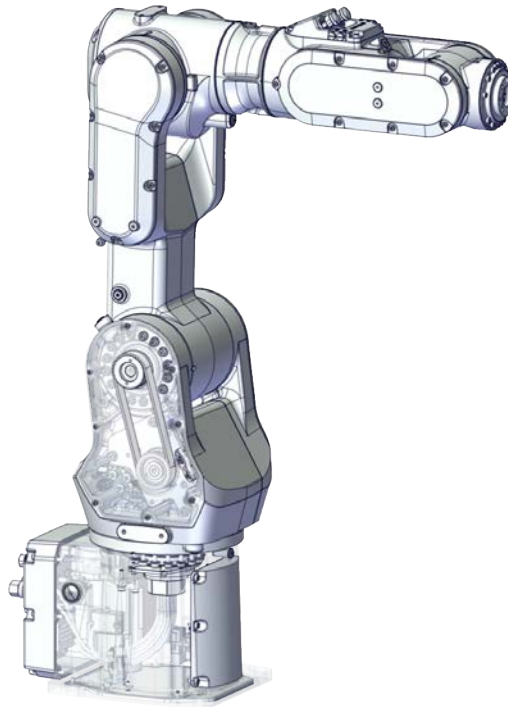
Concluding procedure

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Recalibrate the robot. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |
| 2 |  DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 161 . | |

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

Location of the lower cable package

The lower cable package is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002465

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|---|----------------|--|
| Lower cable harness (CP/CS and air hose, with Ethernet) | 3HAC075523-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 2 | 3HAC083588-001 | . |
| Timing belt, axis 2 | 3HAC061935-001 | |
| Base bottom cover | 3HAC060463-001 | Standard configuration, used for robots with rear connector interface. |
| Base rear cover | 3HAC070312-001 | Used for robots with bottom connector interface. |
| Base adapter | 3HAC070313-001 | Used for robots with bottom connector interface. |
| Swing cover | 3HAC069051-001 | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

Continued

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|--|
| Swing support cover | 3HAC069052-001 | |
| SMB cover | 3HAC069060-001 | |
| Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors | 3HAC071020-001 | Cooling pads are wear parts. One cooling pad sheet contains 6 pieces of small pad. Replace if damaged with one piece each time. |
| Washer | 3HAC063985-001 | 9x4.3x1, Steel |

Required tools and equipment

| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |
| Sonic tension meter | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| Dynamometer | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| brake release button assembly tool | - | Included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001. Used to remove and refit the brake release button. |


Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|----------------|----------------|--|
| Cable straps | - | |
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |
| Locking liquid | - | Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243) |

Continues on next page

Deciding calibration routine

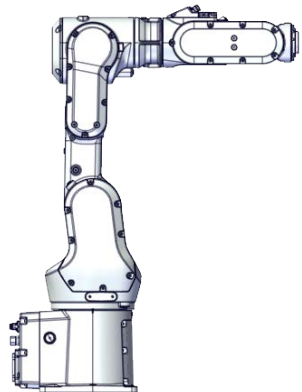
Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. |  Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mounting flange is used for installation of the calibration tool. |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 664 . |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. | |

Removing the lower cable package

Use these procedures to remove the lower cable package.

Preparations before removing the lower cable package


| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |
| 2 | Jog all axes to zero position. |  xx1800003288 |

Continues on next page



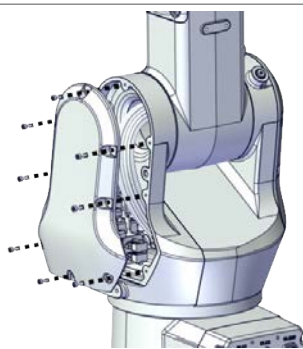

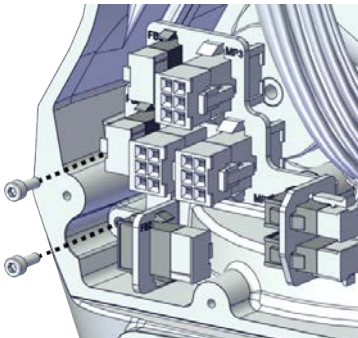
5 Repair

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 3 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. | |


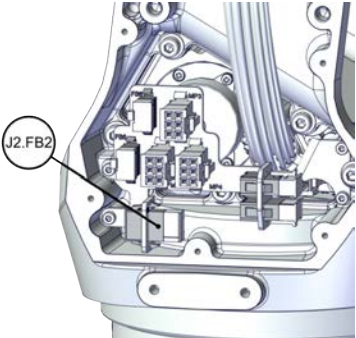
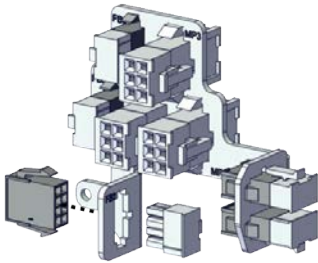
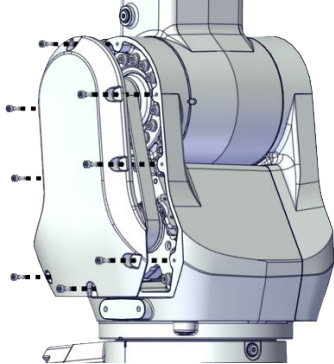

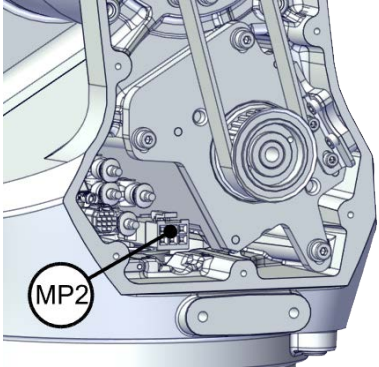
Removing the axis-2 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Remove the swing support cover. |  xx1800002488 |
| 4 | Remove the connector plate.  CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that are attached to the connector plate! The connector plate cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed from the plate. |  xx1800002489 |

Continues on next page

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

Continued

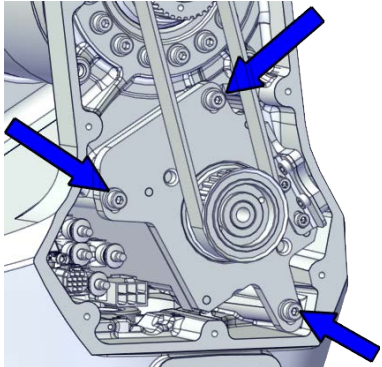
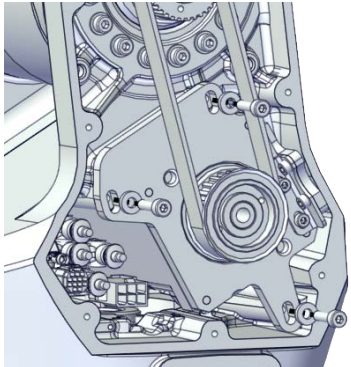


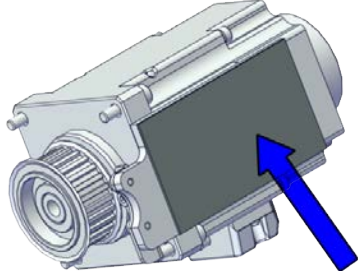
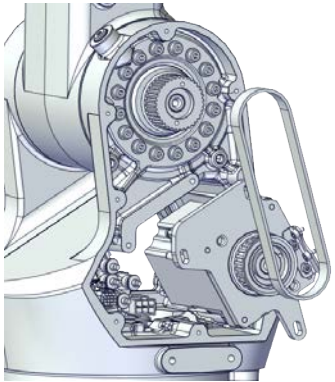
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.FB2  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  <p>xx1800002490</p> |
| 6 | Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the connector plate. |  <p>xx1800002491</p> |
| 7 | Remove the swing cover. |  <p>xx1800002492</p> |
| 8 | Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MP2  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  <p>xx1800002495</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

Continued


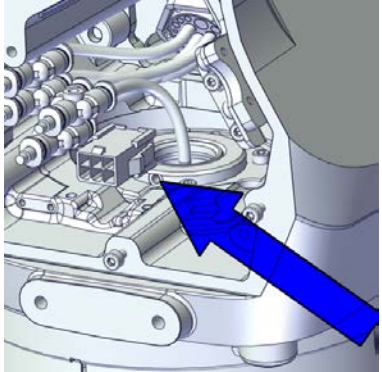
| | Action | Note |
|----|--|---|
| 9 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800002493 |
| 10 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800002494 |
| 11 | Carefully lift out the motor.  CAUTION A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad.  CAUTION Be aware of the motor cabling. The motor cannot be removed completely until the connector is disconnected, as shown in following step. | Cooling pad location  xx1800003603 |
| 12 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800002496 |

Continues on next page



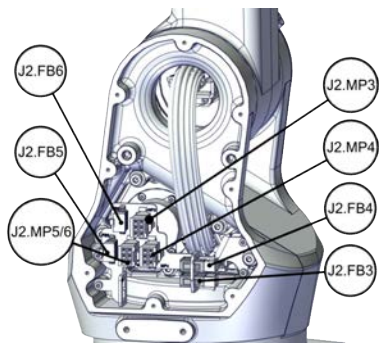
5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

Continued

Loosening the cable package from axis-1 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Access the cable package locking screw on the axis-1 gearbox from the swing and then loosen the locking screw. |  xx1800003032 |
| 3 | Remove the locking screw. | |

Disconnecting the connectors at the division point

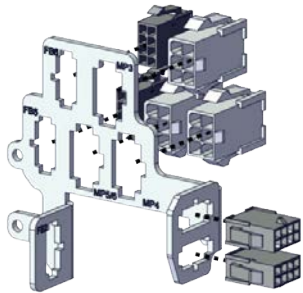
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.FB3,4,5,6 • J2.MP3,4,5/6  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  xx1800002497 |

Continues on next page


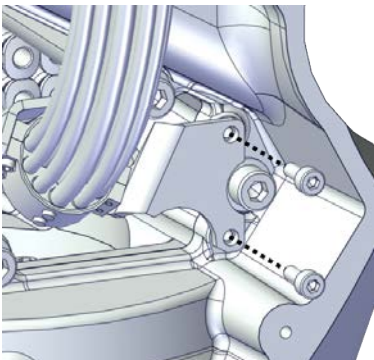
5 Repair

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the connector plate. |  xx1800002498 |

Separating the cable package from the swing

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the cable bracket. |  xx1800002499 |

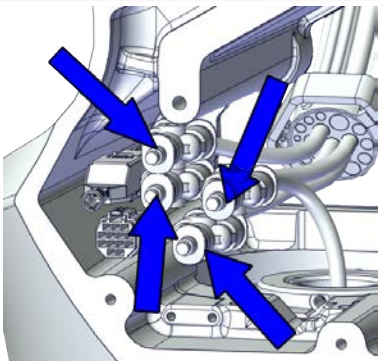


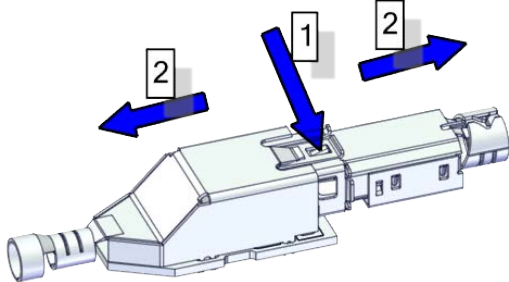
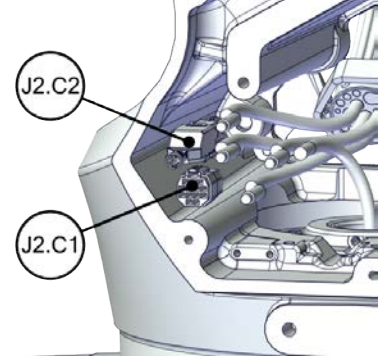
Disconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |


Continues on next page

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | Disconnect the air hoses from the Y-shaped connectors. |  xx1800002500 |
| 3 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.C1 • J2.C2  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.  Tip The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the J2.C2 (for Ethernet cabling).  xx1800002943 |  xx1800002501 |

Disconnecting the SMB connectors




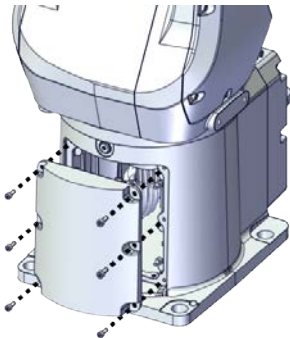

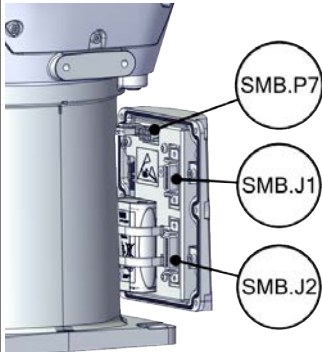
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page



5 Repair

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

Continued


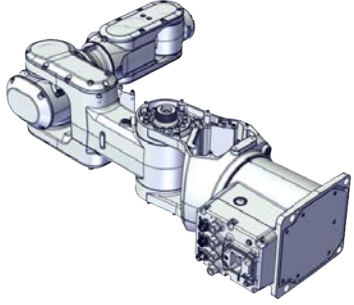
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 |  ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 48 . | |
| 3 | Remove the SMB cover attachment screws and carefully open the cover.  CAUTION Clean cover from metal residues before opening. Metal residues can cause shortage on the boards which can result in hazardous failures.  CAUTION There are cabling attached to the cover. The cover cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed. |  xx1800002467 |
| 4 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  xx1800002468 |
| 5 | Remove the SMB cover completely from the base. | |

Putting the robot on its side


| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION The CRB 1100 robot weighs 21.1 kg and can be lifted by one person. | |

Continues on next page

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 3 |  WARNING The robot is likely to be mechanically unstable if not secured to the foundation. | |
| 4 | Loosen the robot from the foundation by removing the foundation attachment screws and put the robot on its side. |  xx1800003033 |

Opening the connector interface plate


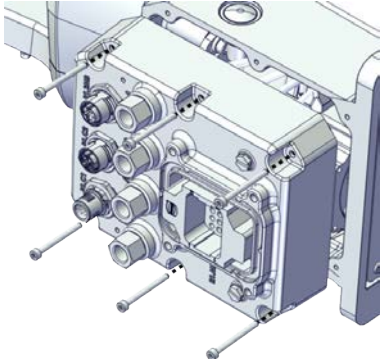
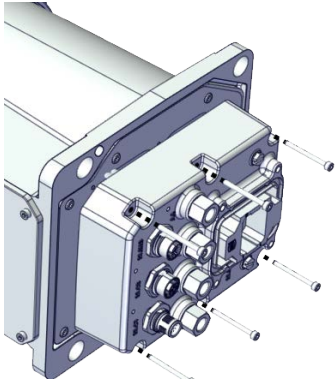
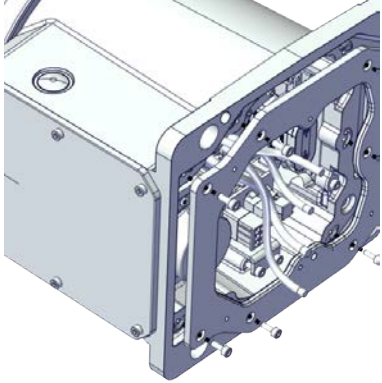
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package


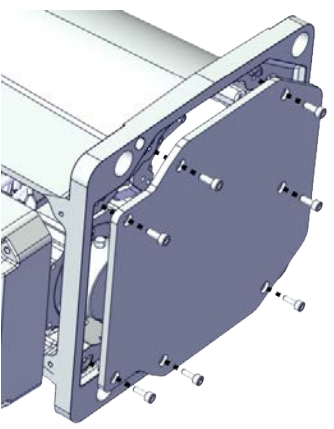
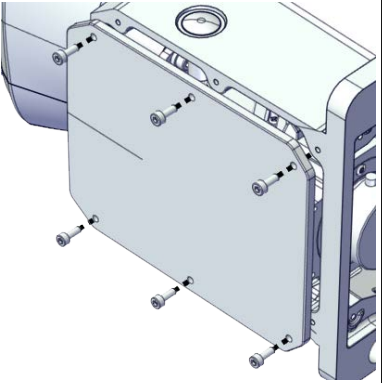
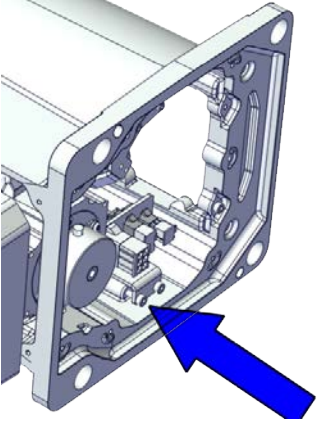
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Remove the connector interface plate attachment screws and carefully open the plate.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>There are cabling attached to the cover. The cover cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed.</p> | <p>Valid for cabling with rear interface</p>  <p>xx1800003034</p> <p>Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)</p>  <p>xx1800003055</p> |
| 3 | <p>Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)</p> <p>Remove the base adapter.</p> |  <p>xx1800003056</p> |

Continues on next page

Removing the brake release button

Notice that the procedure differs depending on if the connector interface is located either at the rear or at the bottom of the base.

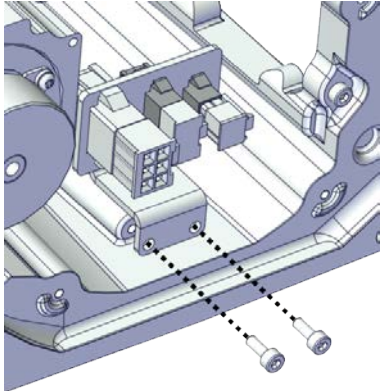

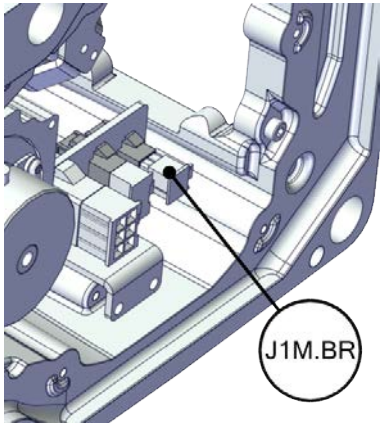
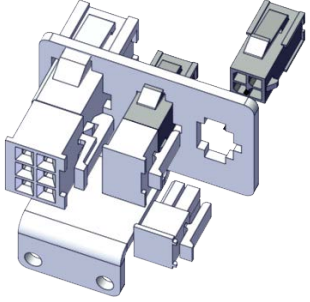
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Valid for cabling with rear interface Remove the base bottom cover. |  xx1800003035 |
| 3 | Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1) Remove the base rear cover. |  xx1800003057 |
| 4 | Disconnect the earth cable. |  xx1800003036 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

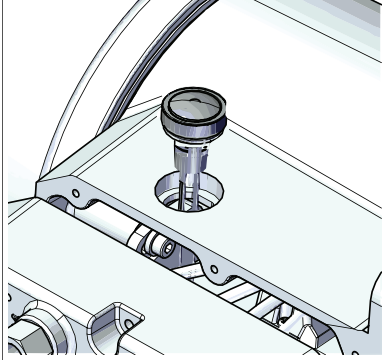
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | Remove the connector plate. |  xx1800003037 |
| 6 | <p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• J1M.BR <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> |  xx1800003038 |
| 7 | Remove the female header of the J1M.BR connector from the connector plate. |  xx1800003039 |



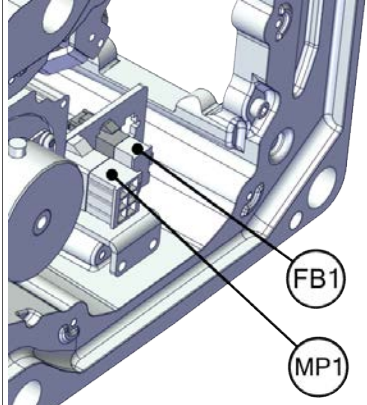
Continues on next page

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 8 | Remove the brake release button from the base using the tool. | brake release button assembly tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001  xx1800003040 |

Disconnecting axis-1 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB1 • MP1  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  xx1800003041 |

Separating the cable package from the base

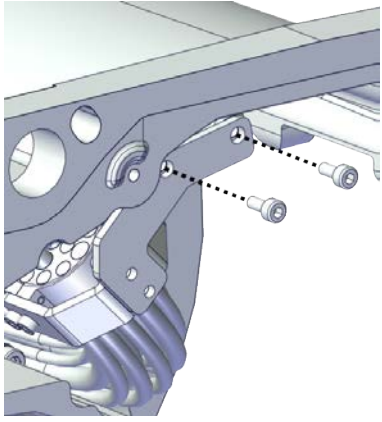
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page


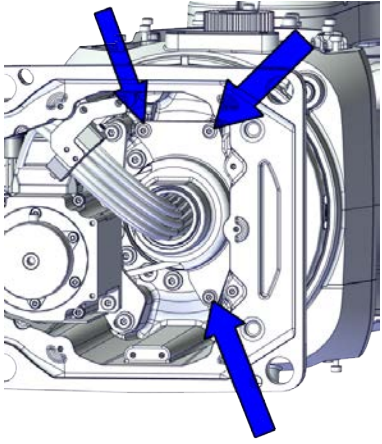
5 Repair

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---------------------------|---|
| 2 | Remove the cable bracket. |  xx1800003042 |

Separating the cable package from the axis-1 gearbox

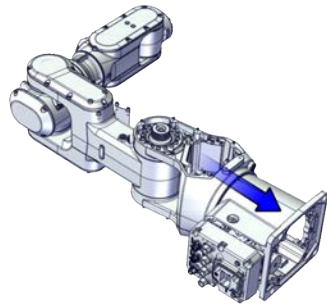
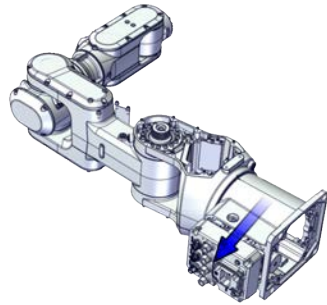
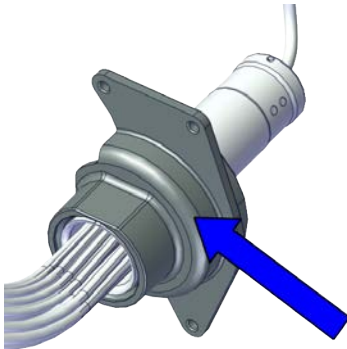
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the pulley cover. |  xx1800003043 |

Pulling out the cable package

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Pull out the lower cable package from the axis-1 gearbox. |  xx1800003044 |
| 3 | Pull out the lower cable package from the base. |  xx1800003045 |
| 4 | Remove the pulley cover from the lower cable package. |  xx1800003046 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair


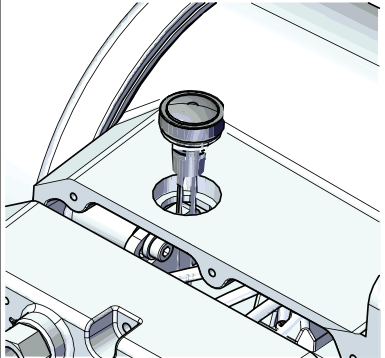
5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

Continued

Refitting the lower cable package

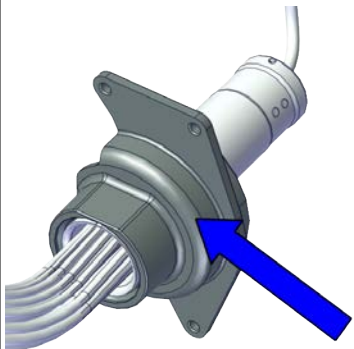
Use these procedures to refit the lower cable package.

Refitting the brake release button

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Refit the brake release button.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not reconnect the connector yet. Do not tighten the button yet.</p> | <p>brake release button assembly tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001</p>  <p>xx1800003040</p> |

Refitting the lower cable package through the axis-1 gearbox



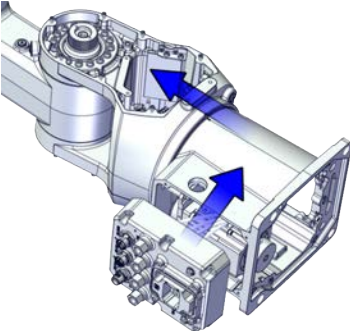

Notice that the procedure differs depending on if the connector interface is located either at the rear or at the bottom of the base.

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Refit the pulley cover to the lower cable package. |  <p>xx1800003046</p> |

Continues on next page

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

Continued



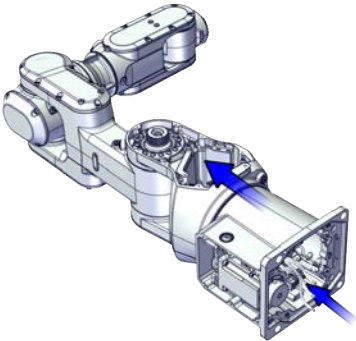

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Valid for cabling with rear interface</p> <p>Insert the cable package in the base and up through the axis-1 gearbox, through the rear.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p> |  <p>xx1800003047</p> <p>Cable protection tube orientation: use the encircled notch on the cable protection tube as a reference when inserting the cable package, which should be at the opposite direction to the locking screw hole on the gearbox.</p>  <p>xx1800003048</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package


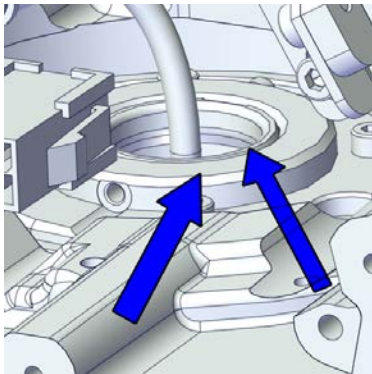
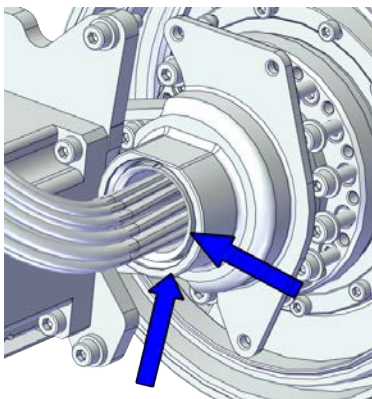
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 3 | <p>Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)</p> <p>Insert the cable package in the base and up through the axis-1 gearbox, through the bottom.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p> | <p></p> <p>xx1800003060</p> <p>Cable protection tube orientation: use the encircled notch on the cable protection tube as a reference when inserting the cable package, which should be at the opposite direction to the locking screw hole on the gearbox.</p> <p></p> <p>xx1800003048</p> |

Continues on next page

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package
Continued

Securing the lower cable package to the axis-1 gearbox



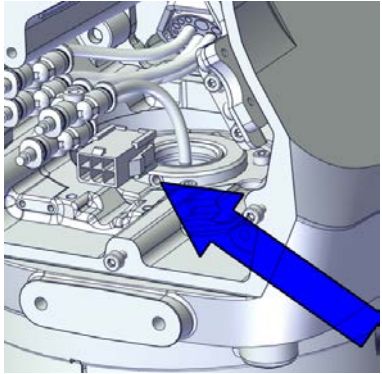
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | <p>Make sure that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The hole on the cable protection tube is aligned with the locking screw hole on the gearbox.• The cable protection tube surface is completely parallel with the pulley cover at one side and with the flange at the other side. |  <p>xx1800003063</p>  <p>xx1800003049</p>  <p>xx1800003050</p> |

Continues on next page

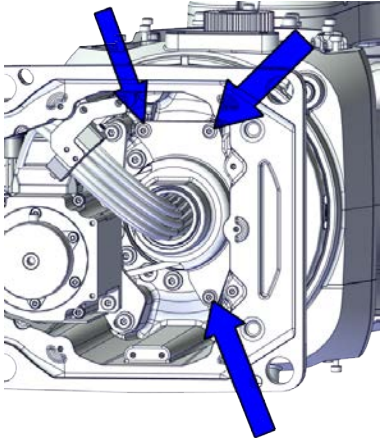
5 Repair

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | <p>Apply a little Loctite 243 to the locking screw and refit the locking screw.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Make sure the locking screw header is parallel with flange surface.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>If there is locking liquid residues on the screw or screw hole, please clean it before refitting. Remove residual locking liquid after refitting.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 (1 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003032</p> |

Refitting the pulley cover

| | Action | Note |
|---|-------------------------|--|
| 1 | Refit the puller cover. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003043</p> |


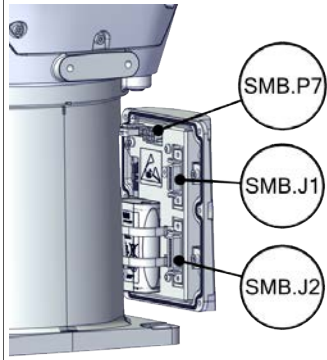

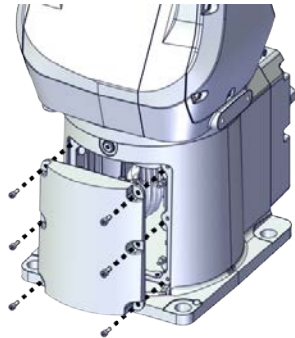
Reconnecting the SMB connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 | <p> ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 48.</p> | |


Continues on next page

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002468</p> |
| 3 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |
| 4 | <p>Refit the SMB cover to the base.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002467</p> |

Refitting the connector interface plate

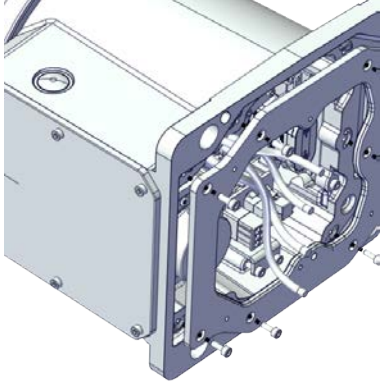
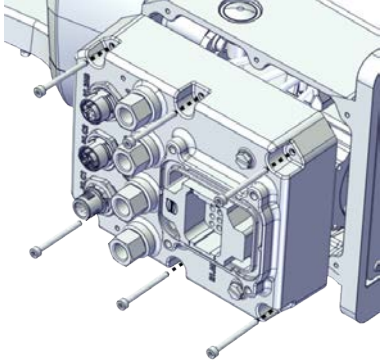
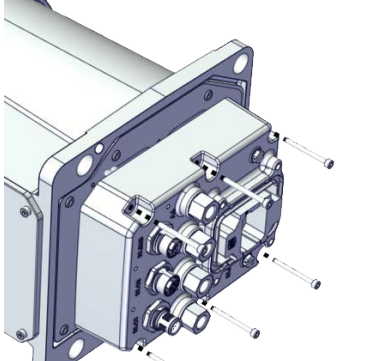
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

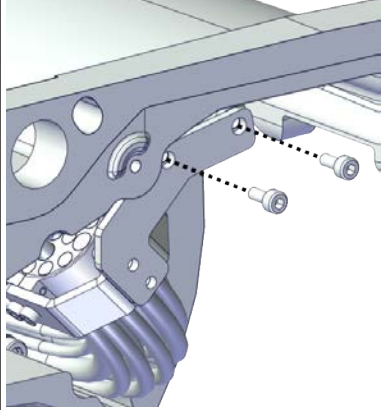
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1) Refit the base adapter. | Screw: M3x8 Steel 8.8-A2F (7 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003056 |
| 3 | Refit the connector interface plate to the base. | Screw: M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm Valid for cabling with rear interface  xx1800003034 Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)  xx1800003055 |

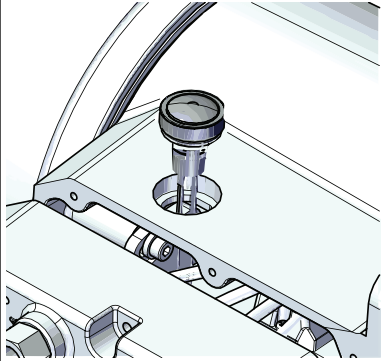
Continues on next page

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package
Continued

Securing the lower cable package to the base

| | Action | Note |
|---|--------------------------|--|
| 1 | Refit the cable bracket. | <p>Screw: M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003042</p> |

Securing the brake release button

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Tighten the brake release button using the tool. | <p>brake release button assembly tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001</p>  <p>xx1800003040</p> |


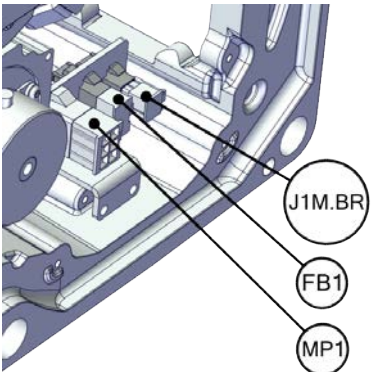
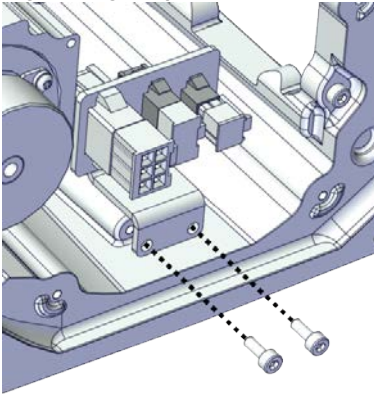
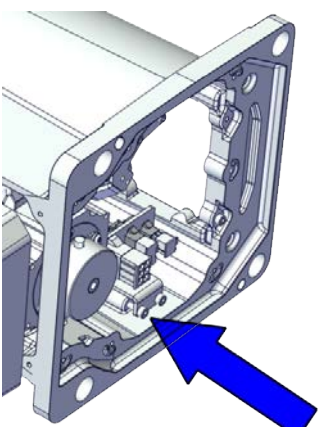
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

Continued


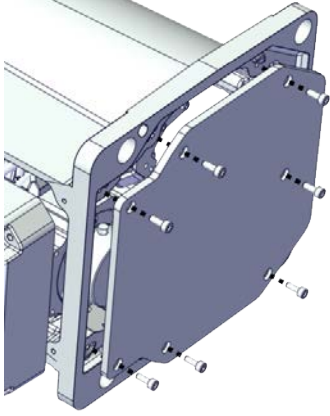
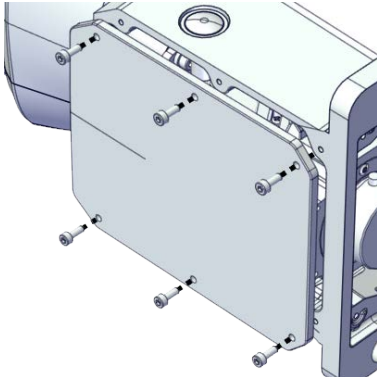
Reconnecting the brake release cabling and axis-1 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• J1M.BR• MP1• FB1 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003054</p> |
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the floor cable together with the connector plate.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003037</p>  <p>xx1800003036</p> |

Continues on next page

Refitting the base cover

Notice that the procedure differs depending on if the connector interface is located either at the rear or at the bottom of the base.

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package. | |
| 2 | Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package. | |
| 3 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |
| 4 | Valid for cabling with rear interface Refit the bottom cover. | Screw: M3x8 Steel 8.8-A2F (7 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003035 |
| 5 | Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1) Refit the rear cover. | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003057 |


Continues on next page

5 Repair


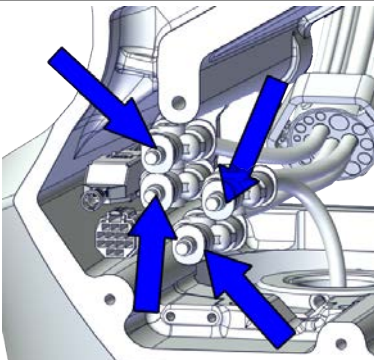

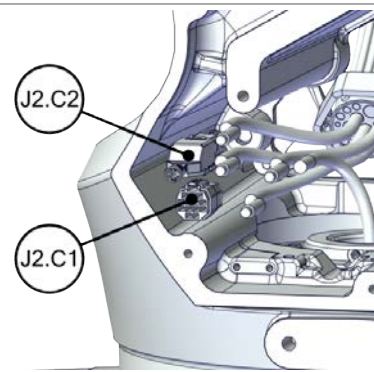
5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

Continued

Securing the robot to the foundation

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 |  CAUTION The CRB 1100 robot weighs 21.1 kg and can be lifted by one person. | |
| 2 | Raise the robot to standing and secure to the foundation with the attachment screws and washers. | Attachment screws: M12x25 (robot installation directly on foundation), quality: 8.8. Washers: 4 pcs, 24 x 13 x 2.5. Tightening Torque: 50 Nm±5 Nm. |

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

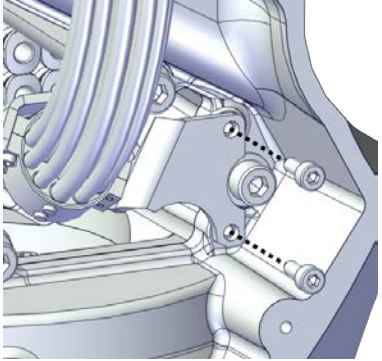
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern to the Y-shaped connectors.  Tip See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses. The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector. |  xx1800002500 |
| 2 | Reconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.C1 • J2.C2  Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector. |  xx1800002501 |

Continues on next page

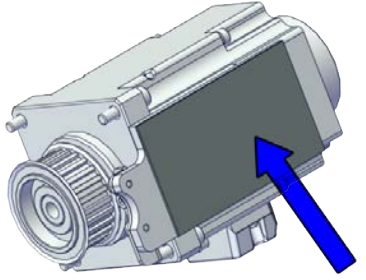
5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

Continued

Securing the cable package to the swing

| | Action | Note |
|---|--------------------------|--|
| 1 | Refit the cable bracket. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002499</p> |

Refitting the axis-2 motor

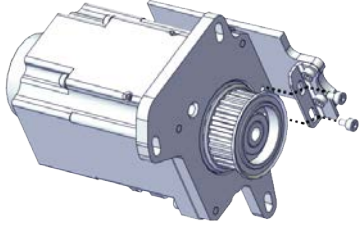

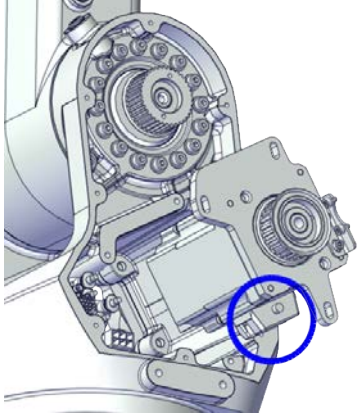

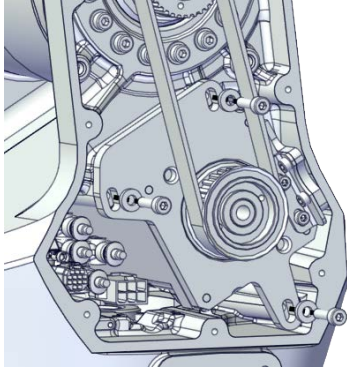
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Check that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages the motor is clean and undamaged. | |
| 2 | <p>Check the cooling pad. Replace if damaged, as shown in the following step.</p> | <p>Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors: 3HAC071020-001</p>  <p>xx1800003603</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

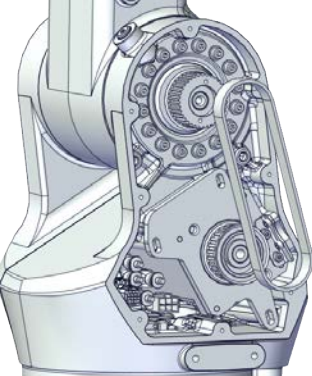

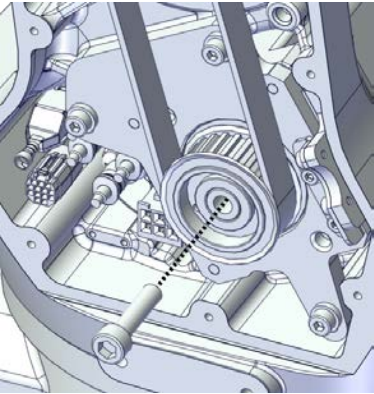
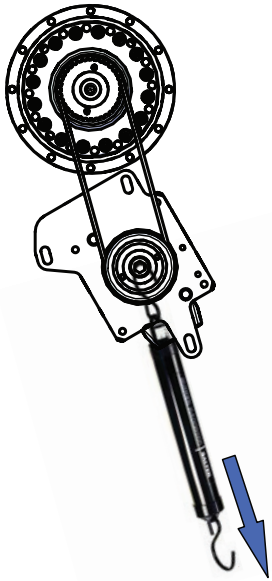
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 3 | <p>Remove the screws. Replace with a new cooling pad and then refit the screws.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x5 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003026</p> |
| 4 | <p>Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the swing.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Bend the motor signal cable back towards the swing support.</p> | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003027</p> |
| 5 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washer, 3HAC063985-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800002494</p> |

Continues on next page

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

Continued

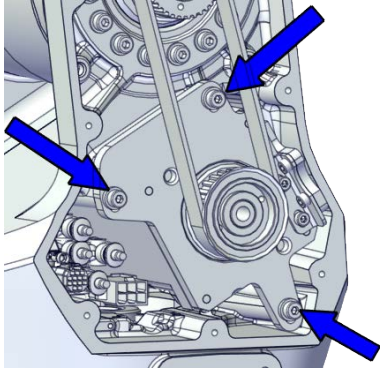
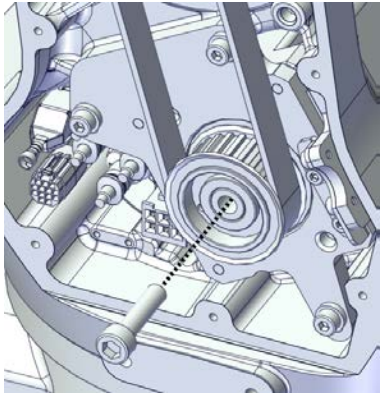

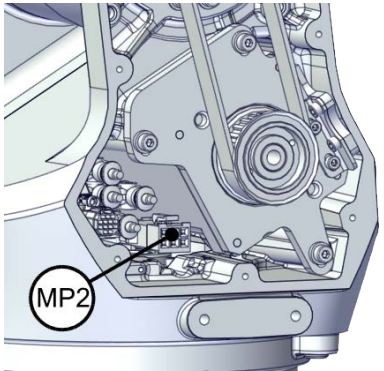
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 6 | Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys. |  <p>xx1800003028</p> |
| 7 | Install an M6x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.  Note Do not insert the entire screw to the hole. |  <p>xx1900000010</p> |
| 8 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force. | <p>Initial referenced force for used belt: 68.18-75.04 N (for reference only) Initial referenced force for new belt: 97.4-107.2 N</p>  <p>xx1900000029</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

Continued

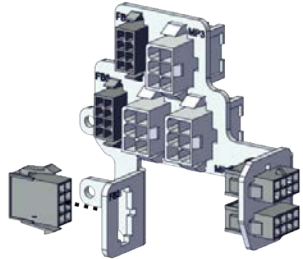

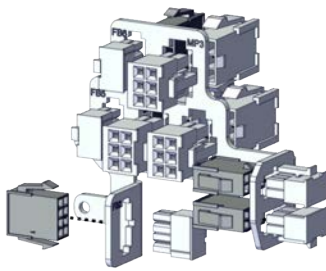

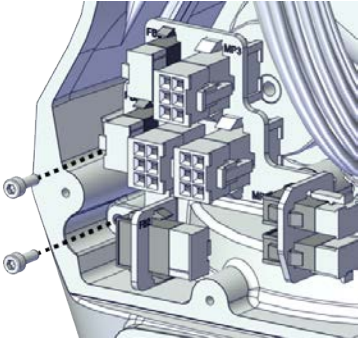
| | Action | Note |
|----|--|--|
| 9 | Secure the motor with the screws. | <p>Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002493</p> |
| 10 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. | <p>Used belt: 163-174 Hz New belt: 180-229 Hz (for reference only)</p> |
| 11 | If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust. | |
| 12 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  <p>xx1900000010</p> |
| 13 | <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MP2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800002495</p> |

Continues on next page

5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

Continued

Reconnecting the connectors at the division point

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Insert the female header of the connectors to the connector plate. |  xx1800003029 |
| 2 | Reconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.FB2,3,4,5,6 • J2.MP3,4,5/6  Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector. |  xx1800003030 |
| 3 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |
| 4 | Refit the connector plate. | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm  xx1800002489 |

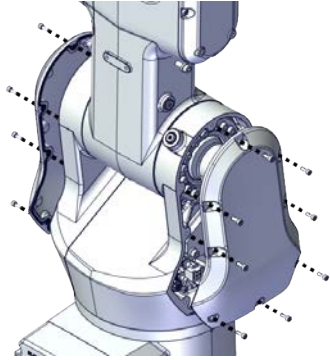
Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.3.2 Replacing the lower cable package

Continued

Refitting the swing covers

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package. | |
| 2 | Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package. | |
| 3 | Refit the covers. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Swing cover• Swing support cover | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003607</p> |

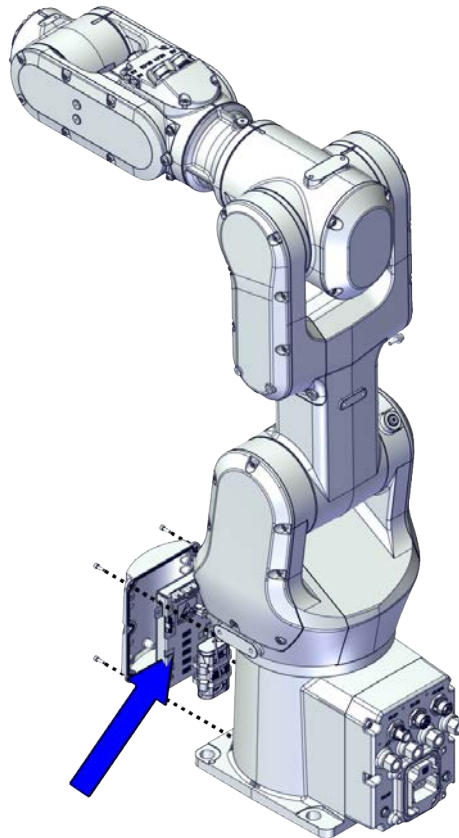
Concluding procedure

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Recalibrate the robot. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |
| 2 |  DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 161 . | |

5.3.3 Replacing the SMB unit

Location of the SMB unit

The SMB unit is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002464

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|-------------------------|----------------|---|
| Serial measurement unit | 3HAC063968-001 | |
| SMB cover | 3HAC069060-001 | |
| Battery pack | 3HAC044075-001 | Battery includes protection circuits. Only replace with the specified spare part or an ABB-approved equivalent. |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.3 Replacing the SMB unit

Continued

Required tools and equipment


| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |

Required consumables and wear parts

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|----------------|----------------|--|
| Cable straps | - | |
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |
| Locking liquid | - | Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243) |

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

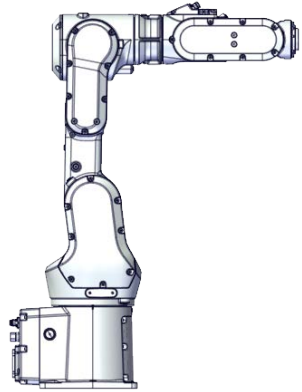

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. |  Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mounting flange is used for installation of the calibration tool. |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 664 . |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. | |

Continues on next page



Removing the SMB unit

Use these procedures to remove the SMB unit.

Preparations before removing the SMB unit

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |
| 2 | Jog the robot to the synchronization position. |  xx1800003288 |
| 3 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. | |

Disconnecting the SMB connectors



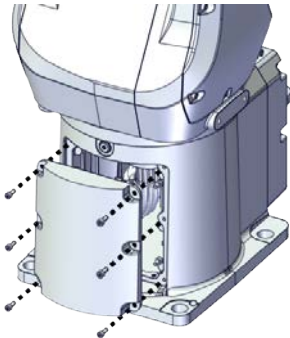

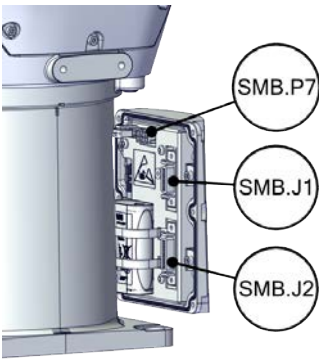
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 48 . | |

Continues on next page



5 Repair

5.3.3 Replacing the SMB unit

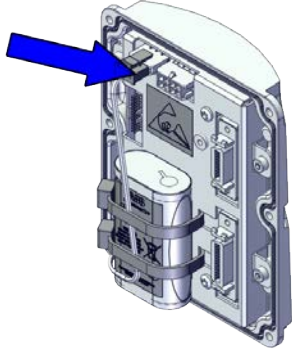
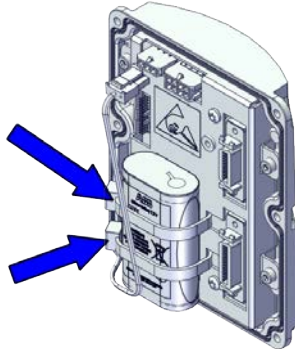
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 3 | <p>Remove the SMB cover attachment screws and carefully open the cover.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Clean cover from metal residues before opening. Metal residues can cause shortage on the boards which can result in hazardous failures.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>There are cabling attached to the cover. The cover cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed.</p> |  <p>xx1800002467</p> |
| 4 | <p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> |  <p>xx1800002468</p> |
| 5 | Remove the SMB cover completely from the base. | |



Removing the battery pack

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |
| 2 | <p> ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 48.</p> | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 3 | Disconnect the battery cable. |  xx1800002469 |
| 4 | Remove the battery pack by cutting the cable strap. |  xx1800002470 |

Removing the SMB unit

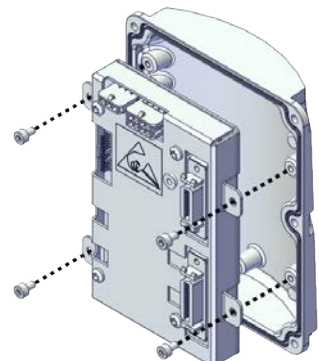
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 48 . | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.3.3 Replacing the SMB unit


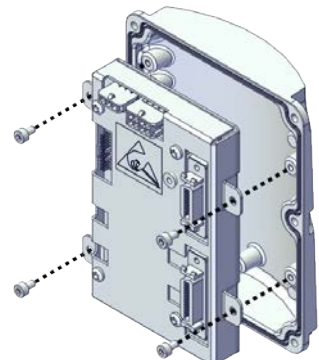
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--------------------|---|
| 3 | Remove the screws. |  xx1800002471 |


Refitting the SMB unit

Use these procedures to refit the SMB unit.

Refitting the SMB unit

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 |  ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 48 . | |
| 2 | Refit the screws. | Screw: M3x5 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm  xx1800002471 |

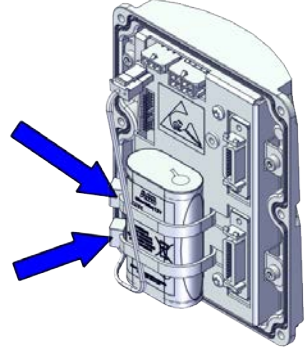
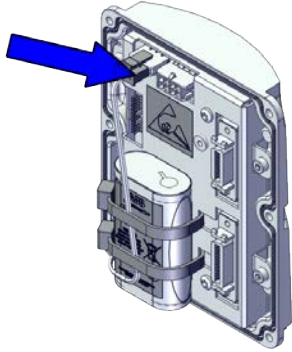
Refitting the battery pack

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 48 . | |



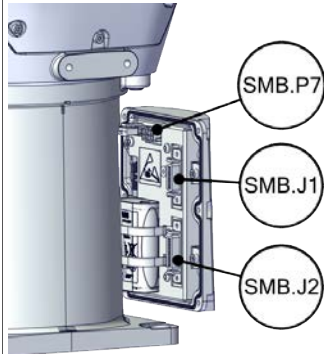
Continues on next page

5.3.3 Replacing the SMB unit

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | Secure the battery pack using the cable strap. |  xx1800002470 |
| 3 | Reconnect the battery cable. |  xx1800002469 |

Reconnecting the SMB connectors


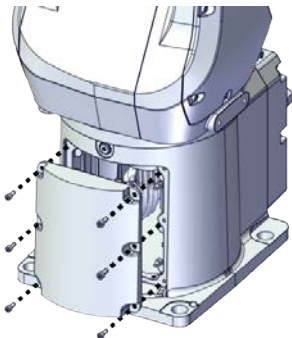
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 |  ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 48 . | |
| 2 | Reconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2  Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector. | Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm  xx1800002468 |

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.3.3 Replacing the SMB unit

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 3 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |
| 4 | <p>Refit the SMB cover to the base.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002467</p> |

Concluding procedure

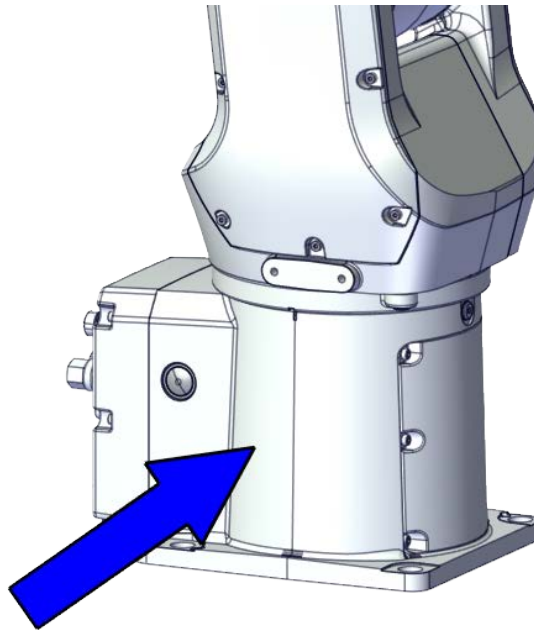
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | <p>Recalibrate the robot.</p> | <p>Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653.</p> |
| 2 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 161.</p> | |

5.4 Swing and base

5.4.1 Replacing the base

Location of the base

The base is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002472

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|---|----------------|---------------------|
| Lower cable harness (CP/CS and air hose, with Ethernet) | 3HAC075523-001 | |
| Base | 3HAC069048-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 1 | 3HAC083589-001 | |
| Timing belt, axis 1 | 3HAC061934-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 2 | 3HAC083588-001 | . |
| Timing belt, axis 2 | 3HAC061935-001 | |
| Mechanical stop, axis 1 | 3HAC061947-001 | Replace if damaged. |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|--|
| Base bottom cover | 3HAC060463-001 | Standard configuration, used for robots with rear connector interface. |
| Base rear cover | 3HAC070312-001 | Used for robots with bottom connector interface. |
| Base adapter | 3HAC070313-001 | Used for robots with bottom connector interface. |
| Swing cover | 3HAC069051-001 | |
| Swing support cover | 3HAC069052-001 | |
| SMB cover | 3HAC069060-001 | |
| Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors | 3HAC071020-001 | Cooling pads are wear parts. One cooling pad sheet contains 6 pieces of small pad. Replace if damaged with one piece each time. |
| Washer | 3HAC063985-001 | 9x4.3x1, Steel |

Required tools and equipment

| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |
| Sonic tension meter | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| Dynamometer | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| brake release button assembly tool | - | Included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001. Used to remove and refit the brake release button. |


Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|----------------|----------------|--|
| Cable straps | - | |
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |
| Locking liquid | - | Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243) |

Continues on next page

Deciding calibration routine

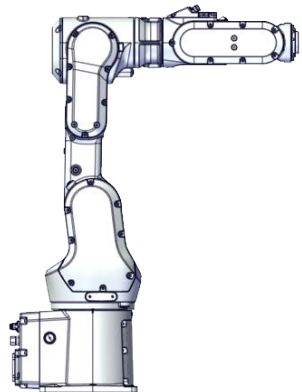
Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. |  Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mounting flange is used for installation of the calibration tool. |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 664 . |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. | |

Removing the base

Use these procedures to remove the base.

Preparations before removing the base


| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |
| 2 | Jog all axes to zero position. |  xx1800003288 |

Continues on next page



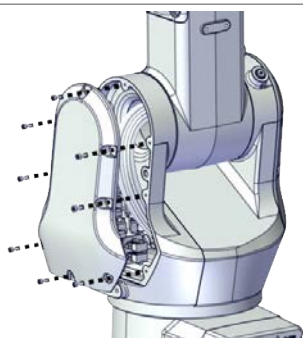

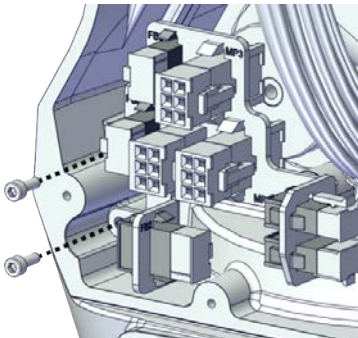
5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base


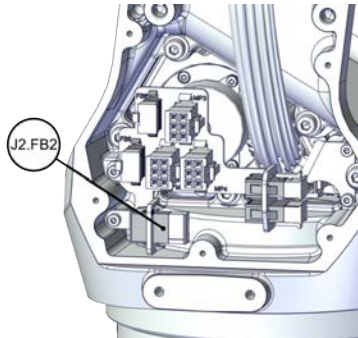
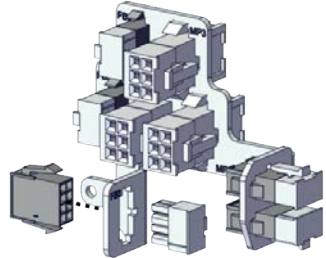
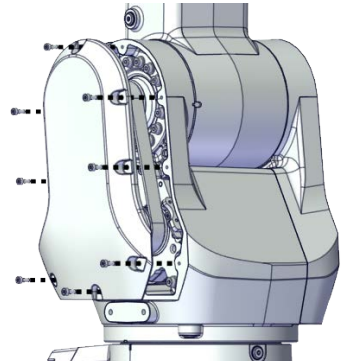

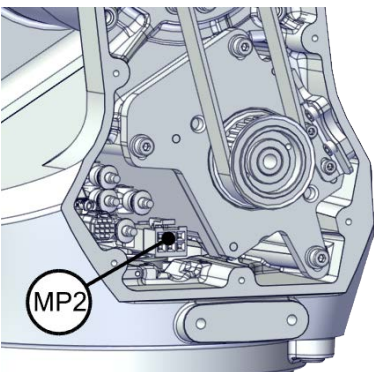
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 3 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. | |

Removing the axis-2 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Remove the swing support cover. |  xx1800002488 |
| 4 | Remove the connector plate.  CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that are attached to the connector plate! The connector plate cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed from the plate. |  xx1800002489 |

Continues on next page

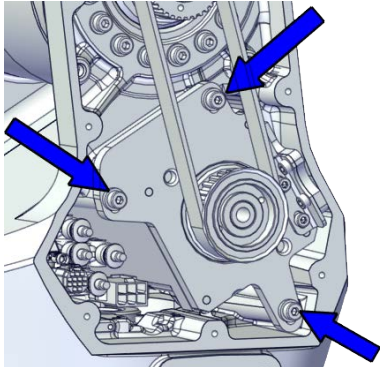
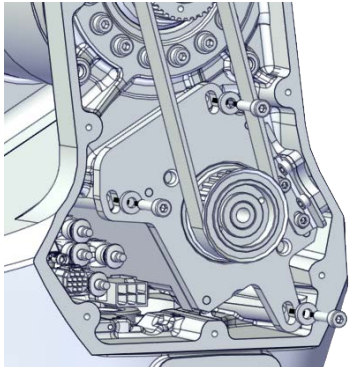


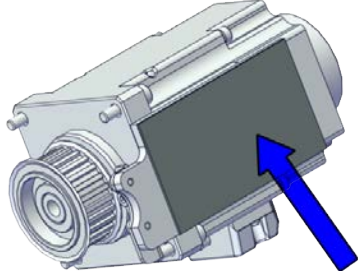
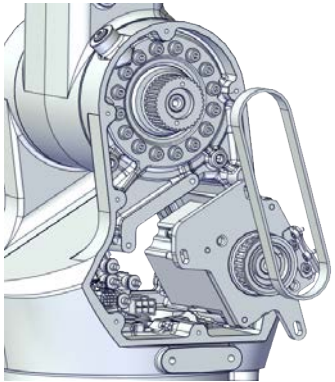
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | <p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> J2.FB2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> |  <p>xx1800002490</p> |
| 6 | <p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the connector plate.</p> |  <p>xx1800002491</p> |
| 7 | <p>Remove the swing cover.</p> |  <p>xx1800002492</p> |
| 8 | <p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MP2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> |  <p>xx1800002495</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair


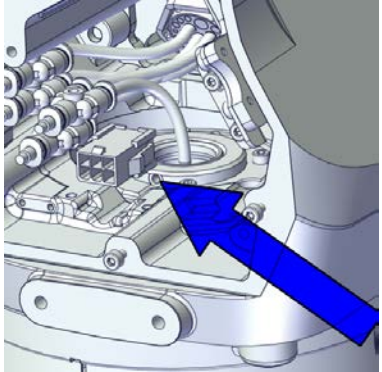
5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued



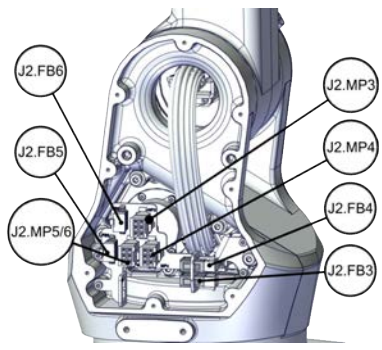
| | Action | Note |
|----|--|---|
| 9 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800002493 |
| 10 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800002494 |
| 11 | Carefully lift out the motor.  CAUTION A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad.  CAUTION Be aware of the motor cabling. The motor cannot be removed completely until the connector is disconnected, as shown in following step. | Cooling pad location  xx1800003603 |
| 12 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800002496 |

Continues on next page

Loosening the cable package from axis-1 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Access the cable package locking screw on the axis-1 gearbox from the swing and then loosen the locking screw. |  xx1800003032 |
| 3 | Remove the locking screw. | |

Disconnecting the connectors at the division point

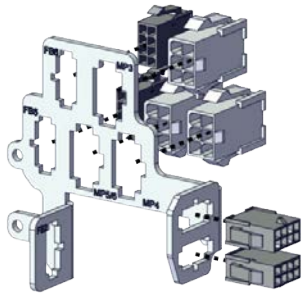
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.FB3,4,5,6 • J2.MP3,4,5/6  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  xx1800002497 |

Continues on next page


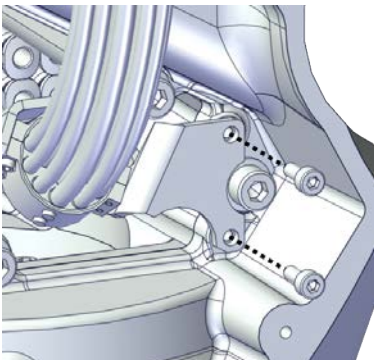
5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the connector plate. |  xx1800002498 |

Separating the cable package from the swing

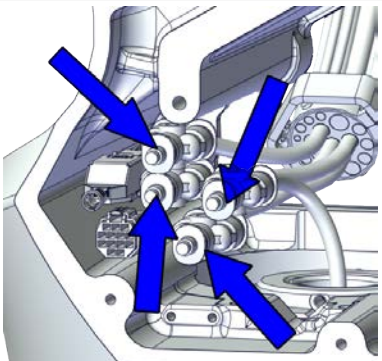


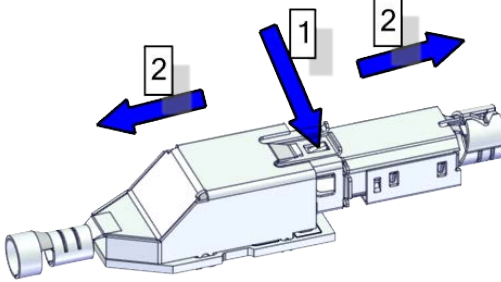
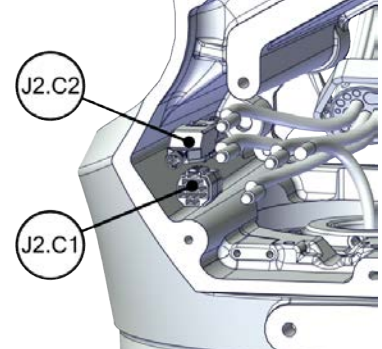
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the cable bracket. |  xx1800002499 |

Disconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)


| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page

5.4.1 Replacing the base Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | Disconnect the air hoses from the Y-shaped connectors. |  xx1800002500 |
| 3 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.C1 • J2.C2  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.  Tip The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the J2.C2 (for Ethernet cabling).  xx1800002943 |  xx1800002501 |

Putting the robot on its side



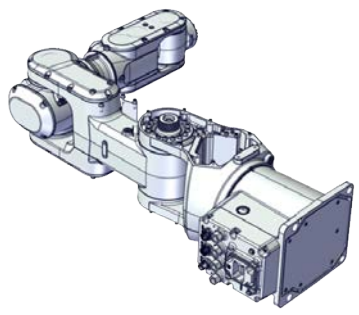
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page





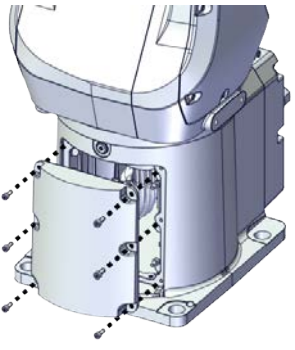
5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base


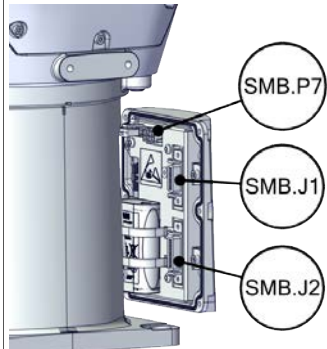
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 |  CAUTION The CRB 1100 robot weighs 21.1 kg and can be lifted by one person. | |
| 3 |  WARNING The robot is likely to be mechanically unstable if not secured to the foundation. | |
| 4 | Loosen the robot from the foundation by removing the foundation attachment screws and put the robot on its side. |  xx1800003033 |


Disconnecting the SMB connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 48 . | |
| 3 | Remove the SMB cover attachment screws and carefully open the cover.  CAUTION Clean cover from metal residues before opening. Metal residues can cause shortage on the boards which can result in hazardous failures.  CAUTION There are cabling attached to the cover. The cover cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed. |  xx1800002467 |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 4 | <p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> |  <p>xx1800002468</p> |
| 5 | Remove the SMB cover completely from the base. | |

Opening the connector interface plate


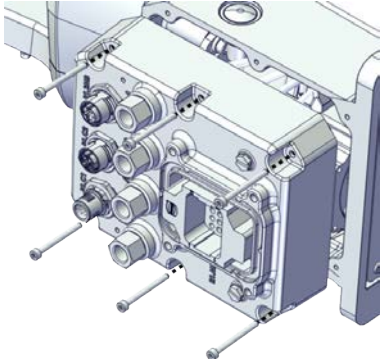
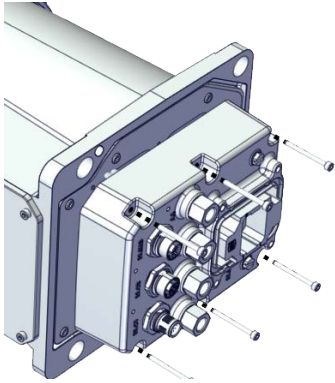
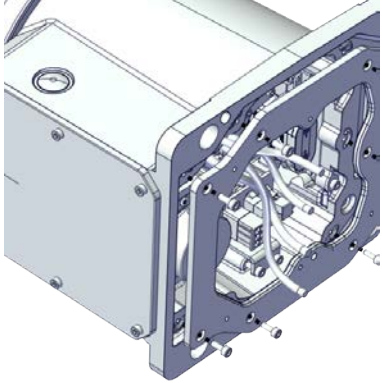
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base


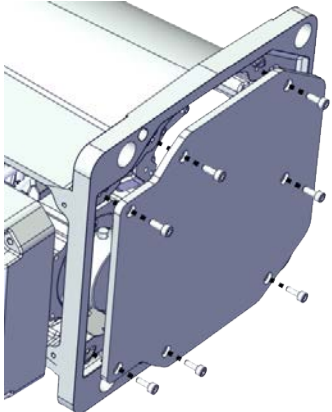
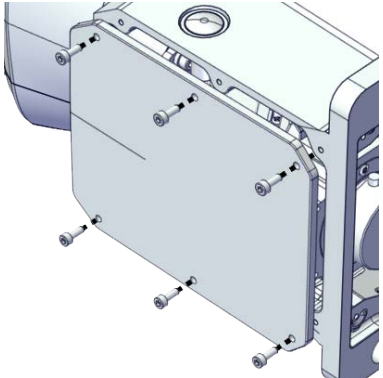
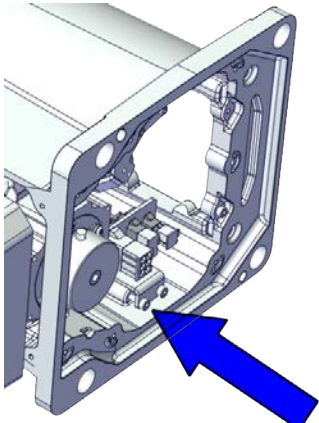
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Remove the connector interface plate attachment screws and carefully open the plate.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>There are cabling attached to the cover. The cover cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed.</p> | <p>Valid for cabling with rear interface</p>  <p>xx1800003034</p> <p>Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)</p>  <p>xx1800003055</p> |
| 3 | <p>Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)</p> <p>Remove the base adapter.</p> |  <p>xx1800003056</p> |

Continues on next page

Removing the brake release button

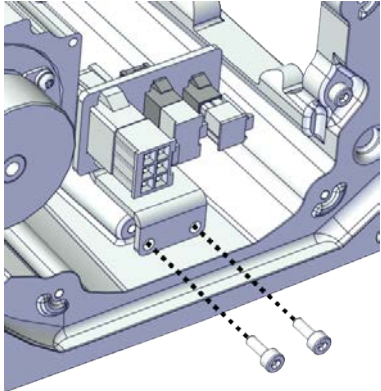

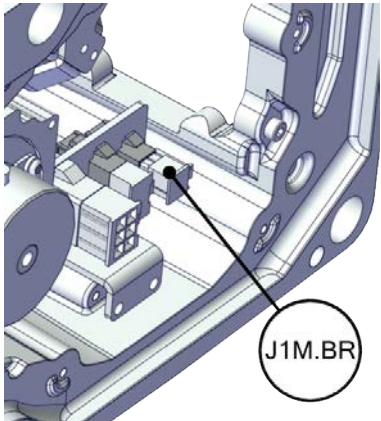
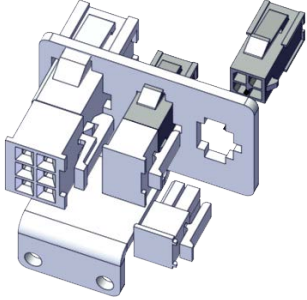
Notice that the procedure differs depending on if the connector interface is located either at the rear or at the bottom of the base.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Valid for cabling with rear interface Remove the base bottom cover. |  xx1800003035 |
| 3 | Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1) Remove the base rear cover. |  xx1800003057 |
| 4 | Disconnect the earth cable. |  xx1800003036 |

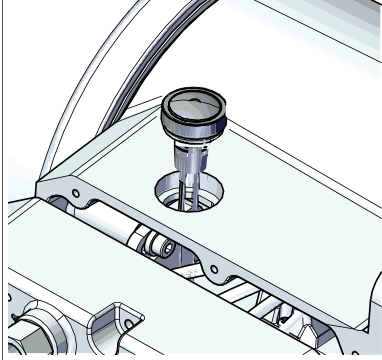
Continues on next page

5 Repair



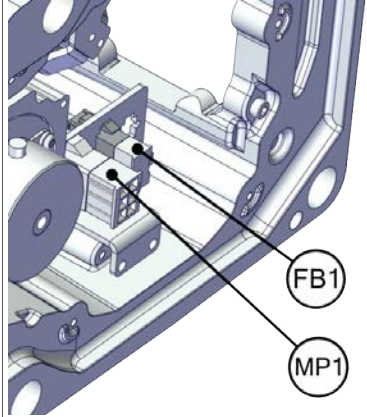
5.4.1 Replacing the base
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | Remove the connector plate. |  xx1800003037 |
| 6 | Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• J1M.BR <div> Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</div> |  xx1800003038 |
| 7 | Remove the female header of the J1M.BR connector from the connector plate. |  xx1800003039 |


Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 8 | Remove the brake release button from the base using the tool. | brake release button assembly tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001  xx1800003040 |

Disconnecting axis-1 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB1 • MP1  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  xx1800003041 |

Separating the cable package from the base

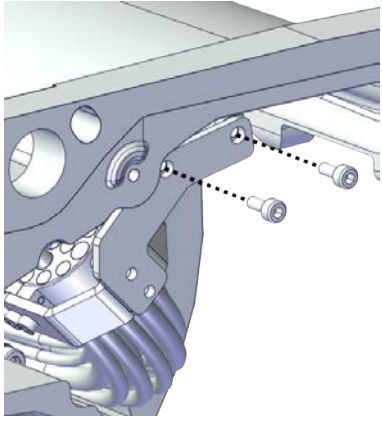
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page


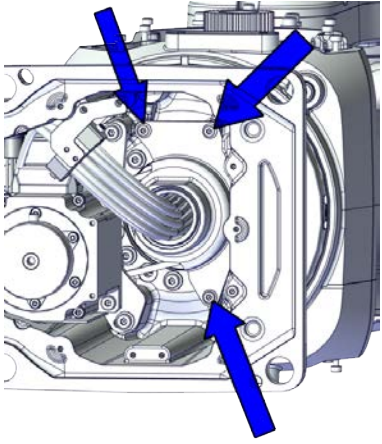
5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---------------------------|---|
| 2 | Remove the cable bracket. |  xx1800003042 |

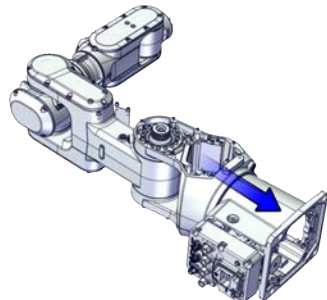
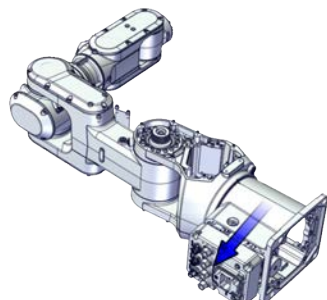
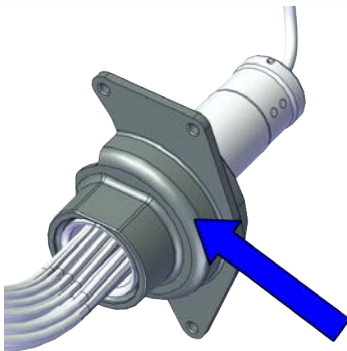
Separating the cable package from the axis-1 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the pulley cover. |  xx1800003043 |


Pulling out the cable package

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Pull out the lower cable package from the axis-1 gearbox. |  xx1800003044 |
| 3 | Pull out the lower cable package from the base. |  xx1800003045 |
| 4 | Remove the pulley cover from the lower cable package. |  xx1800003046 |

Removing the axis-1 motor


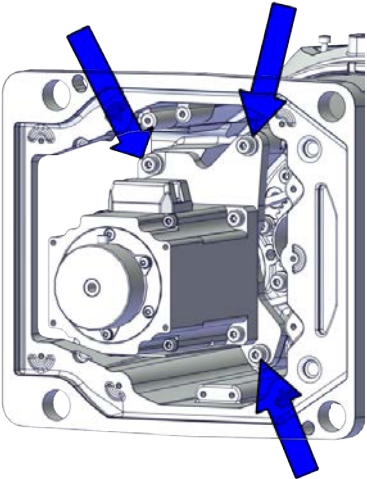
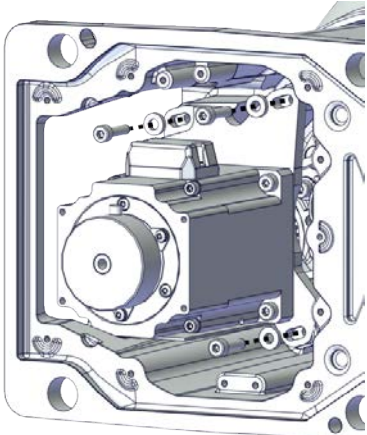

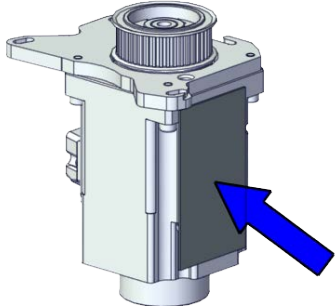
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page

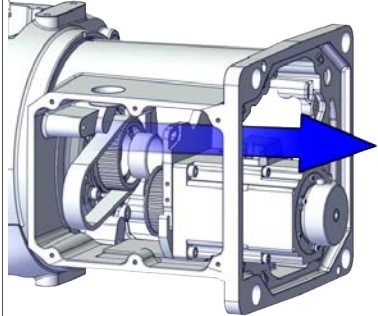
5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base



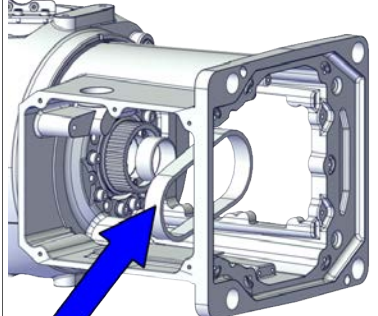
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800003064 |
| 4 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800003065 |
| 5 | Carefully lift out the motor.  CAUTION A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad. | Cooling pad location  xx1800003602 |


Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 6 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800003066 |

Removing the axis-1 timing belt

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Loosening timing belts will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before loosening timing belts. | |
| 3 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the gearbox. |  xx1800003067 |


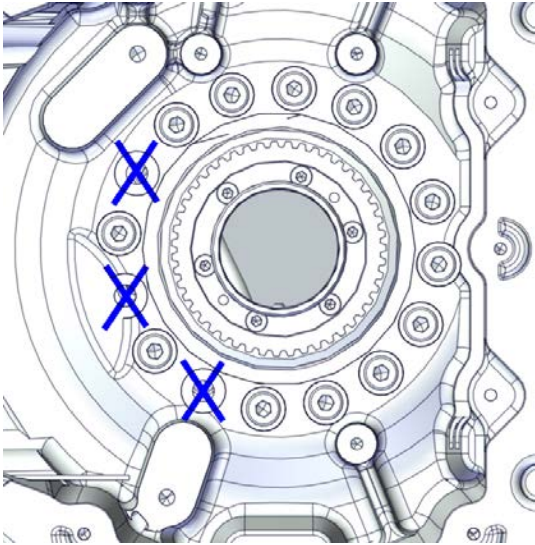
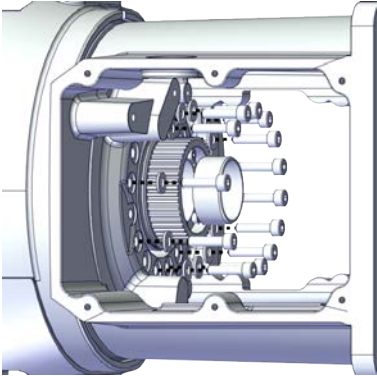

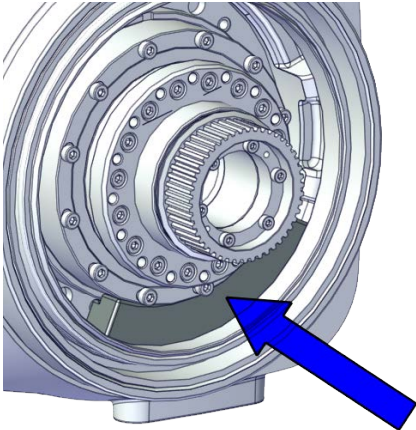
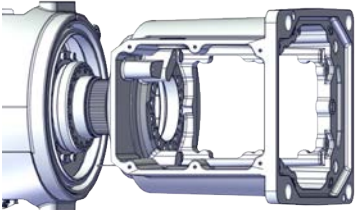
Separating the base from the swing

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base
Continued


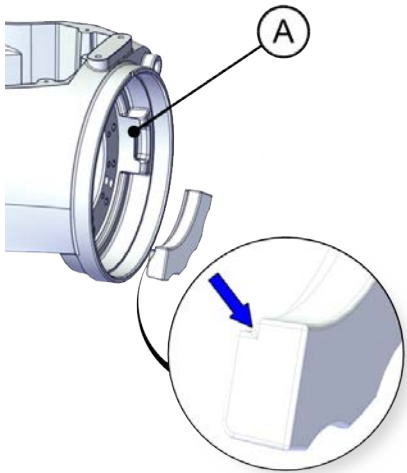
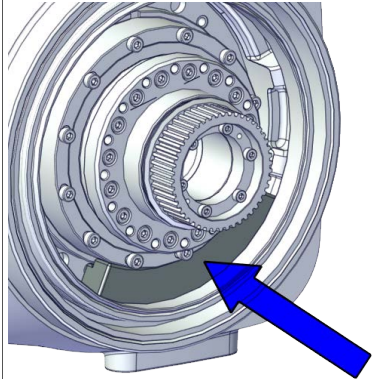
| Action | Note |
|--|--|
| <div>2</div> <div>Remove the screws and washers.</div> <div> Tip</div> <div>Three screw holes have no screws fitted in. Take photos of the screw and washer position before removing them, to have as a reference when refitting.</div> <div></div> <div>xx1800003068</div> | <div></div> <div>xx1800003069</div> |
| <div>3</div> <div>Separate the base from the swing.</div> <div> CAUTION</div> <div>The axis-1 mechanical stop is accessible now. Put it aside for later refitting.</div> <div></div> <div>xx1800003071</div> | <div></div> <div>xx1800003070</div> |

Continues on next page

Refitting the base

Use these procedures to refit the base.

Placing the axis-1 mechanical stop

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Check the axis-1 mechanical stop. Replace if damaged. | Mechanical stop, axis 1: 3HAC061947-001 |
| 2 | <p>Put the axis-1 mechanical stop in place in the swing.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The mechanical stop can be placed in any place except the block (A) on the swing. Make sure the mechanical stop step pointed in the figure is facing the swing when putting.</p>  |  xx1800003071 |

xx1800003619


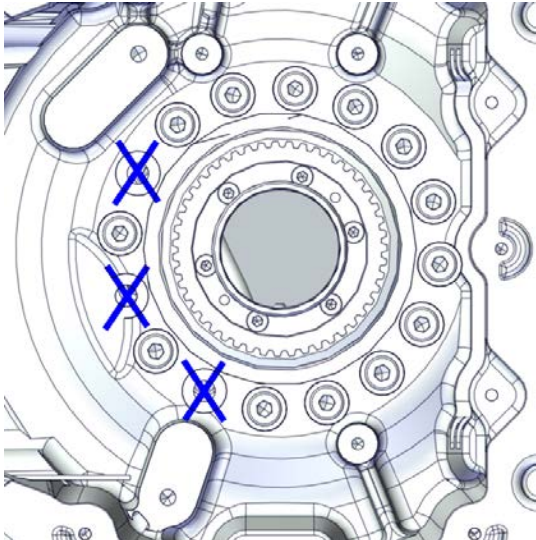
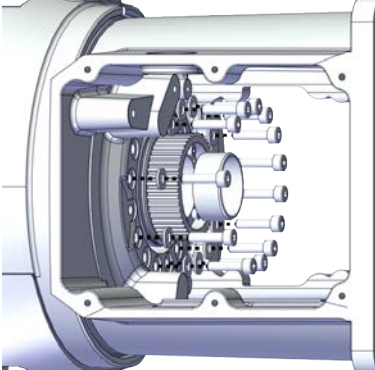
Continues on next page

5 Repair


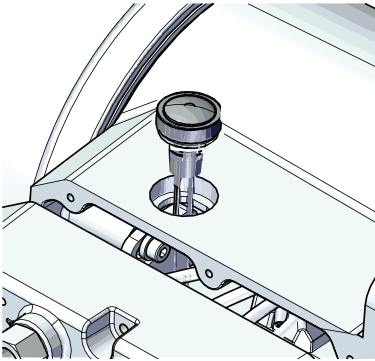
5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued

Refitting the base to the swing

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Refit the base to the swing.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Pay attention to the screw and washer location.</p>  <p>xx1800003068</p> | <p>Screw: M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (13 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 4.4 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003069</p> |

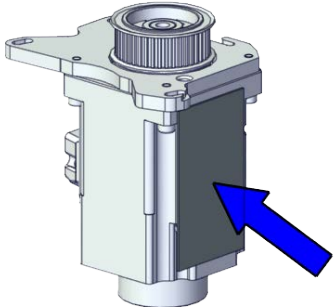
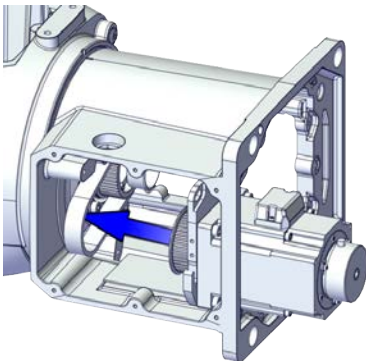
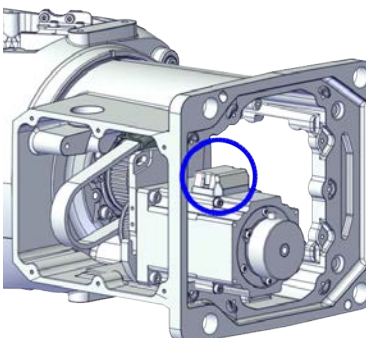
Refitting the brake release button

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Refit the brake release button.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not reconnect the connector yet.</p> <p>Do not tighten the button yet.</p> | <p>brake release button assembly tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001</p>  <p>xx1800003040</p> |

Refitting the axis-1 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | <p>Check that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages• the motor is clean and undamaged. | |

Continues on next page


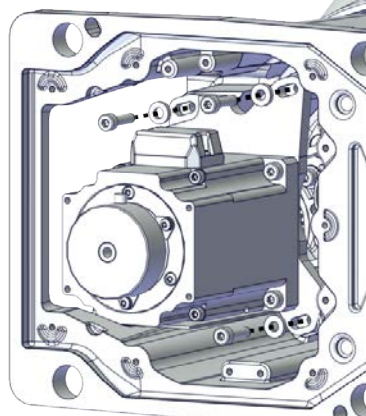
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Check the cooling pad. Replace if damaged. | <p>Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors: 3HAC071020-001</p>  <p>xx1800003602</p> |
| 3 | Install the timing belt to the motor pulley and verify that the belt runs correctly in the groove of the pulley. |  <p>xx1800003085</p> |
| 4 | Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the base. At the same time, install the timing belt to the gearbox pulley and verify that the belt runs correctly in the groove of the pulley. | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003072</p> |

Continues on next page

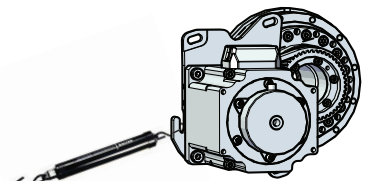

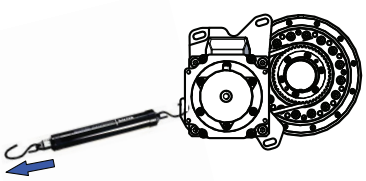
5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued

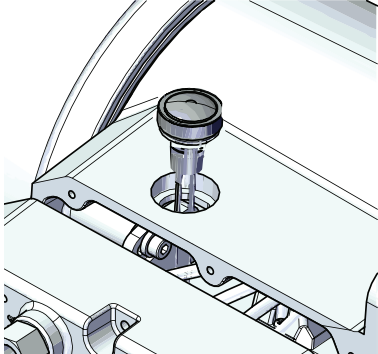
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Washer, 3HAC063985-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800003065</p> |

Adjusting the axis-1 timing belt tension

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the motor. |  <p>xx1900000040</p> |
| 2 | <p>Pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p> | <p>Used belt: 58.24-63.56 N</p> <p>New belt: 83.2-90.8 N (for reference only)</p>  <p>xx1900000041</p> |
| 3 | Secure the motor with the screws. | Tightening torque: 3 Nm |

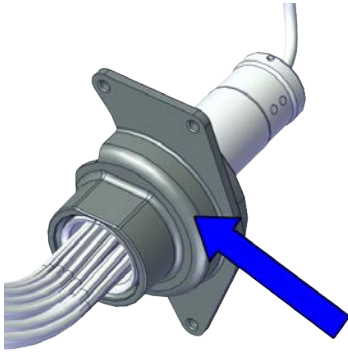
Continues on next page

Securing the brake release button

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Tighten the brake release button using the tool. | brake release button assembly tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001  xx1800003040 |

Refitting the lower cable package through the axis-1 gearbox

Notice that the procedure differs depending on if the connector interface is located either at the rear or at the bottom of the base.



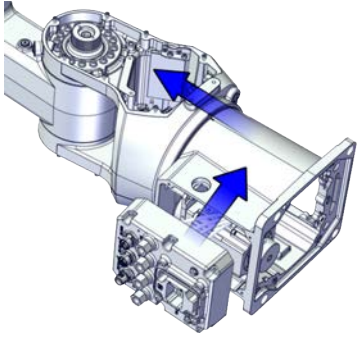

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Refit the pulley cover to the lower cable package. |  xx1800003046 |

Continues on next page



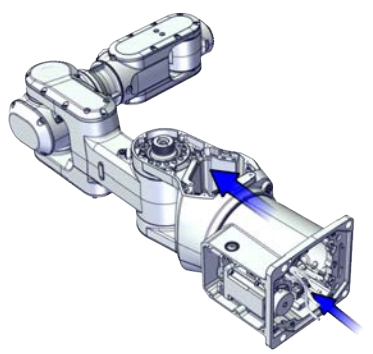

5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Valid for cabling with rear interface</p> <p>Insert the cable package in the base and up through the axis-1 gearbox, through the rear.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p> | <p></p> <p>xx1800003047</p> <p>Cable protection tube orientation: use the encircled notch on the cable protection tube as a reference when inserting the cable package, which should be at the opposite direction to the locking screw hole on the gearbox.</p> <p></p> <p>xx1800003048</p> |

Continues on next page


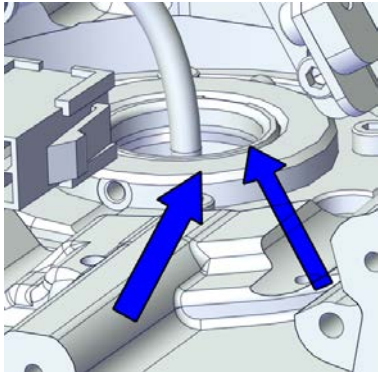
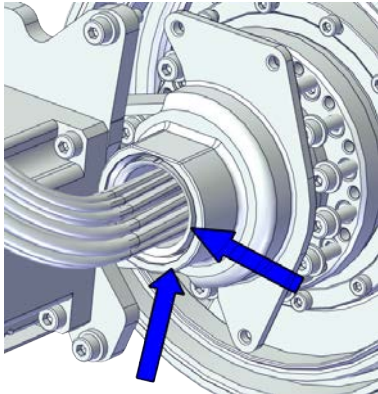
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | <p>Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)</p> <p>Insert the cable package in the base and up through the axis-1 gearbox, through the bottom.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p> | <p></p> <p>xx1800003060</p> <p>Cable protection tube orientation: use the encircled notch on the cable protection tube as a reference when inserting the cable package, which should be at the opposite direction to the locking screw hole on the gearbox.</p> <p></p> <p>xx1800003048</p> |

Continues on next page



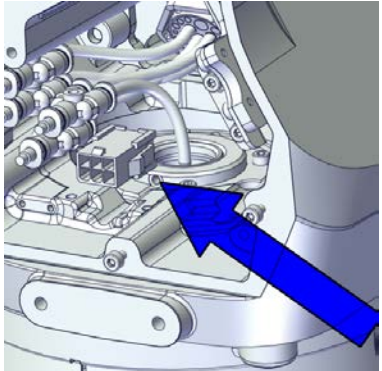
5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base
Continued

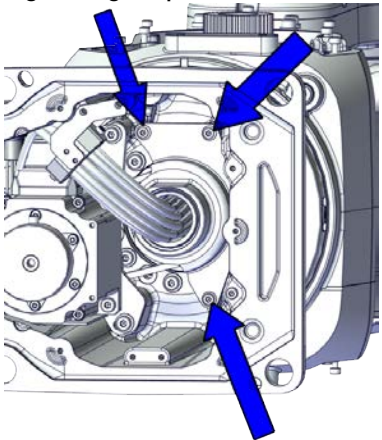
Securing the lower cable package to the axis-1 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | <p>Make sure that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The hole on the cable protection tube is aligned with the locking screw hole on the gearbox.• The cable protection tube surface is completely parallel with the pulley cover at one side and with the flange at the other side. |  <p>xx1800003063</p>  <p>xx1800003049</p>  <p>xx1800003050</p> |


Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | <p>Apply a little Loctite 243 to the locking screw and refit the locking screw.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Make sure the locking screw header is parallel with flange surface.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>If there is locking liquid residues on the screw or screw hole, please clean it before refitting. Remove residual locking liquid after refitting.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 (1 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003032</p> |

Refitting the pulley cover

| | Action | Note |
|---|-------------------------|--|
| 1 | Refit the puller cover. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003043</p> |

Reconnecting the SMB connectors


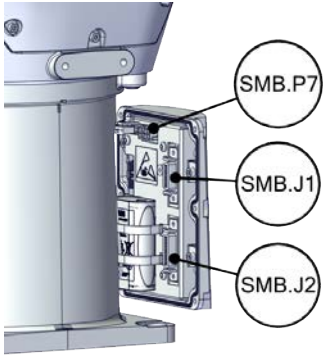

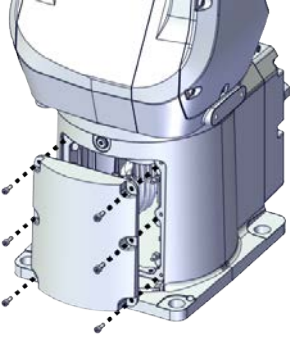
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 | <p> ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 48.</p> | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

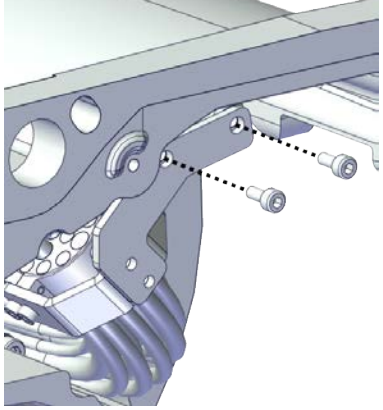
5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued


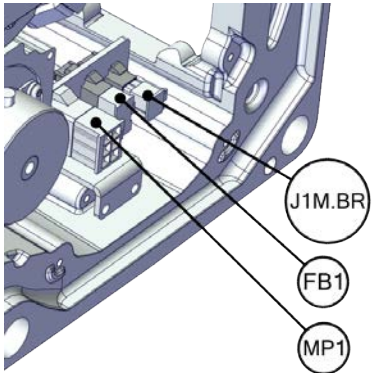
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• SMB.P7• SMB.J1• SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002468</p> |
| 3 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |
| 4 | <p>Refit the SMB cover to the base.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002467</p> |

Continues on next page

Securing the lower cable package to the base

| | Action | Note |
|---|--------------------------|--|
| 1 | Refit the cable bracket. | <p>Screw: M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003042</p> |

Reconnecting the brake release cabling and axis-1 motor connectors

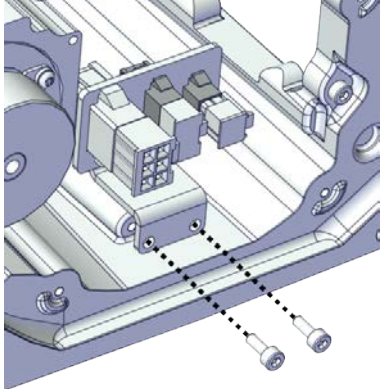
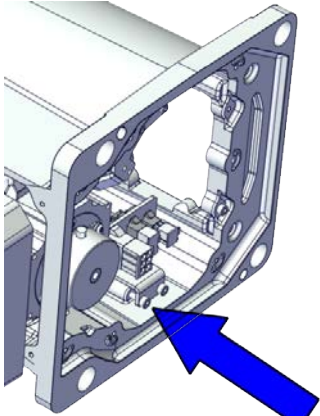
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J1M.BR • MP1 • FB1 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003054</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued

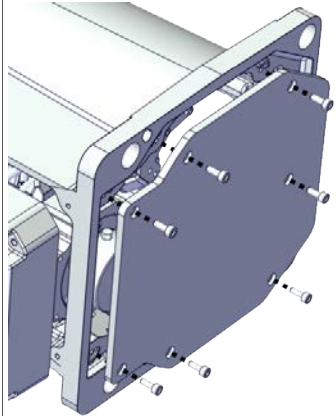
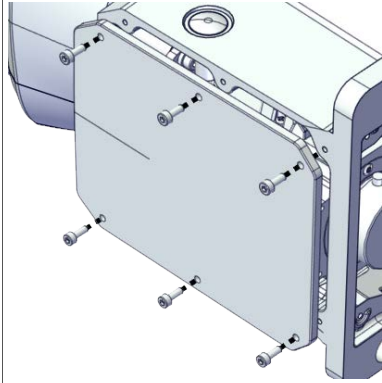
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | Reconnect the floor cable together with the connector plate. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003037</p>  <p>xx1800003036</p> |

Refitting the base cover


Notice that the procedure differs depending on if the connector interface is located either at the rear or at the bottom of the base.

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package. | |
| 2 | Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package. | |
| 3 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 4 | Valid for cabling with rear interface Refit the bottom cover. | Screw: M3x8 Steel 8.8-A2F (7 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003035 |
| 5 | Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1) Refit the rear cover. | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003057 |

Refitting the connector interface plate

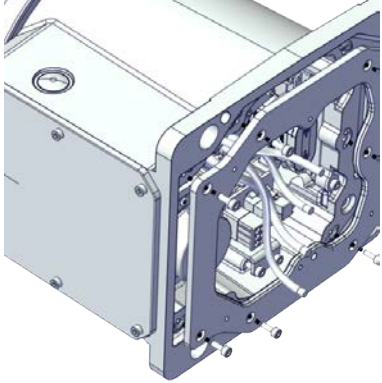
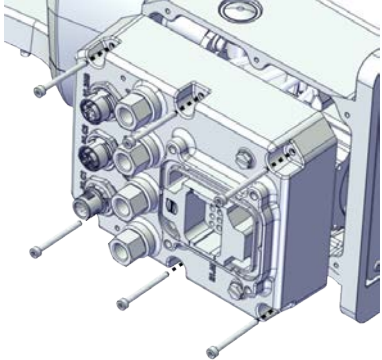
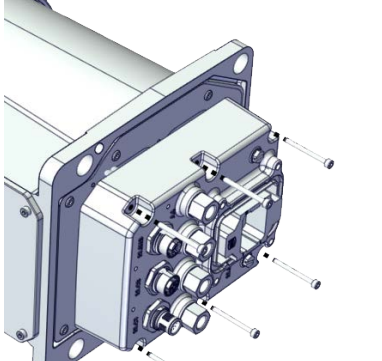
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued


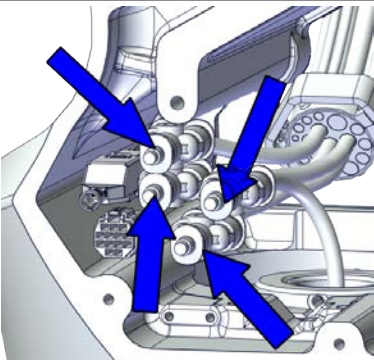

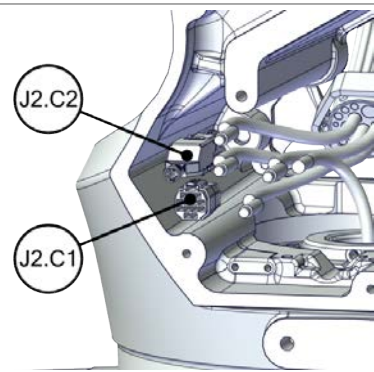
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1) Refit the base adapter. | Screw: M3x8 Steel 8.8-A2F (7 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003056 |
| 3 | Refit the connector interface plate to the base. | Screw: M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm Valid for cabling with rear interface  xx1800003034 Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)  xx1800003055 |

Continues on next page

Securing the robot to the foundation

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 |  CAUTION The CRB 1100 robot weighs 21.1 kg and can be lifted by one person. | |
| 2 | Raise the robot to standing and secure to the foundation with the attachment screws and washers. | Attachment screws: M12x25 (robot installation directly on foundation), quality: 8.8. Washers: 4 pcs, 24 x 13 x 2.5. Tightening Torque: 50 Nm±5 Nm. |

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern to the Y-shaped connectors.  Tip See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses. The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector. |  xx1800002500 |
| 2 | Reconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.C1 • J2.C2  Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector. |  xx1800002501 |

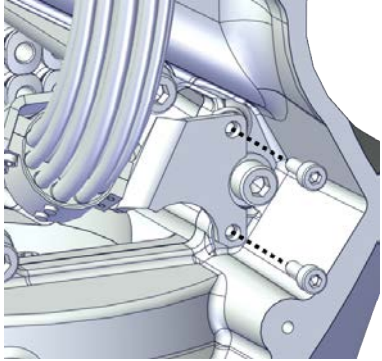
Continues on next page

5 Repair

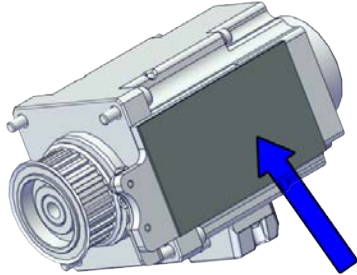
5.4.1 Replacing the base

Continued

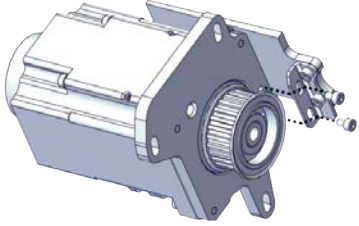

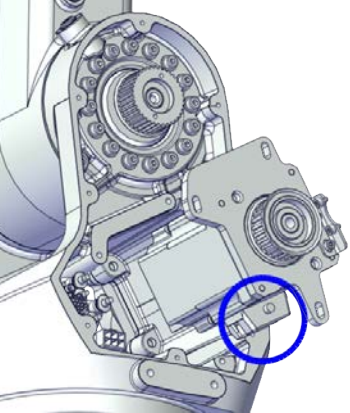

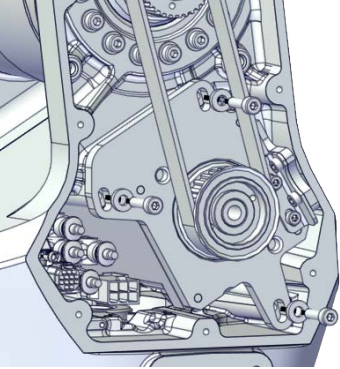
Securing the cable package to the swing

| | Action | Note |
|---|--------------------------|--|
| 1 | Refit the cable bracket. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002499</p> |

Refitting the axis-2 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Check that: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages• the motor is clean and undamaged. | |
| 2 | Check the cooling pad. Replace if damaged, as shown in the following step. | <p>Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors: 3HAC071020-001</p>  <p>xx1800003603</p> |

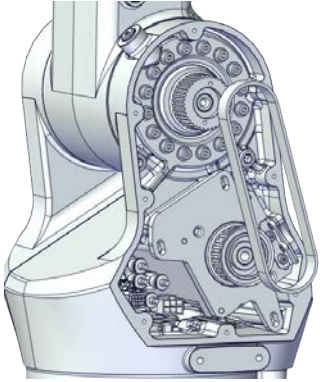

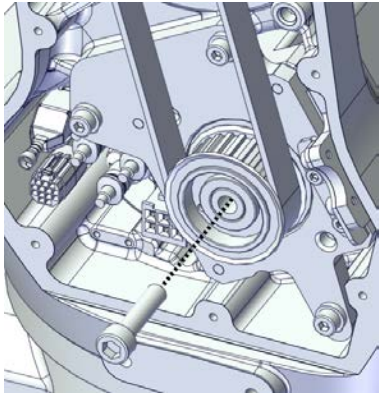
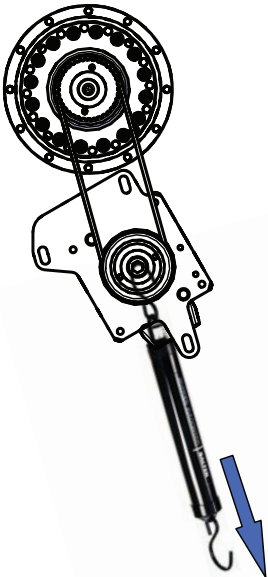
Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 3 | <p>Remove the screws. Replace with a new cooling pad and then refit the screws.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x5 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003026</p> |
| 4 | <p>Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the swing.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Bend the motor signal cable back towards the swing support.</p> | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003027</p> |
| 5 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washer, 3HAC063985-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800002494</p> |

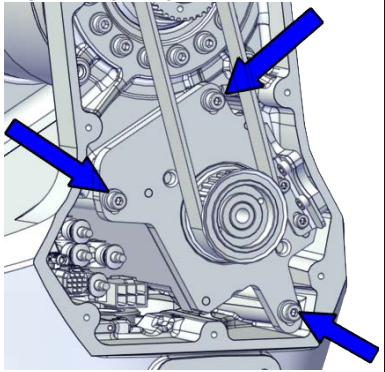
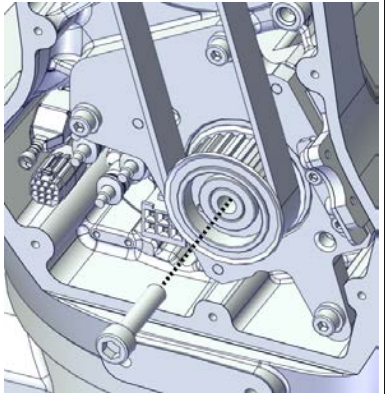

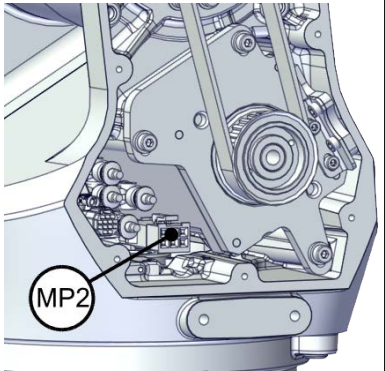
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 6 | Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys. |  xx1800003028 |
| 7 | Install an M6x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.  Note Do not insert the entire screw to the hole. |  xx1900000010 |
| 8 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force. | Initial referenced force for used belt: 68.18-75.04 N (for reference only) Initial referenced force for new belt: 97.4-107.2 N  xx1900000029 |

Continues on next page

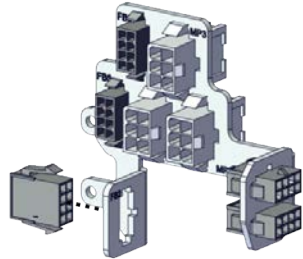

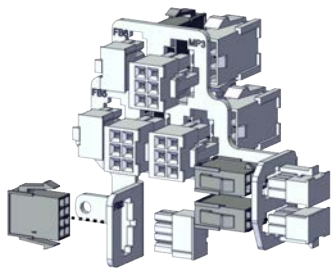

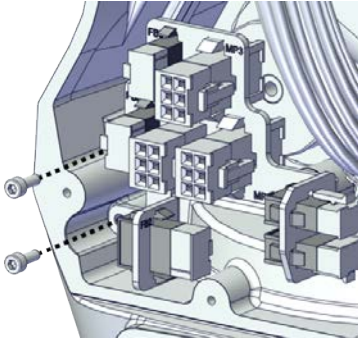
| | Action | Note |
|----|--|--|
| 9 | Secure the motor with the screws. | <p>Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002493</p> |
| 10 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. | <p>Used belt: 163-174 Hz New belt: 180-229 Hz (for reference only)</p> |
| 11 | If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust. | |
| 12 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  <p>xx1900000010</p> |
| 13 | <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MP2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800002495</p> |

5 Repair

5.4.1 Replacing the base

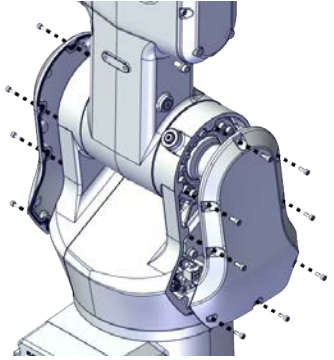
Continued

Reconnecting the connectors at the division point


| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Insert the female header of the connectors to the connector plate. |  xx1800003029 |
| 2 | Reconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.FB2,3,4,5,6 • J2.MP3,4,5/6  Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector. |  xx1800003030 |
| 3 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |
| 4 | Refit the connector plate. | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm  xx1800002489 |

Continues on next page

Refitting the swing covers

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package. | |
| 2 | Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package. | |
| 3 | Refit the covers. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Swing cover • Swing support cover | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003607 |

Concluding procedure

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Recalibrate the robot. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |
| 2 |  DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 161 . | |

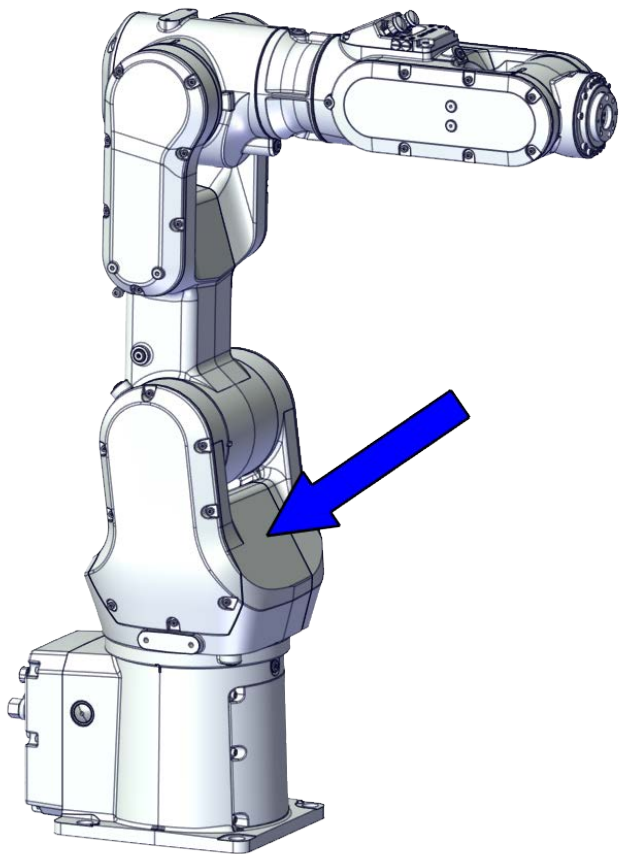
5 Repair

5.4.2 Replacing the swing

5.4.2 Replacing the swing

Location of the swing

The swing is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002473

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|---|----------------|------|
| Lower cable harness (CP/CS and air hose, with Ethernet) | 3HAC075523-001 | |
| Swing | 3HAC069050-001 | |
| Swing support | 3HAC069039-001 | |
| Base | 3HAC069048-001 | |
| Gear unit with pulley, axis 1 | 3HAC069062-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 1 | 3HAC083589-001 | |

Continues on next page

5.4.2 Replacing the swing
Continued

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|--|
| Timing belt, axis 1 | 3HAC061934-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 2 | 3HAC083588-001 | . |
| Timing belt, axis 2 | 3HAC061935-001 | |
| Mechanical stop, axis 1 | 3HAC061947-001 | Replace if damaged. |
| Base bottom cover | 3HAC060463-001 | Standard configuration, used for robots with rear connector interface. |
| Base rear cover | 3HAC070312-001 | Used for robots with bottom connector interface. |
| Base adapter | 3HAC070313-001 | Used for robots with bottom connector interface. |
| Swing cover | 3HAC069051-001 | |
| Swing support cover | 3HAC069052-001 | |
| Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors | 3HAC071020-001 | Cooling pads are wear parts. One cooling pad sheet contains 6 pieces of small pad. Replace if damaged with one piece each time. |
| Washer | 3HAC063985-001 | 9x4.3x1, Steel |

Required tools and equipment

| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |
| Sonic tension meter | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| Dynamometer | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| brake release button assembly tool | - | Included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001. Used to remove and refit the brake release button. |

Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|--------------|----------------|------|
| Cable straps | - | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.4.2 Replacing the swing

Continued

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|------------------|----------------|---|
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |
| Grease | - | Castrol Molub. Alloy 777-1 NG Used to lubricate bearings on the swing support and lower arm support. |
| Locking liquid | - | Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243) |
| Sealing compound | 3HAC026759-002 | Sikaflex 521 FC |

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. |  Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mounting flange is used for installation of the calibration tool. |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 664 . |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. | |

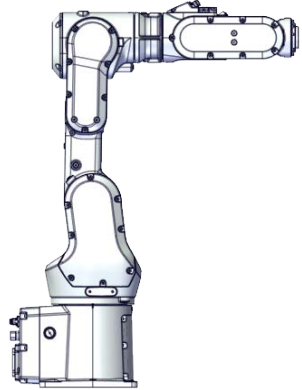

Removing the swing

Use these procedures to remove the swing.



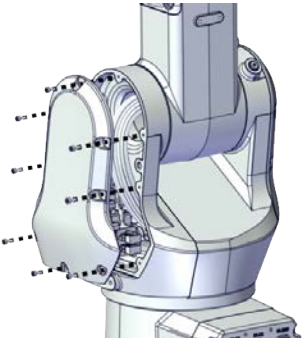
Preparations before removing the swing

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Jog all axes to zero position. |  xx1800003288 |
| 3 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. | |

Removing the axis-2 motor


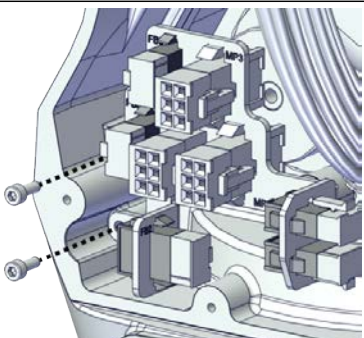

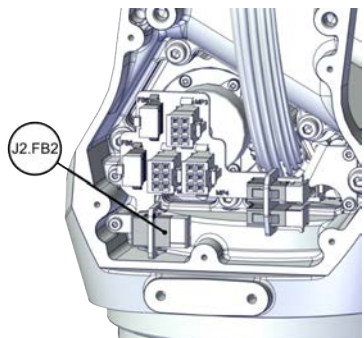
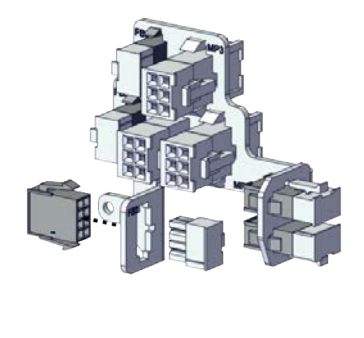
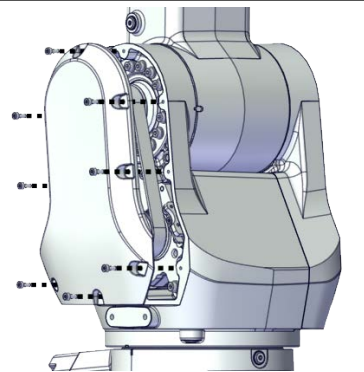
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Remove the swing support cover. |  xx1800002488 |

Continues on next page


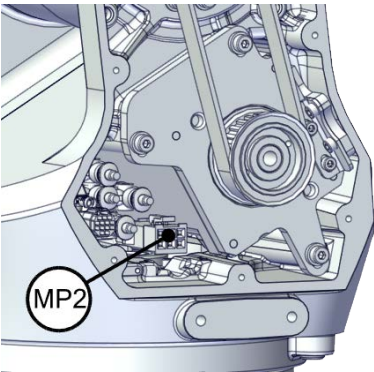
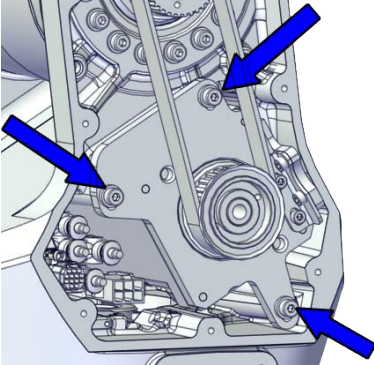
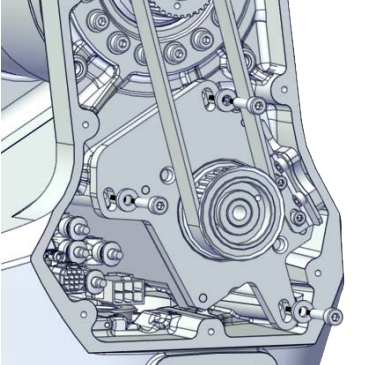


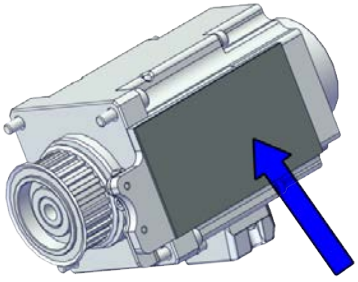
5 Repair

5.4.2 Replacing the swing

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | <p>Remove the connector plate.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cablings that are attached to the connector plate! The connector plate cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed from the plate.</p> |  <p>xx1800002489</p> |
| 5 | <p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• J2.FB2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> |  <p>xx1800002490</p> |
| 6 | <p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the connector plate.</p> |  <p>xx1800002491</p> |
| 7 | <p>Remove the swing cover.</p> |  <p>xx1800002492</p> |

Continues on next page

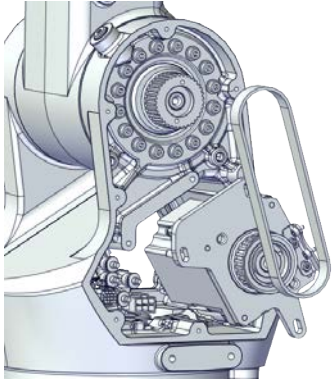
| | Action | Note |
|----|--|---|
| 8 | Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MP2  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  <p>xx1800002495</p> |
| 9 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  <p>xx1800002493</p> |
| 10 | Remove the screws and washers. |  <p>xx1800002494</p> |
| 11 | Carefully lift out the motor. <div>  CAUTION A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad. </div> <div>  CAUTION Be aware of the motor cabling. The motor cannot be removed completely until the connector is disconnected, as shown in following step. </div> | Cooling pad location  <p>xx1800003603</p> |

Continues on next page


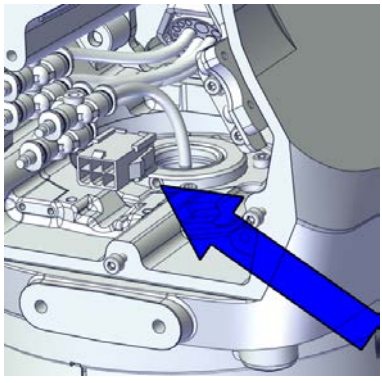
5 Repair

5.4.2 Replacing the swing


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|--|---|
| 12 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800002496 |

Loosening the cable package from axis-1 gearbox


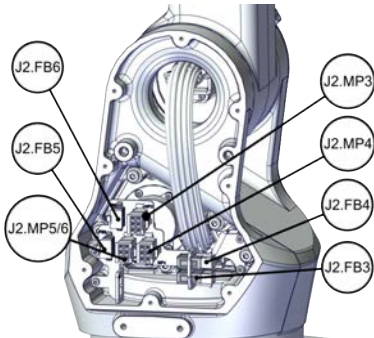
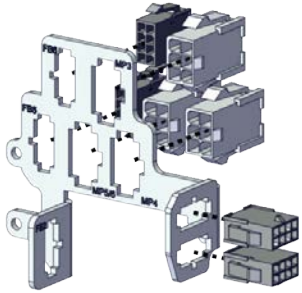
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Access the cable package locking screw on the axis-1 gearbox from the swing and then loosen the locking screw. |  xx1800003032 |
| 3 | Remove the locking screw. | |

Disconnecting the connectors at the division point


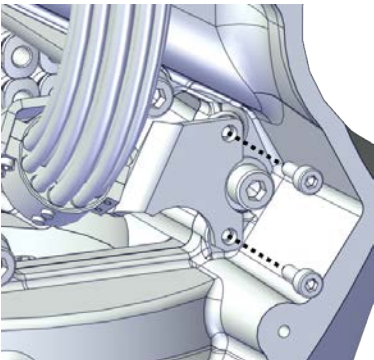
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page

5.4.2 Replacing the swing Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> J2.FB3,4,5,6 J2.MP3,4,5/6 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> |  <p>xx1800002497</p> |
| 3 | <p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the connector plate.</p> |  <p>xx1800002498</p> |

Separating the cable package from the swing


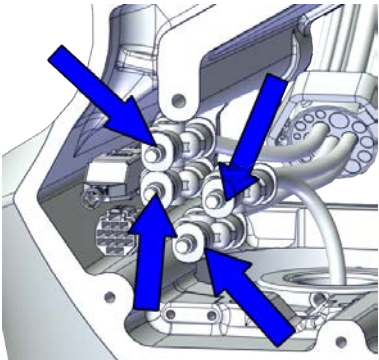


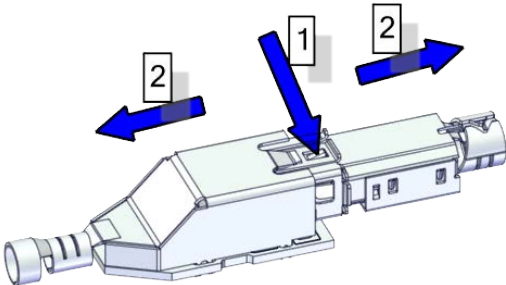
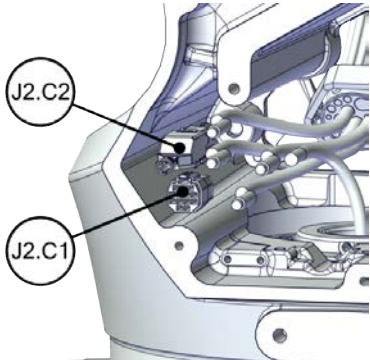
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |
| 2 | <p>Remove the cable bracket.</p> |  <p>xx1800002499</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair




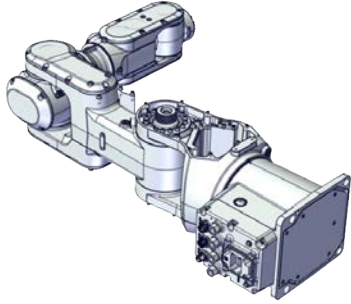
5.4.2 Replacing the swing
Continued

Disconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)



| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Disconnect the air hoses from the Y-shaped connectors. |  xx1800002500 |
| 3 | <p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• J2.C1• J2.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the J2.C2 (for Ethernet cabling).</p>  xx1800002943 |  xx1800002501 |

Continues on next page

Putting the robot on its side

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION The CRB 1100 robot weighs 21.1 kg and can be lifted by one person. | |
| 3 |  WARNING The robot is likely to be mechanically unstable if not secured to the foundation. | |
| 4 | Loosen the robot from the foundation by removing the foundation attachment screws and put the robot on its side. |  xx1800003033 |

Disconnecting the SMB connectors



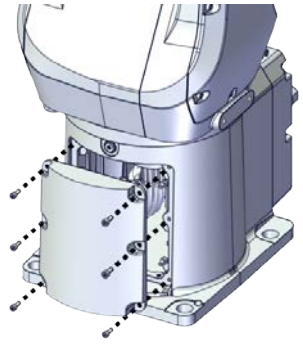

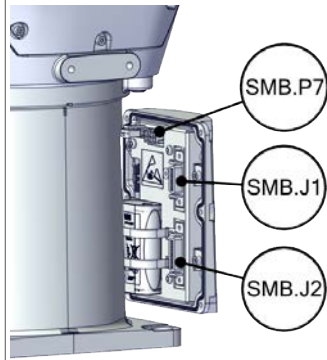
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 48 . | |

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.4.2 Replacing the swing


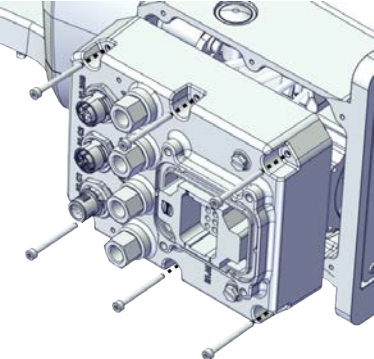
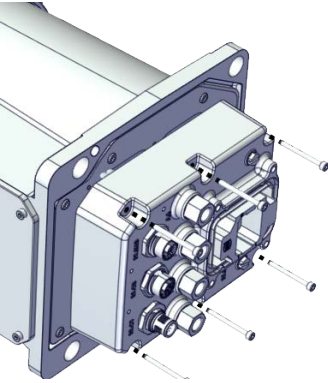
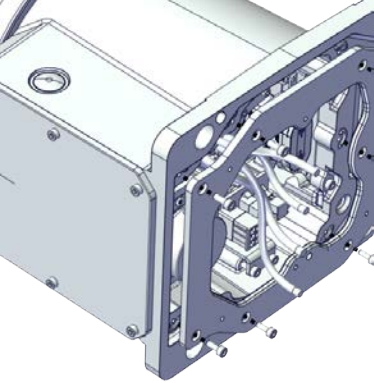
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 3 | <p>Remove the SMB cover attachment screws and carefully open the cover.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Clean cover from metal residues before opening. Metal residues can cause shortage on the boards which can result in hazardous failures.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>There are cabling attached to the cover. The cover cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed.</p> |  <p>xx1800002467</p> |
| 4 | <p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> |  <p>xx1800002468</p> |
| 5 | Remove the SMB cover completely from the base. | |

Opening the connector interface plate

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Remove the connector interface plate attachment screws and carefully open the plate.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>There are cabling attached to the cover. The cover cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed.</p> | <p>Valid for cabling with rear interface</p>  <p>xx1800003034</p> <p>Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)</p>  <p>xx1800003055</p> |
| 3 | <p>Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)</p> <p>Remove the base adapter.</p> |  <p>xx1800003056</p> |

Continues on next page


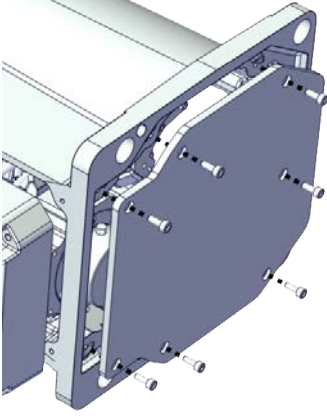
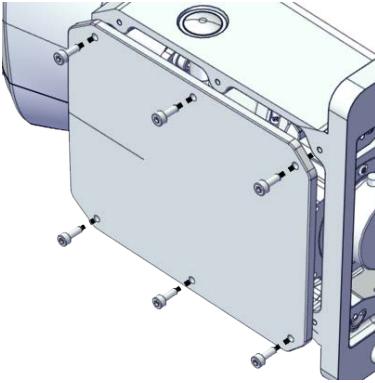
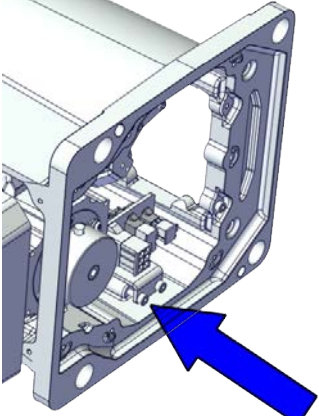
5 Repair

5.4.2 Replacing the swing

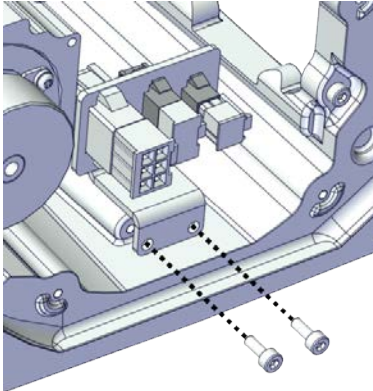

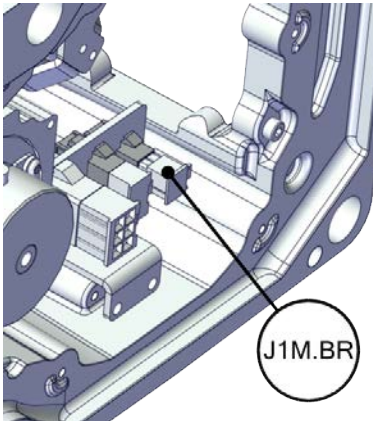
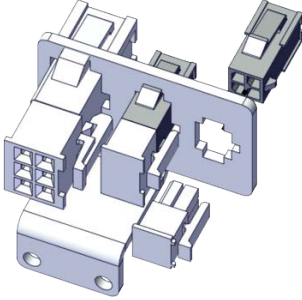
Continued

Removing the brake release button

Notice that the procedure differs depending on if the connector interface is located either at the rear or at the bottom of the base.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Valid for cabling with rear interface Remove the base bottom cover. |  xx1800003035 |
| 3 | Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1) Remove the base rear cover. |  xx1800003057 |
| 4 | Disconnect the earth cable. |  xx1800003036 |

Continues on next page

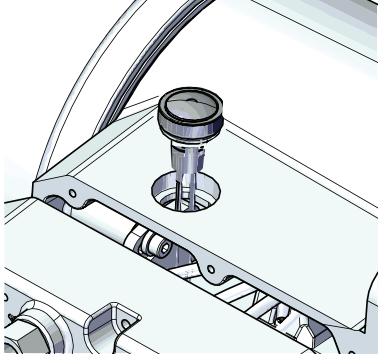
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | Remove the connector plate. |  xx1800003037 |
| 6 | Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> J1M.BR  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  xx1800003038 |
| 7 | Remove the female header of the J1M.BR connector from the connector plate. |  xx1800003039 |

Continues on next page



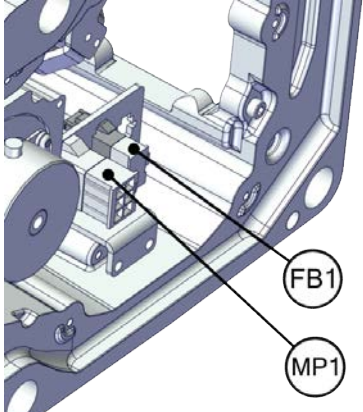
5 Repair

5.4.2 Replacing the swing


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 8 | Remove the brake release button from the base using the tool. | brake release button assembly tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001  xx1800003040 |

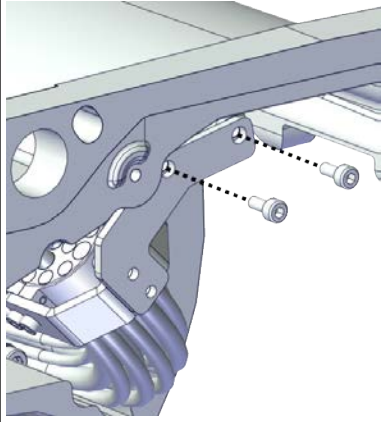
Disconnecting axis-1 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• FB1• MP1  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  xx1800003041 |


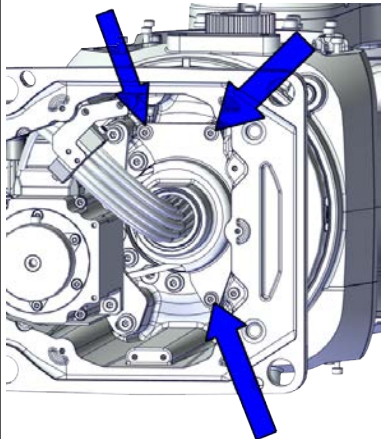
Separating the cable package from the base

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |


Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|---------------------------|---|
| 2 | Remove the cable bracket. |  xx1800003042 |

Separating the cable package from the axis-1 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the pulley cover. |  xx1800003043 |

Pulling out the cable package

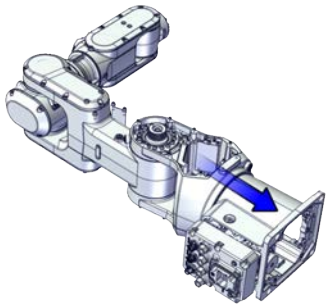
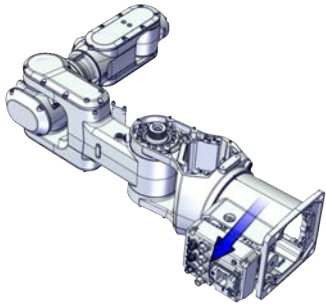
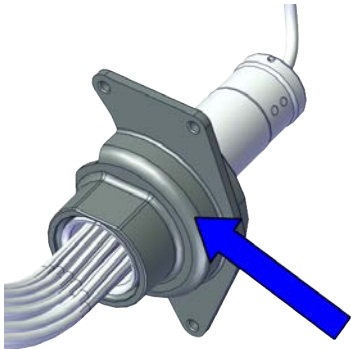
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.4.2 Replacing the swing


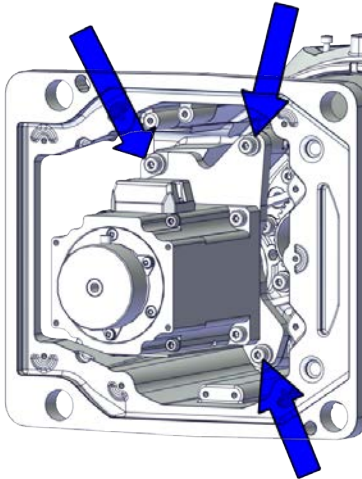
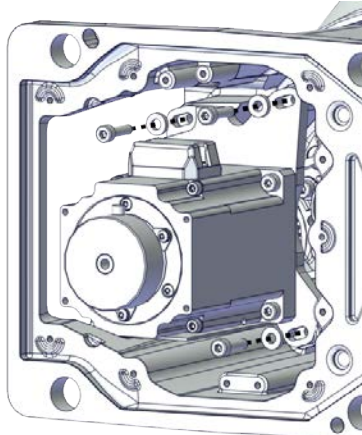

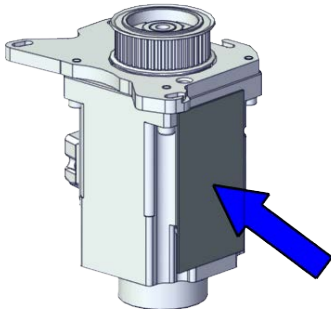
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Pull out the lower cable package from the axis-1 gearbox. |  xx1800003044 |
| 3 | Pull out the lower cable package from the base. |  xx1800003045 |
| 4 | Remove the pulley cover from the lower cable package. |  xx1800003046 |

Removing the axis-1 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page

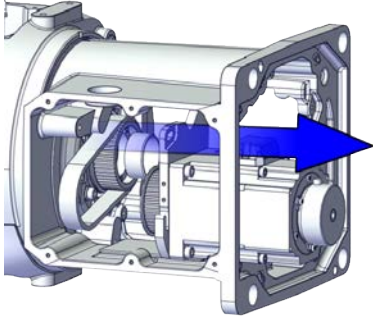
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800003064 |
| 4 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800003065 |
| 5 | Carefully lift out the motor.  CAUTION A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad. | Cooling pad location  xx1800003602 |

Continues on next page



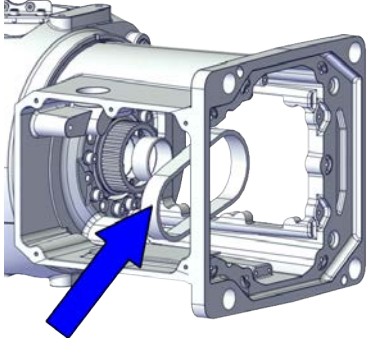
5 Repair

5.4.2 Replacing the swing


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 6 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800003066 |


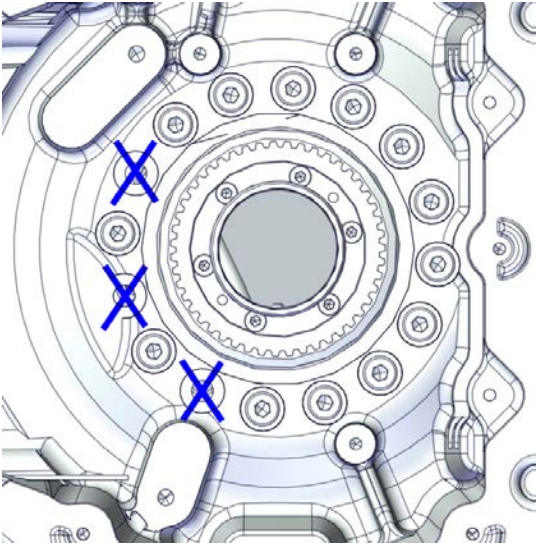
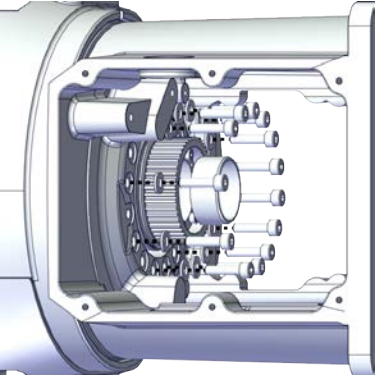

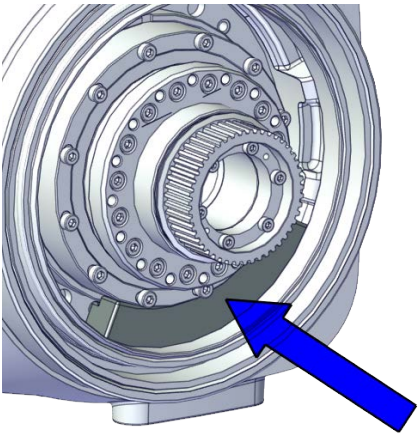
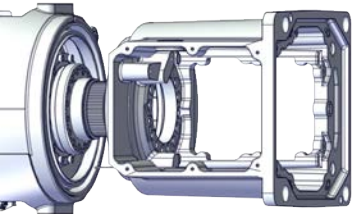
Removing the axis-1 timing belt

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Loosening timing belts will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before loosening timing belts. | |
| 3 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the gearbox. |  xx1800003067 |

Separating the base from the swing

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | <p>Remove the screws and washers.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Three screw holes have no screws fitted in. Take photos of the screw and washer position before removing them, to have as a reference when refitting.</p>  <p>xx1800003068</p> |  <p>xx1800003069</p> |
| 3 | <p>Separate the base from the swing.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>The axis-1 mechanical stop is accessible now. Put it aside for later refitting.</p>  <p>xx1800003071</p> |  <p>xx1800003070</p> |



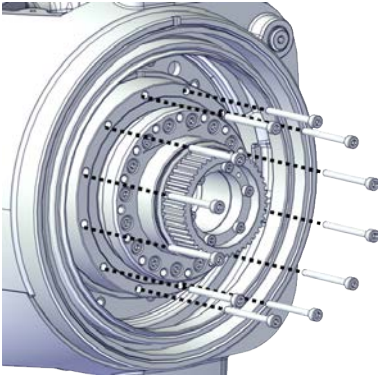
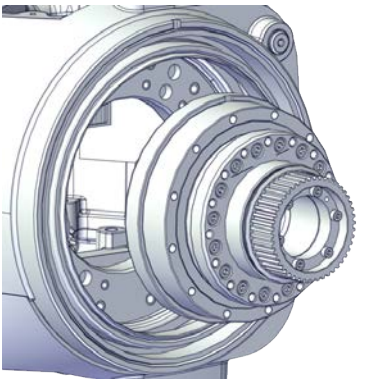
Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.4.2 Replacing the swing

Continued


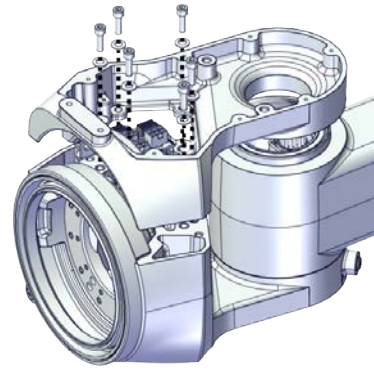

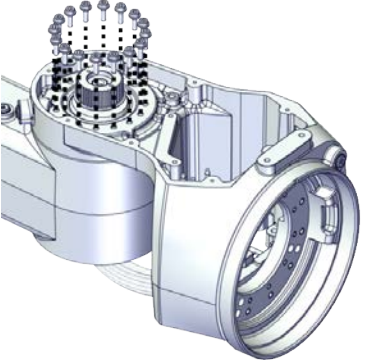
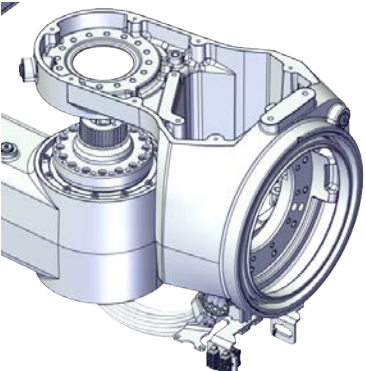
Removing the axis-1 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing gearboxes will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing gearboxes. | |
| 3 | Remove the screws. |  xx1800003073 |
| 4 | Pull out the gearbox. |  xx1800003074 |

Separating the swing from the lower arm

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | <p>Remove the swing support.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>If the swing support is hard to loosen from the lower arm, use a plastic hammer to knock on the swing support lightly.</p> |  <p>xx1800003076</p> |
| 3 | Route the upper cable package out of the swing support. | |
| 4 | <p>Remove the screws.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Some robots may be fitted with separate screws and washers. During replacement, always use the same screws (and washers) that are fitted on the robot at delivery. Contact ABB for more information.</p> |  <p>xx1900002192</p> |
| 5 | Separate the swing from the lower arm. |  <p>xx1800003078</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair


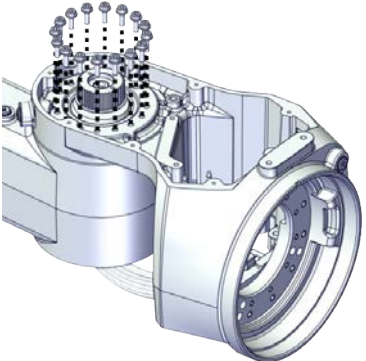
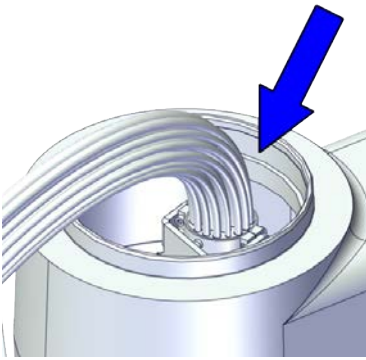

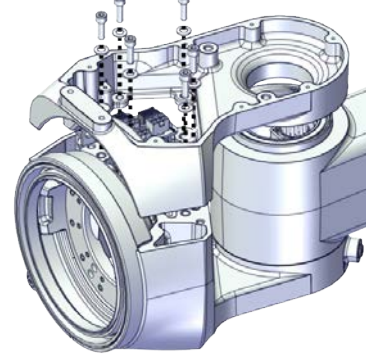
5.4.2 Replacing the swing

Continued

Refitting the swing

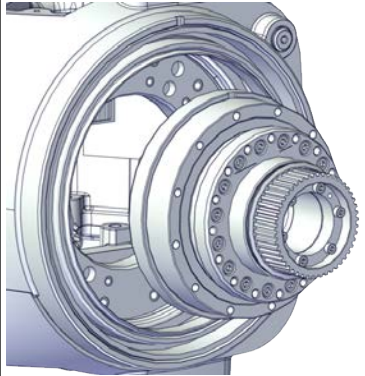
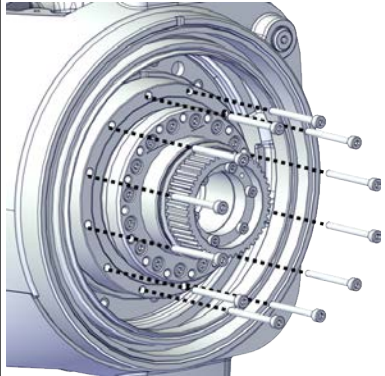
Use these procedures to refit the swing.

Refitting the swing to the lower arm

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Refit the swing to the lower arm.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Some robots may be fitted with separate screws and washers. During replacement, always use the same screws (and washers) that are fitted on the robot at delivery. Contact ABB for more information.</p> | <p>Flange screws (16 pcs) Tightening torque: 4.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1900002192</p> |
| 2 | Route the cable package through the swing support. | |
| 3 | Apply grease Castrol Molub-Alloy 777-1 NG to the inner surface of the lower arm, where contacts the bearing on the swing support. |  <p>xx2000000058</p> |
| 4 | <p>Refit the swing support.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>If the swing support is hard to closely fit to the lower arm, use a plastic hammer to knock on the swing support lightly.</p> | <p>Screw: M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003076</p> |

Continues on next page

Refitting the axis-1 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Refit the axis-1 gearbox. Make sure the locking screw hole on the gearbox is aligned with the notch on the swing casting. |  xx1800003074 |
| 2 | Secure with screws. | <p>Screw: M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (12 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.6 Nm</p>  xx1800003073 |

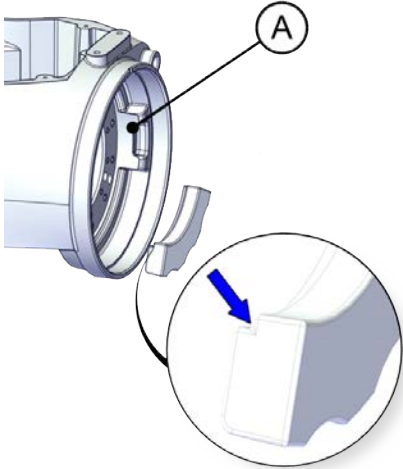
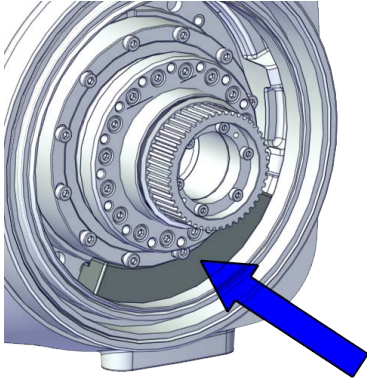
Placing the axis-1 mechanical stop

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Check the axis-1 mechanical stop. Replace if damaged. | Mechanical stop, axis 1: 3HAC061947-001 |

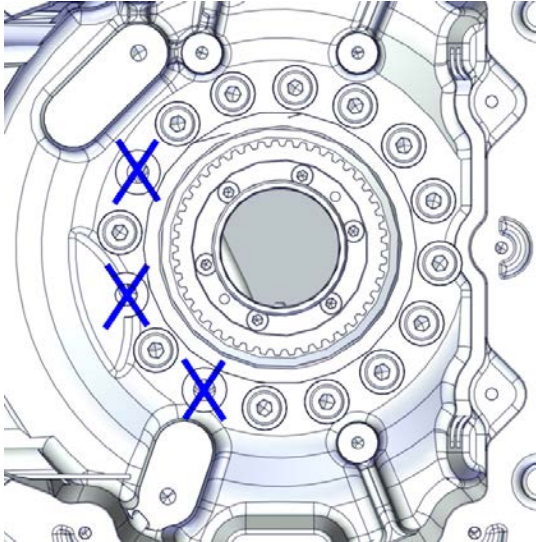
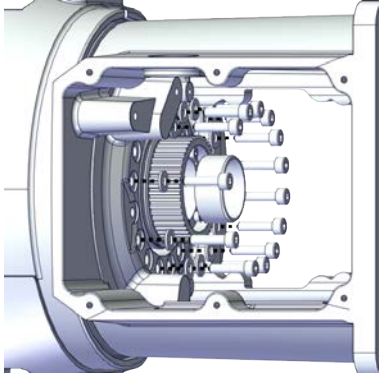
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.4.2 Replacing the swing
Continued


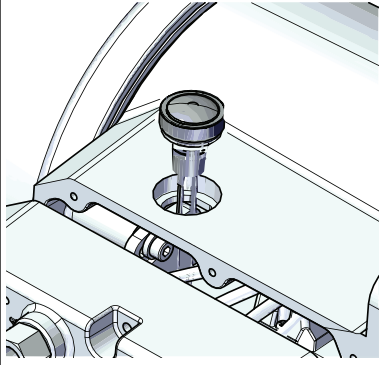
| Action | Note |
|---|--|
| <div>2</div> <div>Put the axis-1 mechanical stop in place in the swing.</div> <div><div><div></div><div>Note</div></div><div>The mechanical stop can be placed in any place except the block (A) on the swing. Make sure the mechanical stop step pointed in the figure is facing the swing when putting.</div></div> <div></div> <div>xx1800003619</div> | <div></div> <div>xx1800003071</div> |

Refitting the base to the swing

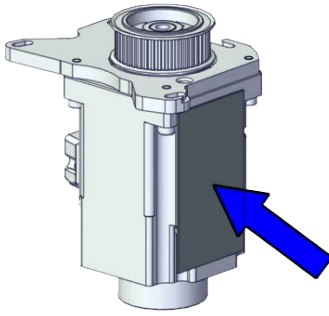
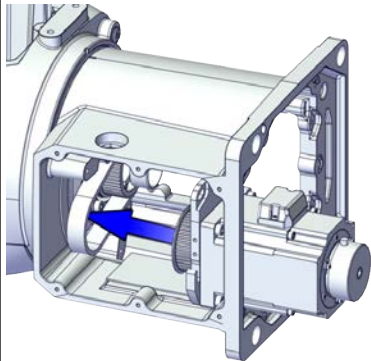
| Action | Note |
|---|---|
| <div>1</div> <div>Refit the base to the swing.</div> <div><div><div></div><div>Note</div></div><div>Pay attention to the screw and washer location.</div></div> <div></div> <div>xx1800003068</div> | <div>Screw: M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (13 pcs) Tightening torque: 4.4 Nm</div> <div></div> <div>xx1800003069</div> |

Continues on next page

Refitting the brake release button

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Refit the brake release button.  Note Do not reconnect the connector yet. Do not tighten the button yet. | brake release button assembly tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001  xx1800003040 |

Refitting the axis-1 motor

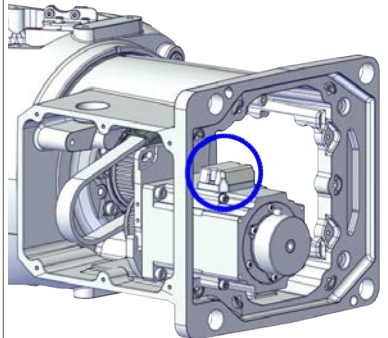

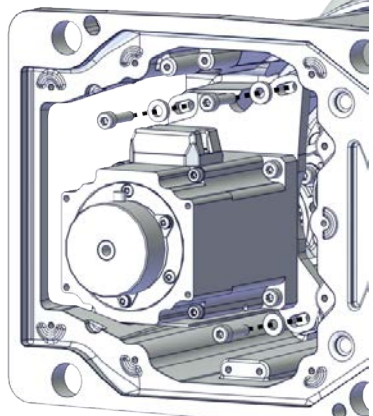
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Check that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages the motor is clean and undamaged. | |
| 2 | Check the cooling pad. Replace if damaged. | Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors: 3HAC071020-001  xx1800003602 |
| 3 | Install the timing belt to the motor pulley and verify that the belt runs correctly in the groove of the pulley. |  xx1800003085 |

Continues on next page

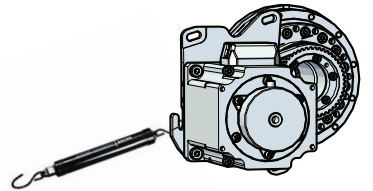
5 Repair

5.4.2 Replacing the swing

Continued


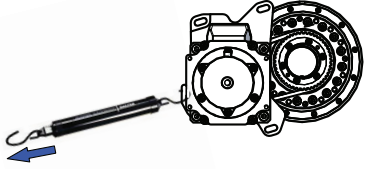
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the base. At the same time, install the timing belt to the gearbox pulley and verify that the belt runs correctly in the groove of the pulley. | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003072</p> |
| 5 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washer, 3HAC063985-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800003065</p> |

Adjusting the axis-1 timing belt tension

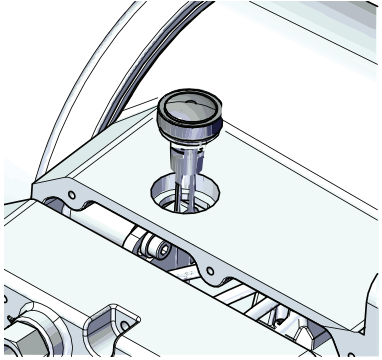
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the motor. |  <p>xx1900000040</p> |

Continues on next page

5.4.2 Replacing the swing
Continued

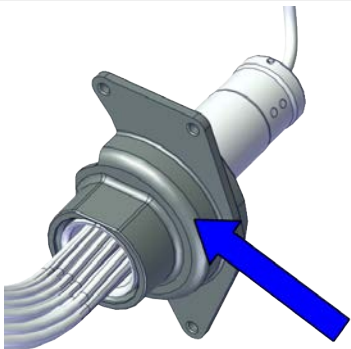
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | <p>Pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p> | <p>Used belt: 58.24-63.56 N New belt: 83.2-90.8 N (for reference only)</p>  <p>xx1900000041</p> |
| 3 | Secure the motor with the screws. | Tightening torque: 3 Nm |

Securing the brake release button

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Tighten the brake release button using the tool. | <p>brake release button assembly tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001</p>  <p>xx1800003040</p> |

Refitting the lower cable package through the axis-1 gearbox

Notice that the procedure differs depending on if the connector interface is located either at the rear or at the bottom of the base.



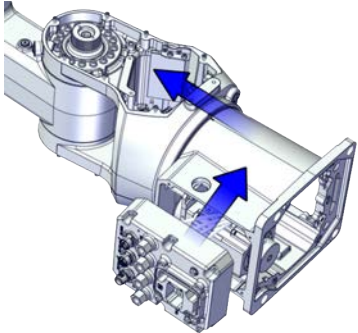

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Refit the pulley cover to the lower cable package. |  <p>xx1800003046</p> |

Continues on next page



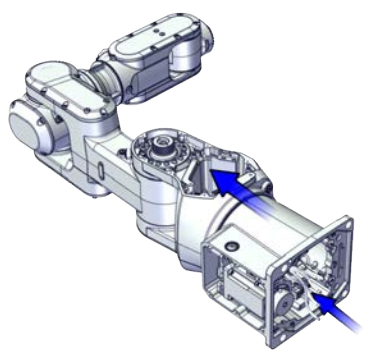
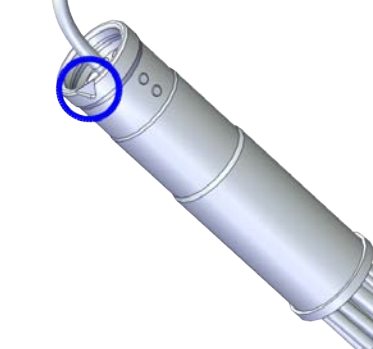
5 Repair

5.4.2 Replacing the swing

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Valid for cabling with rear interface</p> <p>Insert the cable package in the base and up through the axis-1 gearbox, through the rear.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p> | <p></p> <p>xx1800003047</p> <p>Cable protection tube orientation: use the encircled notch on the cable protection tube as a reference when inserting the cable package, which should be at the opposite direction to the locking screw hole on the gearbox.</p> <p></p> <p>xx1800003048</p> |

Continues on next page


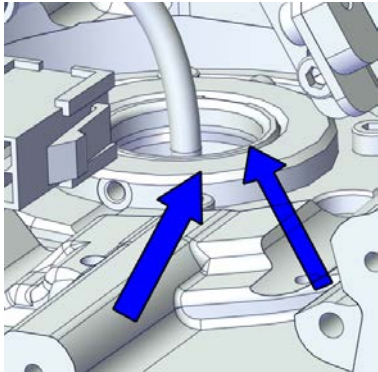
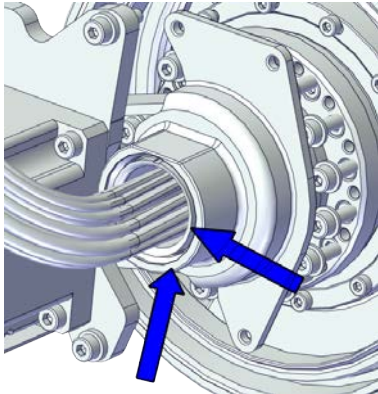
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 3 | <p>Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)</p> <p>Insert the cable package in the base and up through the axis-1 gearbox, through the bottom.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p> | <p></p> <p>xx1800003060</p> <p>Cable protection tube orientation: use the encircled notch on the cable protection tube as a reference when inserting the cable package, which should be at the opposite direction to the locking screw hole on the gearbox.</p> <p></p> <p>xx1800003048</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair



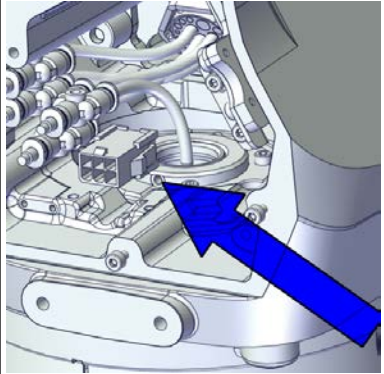
5.4.2 Replacing the swing
Continued

Securing the lower cable package to the axis-1 gearbox

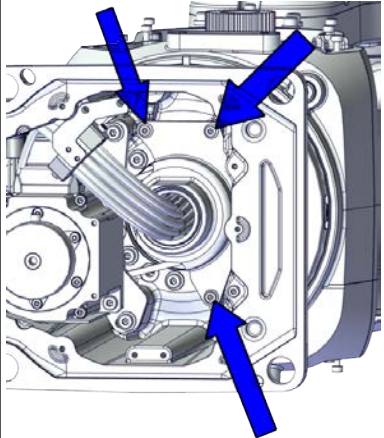
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | <p>Make sure that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The hole on the cable protection tube is aligned with the locking screw hole on the gearbox.• The cable protection tube surface is completely parallel with the pulley cover at one side and with the flange at the other side. |  <p>xx1800003063</p>  <p>xx1800003049</p>  <p>xx1800003050</p> |

Continues on next page


5.4.2 Replacing the swing
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | <p>Apply a little Loctite 243 to the locking screw and refit the locking screw.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Make sure the locking screw header is parallel with flange surface.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>If there is locking liquid residues on the screw or screw hole, please clean it before refitting. Remove residual locking liquid after refitting.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 (1 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003032</p> |

Refitting the pulley cover

| | Action | Note |
|---|-------------------------|--|
| 1 | Refit the puller cover. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003043</p> |

Reconnecting the SMB connectors


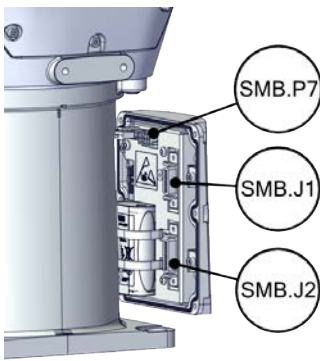

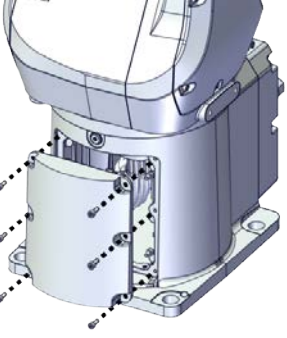
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 | <p> ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 48.</p> | |

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.4.2 Replacing the swing

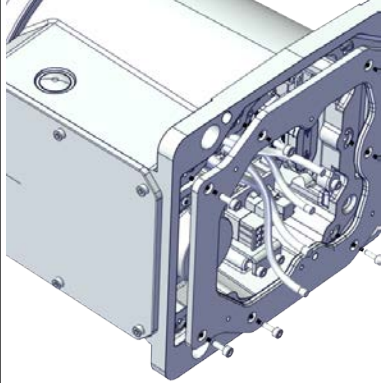
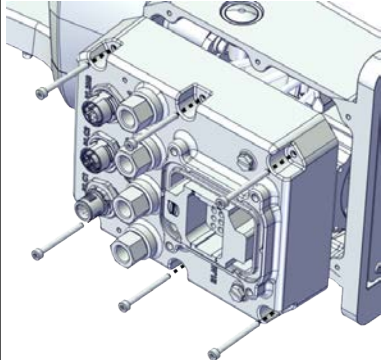
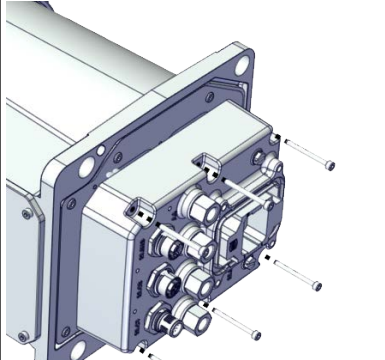
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• SMB.P7• SMB.J1• SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002468</p> |
| 3 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |
| 4 | <p>Refit the SMB cover to the base.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002467</p> |

Refitting the connector interface plate

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1) Refit the base adapter. | <p>Screw: M3x8 Steel 8.8-A2F (7 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003056</p> |
| 3 | Refit the connector interface plate to the base. | <p>Screw: M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm Valid for cabling with rear interface</p>  <p>xx1800003034</p> <p>Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)</p>  <p>xx1800003055</p> |

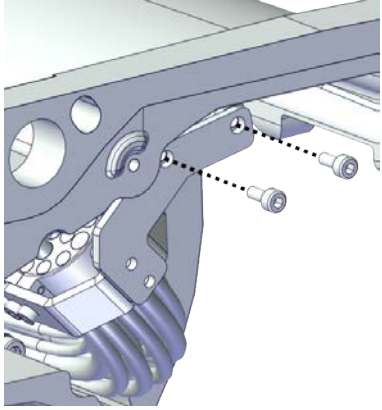
Continues on next page

5 Repair


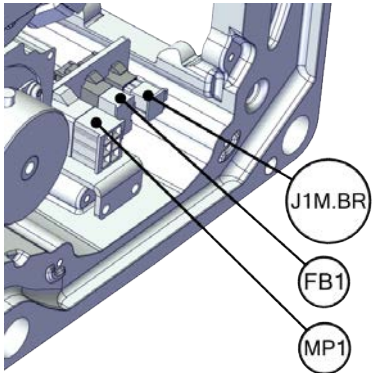
5.4.2 Replacing the swing

Continued

Securing the lower cable package to the base

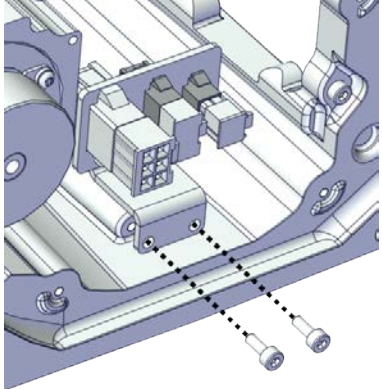
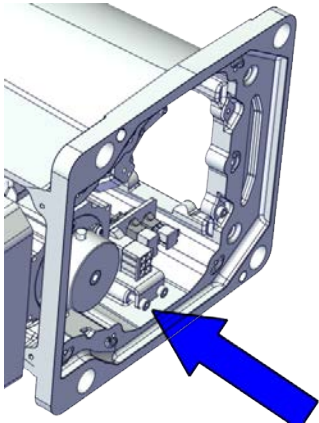
| | Action | Note |
|---|--------------------------|--|
| 1 | Refit the cable bracket. | <p>Screw: M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003042</p> |

Reconnecting the brake release cabling and axis-1 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• J1M.BR• MP1• FB1 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003054</p> |


Continues on next page

5.4.2 Replacing the swing
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | Reconnect the floor cable together with the connector plate. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003037</p>  <p>xx1800003036</p> |

Refitting the base cover

Notice that the procedure differs depending on if the connector interface is located either at the rear or at the bottom of the base.

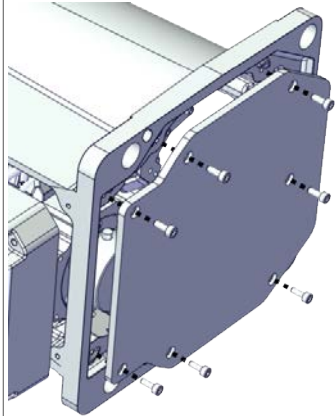
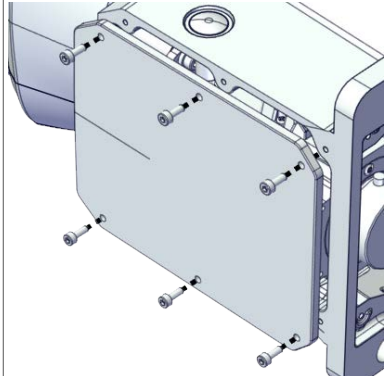
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package. | |
| 2 | Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package. | |
| 3 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.4.2 Replacing the swing

Continued


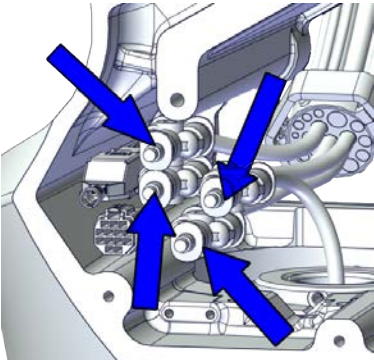

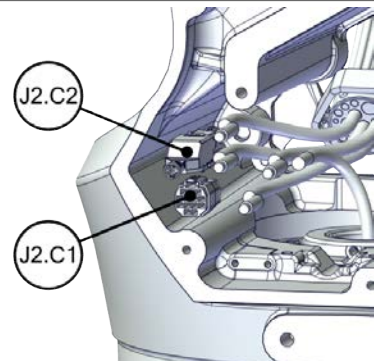
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 4 | Valid for cabling with rear interface Refit the bottom cover. | Screw: M3x8 Steel 8.8-A2F (7 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003035 |
| 5 | Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1) Refit the rear cover. | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003057 |

Securing the robot to the foundation

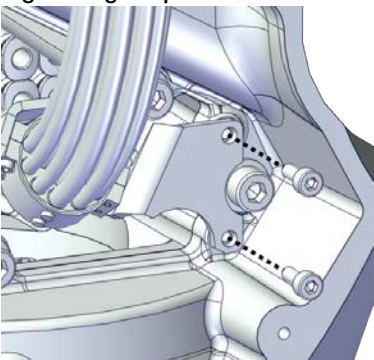
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 |  CAUTION The CRB 1100 robot weighs 21.1 kg and can be lifted by one person. | |
| 2 | Raise the robot to standing and secure to the foundation with the attachment screws and washers. | Attachment screws: M12x25 (robot installation directly on foundation), quality: 8.8. Washers: 4 pcs, 24 x 13 x 2.5. Tightening Torque: 50 Nm±5 Nm. |

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | <p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern to the Y-shaped connectors.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses. The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800002500</p> |
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.C1 • J2.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800002501</p> |

Securing the cable package to the swing

| | Action | Note |
|---|--------------------------|--|
| 1 | Refit the cable bracket. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002499</p> |

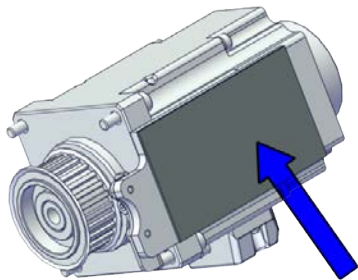
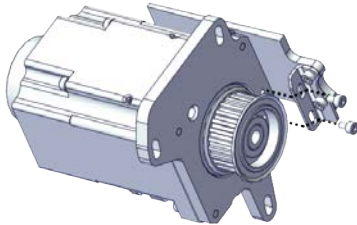

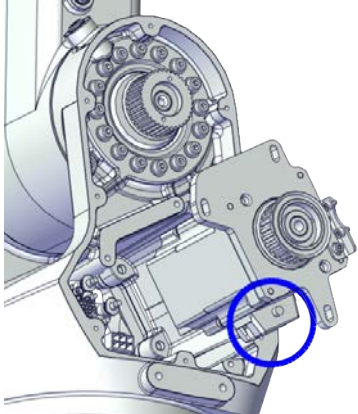
Continues on next page

5 Repair


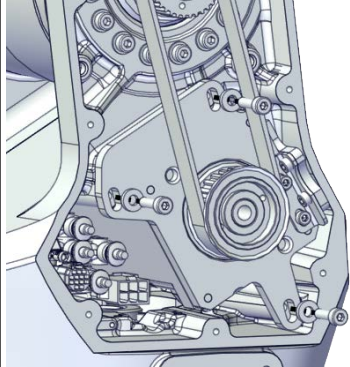
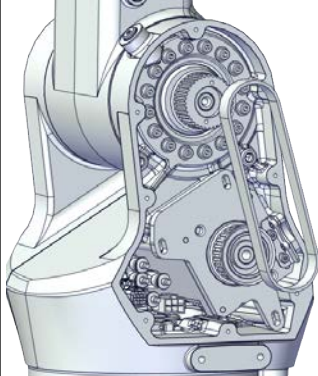

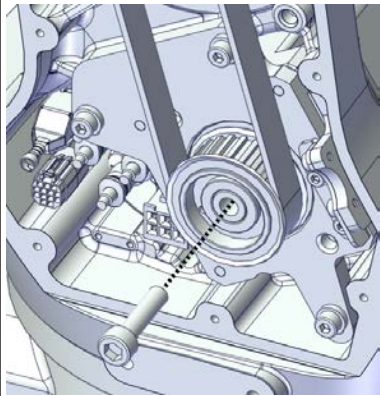
5.4.2 Replacing the swing

Continued

Refitting the axis-2 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Check that: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages• the motor is clean and undamaged. | |
| 2 | Check the cooling pad. Replace if damaged, as shown in the following step. | Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors: 3HAC071020-001  xx1800003603 |
| 3 | Remove the screws. Replace with a new cooling pad and then refit the screws. | Screw: M3x5 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003026 |
| 4 | Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the swing.  Tip Bend the motor signal cable back towards the swing support. | Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.  xx1800003027 |

Continues on next page

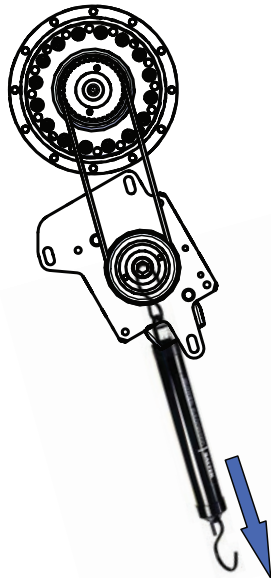
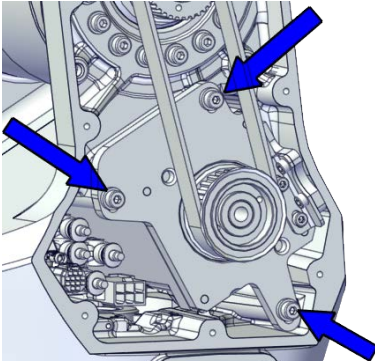
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 5 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washer, 3HAC063985-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800002494</p> |
| 6 | <p>Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys.</p> |  <p>xx1800003028</p> |
| 7 | <p>Install an M6x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not insert the entire screw to the hole.</p> |  <p>xx1900000010</p> |

Continues on next page

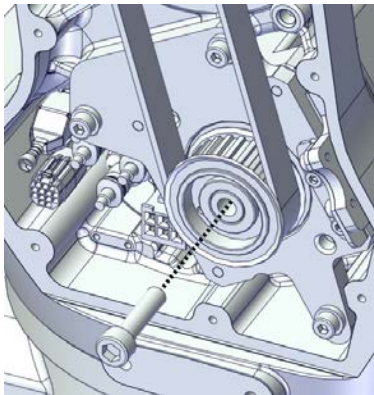

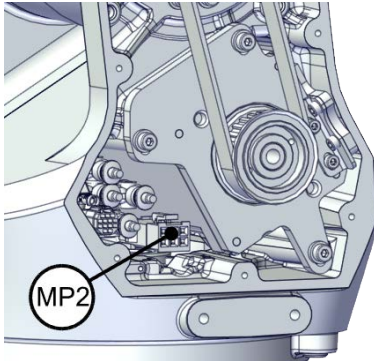
5 Repair

5.4.2 Replacing the swing

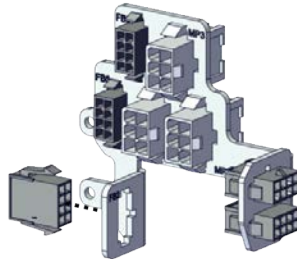
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|---|---|
| 8 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force. | <p>Initial referenced force for used belt: 68.18-75.04 N (for reference only)</p> <p>Initial referenced force for new belt: 97.4-107.2 N</p>  <p>xx1900000029</p> |
| 9 | Secure the motor with the screws. | <p>Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002493</p> |
| 10 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. | <p>Used belt: 163-174 Hz</p> <p>New belt: 180-229 Hz (for reference only)</p> |
| 11 | If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust. | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|----|--|--|
| 12 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  xx1900000010 |
| 13 | Reconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MP2  Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector. |  xx1800002495 |

Reconnecting the connectors at the division point


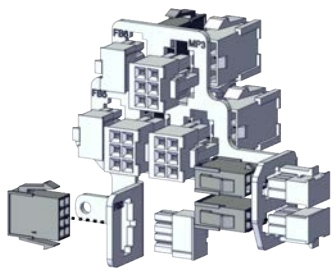

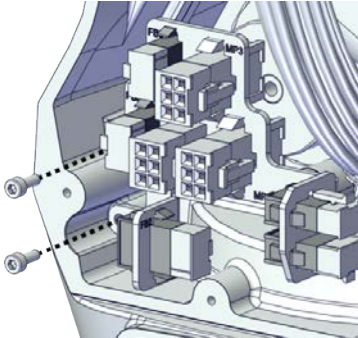
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Insert the female header of the connectors to the connector plate. |  xx1800003029 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.4.2 Replacing the swing

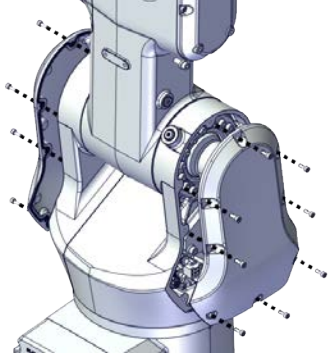
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.FB2,3,4,5,6 • J2.MP3,4,5/6 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003030</p> |
| 3 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |
| 4 | <p>Refit the connector plate.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002489</p> |


Refitting the swing covers

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 | <p>Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.</p> | |
| 2 | <p>Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package.</p> | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | Refit the covers. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Swing cover • Swing support cover | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003607 |

Concluding procedure

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Recalibrate the robot. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |
| 2 |  DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 161 . | |

5 Repair

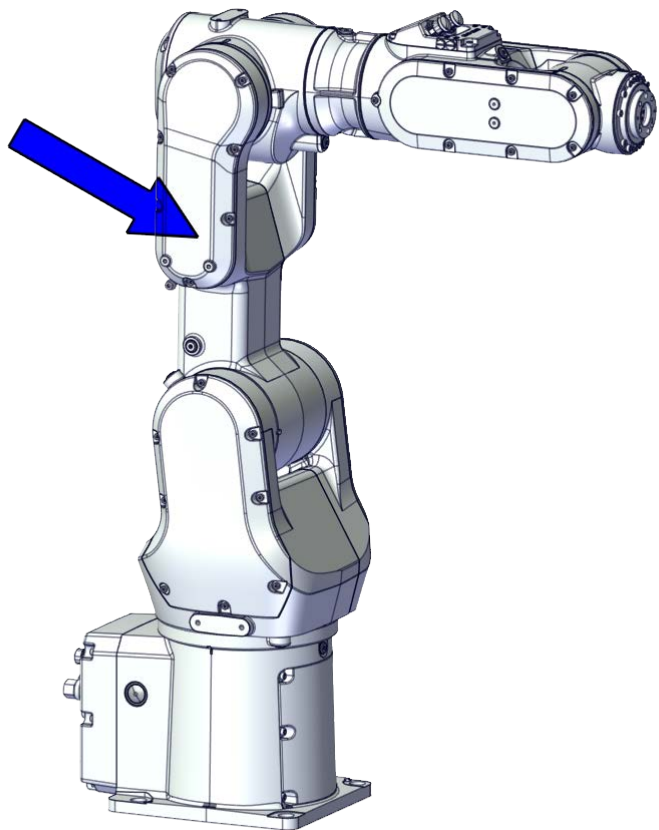
5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm

5.5 Lower arm

5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm

Location of the lower arm

The lower arm is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002474

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|------------------------------|----------------|------|
| Lower arm (CRB 1100-4/0.58) | 3HAC069056-001 | |
| Lower arm (CRB 1100-4/0.475) | 3HAC069055-001 | |
| Lower arm support | 3HAC069058-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 2 | 3HAC083588-001 | . |

Continues on next page

5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm

Continued

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|---|
| Timing belt, axis 2 | 3HAC061935-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 3 | 3HAC083587-001 | |
| Timing belt, axis 3 | 3HAC061936-001 | |
| Gear unit with pulley, axis 2 | 3HAC073517-001 | |
| Swing cover | 3HAC069051-001 | |
| Swing support cover | 3HAC069052-001 | |
| Lower arm cover | 3HAC069057-001 | |
| Lower arm support cover | 3HAC069059-001 | |
| Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors | 3HAC071020-001 | Cooling pads are wear parts. One cooling pad sheet contains 6 pieces of small pad. Replace if damaged with one piece each time. |
| Cooling pad for axis-3 and -4 motors | 3HAC071021-001 | Cooling pads are wear parts. One cooling pad sheet includes 10 pieces of small pad. Replace if damaged with one piece each time. |
| Washer | 3HAC063985-001 | 9x4.3x1, Steel |

Required tools and equipment

| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |
| Sonic tension meter | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| Dynamometer | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |

Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|--------------|----------------|--------|
| Cable straps | - | |
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm

Continued

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|------------------|----------------|---|
| Grease | - | Castrol Molub. Alloy 777-1 NG Used to lubricate bearings on the swing support and lower arm support. |
| Sealing compound | 3HAC026759-002 | Sikaflex 521 FC |

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. |  Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mounting flange is used for installation of the calibration tool. |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 664 . |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. | |

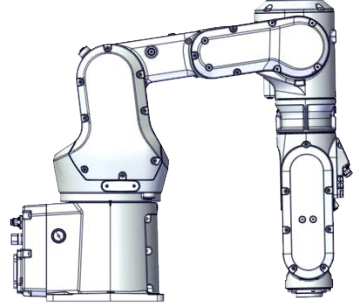

Removing the lower arm

Use these procedures to remove the lower arm.



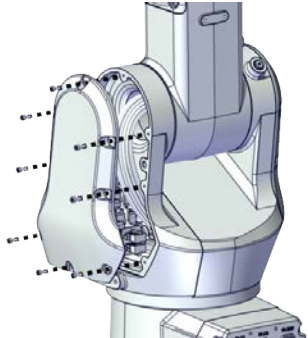
Preparations before removing the lower arm

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | <p>Jog the robot to the specified position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Axis 1: 0° • Axis 2: 110° (CRB 1100-4/0.475) /95° (CRB 1100-4/0.58) • Axis 3: -20° (CRB 1100-4/0.475) / -6° (CRB 1100-4/0.58) • Axis 4: 0° • Axis 5: 0° • Axis 6: No significance. |  <p>xx1800003289</p> |
| 3 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p> | |

Removing the axis-2 motor


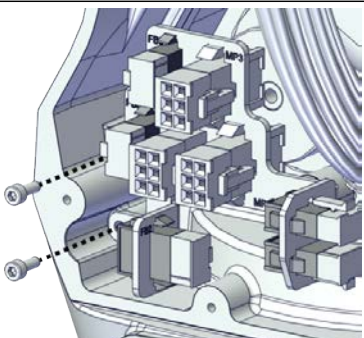

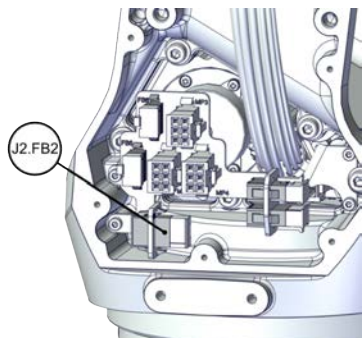
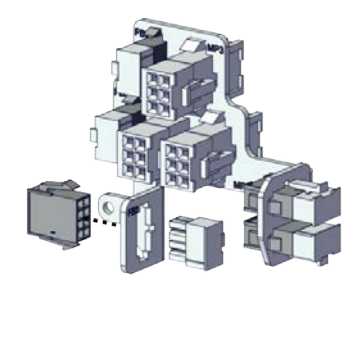
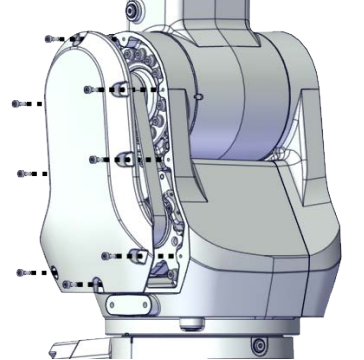
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |
| 2 | <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down.</p> <p>Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors.</p> | |
| 3 | Remove the swing support cover. |  <p>xx1800002488</p> |

Continues on next page


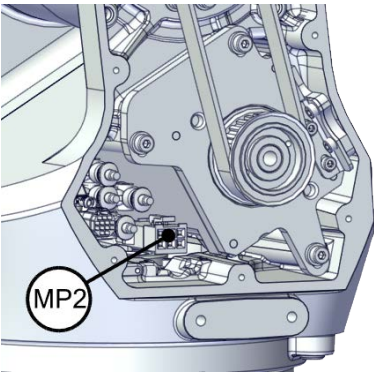
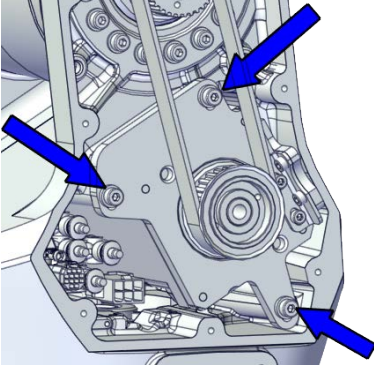
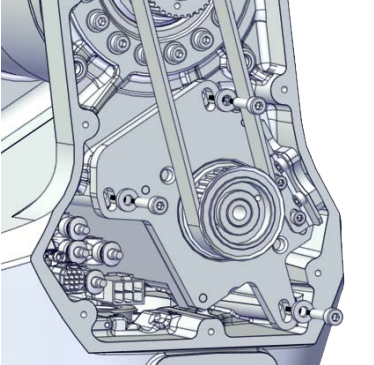


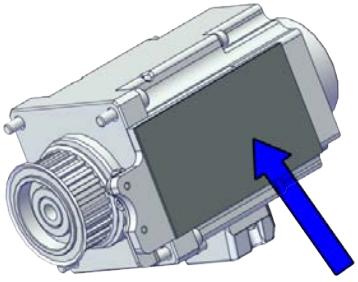
5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | <p>Remove the connector plate.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cablings that are attached to the connector plate! The connector plate cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed from the plate.</p> |  <p>xx1800002489</p> |
| 5 | <p>Disconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> J2.FB2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> |  <p>xx1800002490</p> |
| 6 | <p>Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the connector plate.</p> |  <p>xx1800002491</p> |
| 7 | <p>Remove the swing cover.</p> |  <p>xx1800002492</p> |

Continues on next page

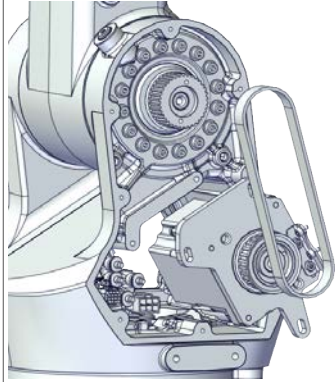
| | Action | Note |
|----|--|---|
| 8 | Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MP2  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  <p>xx1800002495</p> |
| 9 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  <p>xx1800002493</p> |
| 10 | Remove the screws and washers. |  <p>xx1800002494</p> |
| 11 | Carefully lift out the motor. <div>  CAUTION A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad. </div> <div>  CAUTION Be aware of the motor cabling. The motor cannot be removed completely until the connector is disconnected, as shown in following step. </div> | Cooling pad location  <p>xx1800003603</p> |

Continues on next page



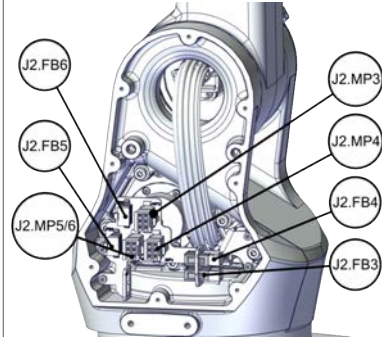
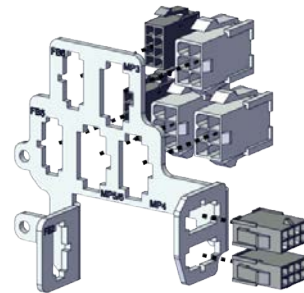
5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|--|---|
| 12 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  <p>xx1800002496</p> |


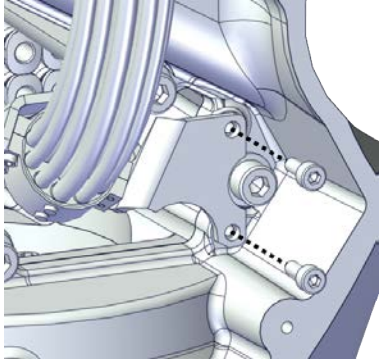
Disconnecting the connectors at the division point

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.FB3,4,5,6 • J2.MP3,4,5/6  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  <p>xx1800002497</p> |
| 3 | Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the connector plate. |  <p>xx1800002498</p> |


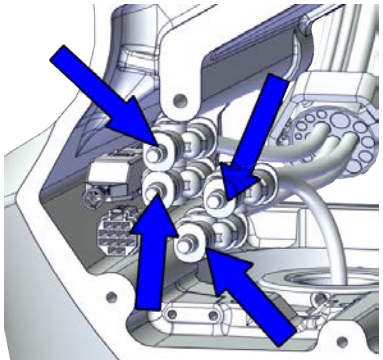
Continues on next page

5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm
Continued

Separating the cable package from the swing

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the cable bracket. |  xx1800002499 |



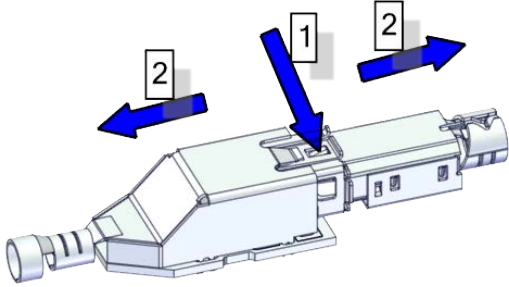
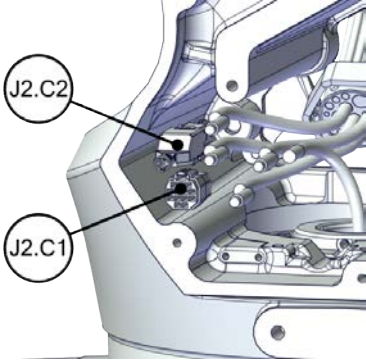
Disconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Disconnect the air hoses from the Y-shaped connectors. |  xx1800002500 |


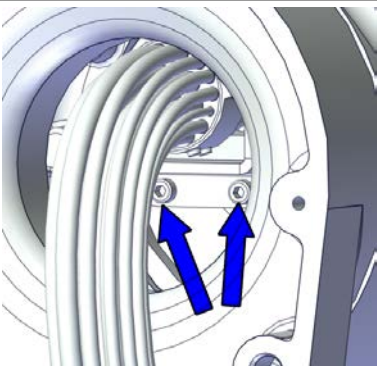
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm
Continued


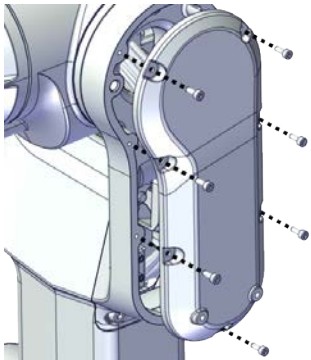

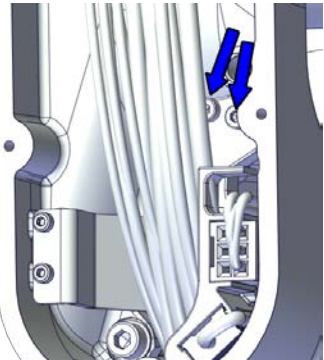

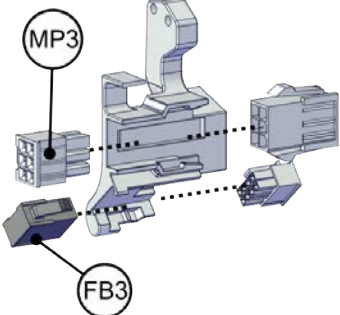
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | <p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• J2.C1• J2.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the J2.C2 (for Ethernet cabling).</p>  <p>xx1800002943</p> |  <p>xx1800002501</p> |

Separating the upper cable harness from the axis-2 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |
| 2 | <p>Remove the cable bracket.</p> |  <p>xx1800003002</p> |

Continues on next page

Disconnecting the axis-3 motor connectors

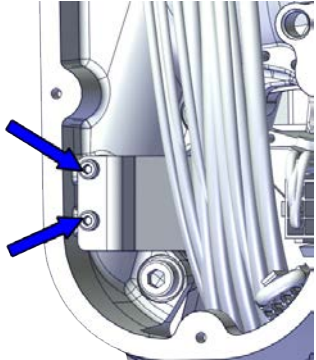
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the lower arm support cover. |  xx1800003003 |
| 3 | Remove the connector plate.  CAUTION Be aware of the cablings that are attached to the connector plate! The connector plate cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed from the plate, as shown in following step. |  xx1800003004 |
| 4 | Slide the connectors out of the connector plate and disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB3 • MP3  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  xx1800003005 |

Continues on next page



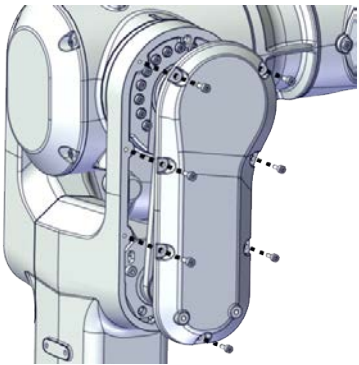
5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm

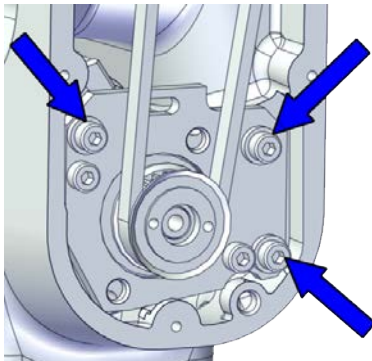
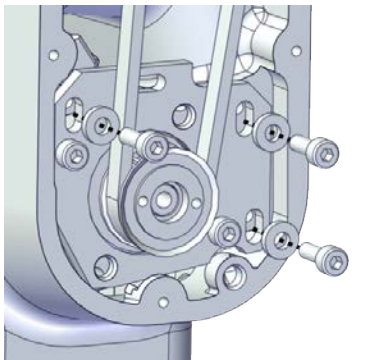

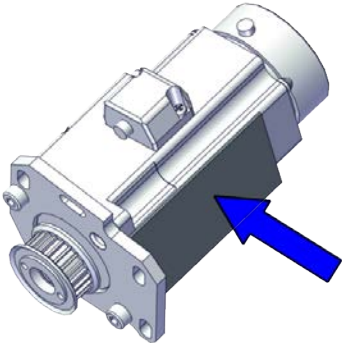
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---------------------------|---|
| 5 | Remove the cable bracket. |  xx1800003006 |

Removing the axis-3 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Remove the lower arm cover. |  xx1800003007 |

Continues on next page

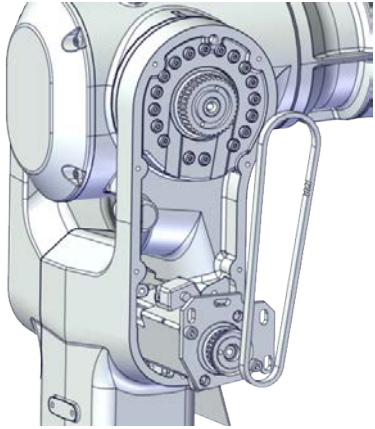
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 4 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800003008 |
| 5 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800003009 |
| 6 | Carefully lift out the motor.  CAUTION A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad. | Cooling pad location  xx1800003604 |

Continues on next page



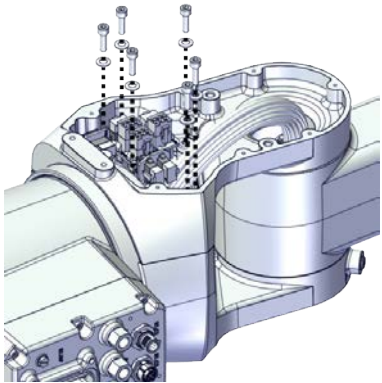
5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 7 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800003010 |


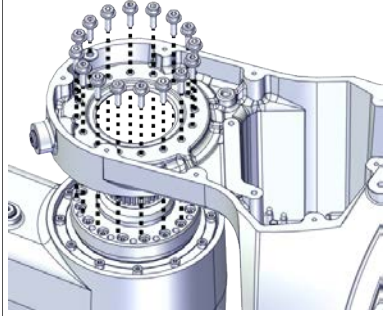

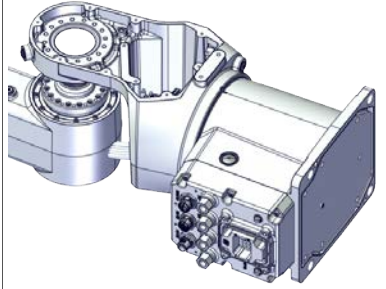
Removing the swing support

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the swing support.  Tip If the swing support is hard to loosen from the lower arm, use a plastic hammer to knock on the swing support lightly. |  xx1800003079 |
| 3 | Route the upper cable package out of the swing support. | |



Separating the swing from the lower arm

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Remove the screws.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Some robots may be fitted with separate screws and washers. During replacement, always use the same screws (and washers) that are fitted on the robot at delivery. Contact ABB for more information.</p> |  <p>xx1900002203</p> |
| 3 | <p>Separate the swing from the lower arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>If the swing is hard to loosen from the housing, use a plastic hammer to knock on the swing lightly.</p> |  <p>xx1800003081</p> |

Removing the axis-2 gearbox

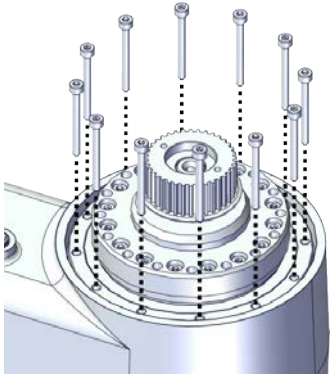
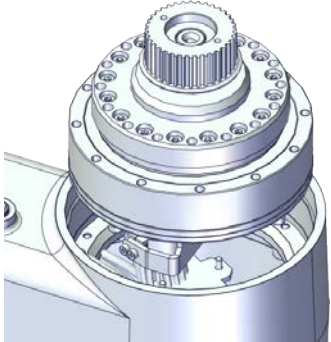
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |
| 2 | <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Removing gearboxes will release axes. This means the axes can fall down.</p> <p>Make sure axes are well supported before removing gearboxes.</p> | |

Continues on next page


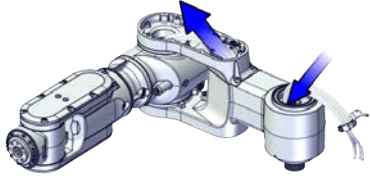
5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm

Continued



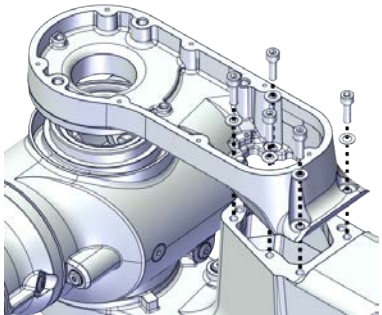
| | Action | Note |
|---|-----------------------|--|
| 3 | Remove the screws. |  xx1800003082 |
| 4 | Pull out the gearbox. |  xx1800003083 |

Pulling out the upper cable package



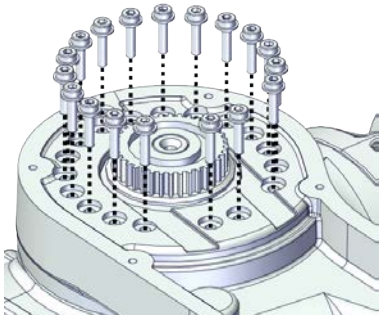
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Pull out the upper cable harness upwards from the lower arm support. |  xx1800003086 |

Continues on next page

Removing the lower arm support

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the lower arm support.  Tip If the lower arm support is hard to loosen from the housing, use a plastic hammer to knock on the lower arm support lightly. |  xx1800003088 |

Separating the lower arm from the housing


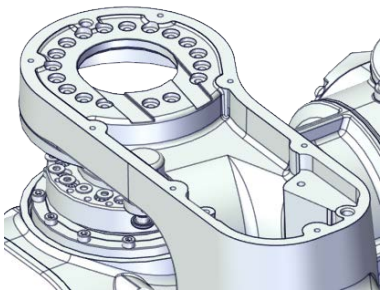
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the screws.  Note Some robots may be fitted with separate screws and washers. During replacement, always use the same screws (and washers) that are fitted on the robot at delivery. Contact ABB for more information. |  xx1900002190 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm


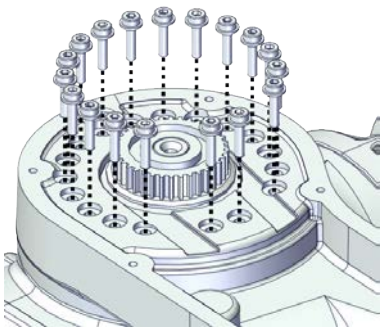
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | <p>Separate the lower arm from the housing.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>If the lower arm is hard to loosen from the housing, use a plastic hammer to knock on the lower arm lightly.</p> |  <p>xx1800003090</p> |

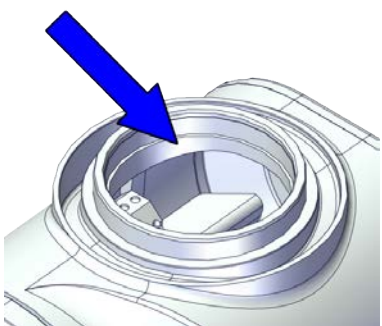
Refitting the lower arm

Use these procedures to refit the lower arm.

Refitting the lower arm to the housing

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Refit the lower arm to the housing.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Some robots may be fitted with separate screws and washers. During replacement, always use the same screws (and washers) that are fitted on the robot at delivery. Contact ABB for more information.</p> | <p>Flange screws (16 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.9 Nm</p>  <p>xx1900002190</p> |

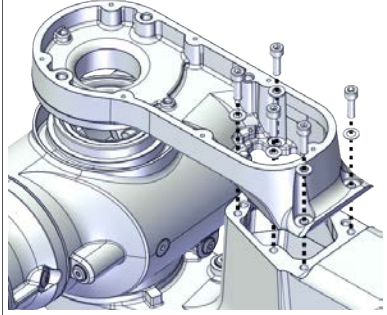
Securing the lower arm support

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Apply grease Castrol Molub-Alloy 777-1 NG to the inner surface of the housing, where contacts the bearing on the lower arm support.</p> |  <p>xx2000000059</p> |

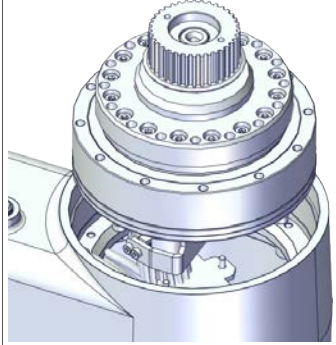
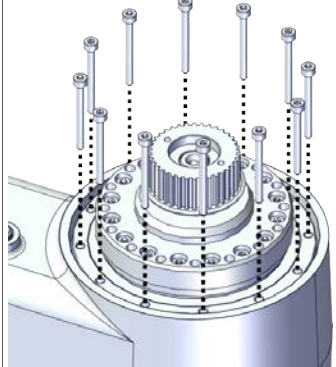
Continues on next page

5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | Refit the lower arm support. | <p>Screw: M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs) Tightening torque: 8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003088</p> |
| 3 | Route the cable package through the lower arm support. | |

Refitting the axis-2 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|---------------------------|--|
| 1 | Refit the axis-2 gearbox. |  <p>xx1800003083</p> |
| 2 | Secure with screws. | <p>Screw: M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (12 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.9 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003082</p> |


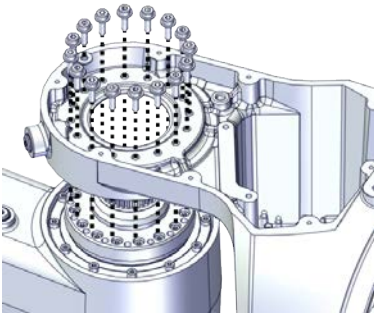
Continues on next page

5 Repair

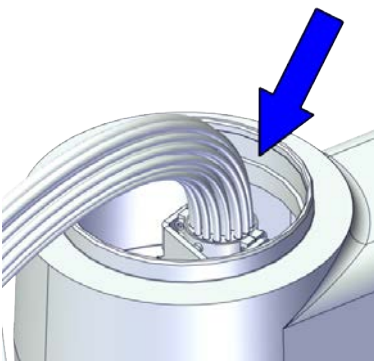

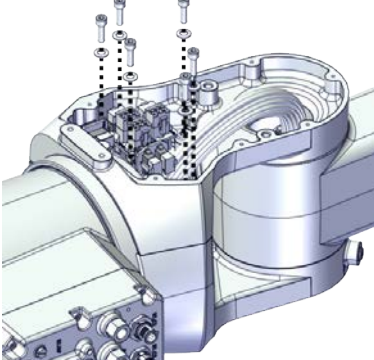
5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm

Continued

Refitting the swing to the lower arm


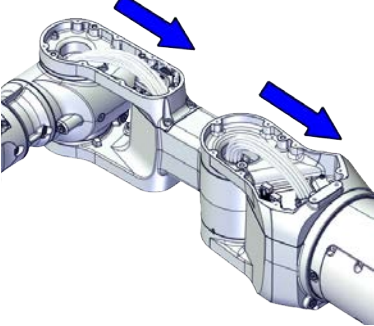
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Refit the swing to the lower arm.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Some robots may be fitted with separate screws and washers. During replacement, always use the same screws (and washers) that are fitted on the robot at delivery. Contact ABB for more information.</p> | <p>Flange screws (16 pcs) Tightening torque: 4.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1900002203</p> |

Securing the swing support

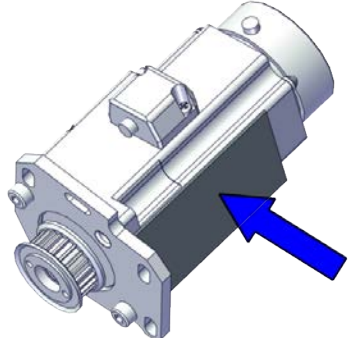
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Apply grease Castrol Molub-Alloy 777-1 NG to the inner surface of the lower arm, where contacts the bearing on the swing support.</p> |  <p>xx2000000058</p> |
| 2 | <p>Refit the swing support.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>If the swing support is hard to closely fit to the lower arm, use a plastic hammer to knock on the swing support lightly.</p> | <p>Screw: M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 6 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003079</p> |

Continues on next page

Guiding the upper cable package down to the swing

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Guide the upper cable package to go through the lower arm and down to the swing.</p> <p>When inserting the cable package, leave the axis-3 motor connectors in the lower arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> |  <p>xx1800003091</p> |

Refitting the axis-3 motor

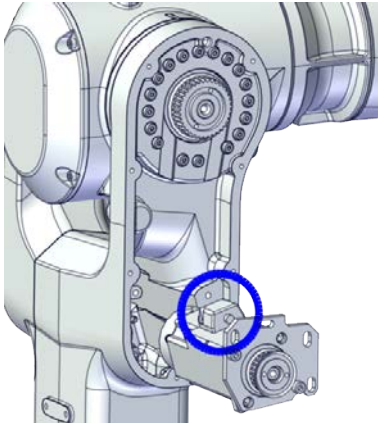

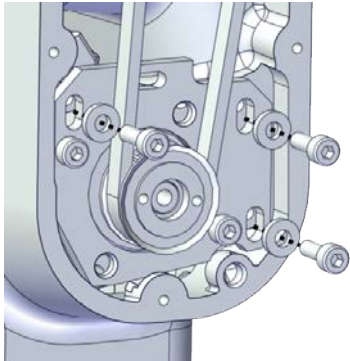
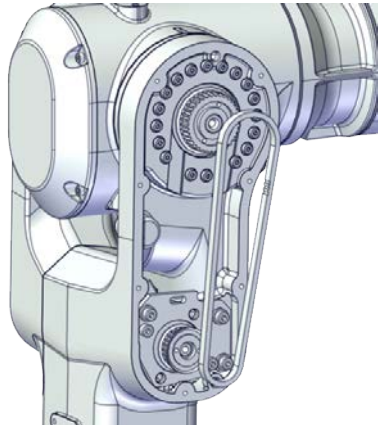
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Check that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages • the motor is clean and undamaged. | |
| 2 | <p>Check the cooling pad. Replace if damaged.</p> | <p>Cooling pad for axis-3 and -4 motors: 3HAC071021-001</p>  <p>xx1800003604</p> |

Continues on next page


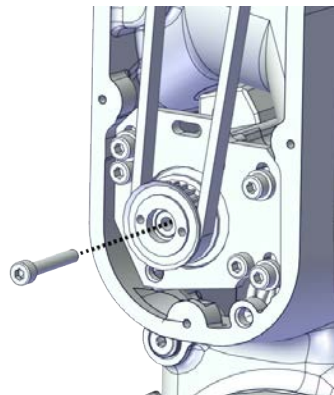
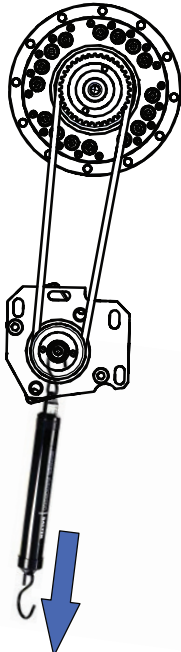
5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the lower arm. | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003021</p> |
| 4 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washer, 3HAC063985-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800003009</p> |
| 5 | Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys. |  <p>xx1800003022</p> |

Continues on next page

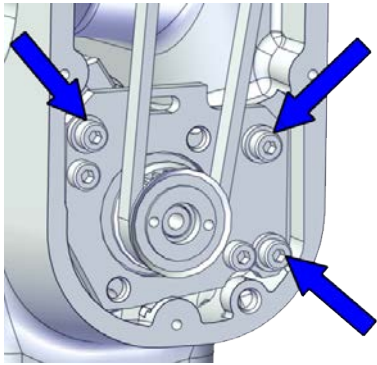
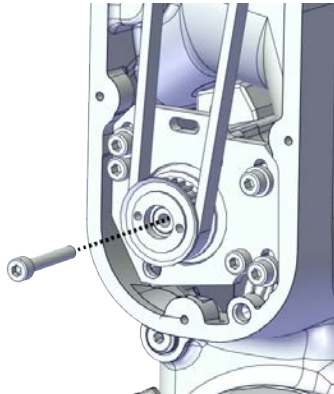
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 6 | <p>Install an M4x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not insert the entire screw to the hole.</p> |  <p>xx1900000009</p> |
| 7 | <p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force.</p> | <p>Initial referenced force for used belt: 21.7-23.94 N (for reference only)</p> <p>Initial referenced force for new belt: 31-34.2 N</p>  <p>xx1900000028</p> |

Continues on next page


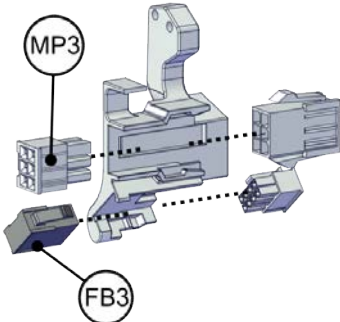
5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm


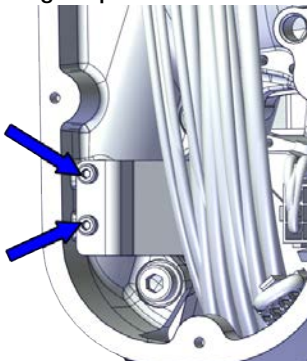
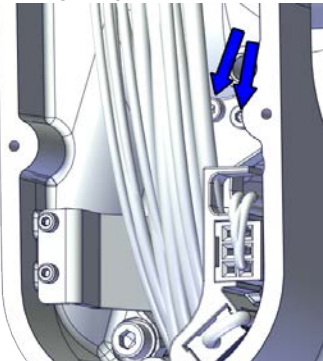
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|---|--|
| 8 | Secure the motor with the screws. | <p>Tightening torque: 3 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003008</p> |
| 9 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. | <p>Used belt: 102-109 Hz New belt: 113-143 Hz (for reference only)</p> |
| 10 | If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust. | |
| 11 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  <p>xx1900000009</p> |

Reconnecting the axis-3 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Slide the connectors into the connector plate and reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB3 • MP3 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003005</p> |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |
| 3 | Refit the cable bracket. | <p>Screw: M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003006</p> |
| 4 | Refit the connector plate. | <p>Screw: M3x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003004</p> |

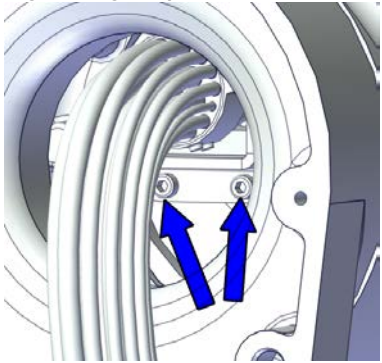
Continues on next page

5 Repair


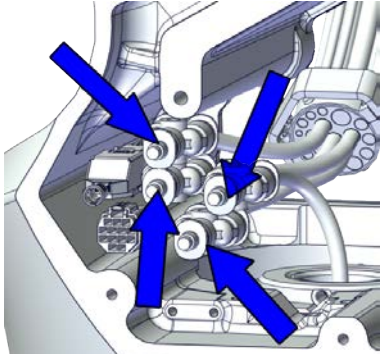

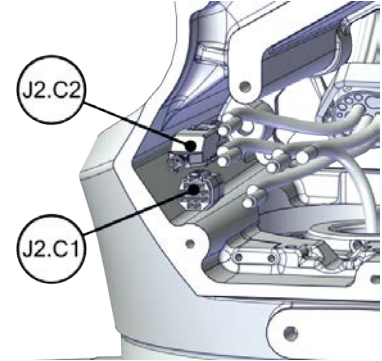
5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm

Continued

Securing the upper cable package to the axis-2 gearbox

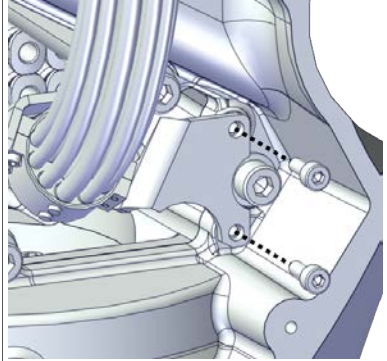
| | Action | Note |
|---|--------------------------|--|
| 1 | Refit the cable bracket. | <p>Screw: M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003002</p> |

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

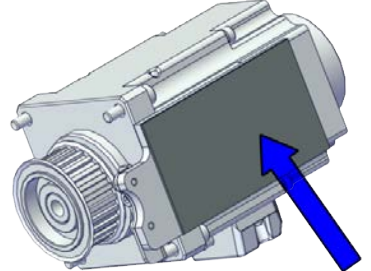
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern to the Y-shaped connectors.</p>  <p>Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses. The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800002500</p> |
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.C1 • J2.C2  <p>Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800002501</p> |

Continues on next page

Securing the cable package to the swing

| | Action | Note |
|---|--------------------------|--|
| 1 | Refit the cable bracket. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002499</p> |

Refitting the axis-2 motor

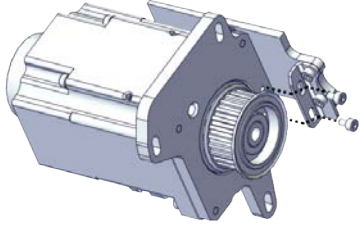

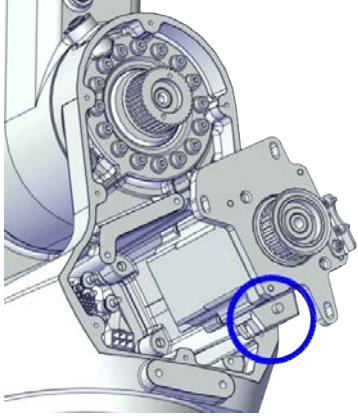

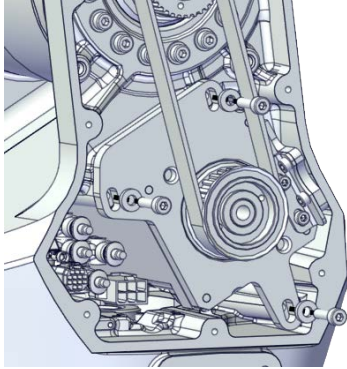
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Check that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages the motor is clean and undamaged. | |
| 2 | <p>Check the cooling pad. Replace if damaged, as shown in the following step.</p> | <p>Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors: 3HAC071020-001</p>  <p>xx1800003603</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm

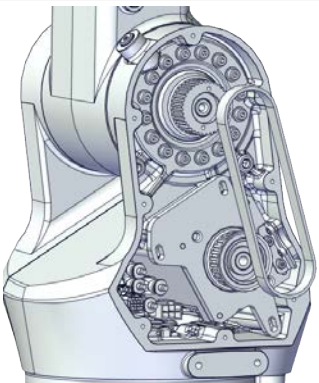

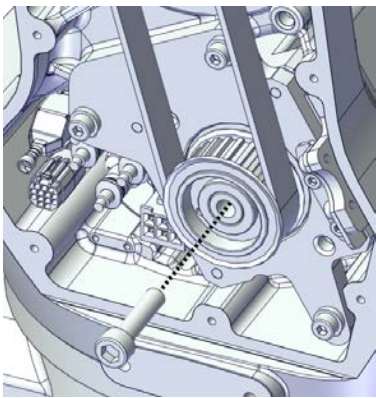
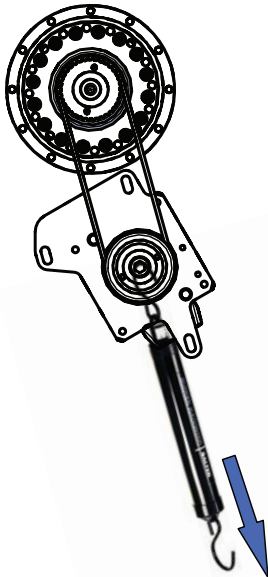
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 3 | <p>Remove the screws. Replace with a new cooling pad and then refit the screws.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x5 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003026</p> |
| 4 | <p>Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the swing.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Bend the motor signal cable back towards the swing support.</p> | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003027</p> |
| 5 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washer, 3HAC063985-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800002494</p> |

Continues on next page

5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm

Continued

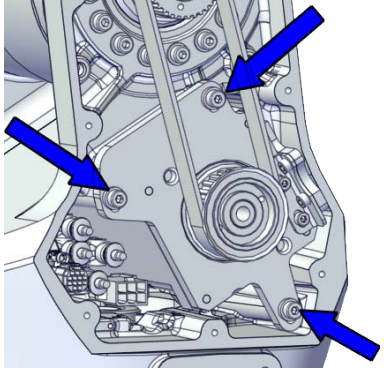
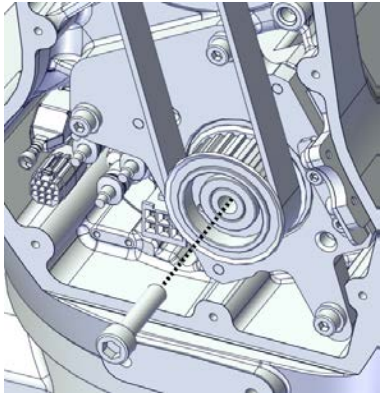

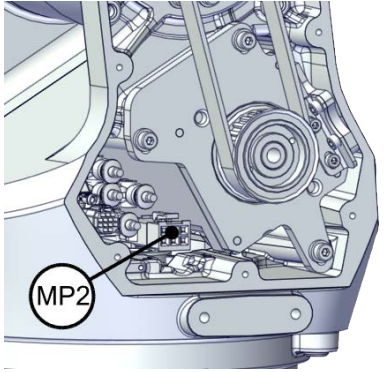
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 6 | Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys. |  xx1800003028 |
| 7 | Install an M6x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.  Note Do not insert the entire screw to the hole. |  xx1900000010 |
| 8 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force. | Initial referenced force for used belt: 68.18-75.04 N (for reference only) Initial referenced force for new belt: 97.4-107.2 N  xx1900000029 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

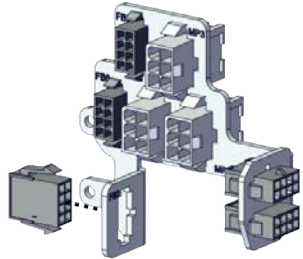

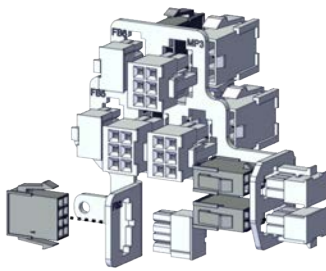

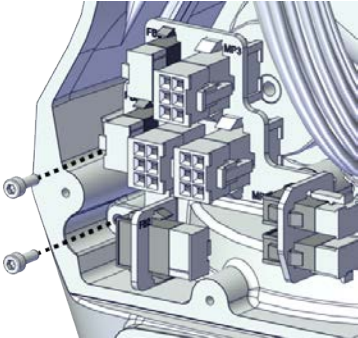
5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|--|--|
| 9 | Secure the motor with the screws. | <p>Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002493</p> |
| 10 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. | <p>Used belt: 163-174 Hz New belt: 180-229 Hz (for reference only)</p> |
| 11 | If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust. | |
| 12 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  <p>xx1900000010</p> |
| 13 | <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MP2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800002495</p> |

Continues on next page

Reconnecting the connectors at the division point

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Insert the female header of the connectors to the connector plate. |  xx1800003029 |
| 2 | Reconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.FB2,3,4,5,6 • J2.MP3,4,5/6  Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector. |  xx1800003030 |
| 3 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |
| 4 | Refit the connector plate. | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm  xx1800002489 |

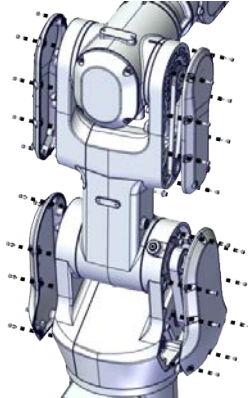
Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.5.1 Replacing the lower arm

Continued

Refitting the covers

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package. | |
| 2 | Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package. | |
| 3 | Refit the covers. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Lower arm cover• Lower arm support cover• Swing cover• Swing support cover | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003610</p> |

Concluding procedure

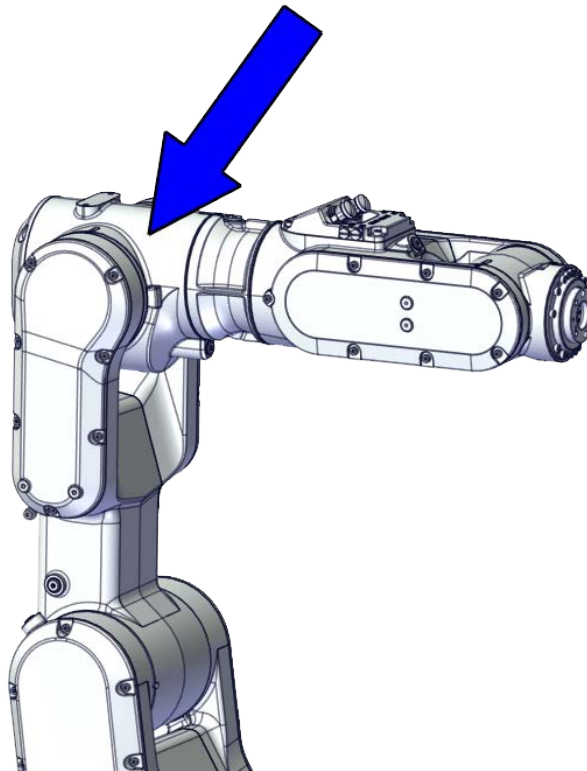
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Recalibrate the robot. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |
| 2 |  DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 161 . | |

5.6 Housing, extender unit and wrist

5.6.1 Replacing the housing

Location of the housing

The housing is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002475

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|------|
| Process hub with lamp unit (CP/CS and air hose, with Ethernet) | 3HAC077335-001 | |
| Housing | 3HAC069053-001 | |
| Gear unit with pulley, axis 3 | 3HAC073518-001 | |
| Labyrinth sealing ring | 3HAC073218-001 | |
| Timing belt, axis 3 | 3HAC061936-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 4 | 3HAC083586-001 | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the housing

Continued

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|---|
| Timing belt, axis 4 | 3HAC061937-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 6 | 3HAC083584-001 | |
| Timing belt, axis 6 | 3HAC061939-001 | |
| Housing cover | 3HAC069054-001 | |
| Wrist cover | 3HAC069061-001 | |
| Cooling pad for axis-3 and -4 motors | 3HAC071021-001 | Cooling pads are wear parts. One cooling pad sheet includes 10 pieces of small pad. Replace if damaged with one piece each time. |
| Washer | 3HAC063985-001 | 9x4.3x1, Steel |
| Washer | 3HAC064765-001 | 7x3.2x1.5, Steel |

Required tools and equipment

| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |
| Sonic tension meter | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| Dynamometer | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| M3x25 eye bolt | - | Included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001. |
| axis-4 motor fitting tool | - | Included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001. Used to refit the axis-4 motor. |


Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|----------------|----------------|--|
| Cable straps | - | |
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |
| Grease | - | Castrol Molub. Alloy 777-1 NG |
| Locking liquid | - | Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243) |

Continues on next page

Deciding calibration routine

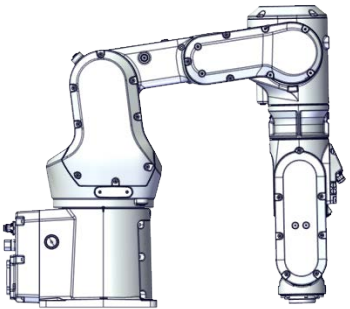
Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. |  Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mounting flange is used for installation of the calibration tool. |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 664 . |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. | |

Removing the housing

Use these procedures to remove the housing.

Preparations before removing the housing


| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |
| 2 | Jog the robot to the specified position: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Axis 1: 0° Axis 2: 110° (CRB 1100-4/0.475) /95° (CRB 1100-4/0.58) Axis 3: -20° (CRB 1100-4/0.475) / -6° (CRB 1100-4/0.58) Axis 4: 0° Axis 5: 0° Axis 6: No significance. |  xx1800003289 |

Continues on next page



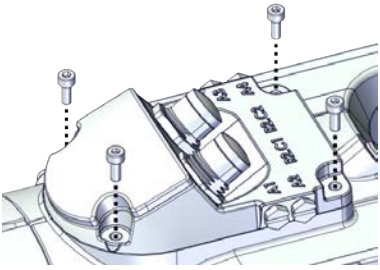
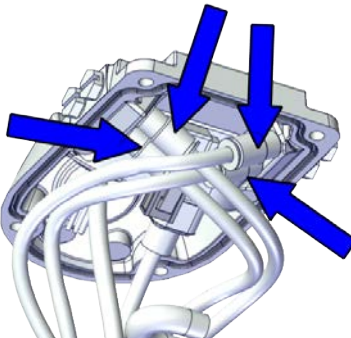
5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the housing

Continued

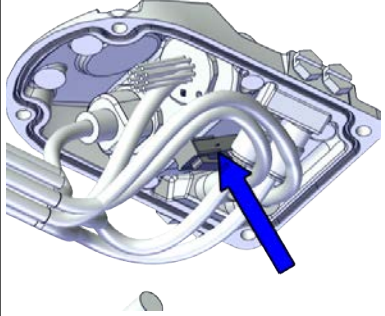
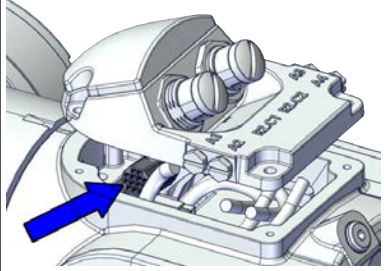
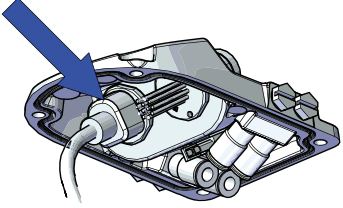
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 3 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• electric power supply• hydraulic pressure supply• air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. | |

Removing the process hub


| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the screws and carefully open the cover.  CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps. |  xx2000002219 |
| 3 | Disconnect the air hoses. |  xx1800002945 |

Continues on next page

5.6.1 Replacing the housing
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | Carefully pull out lamp unit connector behind the air hose connectors and disconnect the connector J5.UL. |  xx1800002946 |
| 5 | For robots with CP/CS cabling Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> J5.C1 |  xx2100000293 |
| 6 | For robots with Ethernet cabling Disconnect the connector J5.C2 using the tool. | J5.C2 connector assembly tool: -  xx1800002948 |

Removing the wrist covers

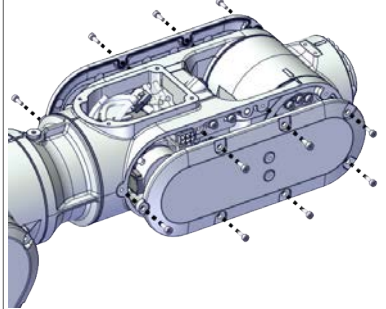
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page


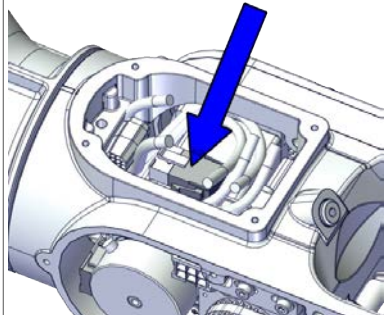
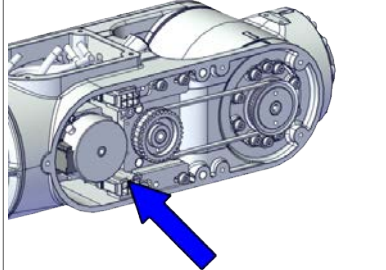
5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the housing

Continued


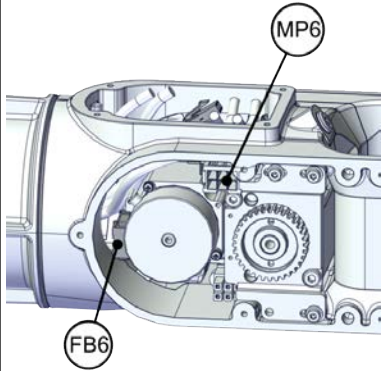
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | Remove the wrist covers from both sides. |  xx1800002949 |

Disconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors



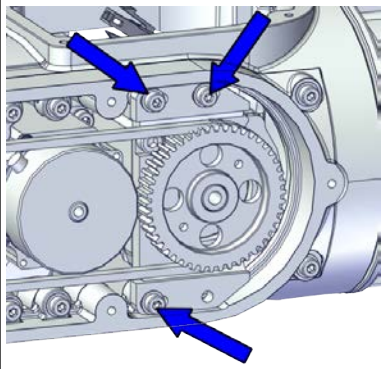
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Access the connector FB5 from the process hub and disconnect the connector. |  xx1800002950 |
| 3 | Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• MP5 |  xx1800002993 |

Continues on next page

Disconnecting the axis-6 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MP6 • FB6 |  xx1800002994 |

Removing the axis-6 motor

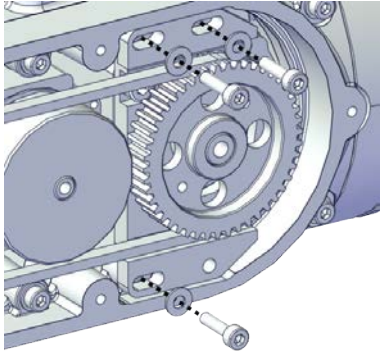
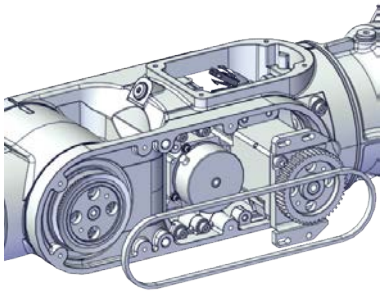
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800002995 |

Continues on next page


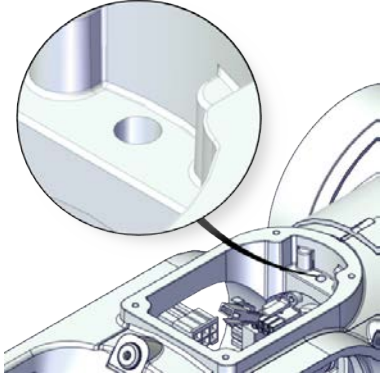
5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the housing

Continued

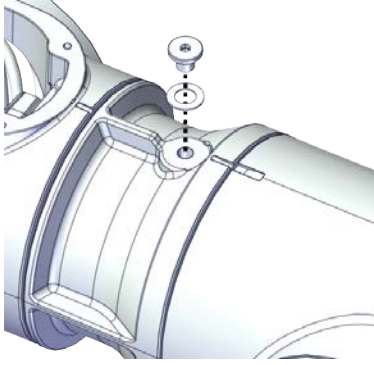
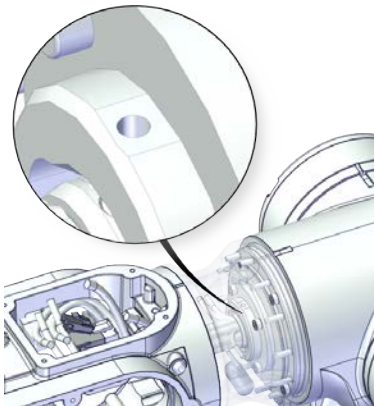
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 4 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800002996 |
| 5 | Carefully lift out the motor. | |
| 6 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800002997 |

Loosening the cable package from axis-4 gearbox


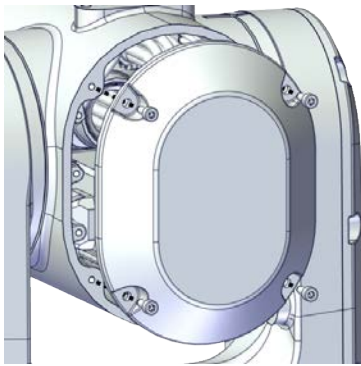
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.475 Access the cable package locking screw on the axis-4 gearbox from the wrist and then loosen the locking screw. |  xx1800003031 |

Continues on next page

5.6.1 Replacing the housing
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58 Remove the plug screw and washer on the extender unit to access the cable package locking screw on the axis-4 gearbox and then loosen the locking screw. |  xx1800003000  xx1800003001 |

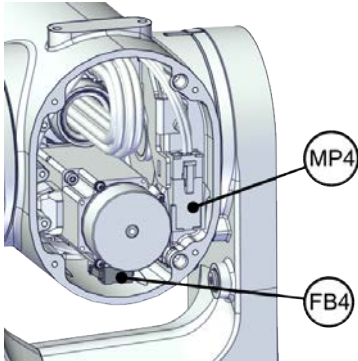
Disconnecting the axis-4 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the housing cover. |  xx1800003011 |


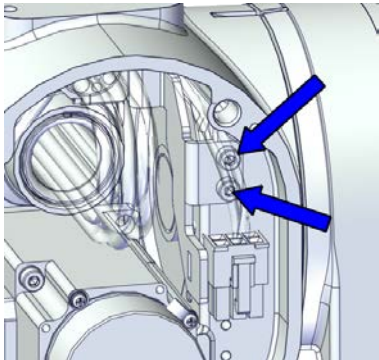
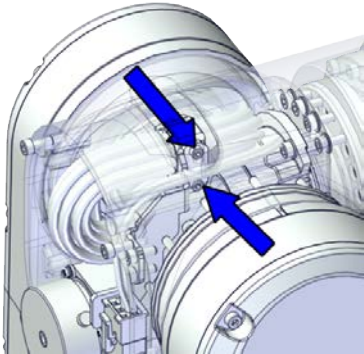
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the housing
Continued


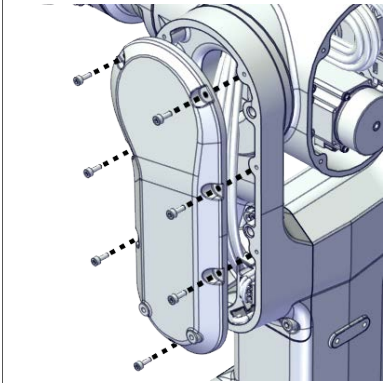
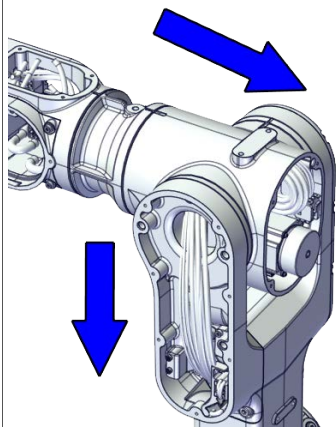
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | Disconnect the motor connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• FB4• MP4 |  <p>xx1800003012</p> |

Separating the upper cable package from the housing



| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the cable bracket. |  <p>xx1800003013</p>  <p>xx1800003014</p> |

Continues on next page

Pulling out the upper cable harness

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the lower arm support cover. |  xx1800003092 |
| 3 | Pull out the upper cable harness from the housing, out from the lower arm support. |  xx1800003093 |

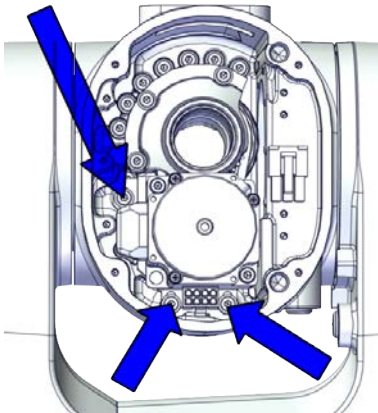
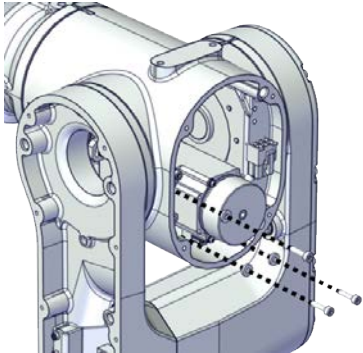

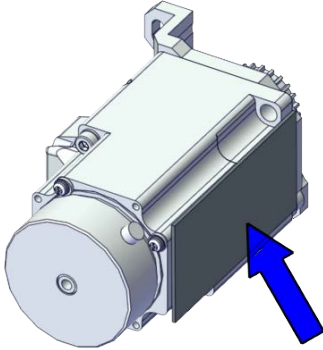
Removing the axis-4 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |

Continues on next page

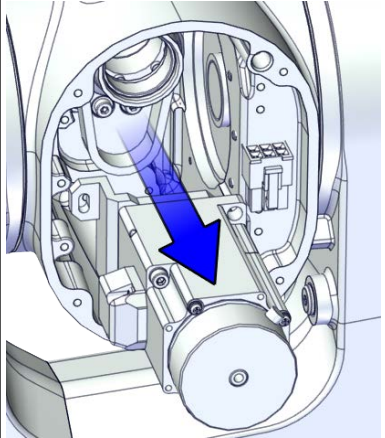
5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the housing
Continued



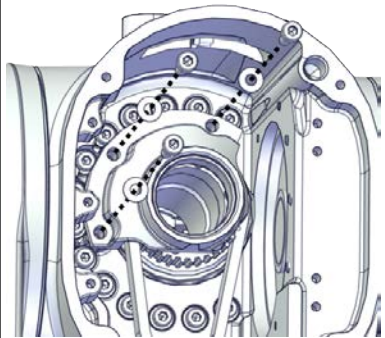
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800003094 |
| 4 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800003095 |
| 5 | Carefully lift out the motor.  CAUTION A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad. | Cooling pad location  xx1800003605 |

Continues on next page

5.6.1 Replacing the housing
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 6 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800003096 |

Removing the pulley cover and axis-4 timing belt

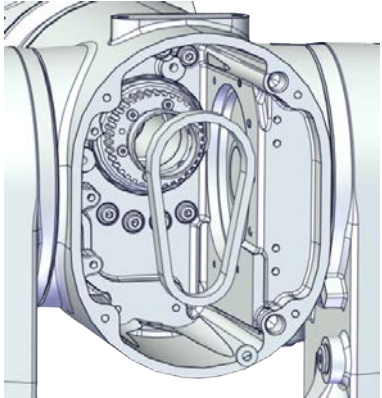
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Loosening timing belts will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before loosening timing belts. | |
| 3 | Remove the pulley cover. |  xx1800003097 |

Continues on next page



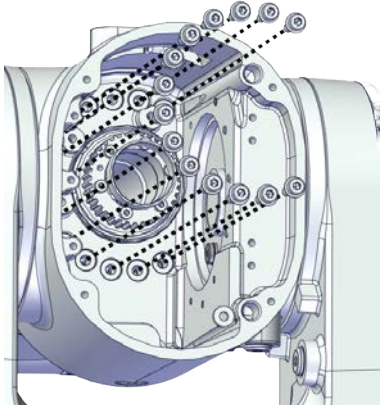
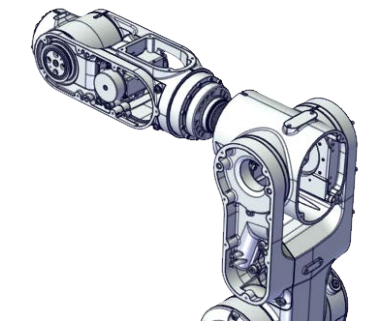
5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the housing

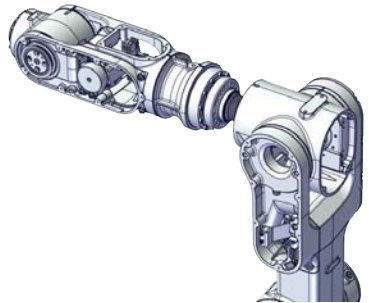
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 4 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the gearbox. |  xx1800003098 |


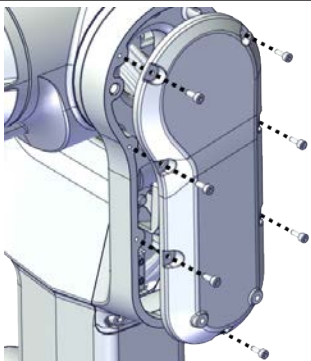

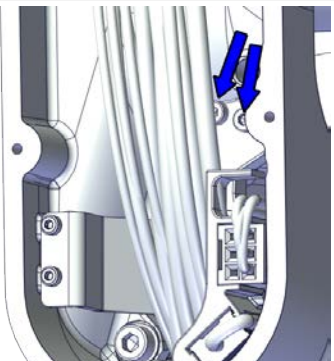
Separating the housing

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the screws.  Note Some robots may be fitted with separate screws and washers. During replacement, always use the same screws (and washers) that are fitted on the robot at delivery. Contact ABB for more information. |  xx1900002191 |
| 3 | Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.475 Separate the wrist from the housing. |  xx1800003075 |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 4 | Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58 Separate the extender unit and wrist from the housing. |  xx1800003100 |

Disconnecting the axis-3 motor connectors


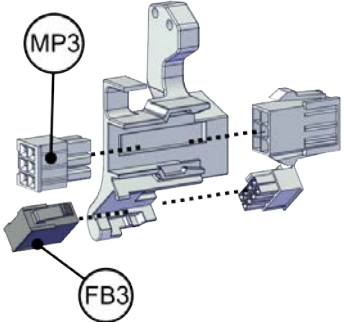
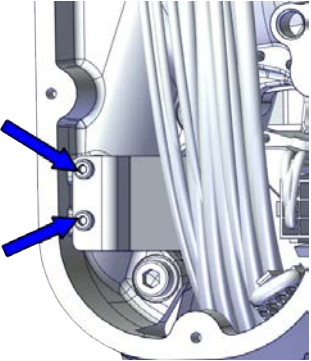
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the lower arm support cover. |  xx1800003003 |
| 3 | Remove the connector plate.  CAUTION Be aware of the cablings that are attached to the connector plate! The connector plate cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed from the plate, as shown in following step. |  xx1800003004 |

Continues on next page



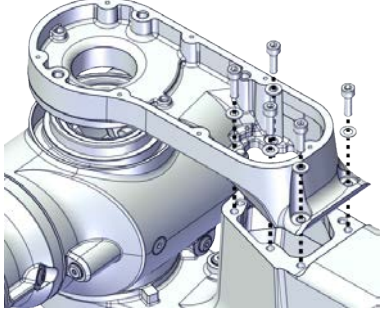
5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the housing

Continued



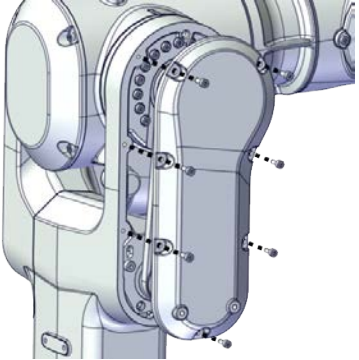
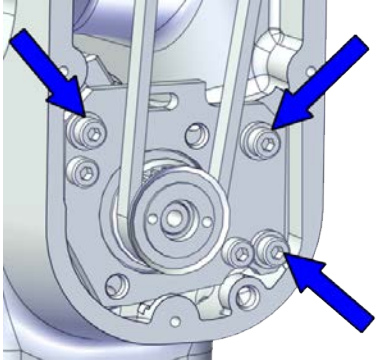
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 4 | <p>Slide the connectors out of the connector plate and disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB3 • MP3 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> |  <p>xx1800003005</p> |
| 5 | <p>Remove the cable bracket.</p> |  <p>xx1800003006</p> |

Removing the lower arm support

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |
| 2 | <p>Remove the lower arm support.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>If the lower arm support is hard to loosen from the housing, use a plastic hammer to knock on the lower arm support lightly.</p> |  <p>xx1800003088</p> |

Continues on next page

Loosening the axis-3 motor

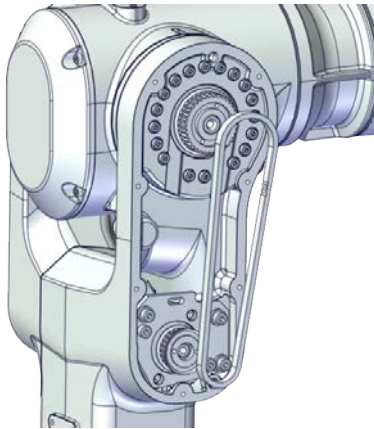
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Loosening timing belts will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before loosening timing belts. | |
| 3 | Remove the lower arm cover. |  xx1800003007 |
| 4 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800003008 |

Continues on next page



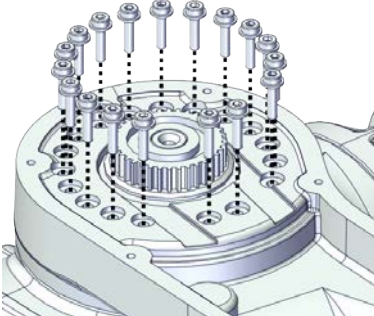

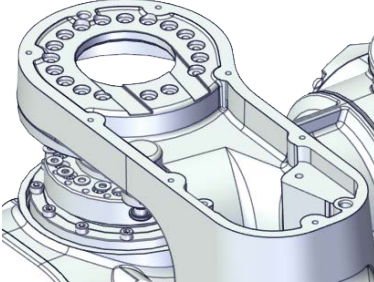
5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the housing

Continued



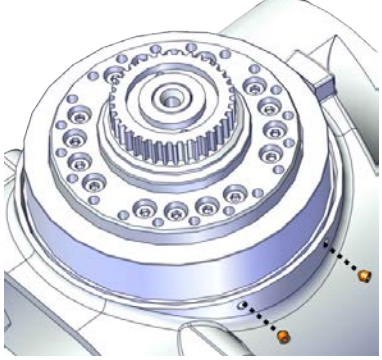
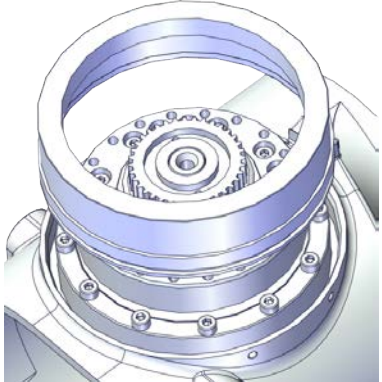
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | Remove the timing belt from its grooves on the motor and gearbox. |  <p>xx1800003022</p> |

Separating the lower arm from the housing

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the screws.  Note Some robots may be fitted with separate screws and washers. During replacement, always use the same screws (and washers) that are fitted on the robot at delivery. Contact ABB for more information. |  <p>xx1900002190</p> |
| 3 | Separate the lower arm from the housing.  Tip If the lower arm is hard to loosen from the housing, use a plastic hammer to knock on the lower arm lightly. |  <p>xx1800003090</p> |

Continues on next page

Removing the axis-3 gearbox

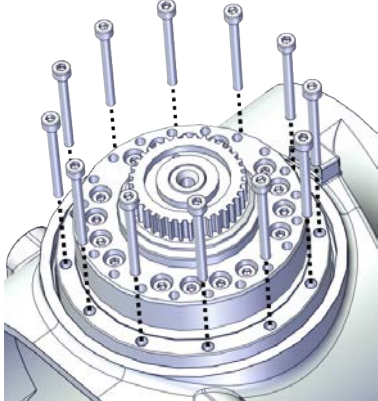
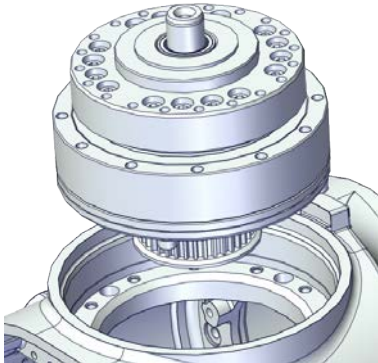
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing gearboxes will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing gearboxes. | |
| 3 | Remove the screws on the labyrinth sealing ring. |  xx1900001425 |
| 4 | Remove the labyrinth sealing ring lightly and evenly. |  xx1900001417 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the housing

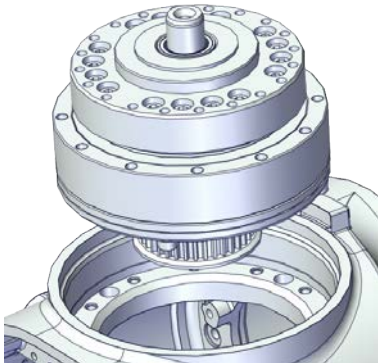
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|-----------------------|--|
| 5 | Remove the screws. |  xx1800003284 |
| 6 | Pull out the gearbox. |  xx1800003285 |

Refitting the housing

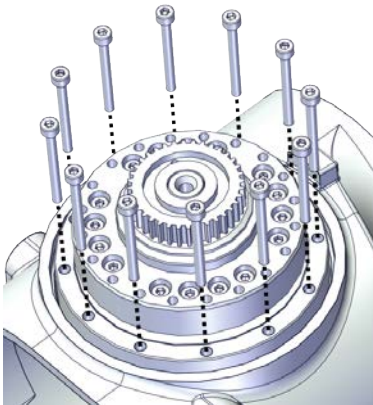
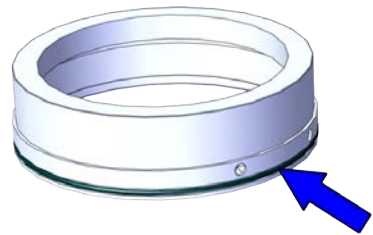

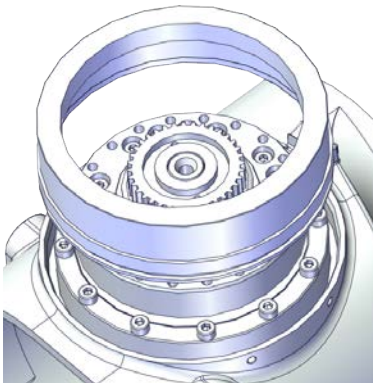
Use these procedures to refit the housing.

Refitting the axis-3 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|---------------------------|---|
| 1 | Refit the axis-3 gearbox. |  xx1800003285 |

Continues on next page

5.6.1 Replacing the housing
Continued

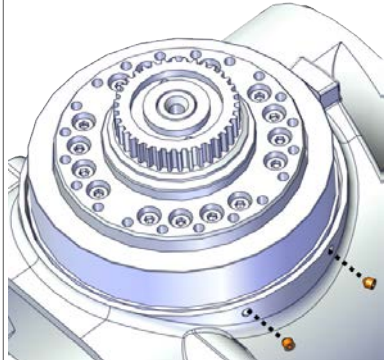
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | Secure with screws. | <p>Screw: M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (12 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003284</p> |
| 3 | Check the O-ring. Replace if damaged. |  <p>xx1900001424</p> |
| 4 | <p>Refit the labyrinth sealing ring lightly and evenly.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Make sure the labyrinth sealing ring is well fitted to the axis-3 gearbox without any deflection.</p> |  <p>xx1900001417</p> |

Continues on next page


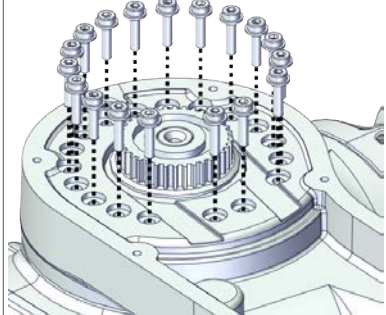
5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the housing

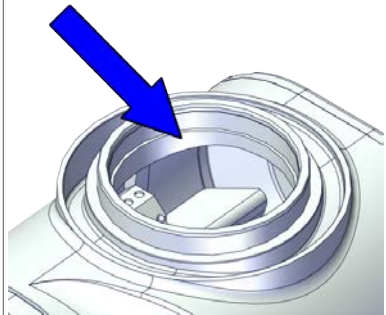
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 5 | Apply a little Loctite 243 to the screws and secure the labyrinth sealing ring with the screws. | <p>Screw: M3x4 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1900001425</p> |

Refitting the lower arm to the housing

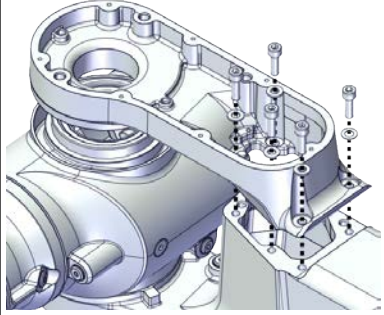
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Refit the lower arm to the housing.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Some robots may be fitted with separate screws and washers. During replacement, always use the same screws (and washers) that are fitted on the robot at delivery. Contact ABB for more information.</p> | <p>Flange screws (16 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.9 Nm</p>  <p>xx1900002190</p> |

Securing the lower arm support

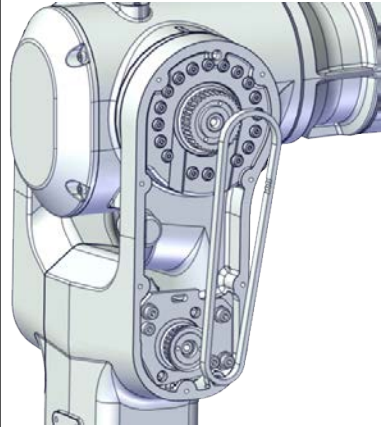

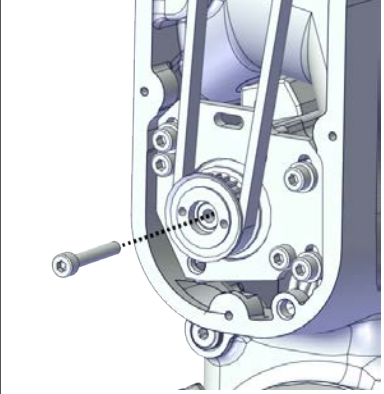
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Apply grease Castrol Molub-Alloy 777-1 NG to the inner surface of the housing, where contacts the bearing on the lower arm support. |  <p>xx2000000059</p> |

Continues on next page

5.6.1 Replacing the housing *Continued*

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | Refit the lower arm support. | <p>Screw: M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs) Tightening torque: 8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003088</p> |
| 3 | Route the cable package through the lower arm support. | |

Securing the axis-3 motor

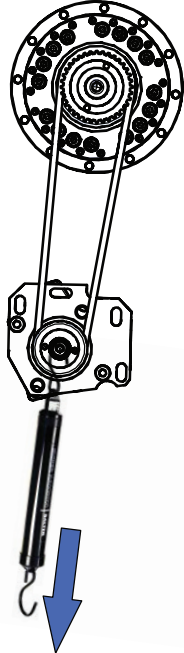
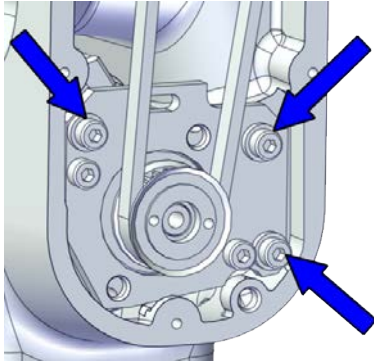
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys. |  <p>xx1800003022</p> |
| 2 | <p>Install an M4x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.</p> <p> Note Do not insert the entire screw to the hole.</p> |  <p>xx1900000009</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

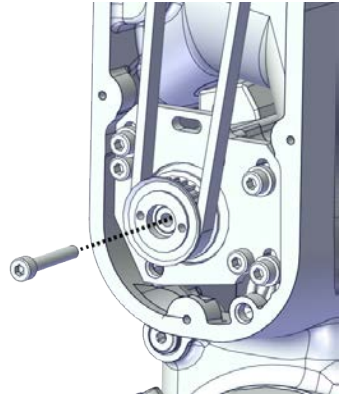
5.6.1 Replacing the housing

Continued


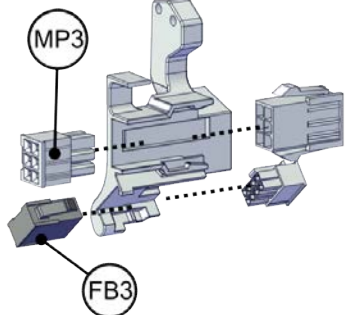

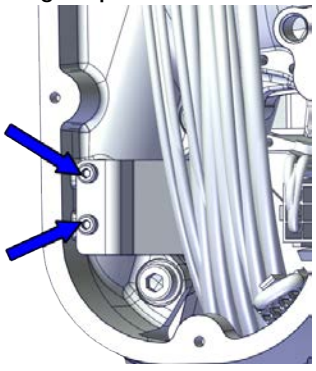
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 3 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force. | <p>Initial referenced force for used belt: 21.7-23.94 N (for reference only) Initial referenced force for new belt: 31-34.2 N</p>  <p>xx1900000028</p> |
| 4 | Secure the motor with the screws. | <p>Screw: M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washer, 3HAC063985-001 (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 3 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003008</p> |
| 5 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. | <p>Used belt: 102-109 Hz New belt: 113-143 Hz (for reference only)</p> |
| 6 | If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust. | |

Continues on next page

5.6.1 Replacing the housing Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 7 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  xx1900000009 |

Reconnecting the axis-3 motor connectors

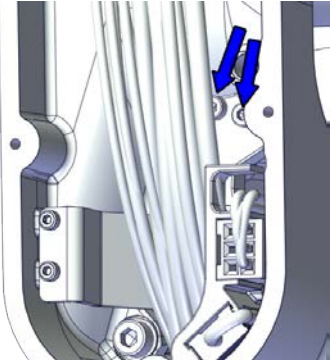
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Slide the connectors into the connector plate and reconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB3 • MP3  Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector. |  xx1800003005 |
| 2 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |
| 3 | Refit the cable bracket. | Screw: M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm  xx1800003006 |

Continues on next page

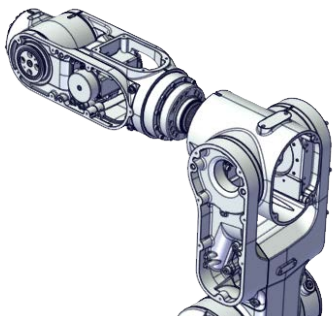
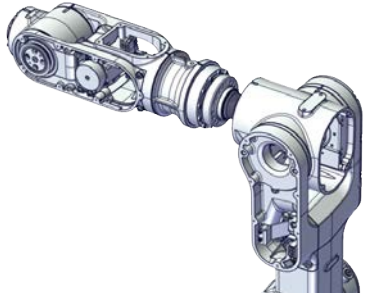
5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the housing

Continued


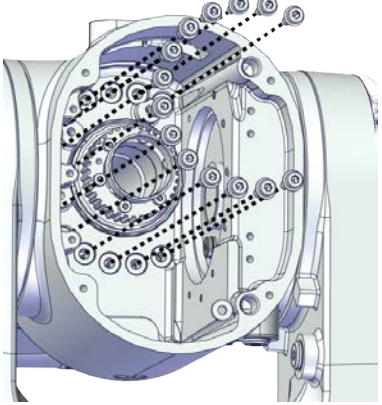
| | Action | Note |
|---|----------------------------|---|
| 4 | Refit the connector plate. | <p>Screw: M3x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003004</p> |

Refitting the housing

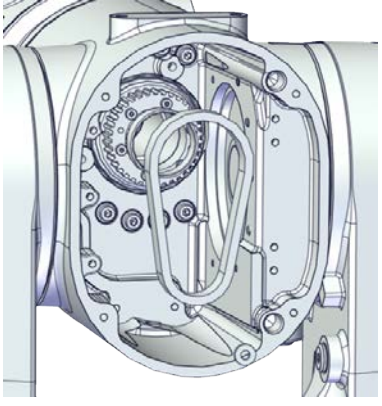
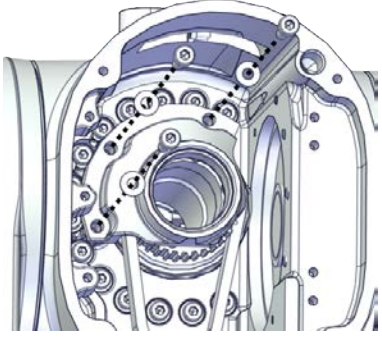
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.475 Refit the the wrist to the housing.</p> |  <p>xx1800003075</p> |
| 2 | <p>Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58 Refit the extender unit and wrist to the housing.</p> |  <p>xx1800003100</p> |

Continues on next page

5.6.1 Replacing the housing *Continued*

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 3 | Refit the screws and washers.  Note Some robots may be fitted with separate screws and washers. During replacement, always use the same screws (and washers) that are fitted on the robot at delivery. Contact ABB for more information. | Flange screws (14 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.9 Nm  xx1900002191 |

Refitting the axis-4 timing belt and pulley cover

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Install the timing belt to the gearbox pulley and verify that the belt runs correctly in the groove of the pulley. |  xx1800003098 |
| 2 | Refit the pulley cover. | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003097 |

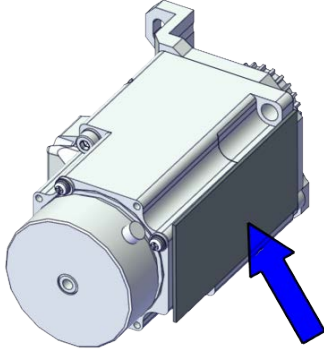
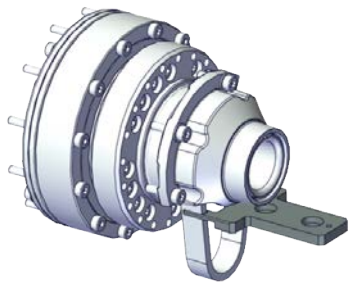
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the housing


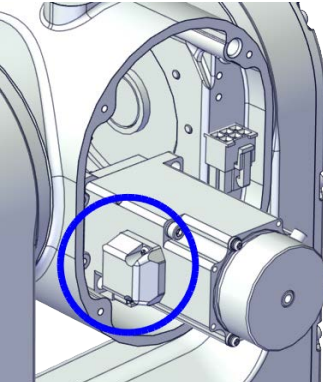
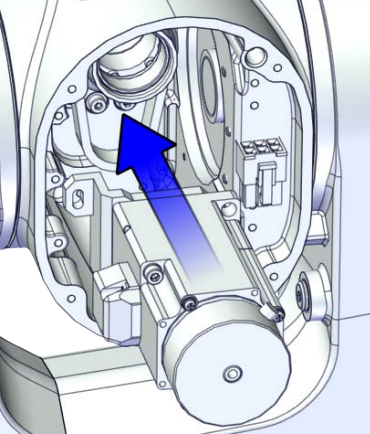

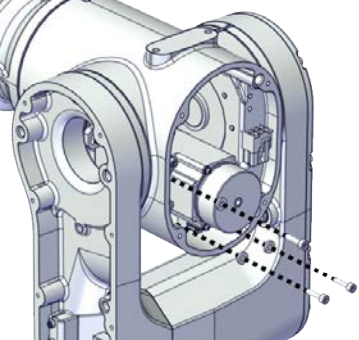
Continued

Refitting the axis-4 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Check that: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages• the motor is clean and undamaged. | |
| 2 | Check the cooling pad. Replace if damaged. | Cooling pad for axis-3 and -4 motors: 3HAC071021-001  xx1800003605 |
| 3 | Use the motor fitting tool to fix the timing belt. | axis-4 motor fitting tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001.  xx1900000044 |

Continues on next page

5.6.1 Replacing the housing
Continued

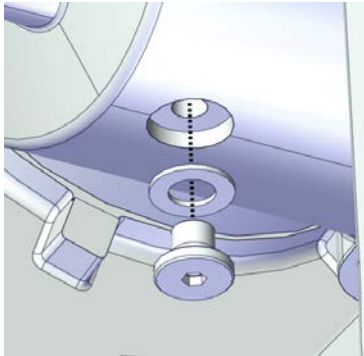
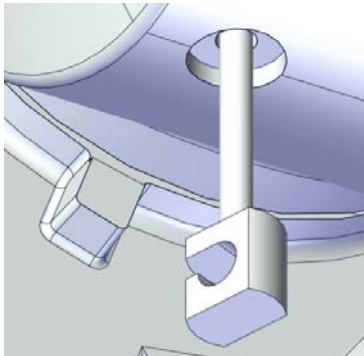
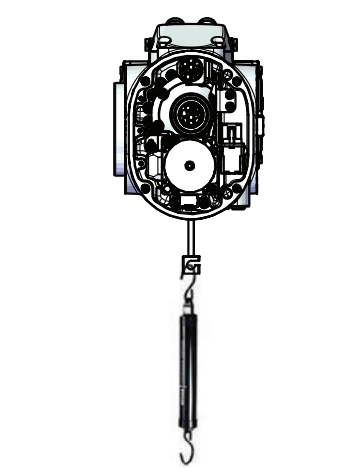
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 4 | <p>Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the housing.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Make sure the motor flange does not press on the timing belt.</p> | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003287</p> |
| 5 | <p>Install the timing belt to the motor pulley.</p> |  <p>xx1800003617</p> |
| 6 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washer, 3HAC064765-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800003095</p> |
| 7 | <p>Remove the motor fitting tool.</p> | |

Continues on next page


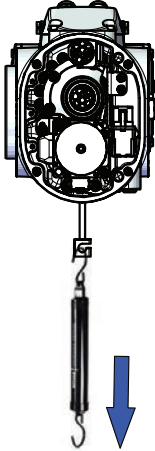
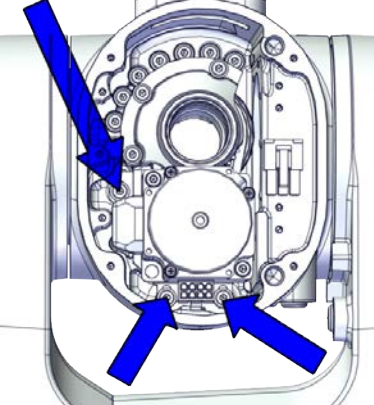
5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the housing
Continued

Adjusting the axis-4 timing belt tension

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Remove the screw and washer below the housing. |  xx1900000036 |
| 2 | Fit an M3x25 eye bolt o the screw hole. |  xx1900000037 |
| 3 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the eye bolt. |  xx1900000038 |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | <p>Pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Pay attention to the force application direction.</p> | <p>Used belt: 20.09-22.05 N New belt: 28.7-31.5 N</p>  <p>xx1900000039</p> |
| 5 | <p>Secure the motor with the screws.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 1.4 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003094</p> |
| 6 | <p>Remove eye bolt and refit the screw and washer below the housing.</p> | <p>Plug screw: 3HAC064146-001 Tightening torque: 2 Nm</p> |



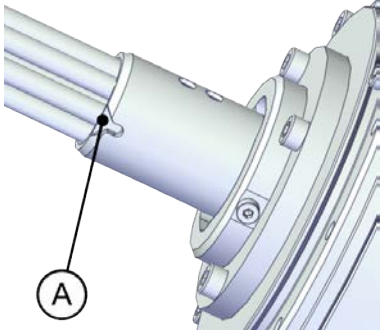
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the housing

Continued

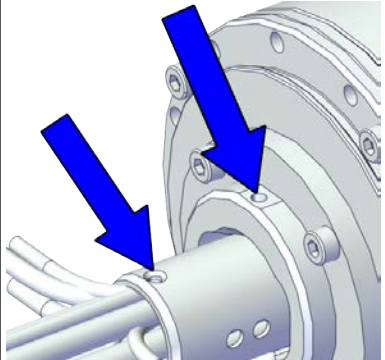
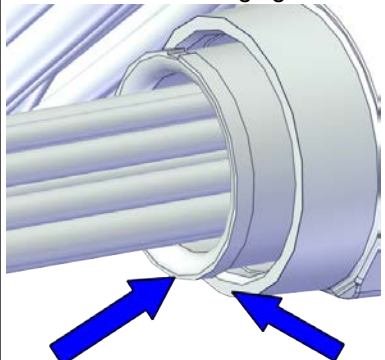
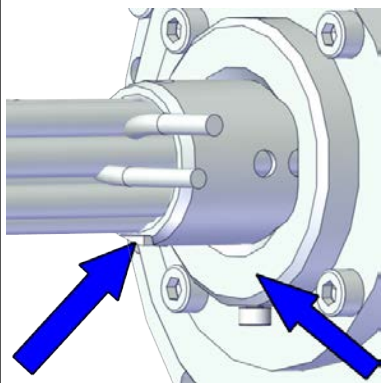
Refitting the upper cable harness through the axis-4 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Insert the cable package from the lower arm support, into the housing and through the axis-4 gearbox.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p> | <p>Cable protection tube orientation: use the notch (A) on the cable protection tube as a reference when inserting the cable package, which should be at the opposite direction to the locking screw hole on the gearbox.</p>  <p>xx1800003017</p> |

Continues on next page

5.6.1 Replacing the housing
Continued

Securing the upper cable package to the axis-4 gearbox



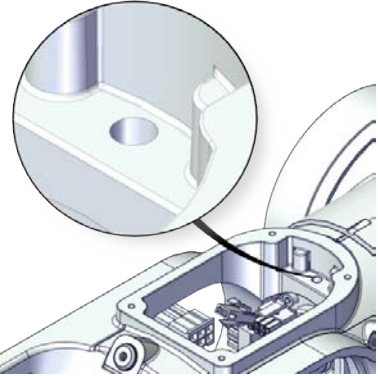
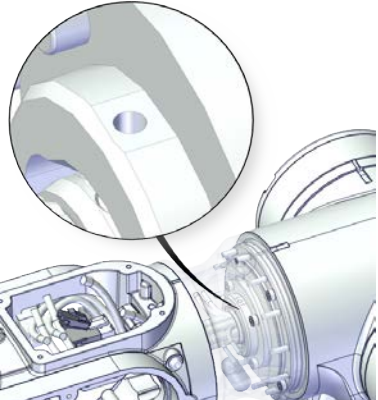
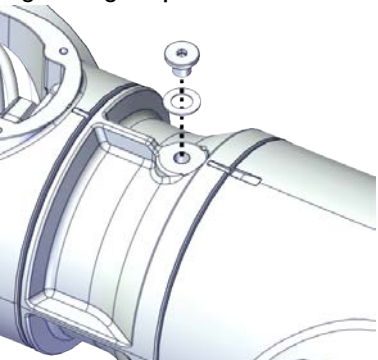
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Make sure that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The hole on the cable protection tube is aligned with the locking screw hole on the gearbox.• The cable protection tube surface is completely parallel with the pulley cover at one side and with the flange at the other side. | <p>Holes to be aligned are shown in the following figure.</p>  <p>xx1800003018</p> <p>Surfaces to be paralleled are shown in the following figures.</p>  <p>xx1800003019</p>  <p>xx1800003020</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

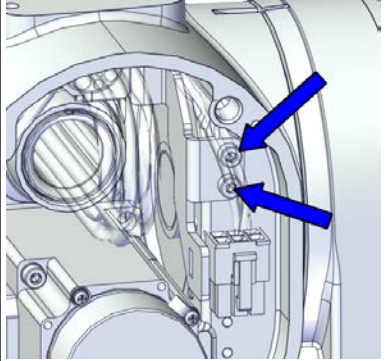
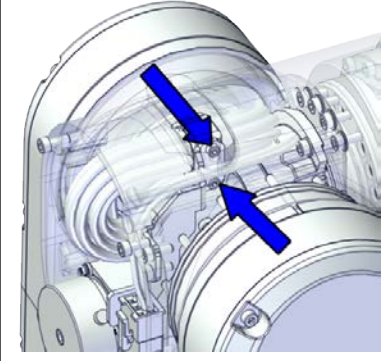

5.6.1 Replacing the housing

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | <p>Apply a little Loctite 243 to the locking screw and refit the locking screw.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Make sure the locking screw header is parallel with flange surface.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>If there is locking liquid residues on the screw or screw hole, please clean it before refitting. Remove residual locking liquid after refitting.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 (1 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.475</p>  <p>xx1800003031</p> <p>Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58</p>  <p>xx1800003001</p> |
| 3 | <p>Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58</p> <p>Refit the plug screw and washer on the extender unit.</p> | <p>Plug screw: 3HAC064146-001 Tightening torque: 2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003000</p> |

Continues on next page

Securing the upper cable package to the housing

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Refit the cable bracket. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003013</p> <p>Screw: M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003014</p> |
| 2 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |

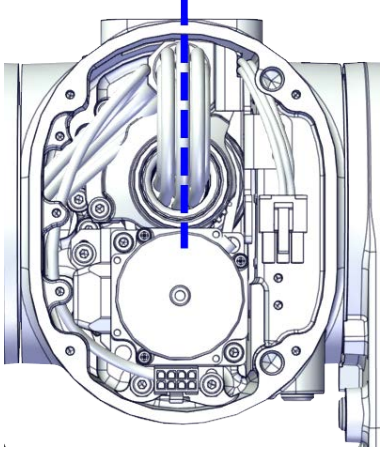

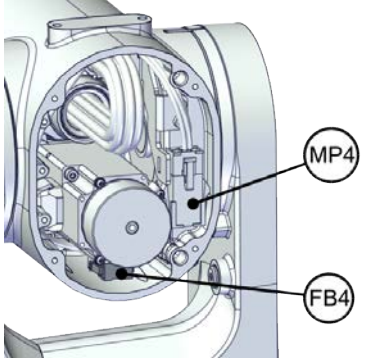
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the housing

Continued

Reconnecting the axis-4 motor connectors


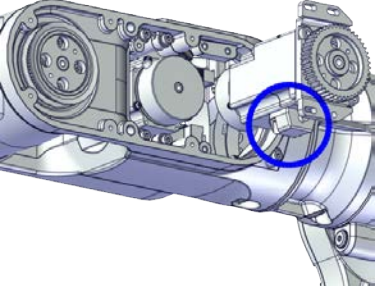

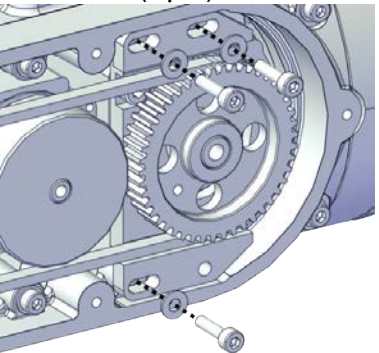
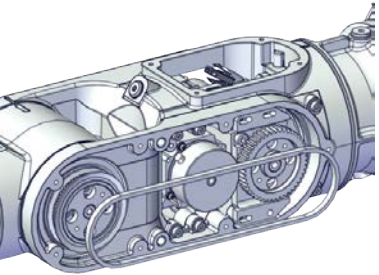
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | <p>Check the cabling status. Make sure the cabling is in vertical state and is not twisted.</p> |  <p>xx1800003618</p> |
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• FB4• MP4 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003012</p> |

Refitting the axis-6 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | <p>Check that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages• the motor is clean and undamaged. | |

Continues on next page

5.6.1 Replacing the housing *Continued*


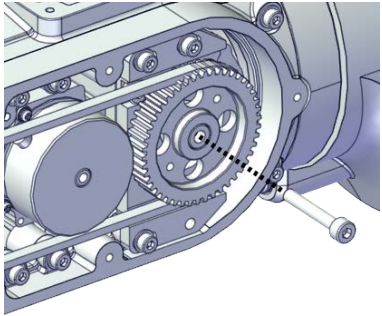
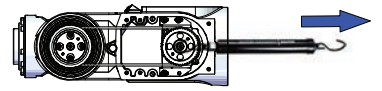
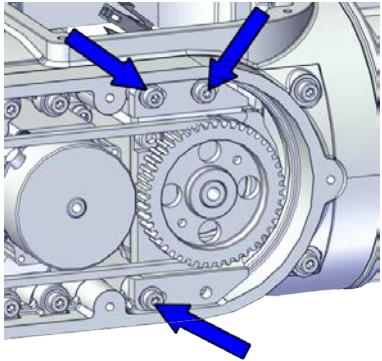
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | <p>Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the lower arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Leave the connectors FB5 and FB6 accessible from the process hub and the connectors MP5 and MP6 accessible from wrist side.</p> | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003023</p> |
| 3 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800002996</p> |
| 4 | <p>Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys.</p> |  <p>xx1800003024</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

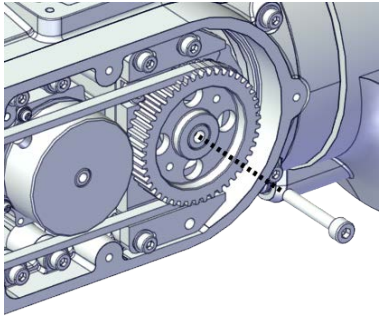
5.6.1 Replacing the housing

Continued


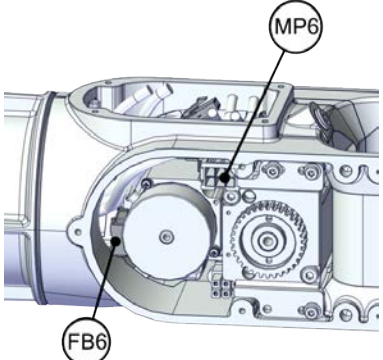

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 5 | Install an M4x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.  Note Do not insert the entire screw to the hole. |  xx1900000007 |
| 6 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force. | Initial referenced force for used belt: 8.96-9.8 N (for reference only) Initial referenced force for new belt: 12.8-14  xx1900000026 |
| 7 | Secure the motor with the screws. | Tightening torque: 1.4 Nm  xx1800002995 |
| 8 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. | Used belt: 81.3-86.9 Hz New belt: 90-114 Hz (for reference only) |
| 9 | If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust. | |

Continues on next page

5.6.1 Replacing the housing
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|---|---|
| 10 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  xx1900000007 |

Reconnecting the axis-6 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Reconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB6 • MP6  Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector. |  xx1800002994 |
| 2 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |
| 3 | Insert the cabling and connectors into the wrist. | |


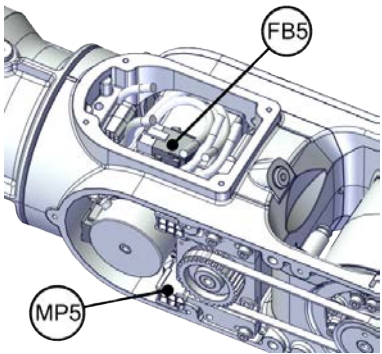

Continues on next page

5 Repair

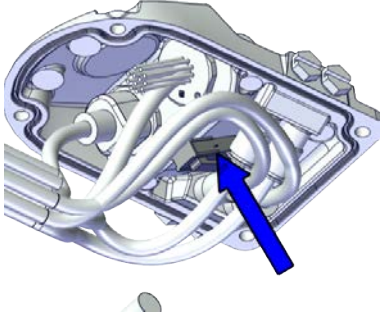

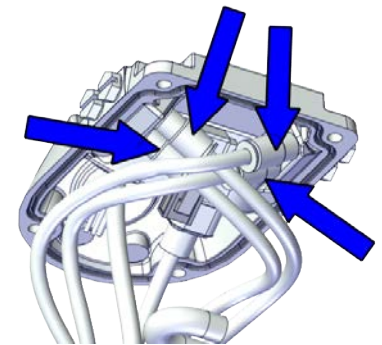
5.6.1 Replacing the housing

Continued

Reconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

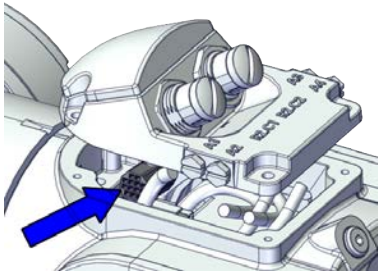
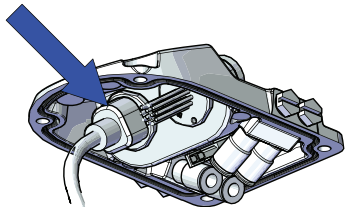

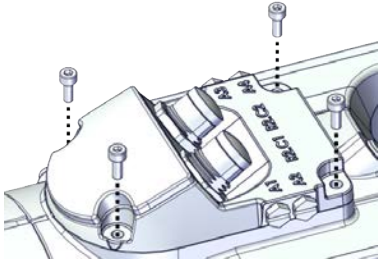
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB5 • MP5 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003025</p> |
| 2 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |
| 3 | Insert the cabling and connectors into the wrist. | |

Refitting the process hub

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Reconnect the lamp unit connector J5.UL and place the connector behind the air hose connectors.</p> |  <p>xx1800002946</p> |
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses. The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800002945</p> |

Continues on next page

5.6.1 Replacing the housing
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 3 | For robots with CP/CS cabling Reconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> J5.C1 |  xx210000293 |
| 4 | For robots with Ethernet cabling Reconnect the connector J5.C2 using the tool. | J5.C2 connector assembly tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001  xx1800002948 |
| 5 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |
| 6 | Refit the cover. | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx2000002219 |

Refitting the covers

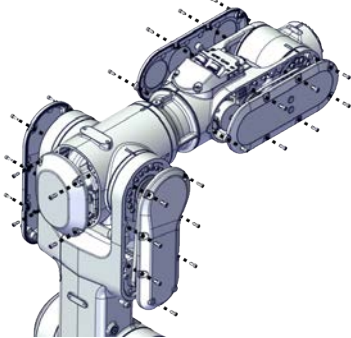
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package. | |
| 2 | Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package. | |

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the housing

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | Refit the covers. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Wrist covers• Lower arm cover• Lower arm support cover• Housing cover | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003611</p> |

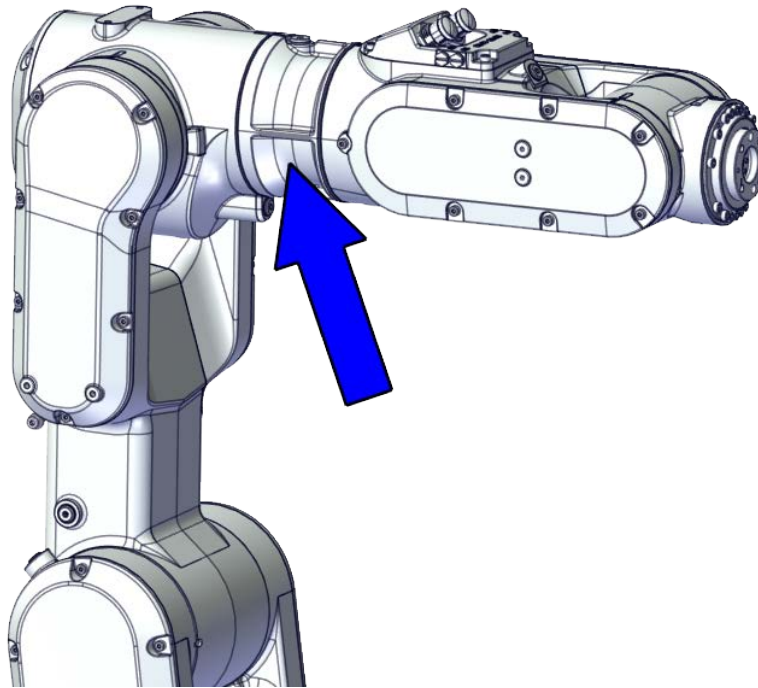
Concluding procedure

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Recalibrate the robot. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |
| 2 |  DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 161 . | |

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Location of the extender unit and wrist

The CRB 1100-4/0.58 has an extender unit connecting the housing and wrist, which is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002476

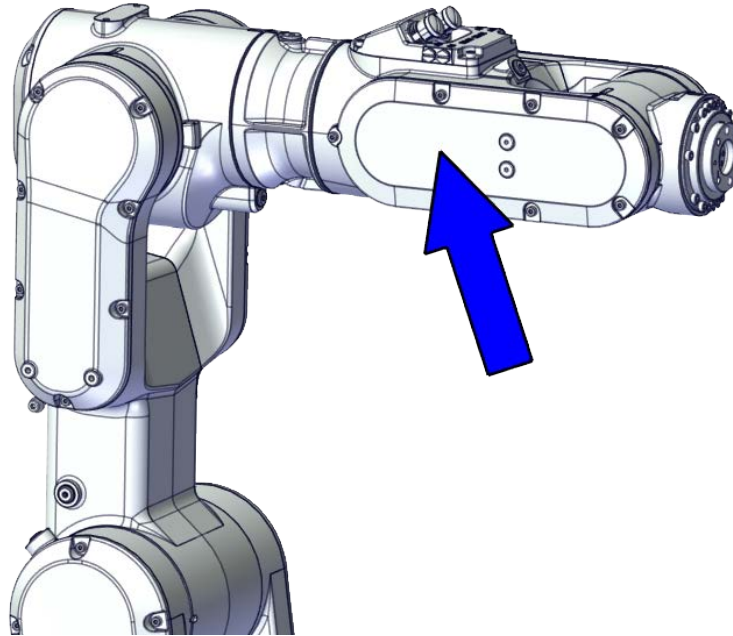
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

The wrist is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002477

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---------------------------|
| Process hub with lamp unit (CP/CS and air hose, with Ethernet) | 3HAC077335-001 | |
| Extender unit | 3HAC069037-001 | Used for CRB 1100-4/0.58. |
| Wrist | 3HAC075794-001 | |
| Gear unit with pulley, axis 4 | 3HAC073519-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 4 | 3HAC083586-001 | |
| Timing belt, axis 4 | 3HAC061937-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 5 | 3HAC083585-001 | |
| Timing belt, axis 5 | 3HAC061938-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 6 | 3HAC083584-001 | |
| Timing belt, axis 6 | 3HAC061939-001 | |
| Housing cover | 3HAC069054-001 | |

Continues on next page

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|---|
| Wrist cover | 3HAC069061-001 | |
| Lower arm cover | 3HAC069057-001 | |
| Lower arm support cover | 3HAC069059-001 | |
| Cooling pad for axis-3 and -4 motors | 3HAC071021-001 | Cooling pads are wear parts. One cooling pad sheet includes 10 pieces of small pad. Replace if damaged with one piece each time. |
| Washer | 3HAC063985-001 | 9x4.3x1, Steel |
| Washer | 3HAC064765-001 | 7x3.2x1.5, Steel |

Required tools and equipment

| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |
| Sonic tension meter | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| Dynamometer | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| axis-4 motor fitting tool | - | Included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001. Used to refit the axis-4 motor. |
| M3x25 eye bolt | - | Included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001. |
| J5.C2 connector assembly tool | - | Included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001. Used to remove and refit the J5.C2 connector, if the Ethernet cabling is equipped. |

Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|----------------|----------------|--|
| Cable straps | - | |
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |
| Locking liquid | - | Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243) |

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

Deciding calibration routine

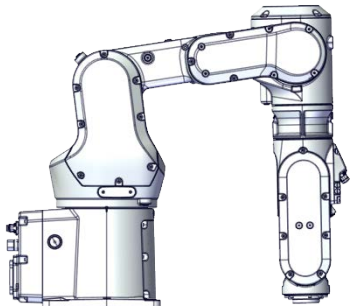
Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. |  Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mounting flange is used for installation of the calibration tool. |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 664 . |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. | |


Removing the extender unit and wrist

Use these procedures to remove the extender unit and wrist.



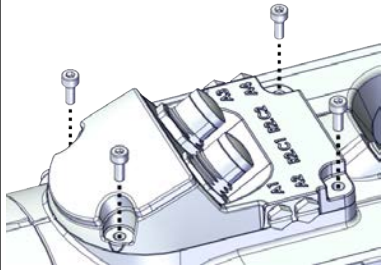
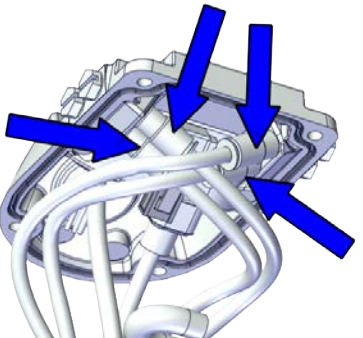
Preparations before removing the extender unit and wrist

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |
| 2 | Jog the robot to the specified position: <ul style="list-style-type: none">Axis 1: 0°Axis 2: 110° (CRB 1100-4/0.475) /95° (CRB 1100-4/0.58)Axis 3: -20° (CRB 1100-4/0.475) / -6° (CRB 1100-4/0.58)Axis 4: 0°Axis 5: 0°Axis 6: No significance. |  xx1800003289 |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 3 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. | |

Removing the process hub

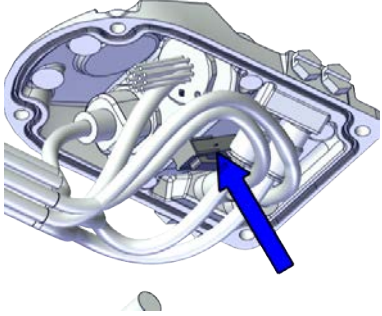
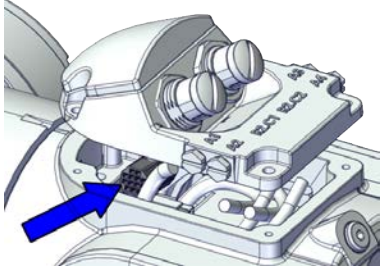
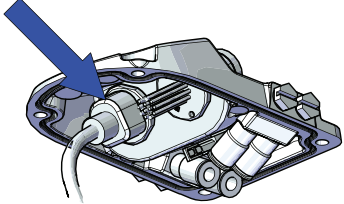
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the screws and carefully open the cover.  CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps. |  xx2000002219 |
| 3 | Disconnect the air hoses. |  xx1800002945 |

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 4 | Carefully pull out lamp unit connector behind the air hose connectors and disconnect the connector J5.UL. |  xx1800002946 |
| 5 | For robots with CP/CS cabling Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none">J5.C1 |  xx2100000293 |
| 6 | For robots with Ethernet cabling Disconnect the connector J5.C2 using the tool. | J5.C2 connector assembly tool: -  xx1800002948 |

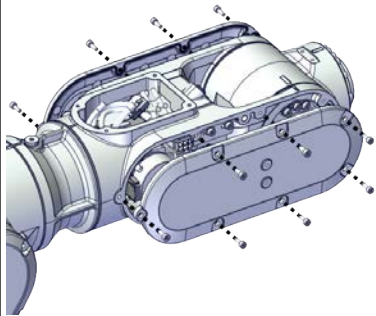
Removing the wrist covers

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |


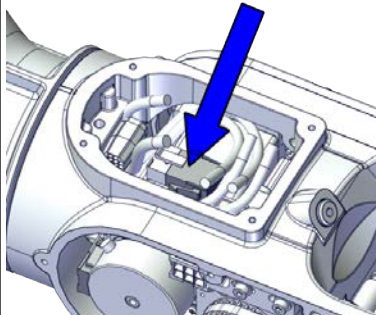
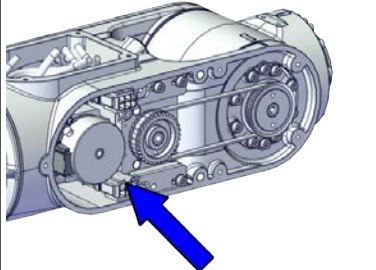
Continues on next page

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | Remove the wrist covers from both sides. |  xx1800002949 |

Disconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Access the connector FB5 from the process hub and disconnect the connector. |  xx1800002950 |
| 3 | Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MP5 |  xx1800002993 |


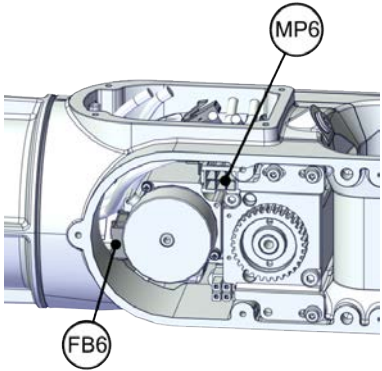
Continues on next page

5 Repair



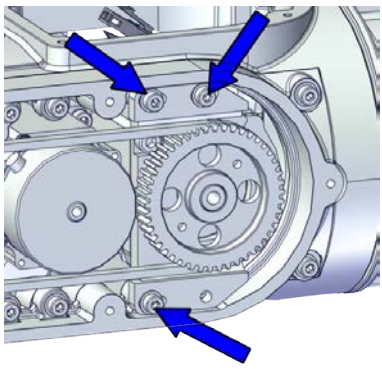
5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

Disconnecting the axis-6 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• MP6• FB6 |  xx1800002994 |

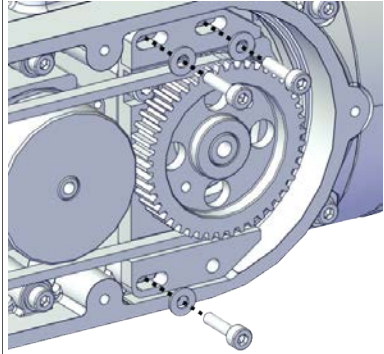
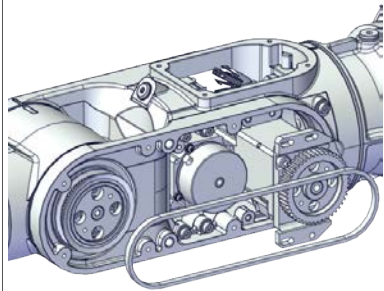
Removing the axis-6 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800002995 |



Continues on next page

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 4 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800002996 |
| 5 | Carefully lift out the motor. | |
| 6 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800002997 |

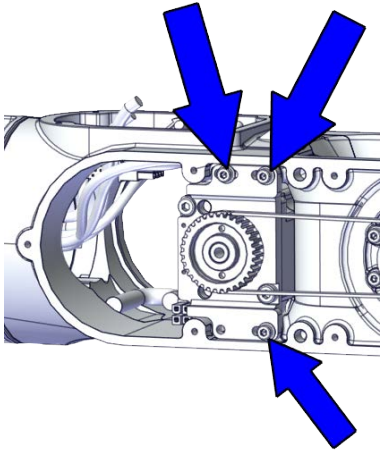
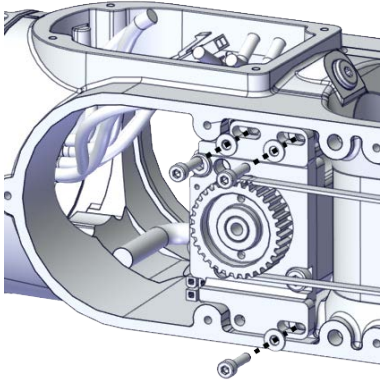
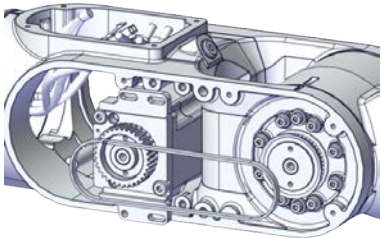
Removing the axis-5 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |

Continues on next page


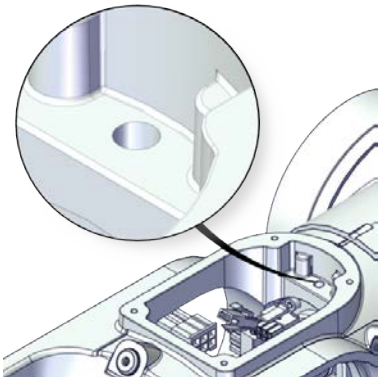
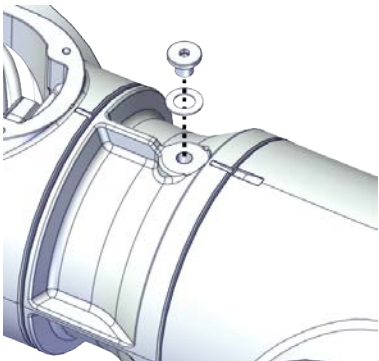
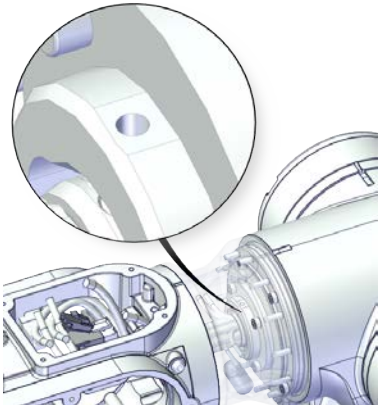
5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800003293 |
| 4 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800003294 |
| 5 | Carefully lift out the motor. | |
| 6 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800003295 |

Continues on next page

Loosening the cable package from axis-4 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.475 Access the cable package locking screw on the axis-4 gearbox from the wrist and then loosen the locking screw. |  xx1800003031 |
| 3 | Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58 Remove the plug screw and washer on the extender unit to access the cable package locking screw on the axis-4 gearbox and then loosen the locking screw. |  xx1800003000  xx1800003001 |


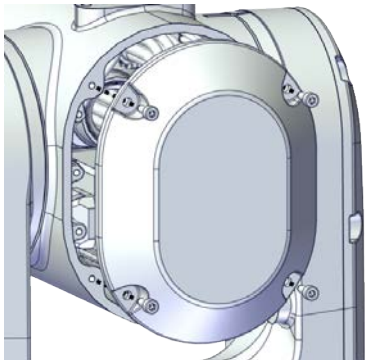
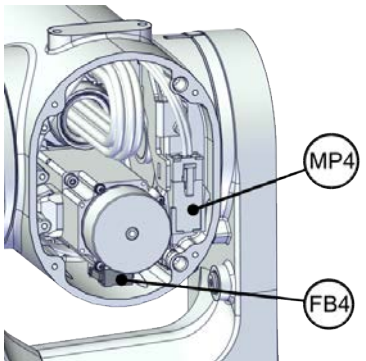
Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

Disconnecting the axis-4 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the housing cover. |  xx1800003011 |
| 3 | Disconnect the motor connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• FB4• MP4 |  xx1800003012 |

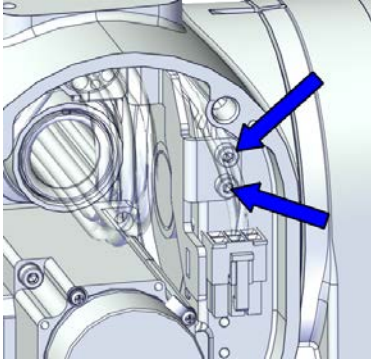
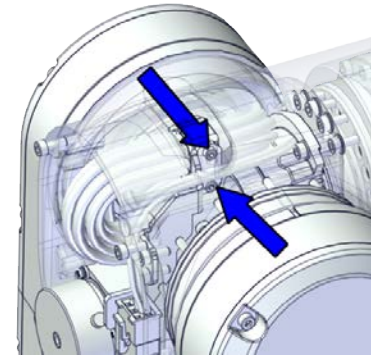
Separating the upper cable package from the housing

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |


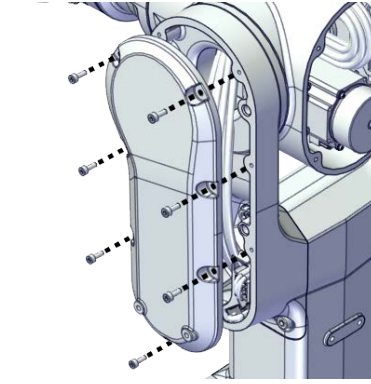
Continues on next page

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---------------------------|---|
| 2 | Remove the cable bracket. |  xx1800003013  xx1800003014 |

Pulling out the upper cable harness

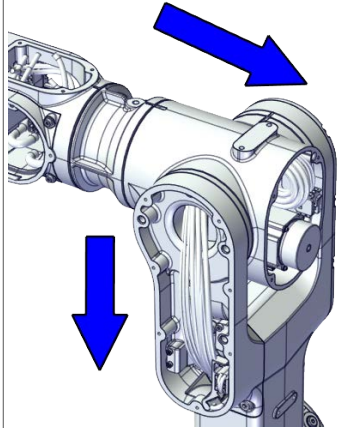
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the lower arm support cover. |  xx1800003092 |

Continues on next page



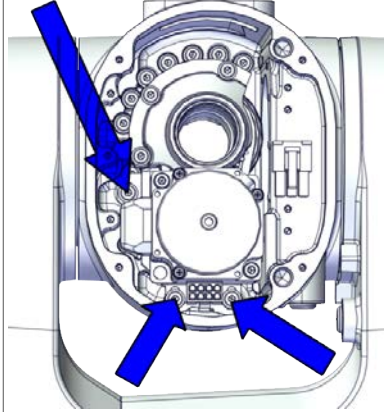
5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | Pull out the upper cable harness from the housing, out from the lower arm support. |  xx1800003093 |

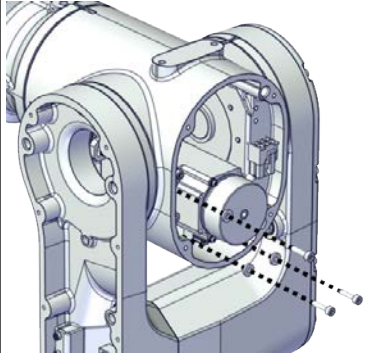

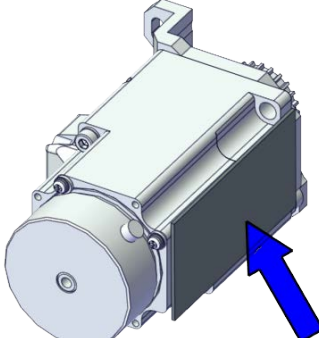
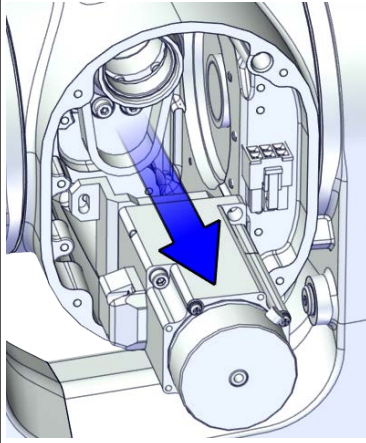
Removing the axis-4 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800003094 |


Continues on next page

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 4 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800003095 |
| 5 | Carefully lift out the motor.  CAUTION A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad. | Cooling pad location  xx1800003605 |
| 6 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800003096 |

Removing the pulley cover and axis-4 timing belt


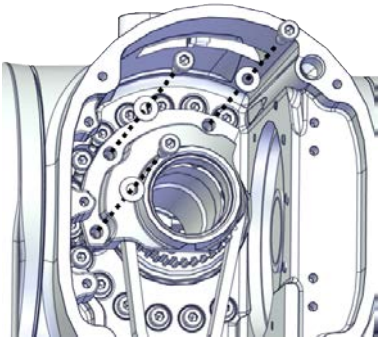
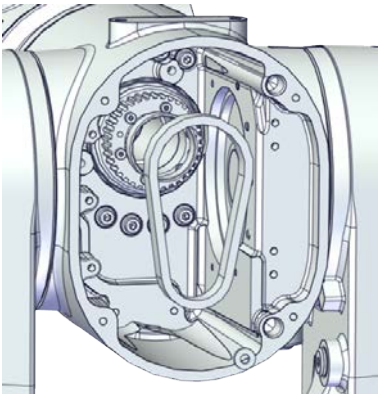
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist


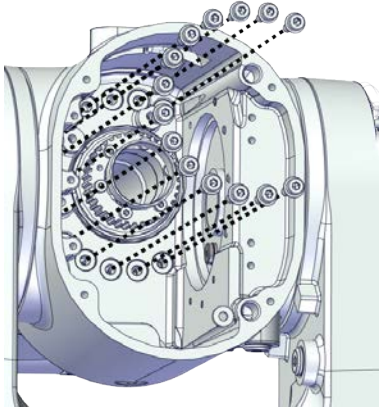
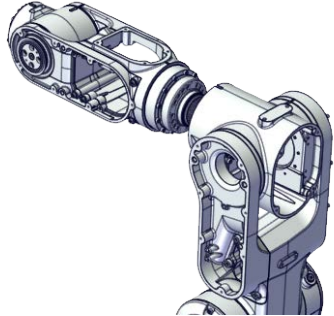
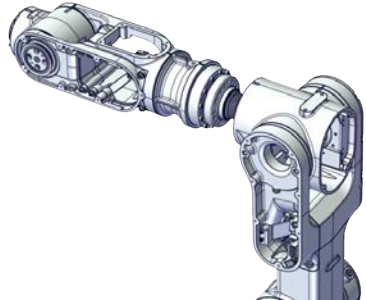
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 |  CAUTION Loosening timing belts will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before loosening timing belts. | |
| 3 | Remove the pulley cover. |  xx1800003097 |
| 4 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the gearbox. |  xx1800003098 |


Separating the housing

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | <p>Remove the screws.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Some robots may be fitted with separate screws and washers. During replacement, always use the same screws (and washers) that are fitted on the robot at delivery. Contact ABB for more information.</p> |  <p>xx1900002191</p> |
| 3 | <p>Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.475</p> <p>Separate the wrist from the housing.</p> |  <p>xx1800003299</p> |
| 4 | <p>Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58</p> <p>Separate the extender unit and wrist from the housing.</p> |  <p>xx1800003298</p> |

Removing the axis-4 gearbox


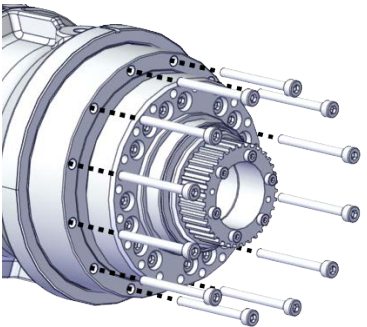
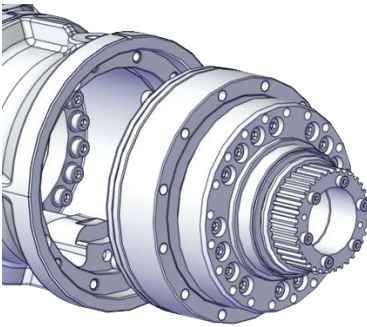
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing gearboxes will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing gearboxes. | |
| 3 | Remove the screws. |  xx1800003300 |
| 4 | Pull out the gearbox. |  xx1800003310 |

Separating the extender unit and wrist

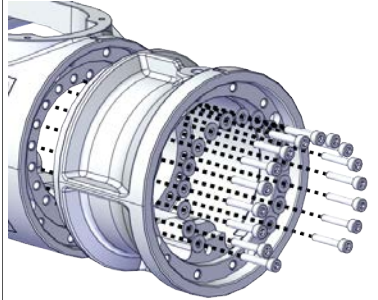
Notice that this procedure is valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued


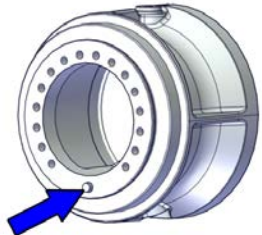
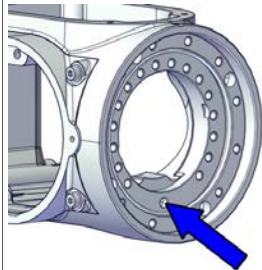
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58 Separate the extender unit from the wrist. |  xx1800003311 |

Refitting the extender unit and wrist

Use these procedures to refit the extender unit and wrist.

Refitting the extender unit to the wrist

Notice that this procedure is valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58.

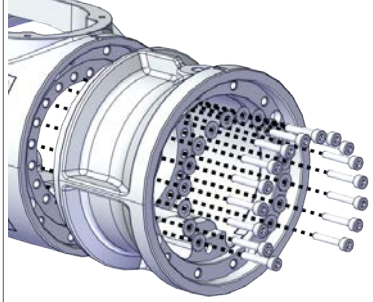
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Align the parallel pin on the extender unit with the pin hole on the wrist.  Note Some robots may not have the parallel pin. In those cases, order one and press fit it to the extender unit. | Parallel pin: 3HAC050369-032  xx2100001504  xx2100001505 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

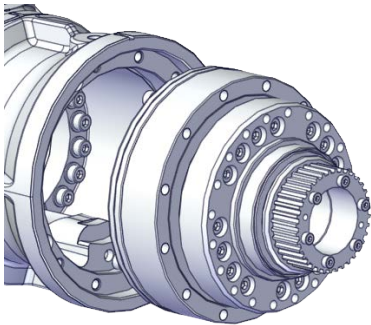
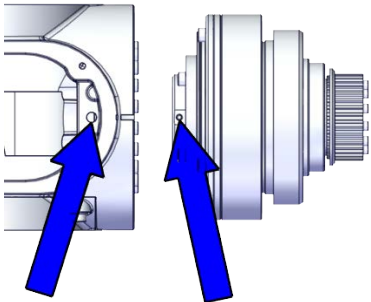
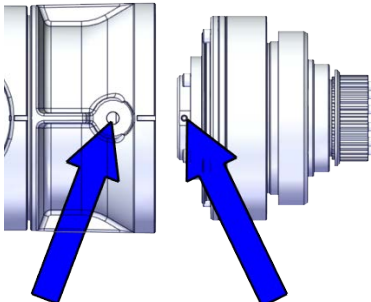
5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---------------------------------------|--|
| 2 | Refit the extender unit to the wrist. | <p>Screw: M3x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (16 pcs) Tightening torque: 2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003311</p> |

Continues on next page

Refitting the axis-4 gearbox

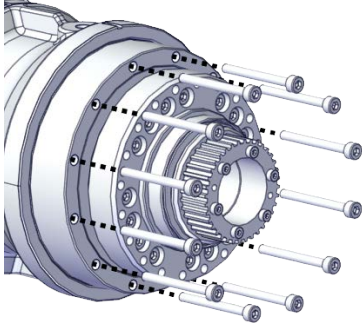
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Refit the axis-4 gearbox. Make sure the locking screw holes on the gearbox and extender unit or wrist are aligned with each other. |  xx1800003310 Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.475  xx1800003313 Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58  xx1800003312 |

Continues on next page

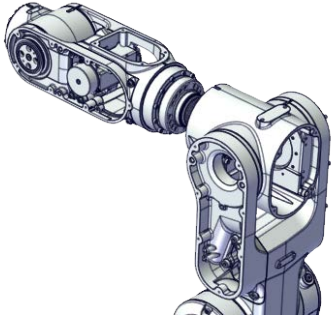
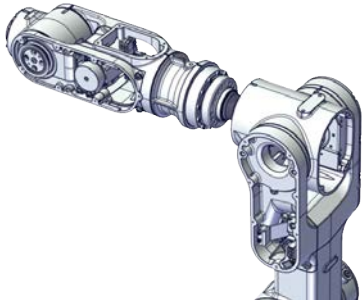
5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---------------------|--|
| 2 | Secure with screws. | <p>Screw: M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (12 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003300</p> |


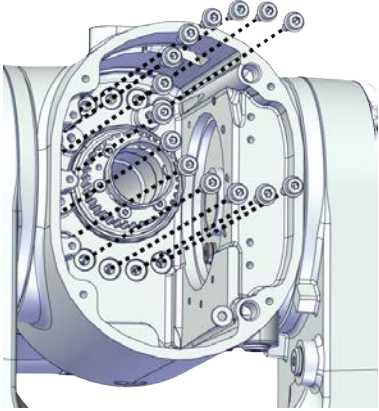
Refitting the housing

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.475 Refit the the wrist to the housing.</p> |  <p>xx1800003075</p> |
| 2 | <p>Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58 Refit the extender unit and wrist to the housing.</p> |  <p>xx1800003100</p> |

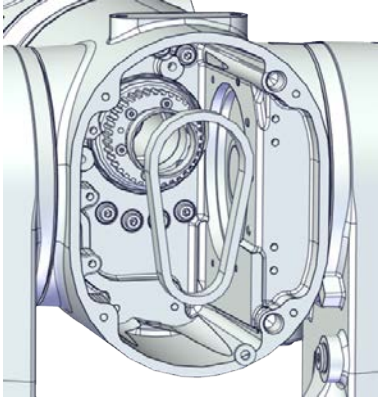
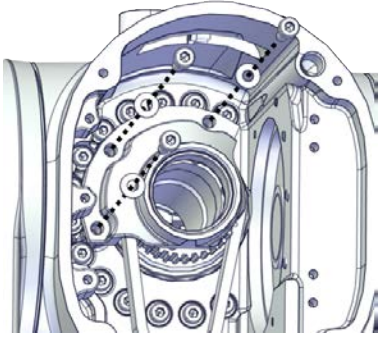
Continues on next page

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 3 | Refit the screws and washers.  Note Some robots may be fitted with separate screws and washers. During replacement, always use the same screws (and washers) that are fitted on the robot at delivery. Contact ABB for more information. | Flange screws (14 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.9 Nm  xx1900002191 |

Refitting the axis-4 timing belt and pulley cover

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Install the timing belt to the gearbox pulley and verify that the belt runs correctly in the groove of the pulley. |  xx1800003098 |
| 2 | Refit the pulley cover. | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003097 |

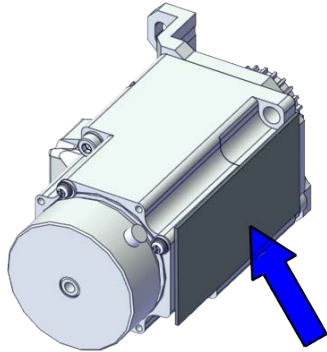
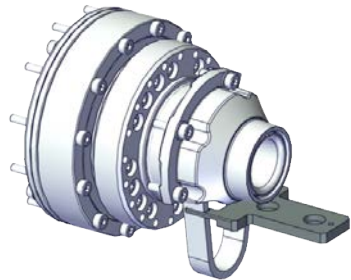
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued


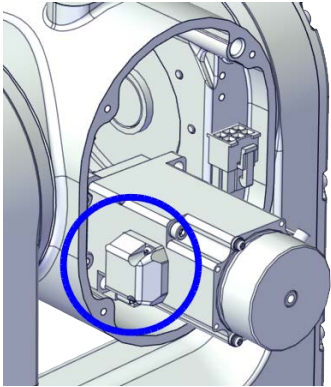
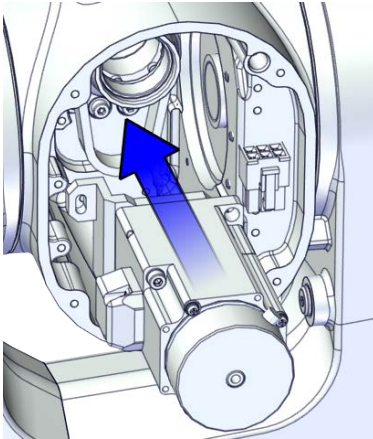

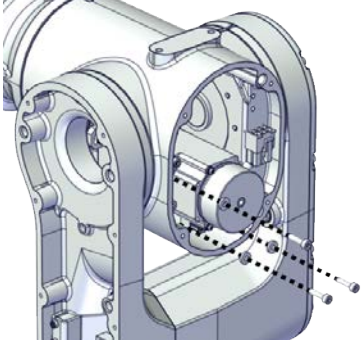
Refitting the axis-4 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Check that: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages• the motor is clean and undamaged. | |
| 2 | Check the cooling pad. Replace if damaged. | Cooling pad for axis-3 and -4 motors: 3HAC071021-001  xx1800003605 |
| 3 | Use the motor fitting tool to fix the timing belt. | axis-4 motor fitting tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001.  xx1900000044 |

Continues on next page

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

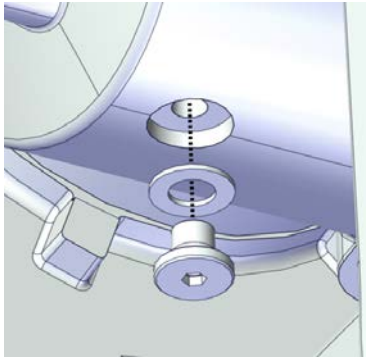
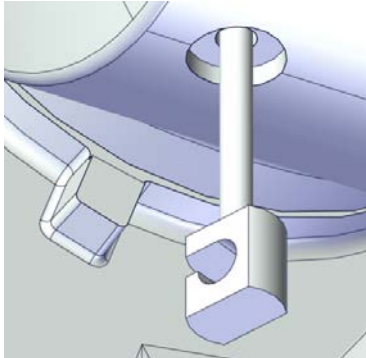
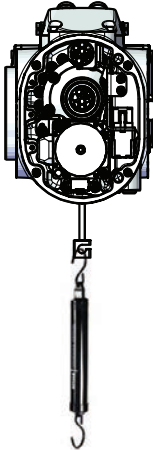
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 4 | <p>Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the housing.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Make sure the motor flange does not press on the timing belt.</p> | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003287</p> |
| 5 | <p>Install the timing belt to the motor pulley.</p> |  <p>xx1800003617</p> |
| 6 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washer, 3HAC064765-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800003095</p> |
| 7 | <p>Remove the motor fitting tool.</p> | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist
Continued


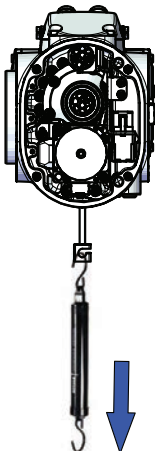
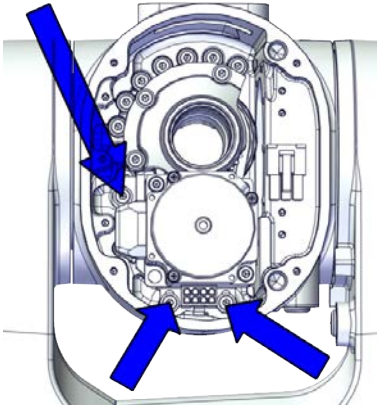
Adjusting the axis-4 timing belt tension

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Remove the screw and washer below the housing. |  xx1900000036 |
| 2 | Fit an M3x25 eye bolt o the screw hole. |  xx1900000037 |
| 3 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the eye bolt. |  xx1900000038 |

Continues on next page

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | <p>Pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Pay attention to the force application direction.</p> | <p>Used belt: 20.09-22.05 N New belt: 28.7-31.5 N</p>  <p>xx1900000039</p> |
| 5 | <p>Secure the motor with the screws.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 1.4 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003094</p> |
| 6 | <p>Remove eye bolt and refit the screw and washer below the housing.</p> | <p>Plug screw: 3HAC064146-001 Tightening torque: 2 Nm</p> |



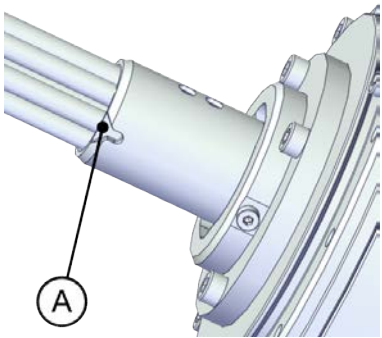
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

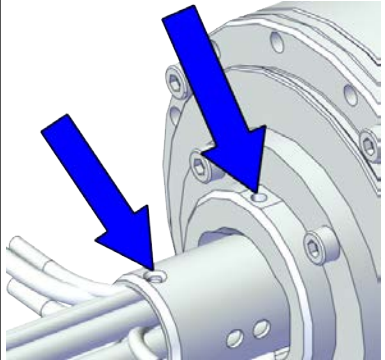
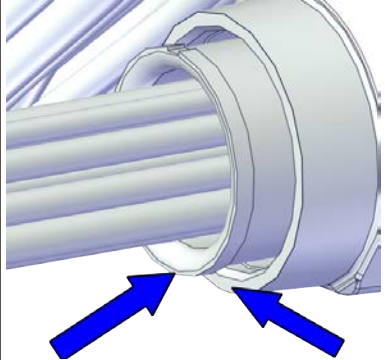
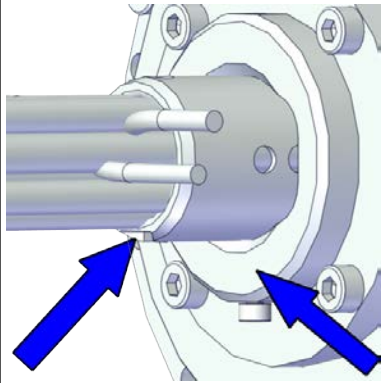
Continued

Refitting the upper cable harness through the axis-4 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Insert the cable package from the lower arm support, into the housing and through the axis-4 gearbox.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p> | <p>Cable protection tube orientation: use the notch (A) on the cable protection tube as a reference when inserting the cable package, which should be at the opposite direction to the locking screw hole on the gearbox.</p>  <p>xx1800003017</p> |

Continues on next page

Securing the upper cable package to the axis-4 gearbox



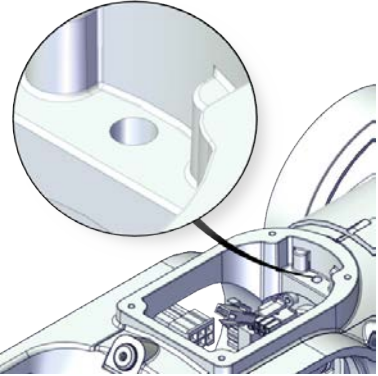
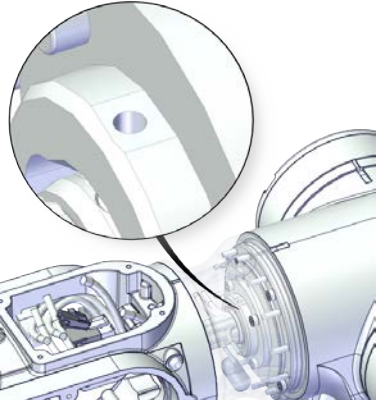
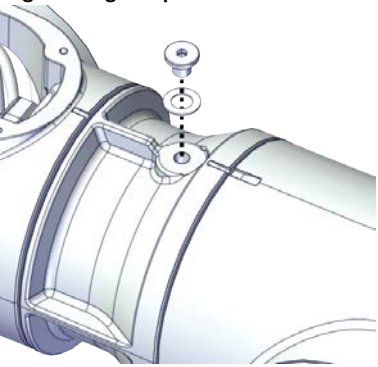
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Make sure that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The hole on the cable protection tube is aligned with the locking screw hole on the gearbox. The cable protection tube surface is completely parallel with the pulley cover at one side and with the flange at the other side. | <p>Holes to be aligned are shown in the following figure.</p>  <p>xx1800003018</p> <p>Surfaces to be paralleled are shown in the following figures.</p>  <p>xx1800003019</p>  <p>xx1800003020</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

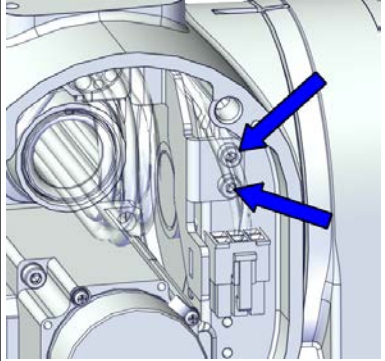
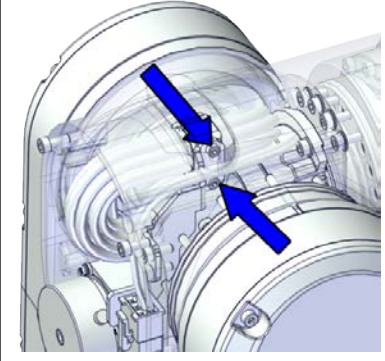

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | <p>Apply a little Loctite 243 to the locking screw and refit the locking screw.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Make sure the locking screw header is parallel with flange surface.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>If there is locking liquid residues on the screw or screw hole, please clean it before refitting. Remove residual locking liquid after refitting.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 (1 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.475</p>  <p>xx1800003031</p> <p>Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58</p>  <p>xx1800003001</p> |
| 3 | <p>Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58</p> <p>Refit the plug screw and washer on the extender unit.</p> | <p>Plug screw: 3HAC064146-001 Tightening torque: 2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003000</p> |

Continues on next page

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

Securing the upper cable package to the housing

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Refit the cable bracket. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003013</p> <p>Screw: M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003014</p> |
| 2 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |

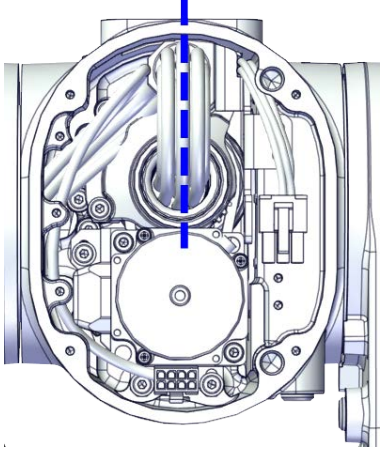

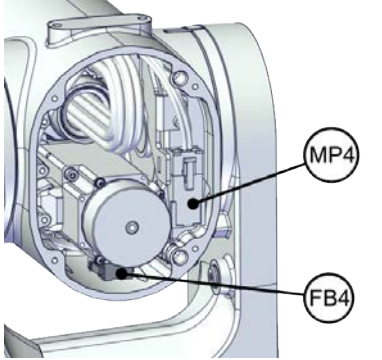
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

Reconnecting the axis-4 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | <p>Check the cabling status. Make sure the cabling is in vertical state and is not twisted.</p> |  <p>xx1800003618</p> |
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• FB4• MP4 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003012</p> |


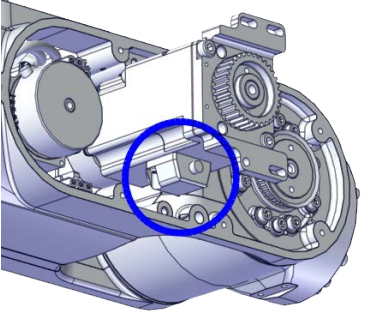

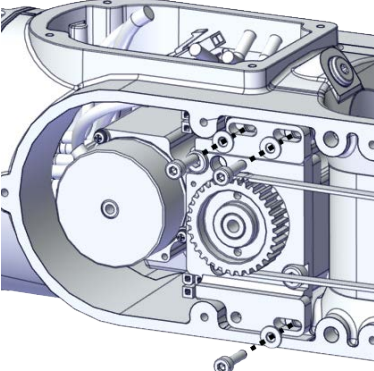
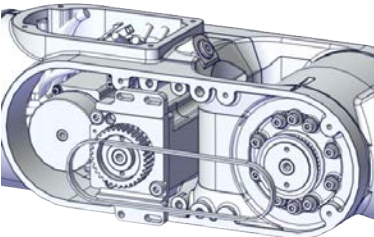
Refitting the axis-5 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | <p>Check that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages• the motor is clean and undamaged. | |

Continues on next page

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued


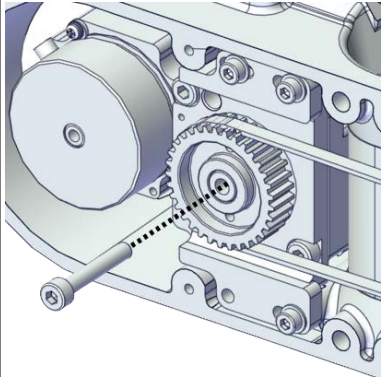

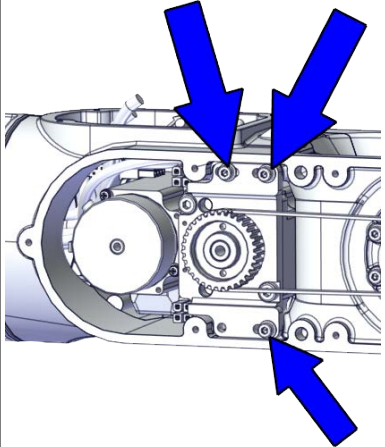
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | <p>Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the wrist.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Leave the connectors FB5 and FB6 accessible from the process hub and the connectors MP5 and MP6 accessible from wrist side.</p> | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003296</p> |
| 3 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800003291</p> |
| 4 | <p>Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys.</p> |  <p>xx1800003292</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

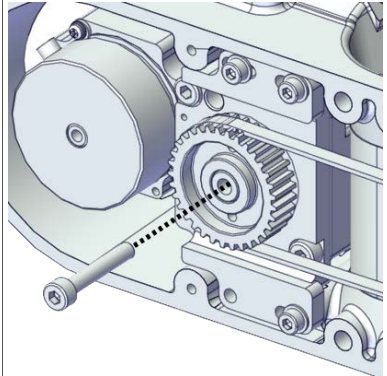
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 5 | <p>Install an M4x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not insert the entire screw to the hole.</p> |  <p>xx1900000008</p> |
| 6 | <p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force.</p> | <p>Initial referenced force for used belt: 13.58-14.84 N (for reference only)</p> <p>Initial referenced force for new belt: 19.4-21.2 N</p>  <p>xx1900000027</p> |
| 7 | <p>Secure the motor with the screws.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 1.4 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003290</p> |
| 8 | <p>Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.</p> | <p>Used belt: 151-162 Hz</p> <p>New belt: 167-213 Hz (for reference only)</p> |
| 9 | <p>If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.</p> | |


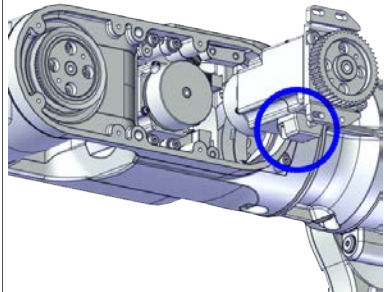

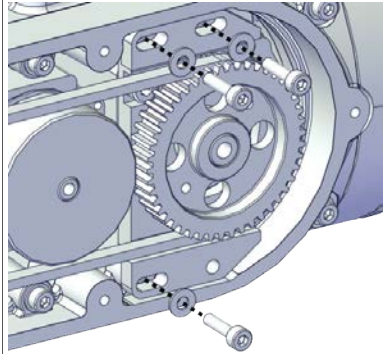
Continues on next page

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|---|---|
| 10 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  xx1900000008 |

Refitting the axis-6 motor

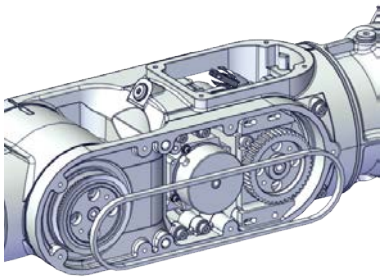

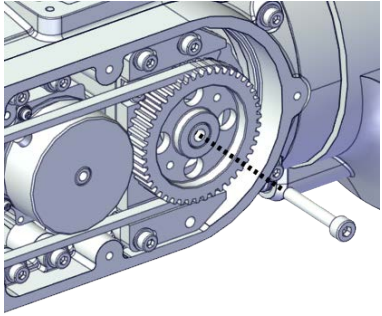
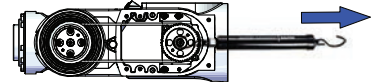
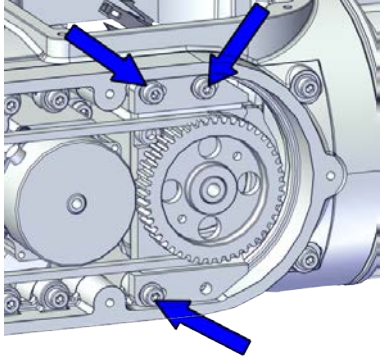
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Check that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages the motor is clean and undamaged. | |
| 2 | Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the lower arm.  Tip Leave the connectors FB5 and FB6 accessible from the process hub and the connectors MP5 and MP6 accessible from wrist side. | Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.  xx1800003023 |
| 3 | Refit the screws and washers.  Note Do not tighten the screws yet. | Screw: M3x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)  xx1800002996 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

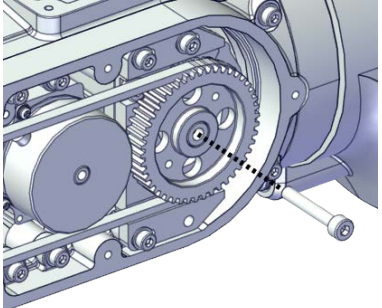
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 4 | Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys. |  xx1800003024 |
| 5 | Install an M4x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.  Note Do not insert the entire screw to the hole. |  xx1900000007 |
| 6 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force. | Initial referenced force for used belt: 8.96-9.8 N (for reference only) Initial referenced force for new belt: 12.8-14  xx1900000026 |
| 7 | Secure the motor with the screws. | Tightening torque: 1.4 Nm  xx1800002995 |


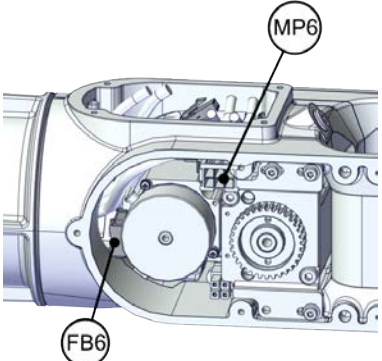

Continues on next page

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|---|---|
| 8 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. | Used belt: 81.3-86.9 Hz New belt: 90-114 Hz (for reference only) |
| 9 | If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust. | |
| 10 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  xx1900000007 |

Reconnecting the axis-6 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Reconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB6 • MP6  Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector. |  xx1800002994 |
| 2 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |
| 3 | Insert the cabling and connectors into the wrist. | |


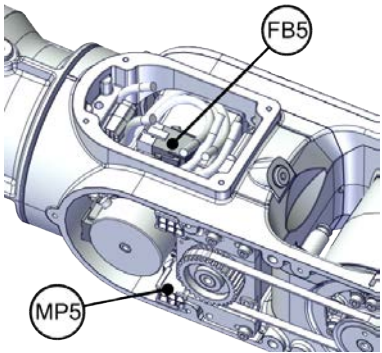

Continues on next page

5 Repair

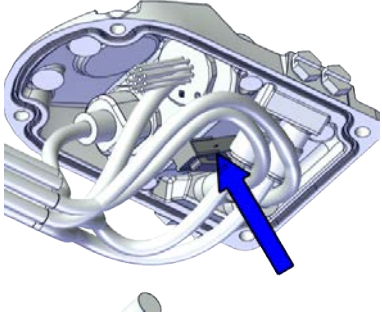

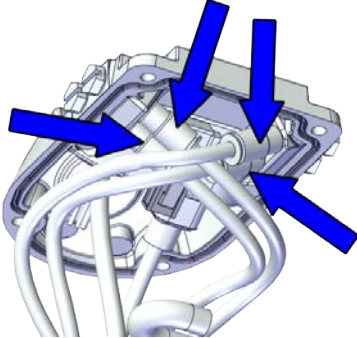
5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

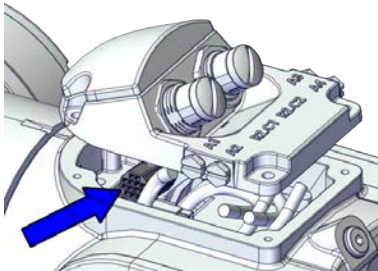
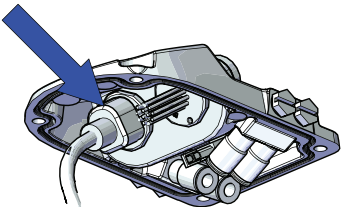

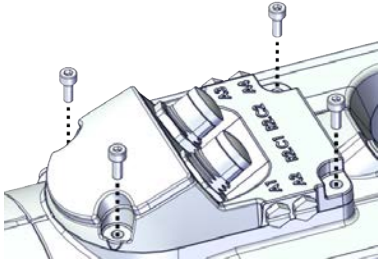
Reconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB5 • MP5 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003025</p> |
| 2 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |
| 3 | Insert the cabling and connectors into the wrist. | |

Refitting the process hub

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Reconnect the lamp unit connector J5.UL and place the connector behind the air hose connectors.</p> |  <p>xx1800002946</p> |
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses. The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800002945</p> |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 3 | For robots with CP/CS cabling Reconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> J5.C1 |  xx210000293 |
| 4 | For robots with Ethernet cabling Reconnect the connector J5.C2 using the tool. | J5.C2 connector assembly tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001  xx1800002948 |
| 5 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |
| 6 | Refit the cover. | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx2000002219 |

Refitting the covers

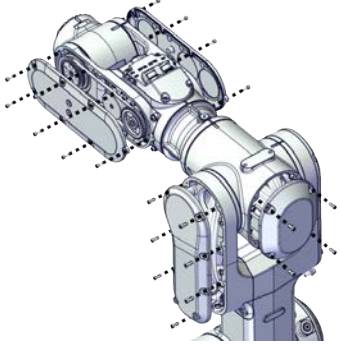
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package. | |
| 2 | Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package. | |

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.6.2 Replacing the extender unit and wrist

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | Refit the covers. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Wrist covers• Lower arm support cover• Housing cover | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003612</p> |

Concluding procedure

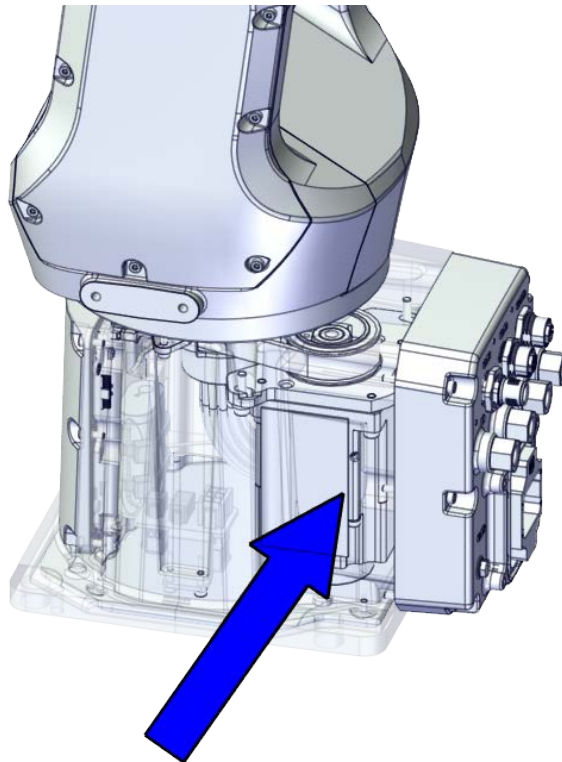
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Recalibrate the robot. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |
| 2 |  DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 161 . | |

5.7 Motors

5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

Location of the axis-1 motor

The axis-1 motor is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002482

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|---------------------------|----------------|--|
| Motor with flange, axis 1 | 3HAC083589-001 | |
| Timing belt, axis 2 | 3HAC061935-001 | |
| Base bottom cover | 3HAC060463-001 | Standard configuration, used for robots with rear connector interface. |
| Base rear cover | 3HAC070312-001 | Used for robots with bottom connector interface. |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

Continued

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|--|
| Base adapter | 3HAC070313-001 | Used for robots with bottom connector interface. |
| Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors | 3HAC071020-001 | Cooling pads are wear parts. One cooling pad sheet contains 6 pieces of small pad. Replace if damaged with one piece each time. |
| Washer | 3HAC063985-001 | 9x4.3x1, Steel |

Required tools and equipment


| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |
| Dynamometer | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |

Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|--------------|----------------|--------|
| Cable straps | - | |
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. |  Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mounting flange is used for installation of the calibration tool. |

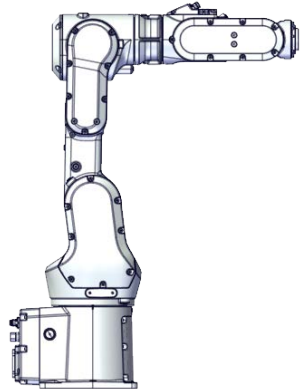

Continues on next page

| Action | Note |
|--|---|
| <p>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</p> <p>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.</p> <p>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.</p> | <p>Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.</p> <p>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.</p> <p>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 664.</p> |
| <p>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</p> <p>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.</p> | |

Removing the motor

Use these procedures to remove the axis-1 motor.

Preparations before removing the axis-1 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |
| 2 | Jog all axes to zero position. |  <p>xx1800003288</p> |
| 3 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p> | |




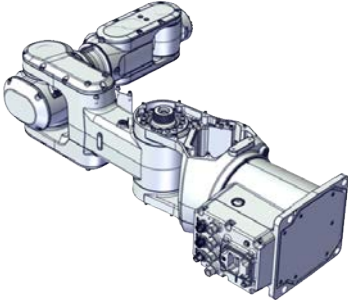
Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

Continued

Putting the robot on its side

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION The CRB 1100 robot weighs 21.1 kg and can be lifted by one person. | |
| 3 |  WARNING The robot is likely to be mechanically unstable if not secured to the foundation. | |
| 4 | Loosen the robot from the foundation by removing the foundation attachment screws and put the robot on its side. |  xx1800003033 |


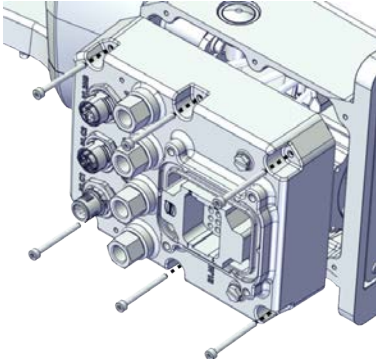
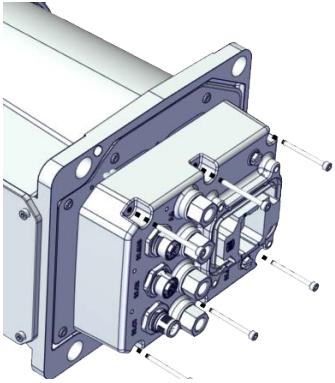
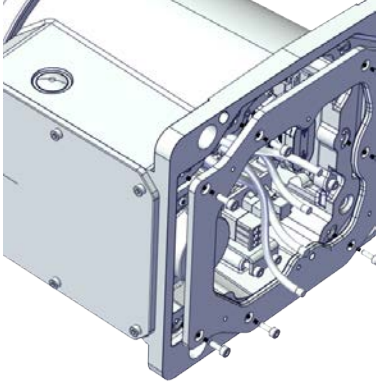
Opening the connector interface plate

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page

5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Remove the connector interface plate attachment screws and carefully open the plate.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>There are cabling attached to the cover. The cover cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed.</p> | <p>Valid for cabling with rear interface</p>  <p>xx1800003034</p> <p>Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)</p>  <p>xx1800003055</p> |
| 3 | <p>Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)</p> <p>Remove the base adapter.</p> |  <p>xx1800003056</p> |

Continues on next page


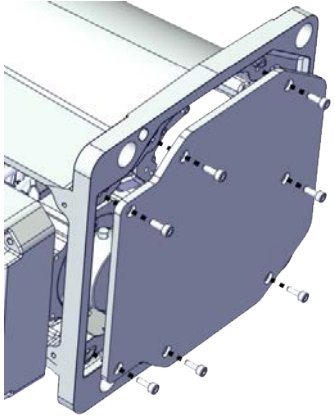
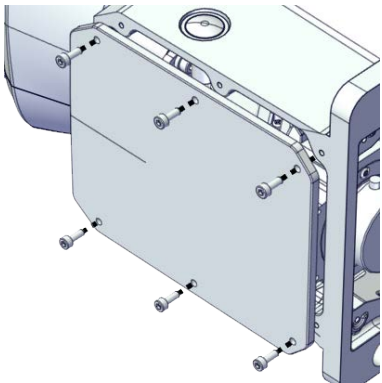
5 Repair

5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor


Continued

Removing base covers

Notice that the procedure differs depending on if the connector interface is located either at the rear or at the bottom of the base.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Valid for cabling with rear interface Remove the base bottom cover. |  xx1800003035 |
| 3 | Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1) Remove the base rear cover. |  xx1800003057 |


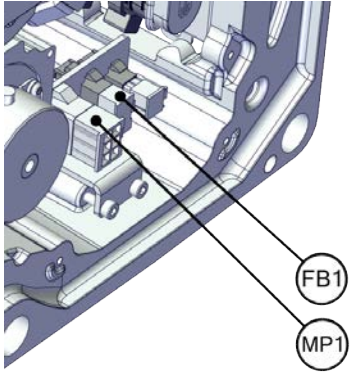
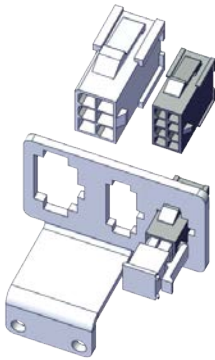
Disconnecting axis-1 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |


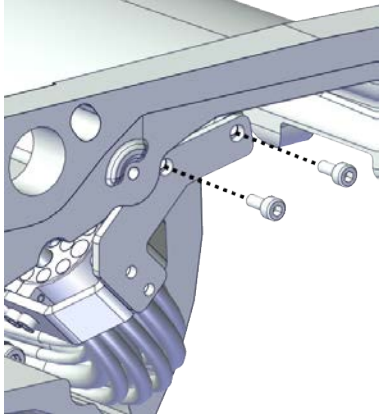
Continues on next page

5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB1 • MP1  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  xx1800003613 |
| 3 | Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the connector plate. |  xx1800003314 |

Separating the cable package from the base

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the cable bracket. |  xx1800003042 |



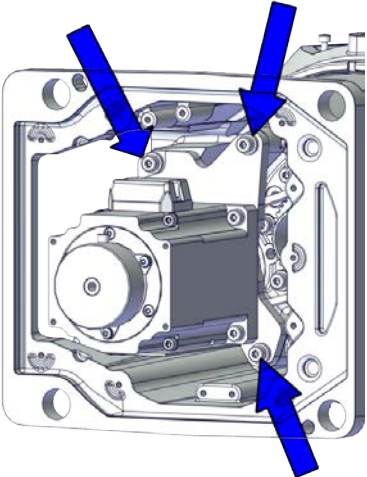
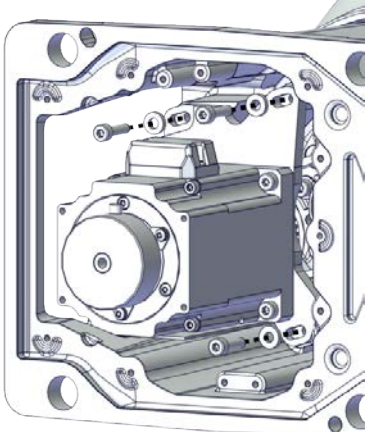
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

Continued


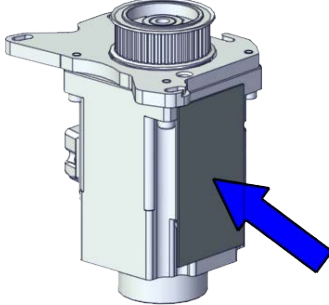
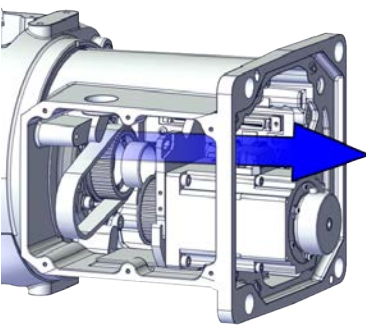
Removing the axis-1 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800003064 |
| 4 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800003065 |

Continues on next page

5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

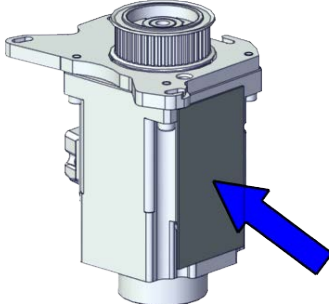
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | <p>Carefully lift out the motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad.</p> | <p>Cooling pad location</p>  <p>xx1800003602</p> |
| 6 | <p>Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor.</p> |  <p>xx1800003614</p> |

Refitting the motor

Use these procedures to refit the axis-1 motor.

Refitting the axis-1 motor

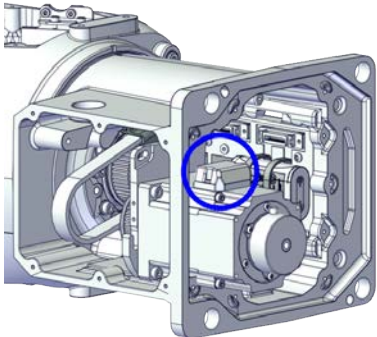
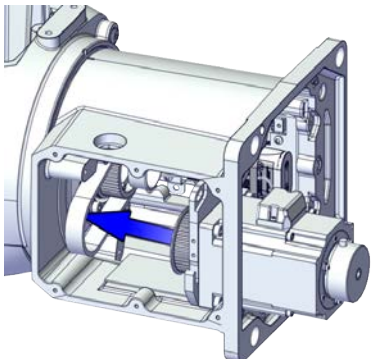

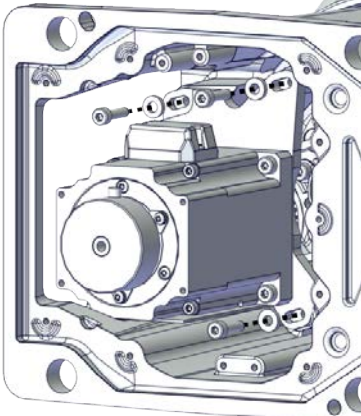
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Check that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages • the motor is clean and undamaged. | |
| 2 | <p>Check the cooling pad. Replace if damaged.</p> | <p>Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors: 3HAC071020-001</p>  <p>xx1800003602</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

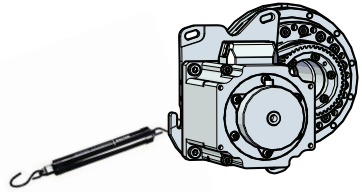

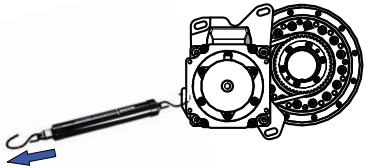
5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

Continued

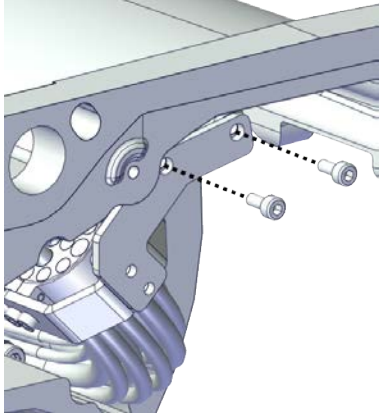
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the base. | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003616</p> |
| 4 | Install the timing belt to the motor pulley. |  <p>xx1800003615</p> |
| 5 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washer, 3HAC063985-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800003065</p> |

Continues on next page

Adjusting the axis-1 timing belt tension

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the motor. |  xx1900000040 |
| 2 | Pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.  Note During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction. | Used belt: 58.24-63.56 N New belt: 83.2-90.8 N (for reference only)  xx1900000041 |
| 3 | Secure the motor with the screws. | Tightening torque: 3 Nm |

Securing the lower cable package to the base

| | Action | Note |
|---|--------------------------|---|
| 1 | Refit the cable bracket. | Screw: M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm  xx1800003042 |


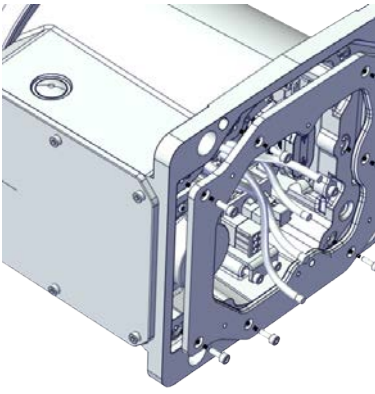
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

Continued

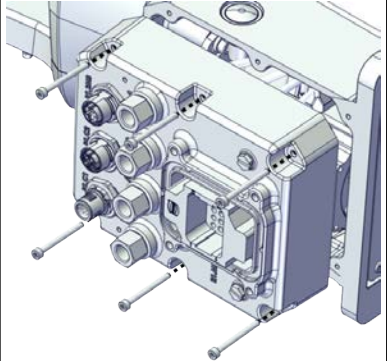
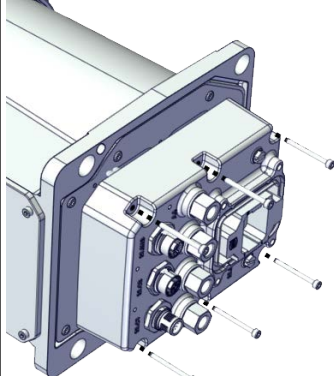
Refitting the connector interface plate

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |
| 2 | <p>Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1) Refit the base adapter.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 Steel 8.8-A2F (7 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003056</p> |

Continues on next page


5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | Refit the connector interface plate to the base. | <p>Screw: M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm Valid for cabling with rear interface</p>  <p>xx1800003034</p> <p>Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)</p>  <p>xx1800003055</p> |

Refitting the base cover

Notice that the procedure differs depending on if the connector interface is located either at the rear or at the bottom of the base.

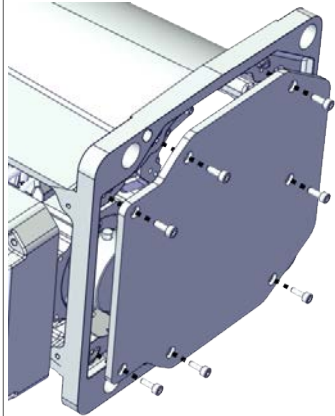
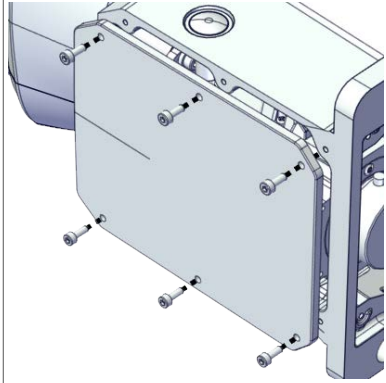
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package. | |
| 2 | Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package. | |
| 3 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.7.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 4 | Valid for cabling with rear interface Refit the bottom cover. | Screw: M3x8 Steel 8.8-A2F (7 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003035 |
| 5 | Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1) Refit the rear cover. | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003057 |

Securing the robot to the foundation

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 |  CAUTION The CRB 1100 robot weighs 21.1 kg and can be lifted by one person. | |
| 2 | Raise the robot to standing and secure to the foundation with the attachment screws and washers. | Attachment screws: M12x25 (robot installation directly on foundation), quality: 8.8. Washers: 4 pcs, 24 x 13 x 2.5. Tightening Torque: 50 Nm±5 Nm. |

Concluding procedure

| | Action | Note |
|---|------------------------|--|
| 1 | Recalibrate the robot. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |

Continues on next page

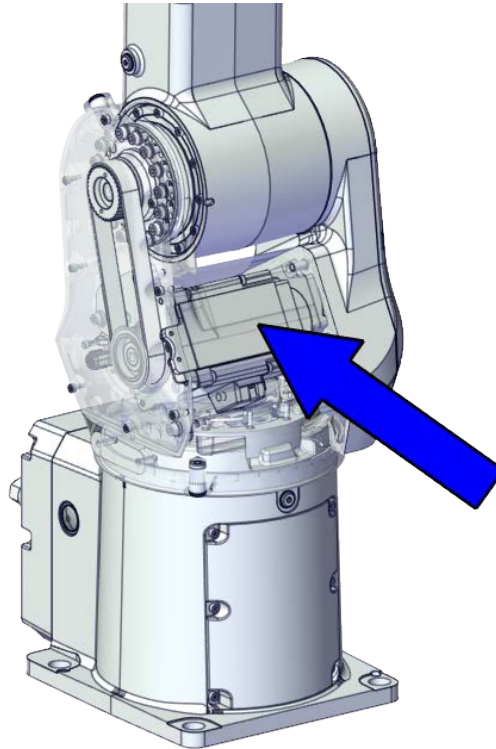
5 Repair

5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor

5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor

Location of the axis-2 motor

The axis-2 motor is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002483

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|---|
| Motor with flange, axis 2 | 3HAC083588-001 | . |
| Timing belt, axis 2 | 3HAC061935-001 | |
| Swing cover | 3HAC069051-001 | |
| Swing support cover | 3HAC069052-001 | |
| Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors | 3HAC071020-001 | Cooling pads are wear parts. One cooling pad sheet contains 6 pieces of small pad. Replace if damaged with one piece each time. |
| Washer | 3HAC063985-001 | 9x4.3x1, Steel |

Continues on next page

Required tools and equipment


| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |
| Sonic tension meter | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| Dynamometer | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |

Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| Cable straps | - | |
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |
| Sealing compound | 3HAC026759-002 | Sikaflex 521 FC |

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. |  Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mounting flange is used for installation of the calibration tool. |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 664 . |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor

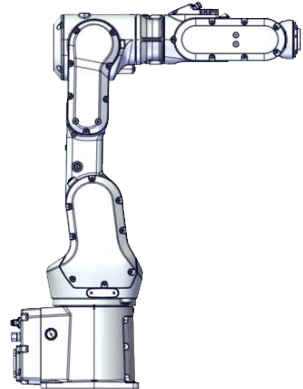

Continued

| Action | Note |
|---|------|
| If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. | |


Removing the motor

Use these procedures to remove the axis-2 motor.


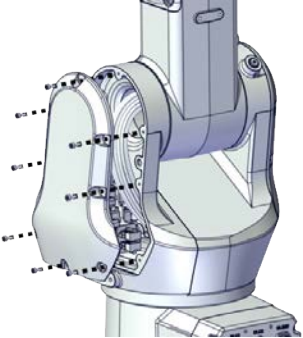

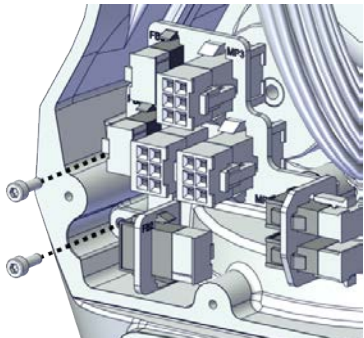

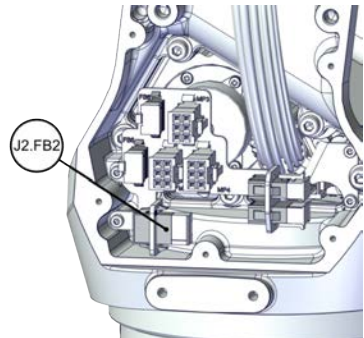
Preparations before removing the axis-2 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |
| 2 | Jog all axes to zero position. |  xx1800003288 |
| 3 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• electric power supply• hydraulic pressure supply• air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. | |

Removing the axis-2 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page

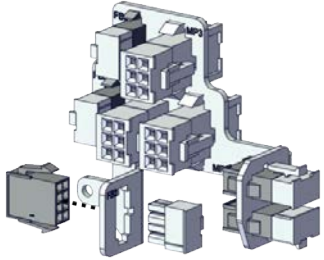
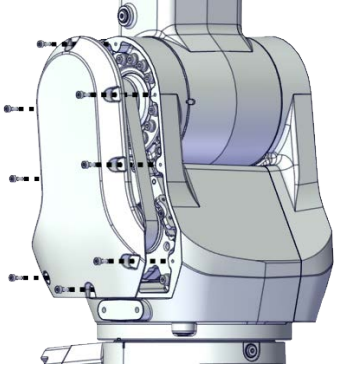

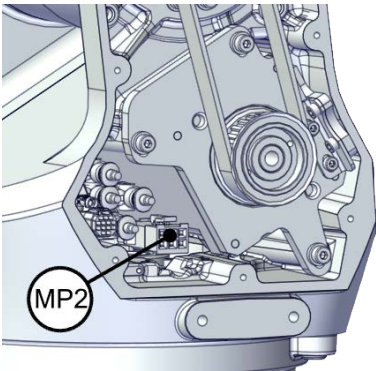
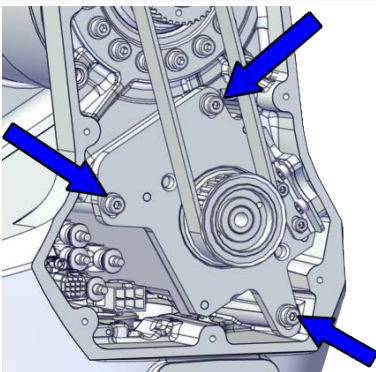
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Remove the swing support cover. |  xx1800002488 |
| 4 | Remove the connector plate.  CAUTION Be aware of the cablings that are attached to the connector plate! The connector plate cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed from the plate. |  xx1800002489 |
| 5 | Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> J2.FB2  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  xx1800002490 |

Continues on next page

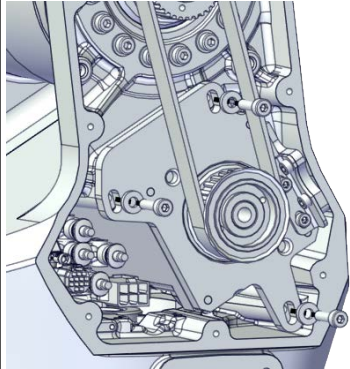


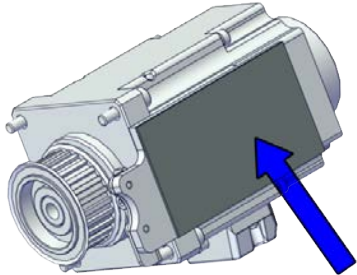
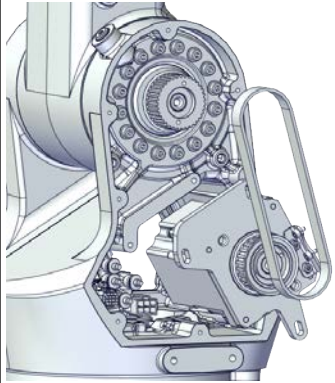
5 Repair

5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 6 | Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the connector plate. |  xx1800002491 |
| 7 | Remove the swing cover. |  xx1800002492 |
| 8 | Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• MP2  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  xx1800002495 |
| 9 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800002493 |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|----|---|--|
| 10 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800002494 |
| 11 | <p>Carefully lift out the motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the motor cabling. The motor cannot be removed completely until the connector is disconnected, as shown in following step.</p> | <p>Cooling pad location</p>  xx1800003603 |
| 12 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800002496 |

Removing the cooling pad

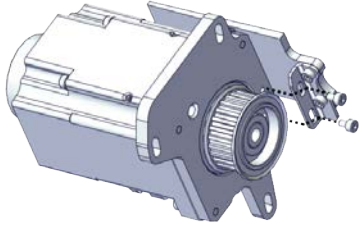
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor

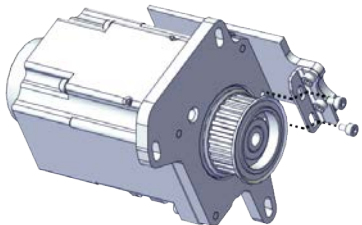
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | Loosen the cooling pad bracket screws on the motor flange. |  xx1800003026 |
| 3 | Use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the cooling pad together with the bracket from the motor. Pay attention not to scratch the motor or damage the pad. | |

Refitting the motor

Use these procedures to refit the axis-2 motor.


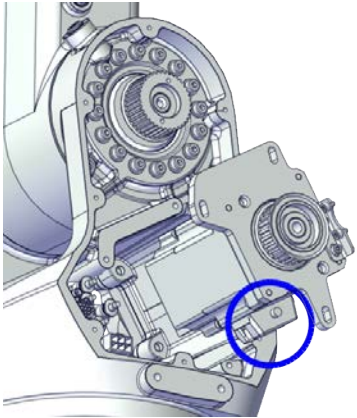

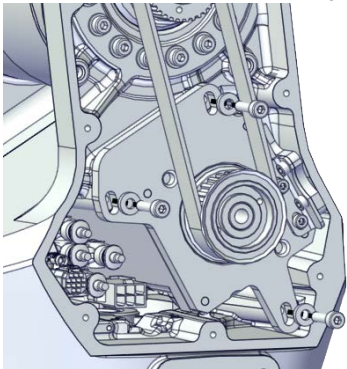
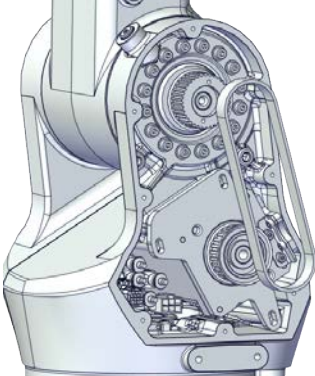
Refitting the cooling pad

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Attach the cooling pad together with the bracket to the motor. Make sure the bracket does not exceed the motor flange and the screw holes are aligned. | Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors: 3HAC071020-001 |
| 2 | Refit the cooling pad bracket. | Screw: M3x5 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003026 |

Refitting the axis-2 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 | Check that: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages• the motor is clean and undamaged. | |

Continues on next page


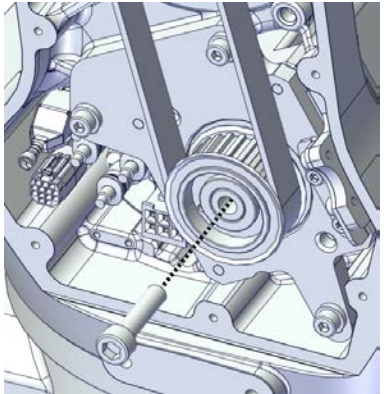
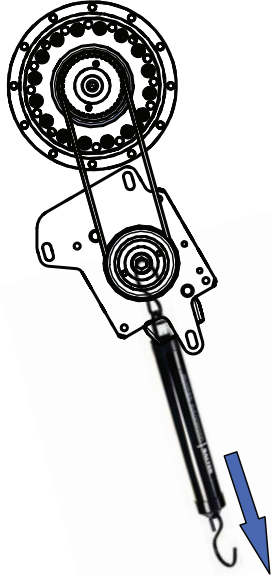
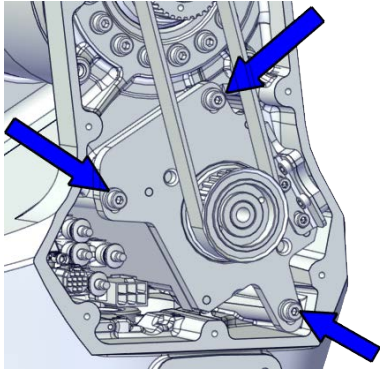
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | <p>Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the swing.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Bend the motor signal cable back towards the swing support.</p> | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003027</p> |
| 3 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washer, 3HAC063985-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800002494</p> |
| 4 | <p>Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys.</p> |  <p>xx1800003028</p> |

Continues on next page

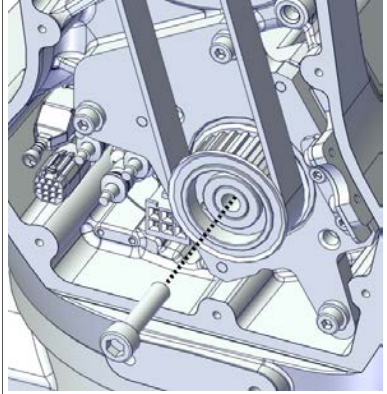

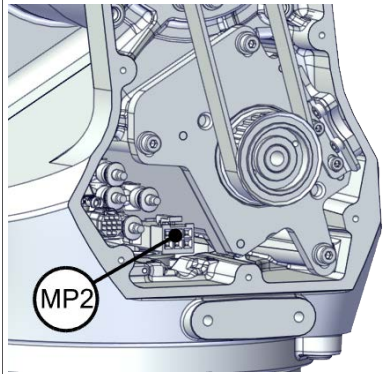
5 Repair

5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor

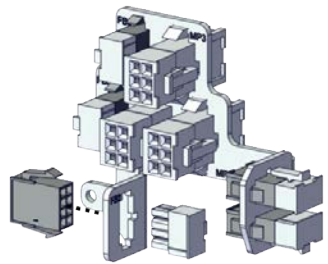
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 5 | <p>Install an M6x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not insert the entire screw to the hole.</p> |  <p>xx1900000010</p> |
| 6 | <p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force.</p> | <p>Initial referenced force for used belt: 68.18-75.04 N (for reference only)</p> <p>Initial referenced force for new belt: 97.4-107.2 N</p>  <p>xx1900000029</p> |
| 7 | <p>Secure the motor with the screws.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002493</p> |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|----|--|--|
| 8 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. | Used belt: 163-174 Hz New belt: 180-229 Hz (for reference only) |
| 9 | If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust. | |
| 10 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  xx1900000010 |
| 11 | Reconnect the connector. • MP2  Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector. |  xx1800002495 |

Reconnecting the connector J2.FB2


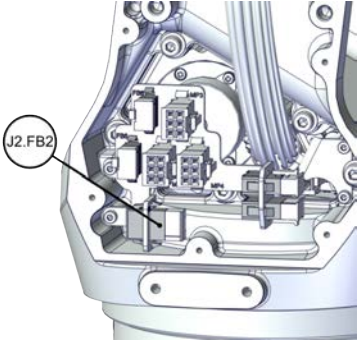

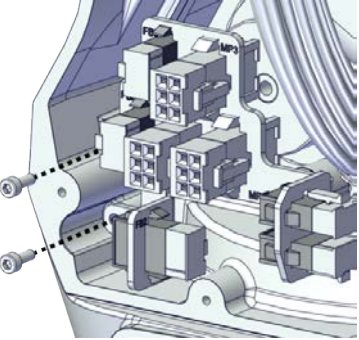
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Insert the female header of the J2.FB2 connector to the connector plate. |  xx1800002491 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">J2.FB2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800002490</p> |
| 3 | <p>Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.</p> | |
| 4 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |
| 5 | <p>Refit the connector plate.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002489</p> |

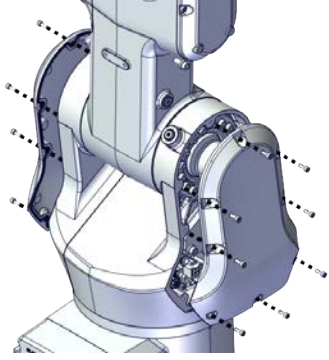
Refitting the swing covers

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 | <p>Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.</p> | |
| 2 | <p>Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package.</p> | |


Continues on next page

5.7.2 Replacing the axis-2 motor

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 3 | Refit the covers. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Swing cover • Swing support cover | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003607 |

Concluding procedure

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Recalibrate the robot. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |
| 2 |  DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 161 . | |

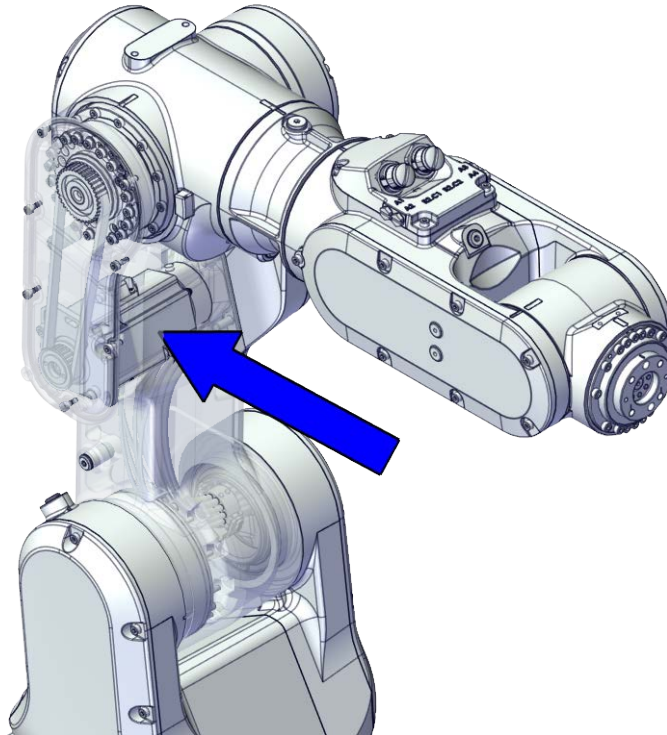
5 Repair

5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor

5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor

Location of the axis-3 motor

The axis-3 motor is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002484

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|--|
| Motor with flange, axis 3 | 3HAC083587-001 | |
| Timing belt, axis 3 | 3HAC061936-001 | |
| Lower arm cover | 3HAC069057-001 | |
| Lower arm support cover | 3HAC069059-001 | |
| Cooling pad for axis-3 and -4 motors | 3HAC071021-001 | Cooling pads are wear parts. One cooling pad sheet includes 10 pieces of small pad. Replace if damaged with one piece each time. |
| Washer | 3HAC063985-001 | 9x4.3x1, Steel |

Continues on next page

Required tools and equipment


| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |
| Sonic tension meter | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| Dynamometer | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |

Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|--------------|----------------|--------|
| Cable straps | - | |
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. |  Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mounting flange is used for installation of the calibration tool. |
| | <p>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</p> <p>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.</p> <p>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.</p> | <p>Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.</p> <p>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.</p> <p>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 664.</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor

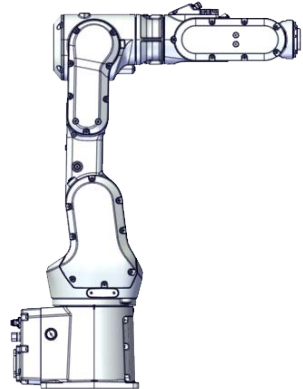

Continued

| Action | Note |
|---|------|
| If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. | |


Removing the motor

Use these procedures to remove the axis-3 motor.

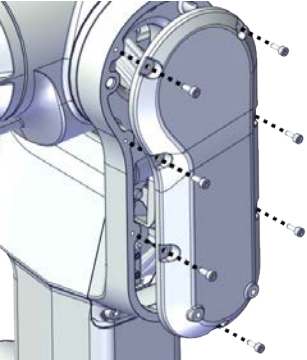

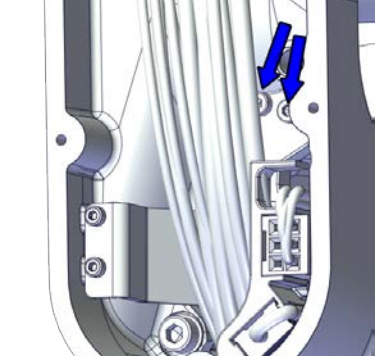

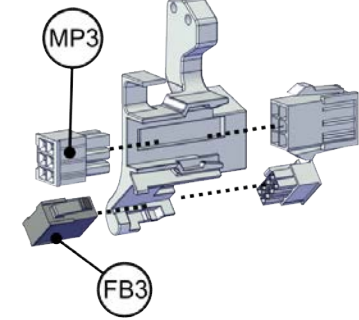
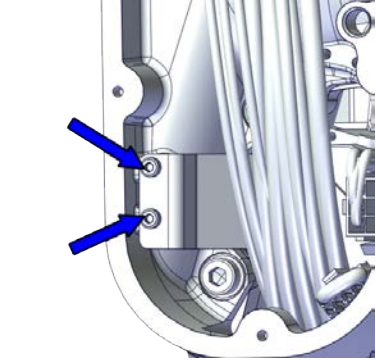
Preparations before removing the axis-3 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |
| 2 | Jog all axes to zero position. |  xx1800003288 |
| 3 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• electric power supply• hydraulic pressure supply• air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. | |

Disconnecting the axis-3 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Remove the lower arm support cover. |  xx1800003003 |
| 3 | Remove the connector plate.  CAUTION Be aware of the cablings that are attached to the connector plate! The connector plate cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed from the plate, as shown in following step. |  xx1800003004 |
| 4 | Slide the connectors out of the connector plate and disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB3 • MP3  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  xx1800003005 |
| 5 | Remove the cable bracket. |  xx1800003006 |



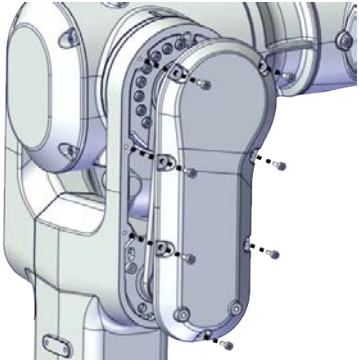
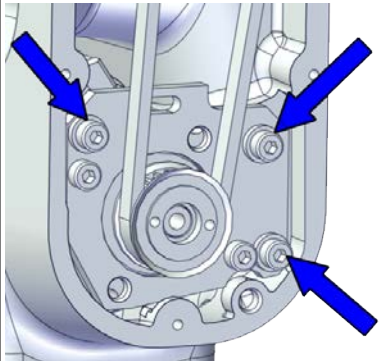
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor

Continued

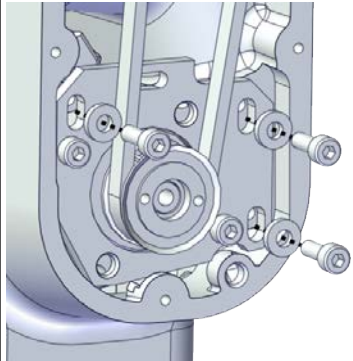

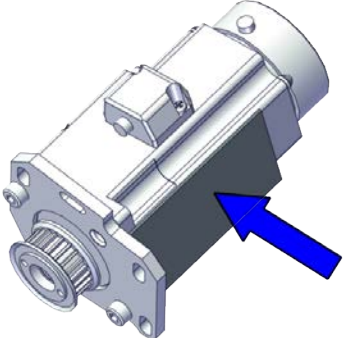
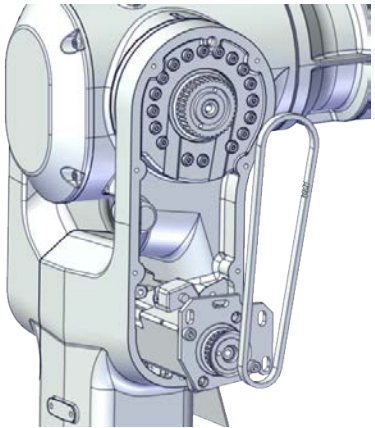
Removing the axis-3 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Remove the lower arm cover. |  xx1800003007 |
| 4 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800003008 |

Continues on next page

5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 5 | Remove the screws and washers. |  <p>xx1800003009</p> |
| 6 | Carefully lift out the motor.  CAUTION A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad. | Cooling pad location  <p>xx1800003604</p> |
| 7 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  <p>xx1800003010</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

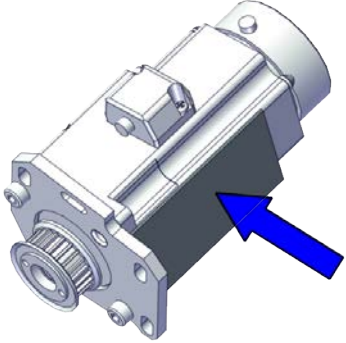
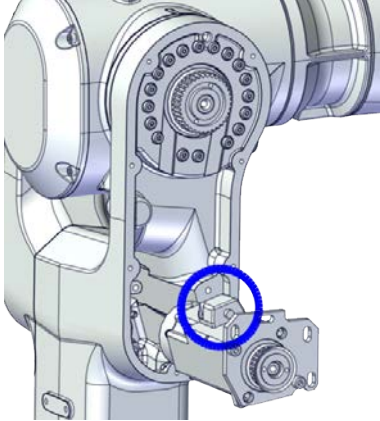
5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor

Continued

Refitting the motor

Use these procedures to refit the axis-3 motor.


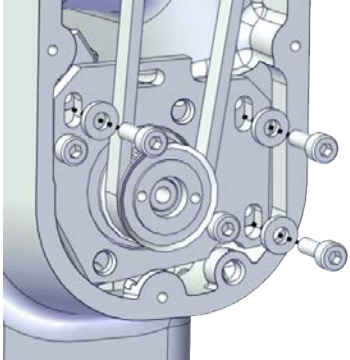
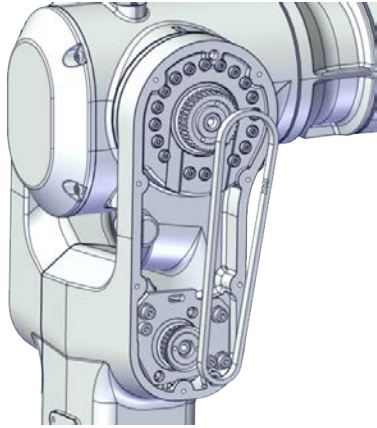

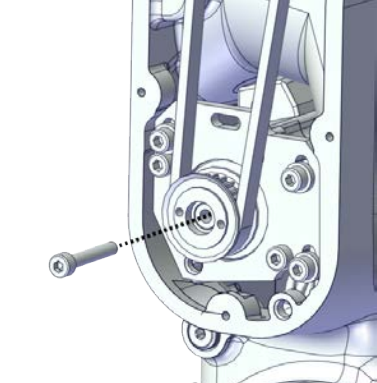
Refitting the axis-3 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Check that: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages• the motor is clean and undamaged. | |
| 2 | Check the cooling pad. Replace if damaged. | Cooling pad for axis-3 and -4 motors: 3HAC071021-001  xx1800003604 |
| 3 | Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the lower arm. | Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.  xx1800003021 |

Continues on next page

5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor

Continued

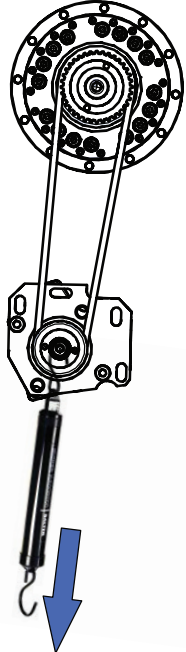
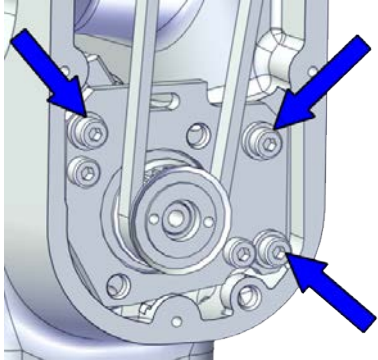
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 4 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washer, 3HAC063985-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800003009</p> |
| 5 | <p>Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys.</p> |  <p>xx1800003022</p> |
| 6 | <p>Install an M4x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not insert the entire screw to the hole.</p> |  <p>xx1900000009</p> |

Continues on next page

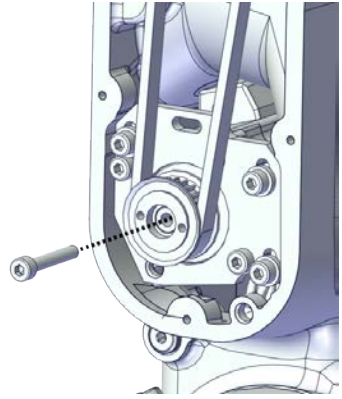
5 Repair

5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor


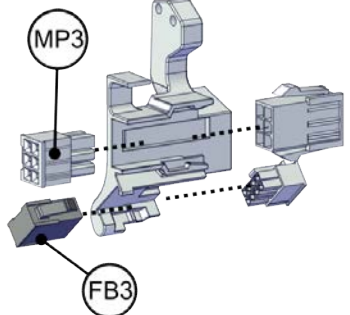

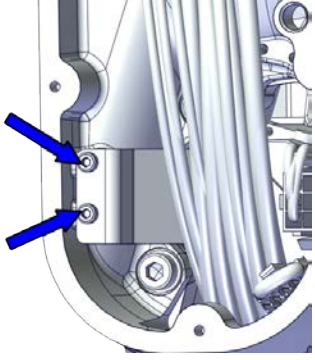
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|---|--|
| 7 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force. | <p>Initial referenced force for used belt: 21.7-23.94 N (for reference only) Initial referenced force for new belt: 31-34.2 N</p>  <p>xx1900000028</p> |
| 8 | Secure the motor with the screws. | <p>Tightening torque: 3 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003008</p> |
| 9 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. | <p>Used belt: 102-109 Hz New belt: 113-143 Hz (for reference only)</p> |
| 10 | If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust. | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|----|---|---|
| 11 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  xx1900000009 |

Reconnecting the axis-3 motor connectors

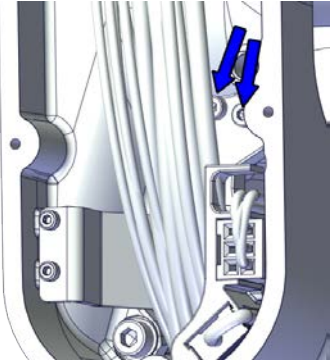
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Slide the connectors into the connector plate and reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB3 • MP3 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  xx1800003005 |
| 2 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |
| 3 | Refit the cable bracket. | <p>Screw: M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm</p>  xx1800003006 |

Continues on next page

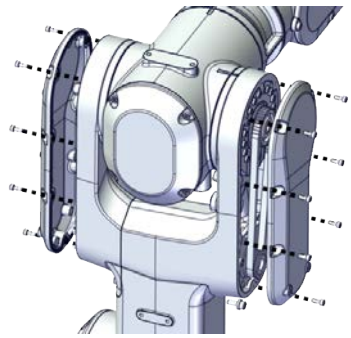
5 Repair

5.7.3 Replacing the axis-3 motor


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|----------------------------|---|
| 4 | Refit the connector plate. | <p>Screw: M3x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003004</p> |

Refitting the lower arm covers

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package. | |
| 2 | Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package. | |
| 3 | Refit the covers. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lower arm cover • Lower arm support cover | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003608</p> |

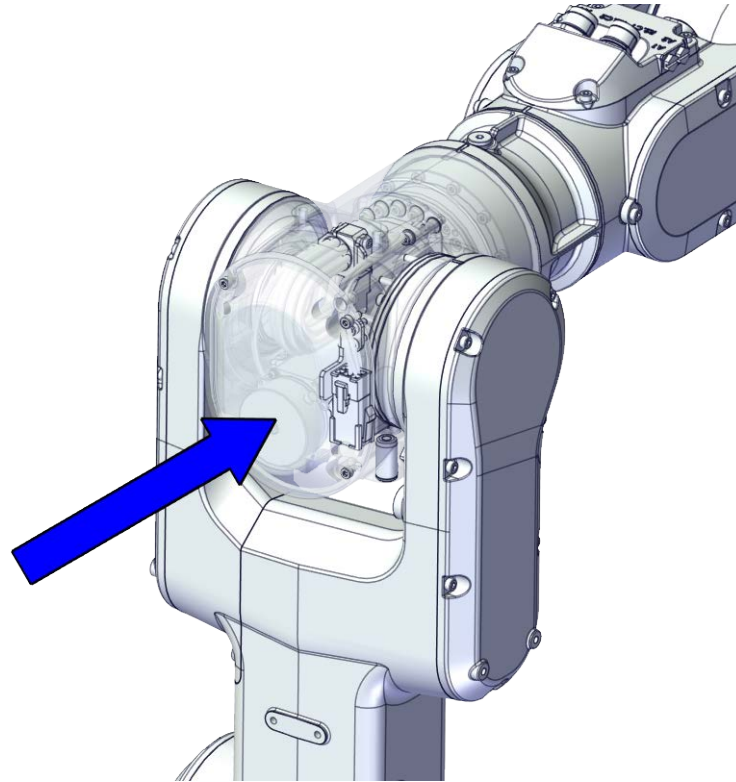
Concluding procedure

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Recalibrate the robot. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |
| 2 |  DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 161 . | |

5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor

Location of the axis-4 motor

The xx is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002485

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|--|
| Motor with flange, axis 4 | 3HAC083586-001 | |
| Timing belt, axis 4 | 3HAC061937-001 | |
| Housing cover | 3HAC069054-001 | |
| Cooling pad for axis-3 and -4 motors | 3HAC071021-001 | Cooling pads are wear parts. One cooling pad sheet includes 10 pieces of small pad. Replace if damaged with one piece each time. |
| Washer | 3HAC064765-001 | 7x3.2x1.5, Steel |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor

Continued

Required tools and equipment


| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |
| M3x25 eye bolt | - | Included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001. |
| axis-4 motor fitting tool | - | Included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001. Used to refit the axis-4 motor. |
| Dynamometer | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |

Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|--------------|----------------|--------|
| Cable straps | - | |
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. |  Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mounting flange is used for installation of the calibration tool. |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 664 . |

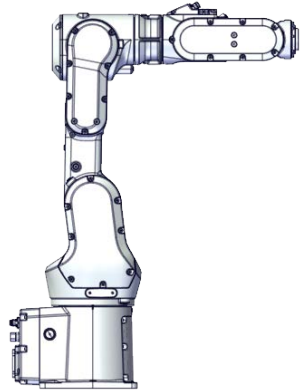

Continues on next page

| Action | Note |
|--|------|
| If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. | |


Removing the motor

Use these procedures to remove the axis-4 motor.

Preparations before removing the axis-4 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |
| 2 | Jog all axes to zero position. |  xx1800003288 |
| 3 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. | |

Disconnecting the axis-4 motor connectors

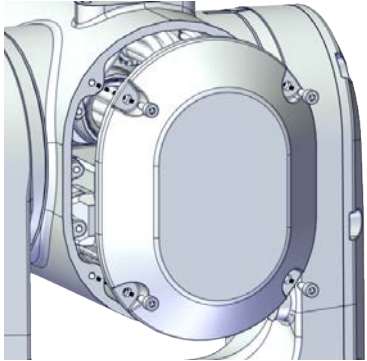
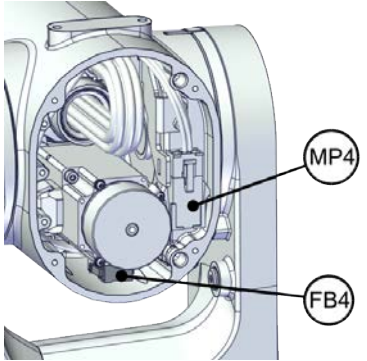
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page



5 Repair

5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | Remove the housing cover. |  xx1800003011 |
| 3 | Disconnect the motor connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB4 • MP4 |  xx1800003012 |

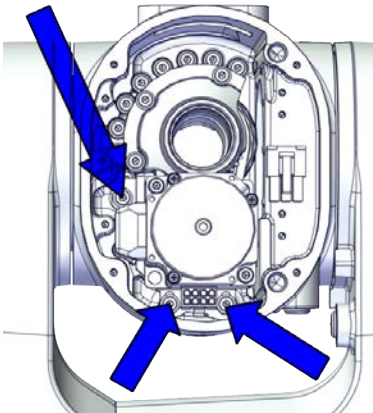
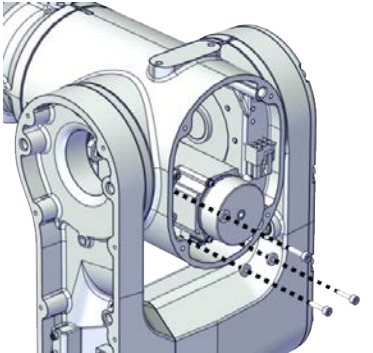

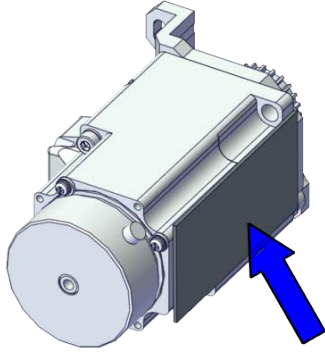
Removing the axis-4 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |

Continues on next page

5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor

Continued

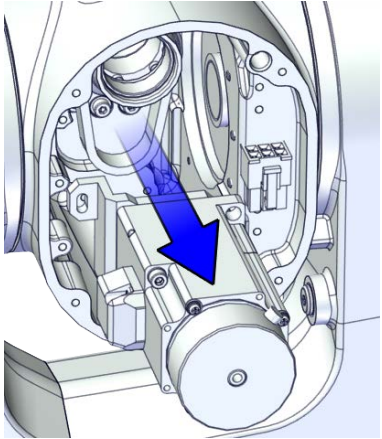
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800003094 |
| 4 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800003095 |
| 5 | Carefully lift out the motor.  CAUTION A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad. | Cooling pad location  xx1800003605 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor

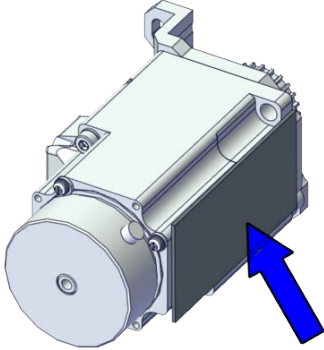
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 6 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800003096 |

Refitting the motor

Use these procedures to refit the axis-4 motor.

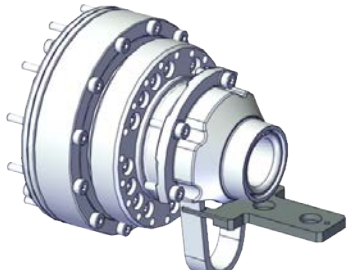

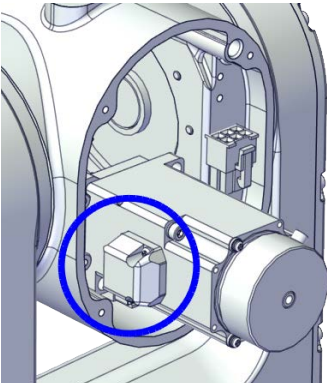
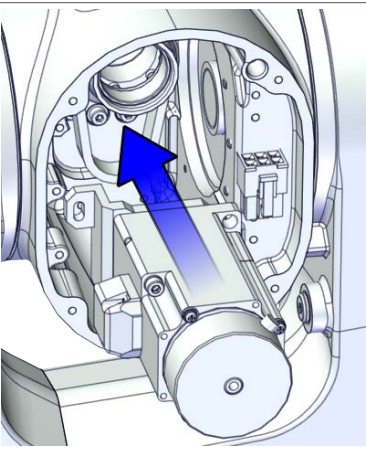
Refitting the axis-4 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Check that: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages• the motor is clean and undamaged. | |
| 2 | Check the cooling pad. Replace if damaged. | Cooling pad for axis-3 and -4 motors: 3HAC071021-001  xx1800003605 |

Continues on next page

5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor

Continued


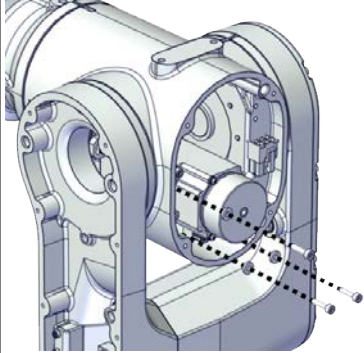
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 3 | Use the motor fitting tool to fix the timing belt. | <p>axis-4 motor fitting tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001.</p>  <p>xx1900000044</p> |
| 4 | <p>Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the housing.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Make sure the motor flange does not press on the timing belt.</p> | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003287</p> |
| 5 | Install the timing belt to the motor pulley. |  <p>xx1800003617</p> |

Continues on next page

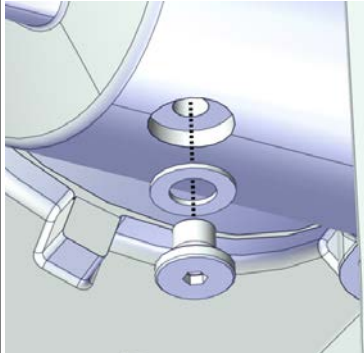
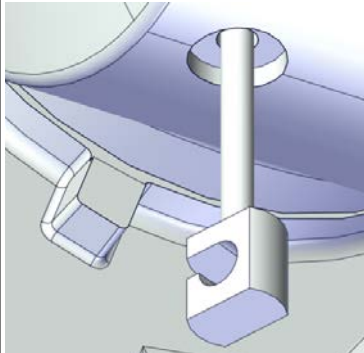
5 Repair

5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor

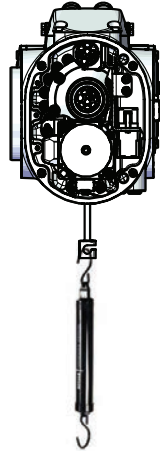

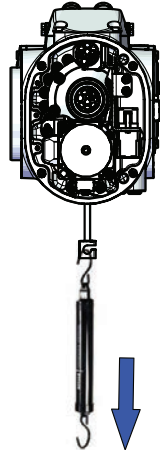
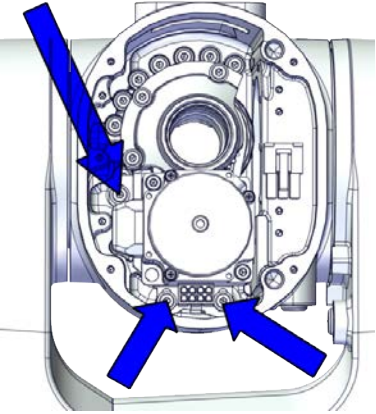
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 6 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washer, 3HAC064765-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800003095</p> |
| 7 | Remove the motor fitting tool. | |

Adjusting the axis-4 timing belt tension

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Remove the screw and washer below the housing. |  <p>xx1900000036</p> |
| 2 | Fit an M3x25 eye bolt o the screw hole. |  <p>xx1900000037</p> |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the eye bolt. |  xx1900000038 |
| 4 | Pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.  Note Pay attention to the force application direction. | Used belt: 20.09-22.05 N New belt: 28.7-31.5 N  xx1900000039 |
| 5 | Secure the motor with the screws. | Tightening torque: 1.4 Nm  xx1800003094 |
| 6 | Remove eye bolt and refit the screw and washer below the housing. | Plug screw: 3HAC064146-001 Tightening torque: 2 Nm |

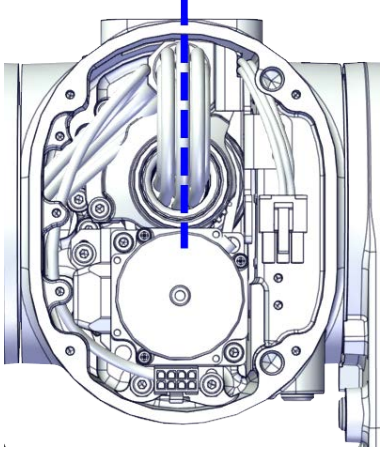

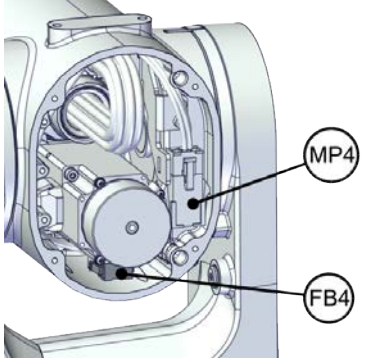
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.4 Replacing the axis-4 motor

Continued

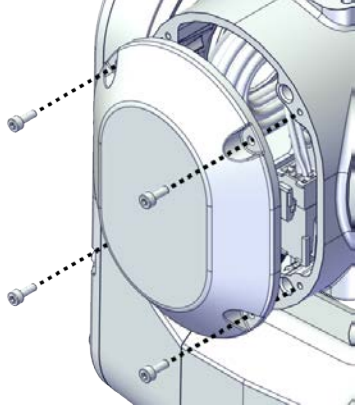
Reconnecting the axis-4 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | <p>Check the cabling status. Make sure the cabling is in vertical state and is not twisted.</p> |  <p>xx1800003618</p> |
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• FB4• MP4 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003012</p> |


Refitting the housing cover

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package. | |
| 2 | Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package. | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--------------------------|--|
| 3 | Refit the housing cover. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003609</p> |

Concluding procedure

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Recalibrate the robot. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |
| 2 |  DANGER <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 161.</p> | |

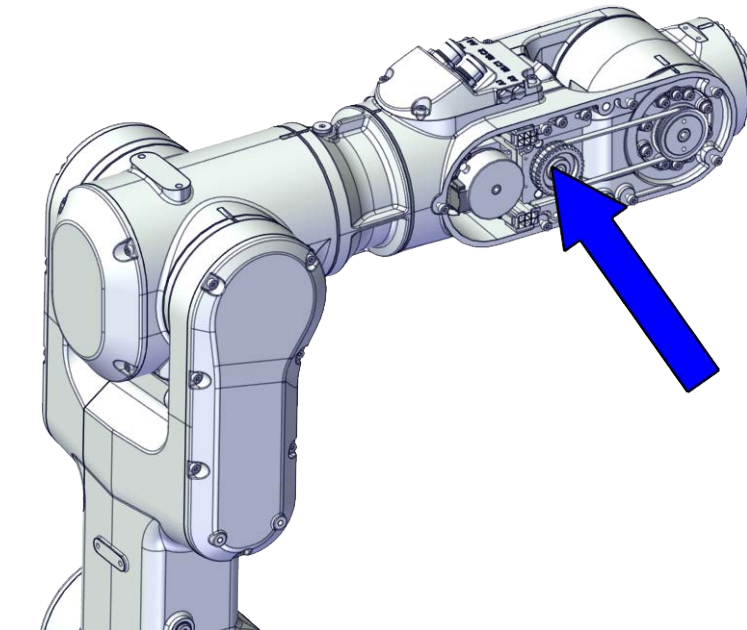
5 Repair

5.7.5 Replacing the axis-5 motor

5.7.5 Replacing the axis-5 motor

Location of the axis-5 motor

The axis-5 motor is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002486

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|---------------------------|----------------|------|
| Motor with flange, axis 5 | 3HAC083585-001 | |
| Timing belt, axis 5 | 3HAC061938-001 | |
| Wrist cover | 3HAC069061-001 | |

Required tools and equipment

| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|------------------|----------------|--|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |

Continues on next page


| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |
| Sonic tension meter | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| Dynamometer | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| J5.C2 connector assembly tool | - | Included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001. Used to remove and refit the J5.C2 connector, if the Ethernet cabling is equipped. |

Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|--------------|----------------|--------|
| Cable straps | - | |
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. |  Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mounting flange is used for installation of the calibration tool. |
| | <p>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</p> <p>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.</p> <p>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.</p> | <p>Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.</p> <p>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.</p> <p>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 664.</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.5 Replacing the axis-5 motor

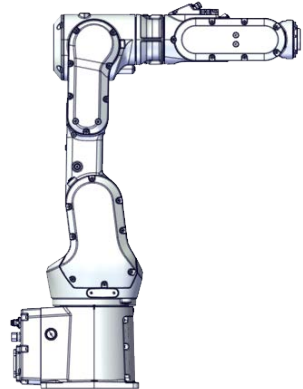

Continued

| Action | Note |
|---|------|
| If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. | |


Removing the motor

Use these procedures to remove the axis-5 motor.


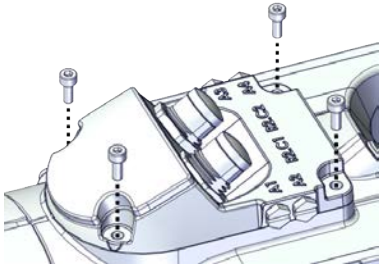
Preparations before removing the axis-5 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |
| 2 | Jog all axes to zero position. |  xx1800003288 |
| 3 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• electric power supply• hydraulic pressure supply• air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. | |


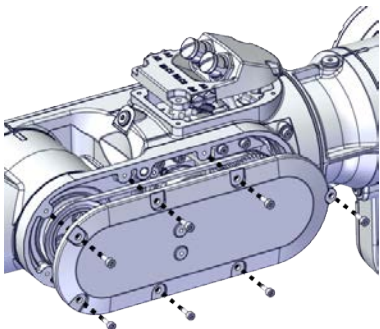
Opening the process hub

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |


Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | <p>Remove the screws and carefully open the cover.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover!</p> |  <p>xx2000002219</p> |

Removing the wrist cover

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |
| 2 | <p>Remove the wrist cover (right one when facing the robot rear).</p> |  <p>xx1800003315</p> |

Disconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

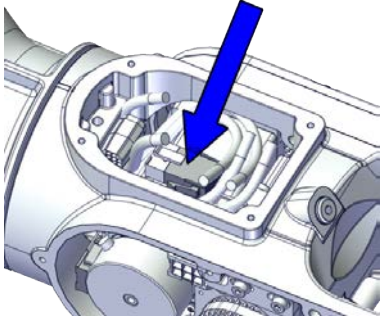
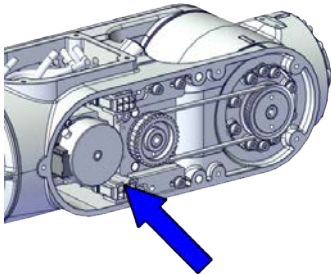
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |

Continues on next page



5 Repair

5.7.5 Replacing the axis-5 motor

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | Access the connector FB5 from the process hub and disconnect the connector. |  xx1800002950 |
| 3 | Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• MP5 |  xx1800002993 |

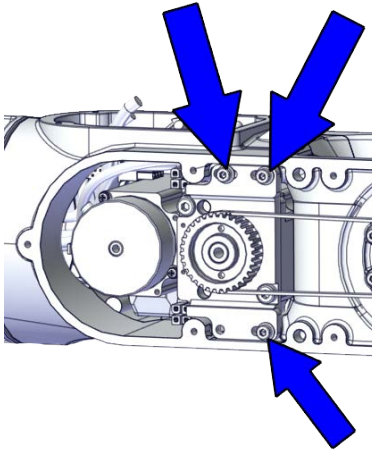
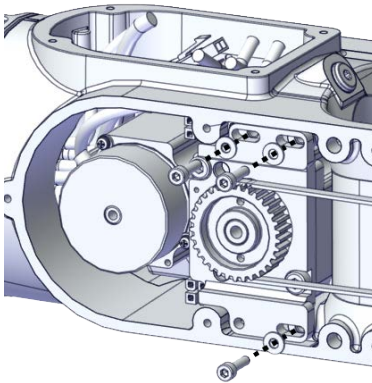
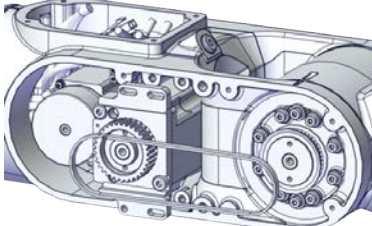
Removing the axis-5 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |

Continues on next page

5.7.5 Replacing the axis-5 motor

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800003290 |
| 4 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800003291 |
| 5 | Carefully lift out the motor. | |
| 6 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800003292 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair


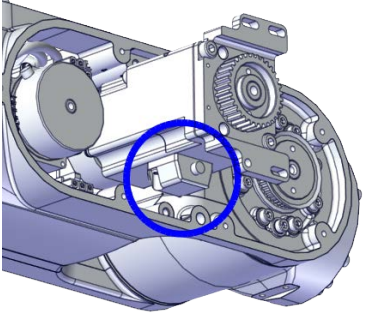

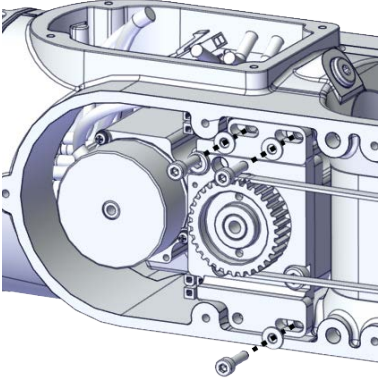
5.7.5 Replacing the axis-5 motor

Continued

Refitting the motor

Use these procedures to refit the axis-5 motor.

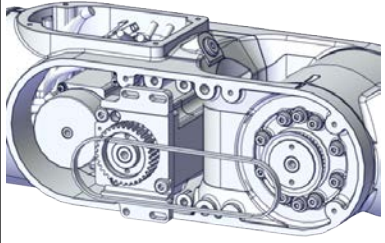

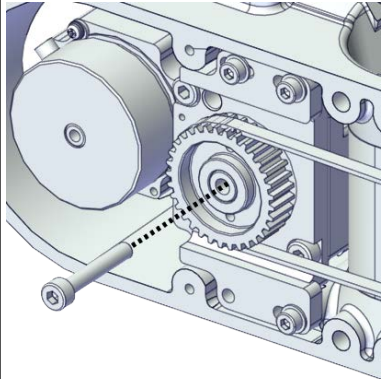

Refitting the axis-5 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Check that: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages• the motor is clean and undamaged. | |
| 2 | <p>Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the wrist.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Leave the connectors FB5 and FB6 accessible from the process hub and the connectors MP5 and MP6 accessible from wrist side.</p> | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003296</p> |
| 3 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800003291</p> |

Continues on next page

5.7.5 Replacing the axis-5 motor

Continued

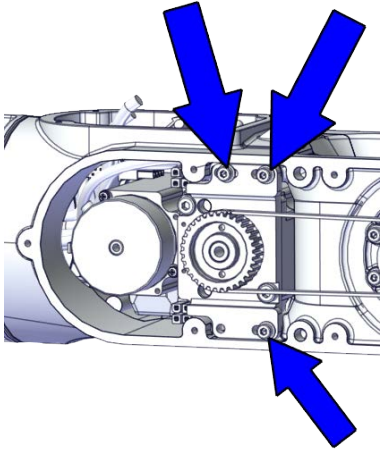
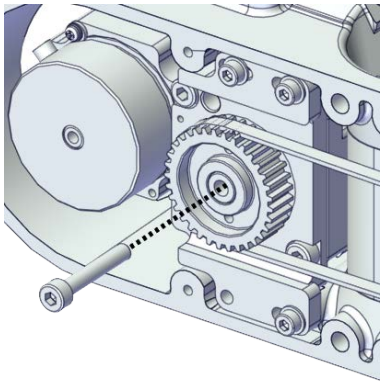
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys. |  xx1800003292 |
| 5 | Install an M4x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.  Note Do not insert the entire screw to the hole. |  xx1900000008 |
| 6 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force. | Initial referenced force for used belt: 13.58-14.84 N (for reference only) Initial referenced force for new belt: 19.4-21.2 N  xx1900000027 |

Continues on next page


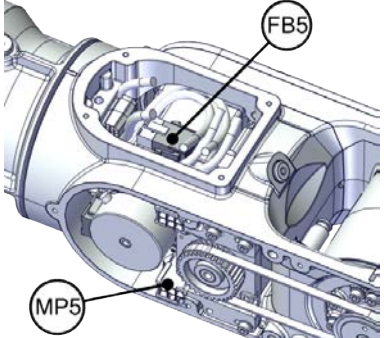
5 Repair

5.7.5 Replacing the axis-5 motor


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|---|--|
| 7 | Secure the motor with the screws. | <p>Tightening torque: 1.4 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003290</p> |
| 8 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. | <p>Used belt: 151-162 Hz New belt: 167-213 Hz (for reference only)</p> |
| 9 | If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust. | |
| 10 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  <p>xx1900000008</p> |

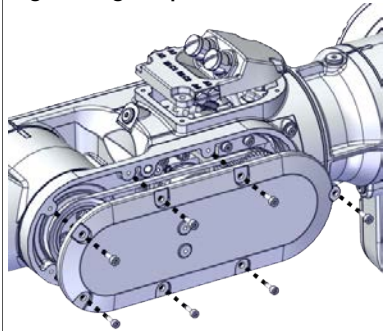
Reconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB5 • MP5 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003025</p> |


Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 2 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |
| 3 | Insert the cabling and connectors into the wrist. | |

Refitting the wrist cover

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package. | |
| 2 | Apply grease to the cover that has contacting area with the cable package. | |
| 3 | Refit the wrist cover. | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (7 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003315 |

Refitting the process hub

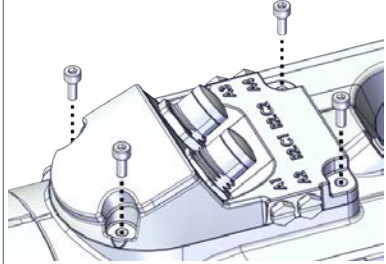
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.7.5 Replacing the axis-5 motor

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|------------------|--|
| 2 | Refit the cover. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx2000002219</p> |

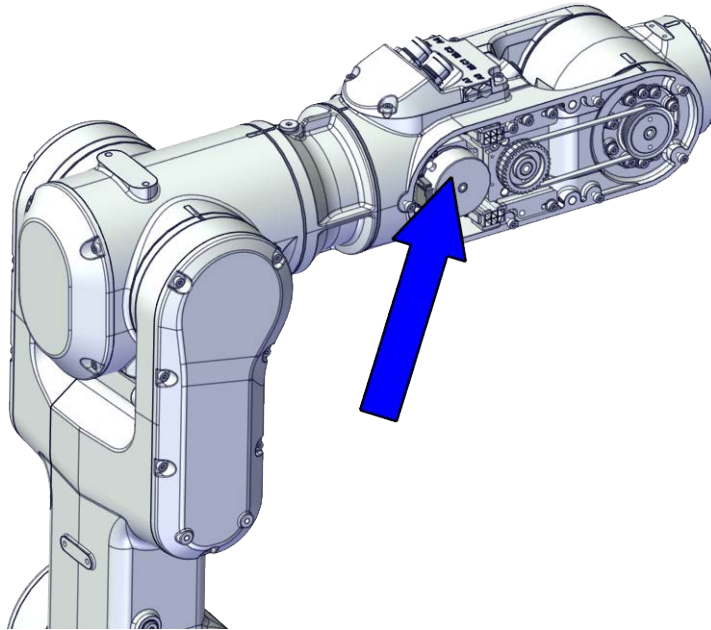
Concluding procedure

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Recalibrate the robot. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |
| 2 |  DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 161 . | |

5.7.6 Replacing the axis-6 motor

Location of the axis-6 motor

The xx is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002487

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|---------------------------|----------------|------|
| Motor with flange, axis 6 | 3HAC083584-001 | |
| Timing belt, axis 6 | 3HAC061939-001 | |
| Wrist cover | 3HAC069061-001 | |

Required tools and equipment

| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|------------------|----------------|--|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.6 Replacing the axis-6 motor

Continued


| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |
| Sonic tension meter | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| Dynamometer | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| J5.C2 connector assembly tool | - | Included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001. Used to remove and refit the J5.C2 connector, if the Ethernet cabling is equipped. |

Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|--------------|----------------|--------|
| Cable straps | - | |
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. |  Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mounting flange is used for installation of the calibration tool. |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 664 . |

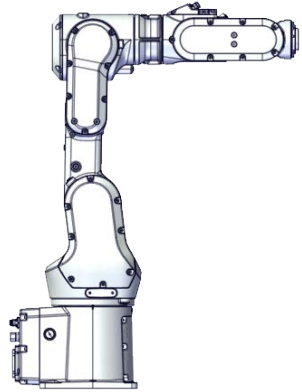

Continues on next page

| Action | Note |
|--|------|
| If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. | |


Removing the motor

Use these procedures to remove the axis-6 motor.

Preparations before removing the axis-6 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |
| 2 | Jog all axes to zero position. |  xx1800003288 |
| 3 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. | |

Opening the process hub


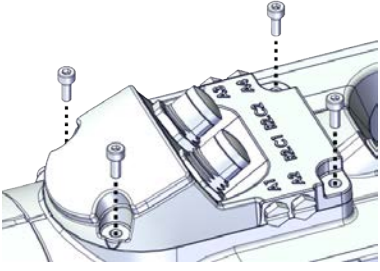
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page


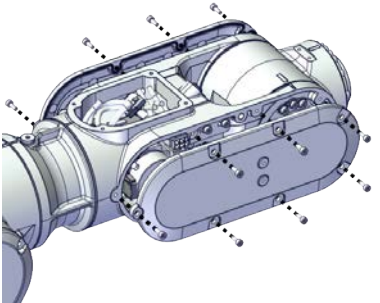
5 Repair

5.7.6 Replacing the axis-6 motor


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | <p>Remove the screws and carefully open the cover.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover!</p> |  <p>xx2000002219</p> |

Removing the wrist covers

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |
| 2 | <p>Remove the wrist covers from both sides.</p> |  <p>xx1800002949</p> |

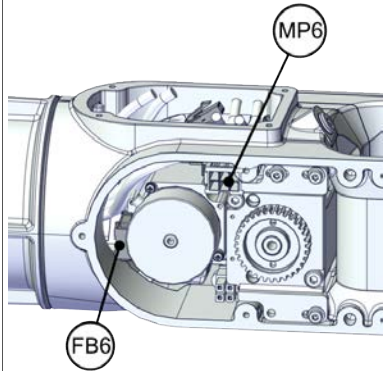
Disconnecting the axis-6 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |



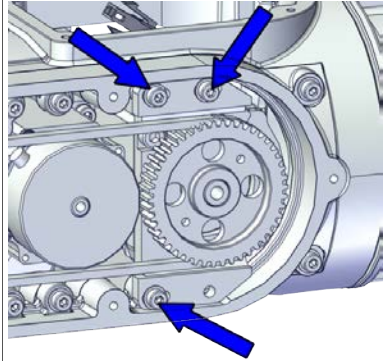
Continues on next page

5.7.6 Replacing the axis-6 motor

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MP6 • FB6 |  <p>xx1800002994</p> |

Removing the axis-6 motor

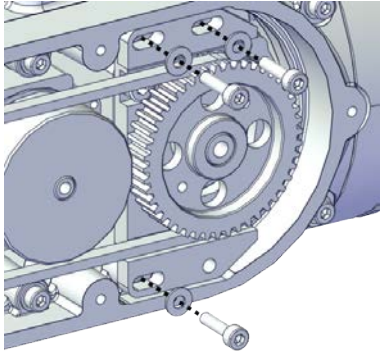
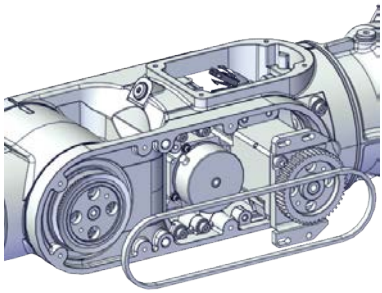
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  <p>xx1800002995</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.7.6 Replacing the axis-6 motor

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 4 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800002996 |
| 5 | Carefully lift out the motor. | |
| 6 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800002997 |

Refitting the motor

Use these procedures to refit the axis-6 motor.


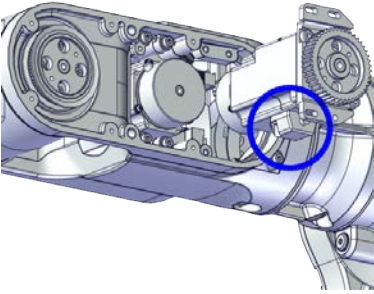

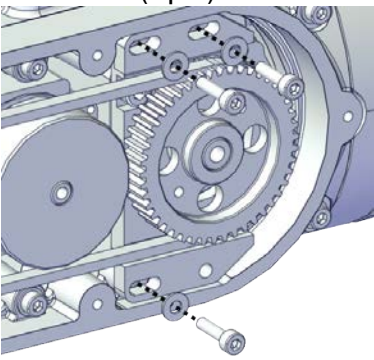
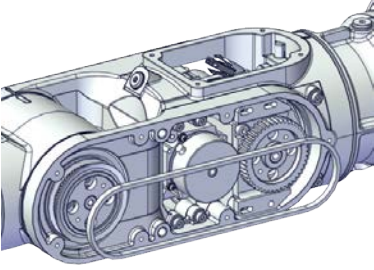
Refitting the axis-6 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 | Check that: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages• the motor is clean and undamaged. | |

Continues on next page

5.7.6 Replacing the axis-6 motor

Continued


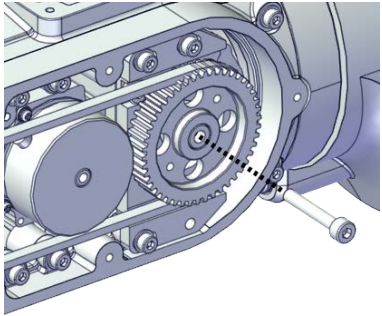
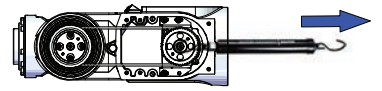
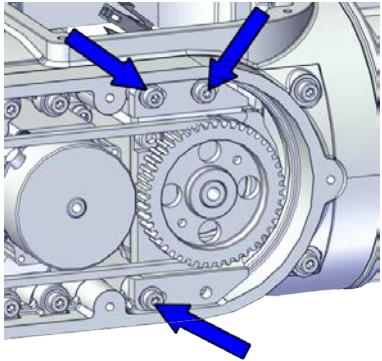
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | <p>Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the lower arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Leave the connectors FB5 and FB6 accessible from the process hub and the connectors MP5 and MP6 accessible from wrist side.</p> | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003023</p> |
| 3 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800002996</p> |
| 4 | <p>Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys.</p> |  <p>xx1800003024</p> |

Continues on next page

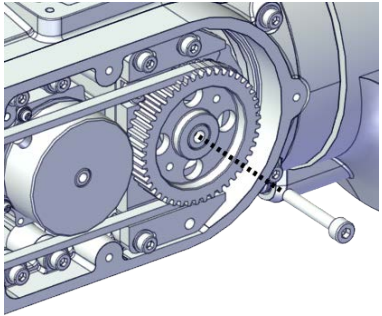
5 Repair

5.7.6 Replacing the axis-6 motor


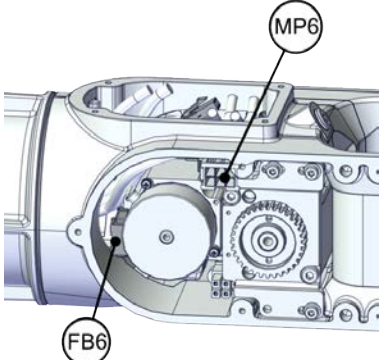

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 5 | <p>Install an M4x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not insert the entire screw to the hole.</p> |  <p>xx1900000007</p> |
| 6 | <p>Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force.</p> | <p>Initial referenced force for used belt: 8.96-9.8 N (for reference only) Initial referenced force for new belt: 12.8-14</p>  <p>xx1900000026</p> |
| 7 | <p>Secure the motor with the screws.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 1.4 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002995</p> |
| 8 | <p>Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension.</p> | <p>Used belt: 81.3-86.9 Hz New belt: 90-114 Hz (for reference only)</p> |
| 9 | <p>If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust.</p> | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|----|---|---|
| 10 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  xx1900000007 |

Reconnecting the axis-6 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Reconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB6 • MP6  Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector. |  xx1800002994 |
| 2 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |
| 3 | Insert the cabling and connectors into the wrist. | |

Refitting the wrist covers

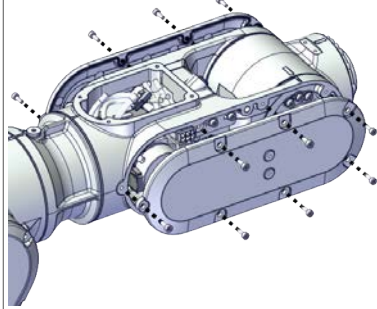
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package. | |
| 2 | Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package. | |

Continues on next page


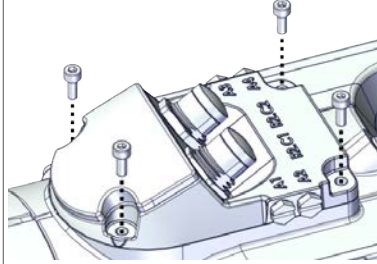
5 Repair

5.7.6 Replacing the axis-6 motor


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|-------------------------|---|
| 3 | Refit the wrist covers. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (14 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002949</p> |

Refitting the process hub

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |
| 2 | Refit the cover. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx2000002219</p> |

Concluding procedure

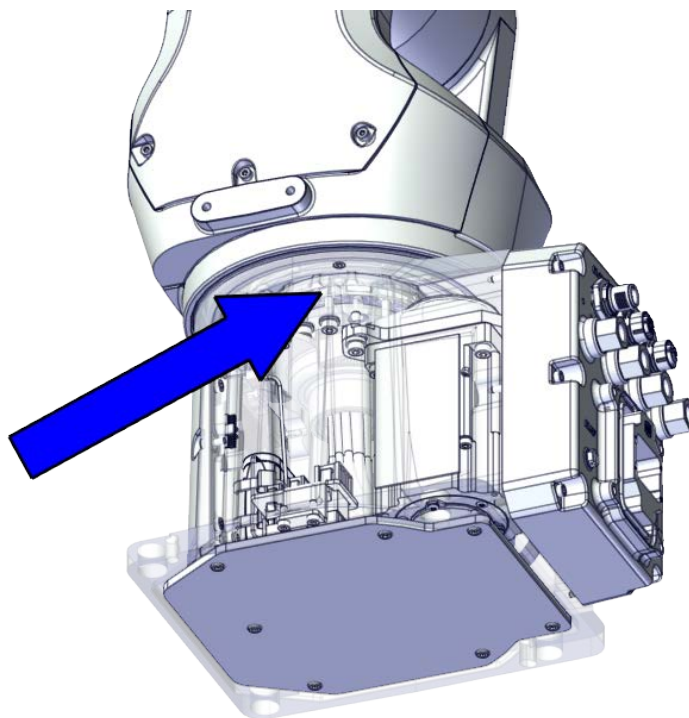
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Recalibrate the robot. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |
| 2 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 161.</p> | |

5.8 Gearboxes

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Location of the axis-1 gearbox

The axis-1 gearbox is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002478

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|---|----------------|------|
| Lower cable harness (CP/CS and air hose, with Ethernet) | 3HAC075523-001 | |
| Gear unit with pulley, axis 1 | 3HAC069062-001 | |
| Base | 3HAC069048-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 1 | 3HAC083589-001 | |
| Timing belt, axis 1 | 3HAC061934-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 2 | 3HAC083588-001 | . |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|--|
| Timing belt, axis 2 | 3HAC061935-001 | |
| Mechanical stop, axis 1 | 3HAC061947-001 | Replace if damaged. |
| Base bottom cover | 3HAC060463-001 | Standard configuration, used for robots with rear connector interface. |
| Base rear cover | 3HAC070312-001 | Used for robots with bottom connector interface. |
| Base adapter | 3HAC070313-001 | Used for robots with bottom connector interface. |
| Swing cover | 3HAC069051-001 | |
| Swing support cover | 3HAC069052-001 | |
| Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors | 3HAC071020-001 | Cooling pads are wear parts. One cooling pad sheet contains 6 pieces of small pad. Replace if damaged with one piece each time. |
| Washer | 3HAC063985-001 | 9x4.3x1, Steel |

Required tools and equipment

| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |
| Dynamometer | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |


Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|----------------|----------------|--|
| Cable straps | - | |
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |
| Locking liquid | - | Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243) |

Continues on next page

Deciding calibration routine

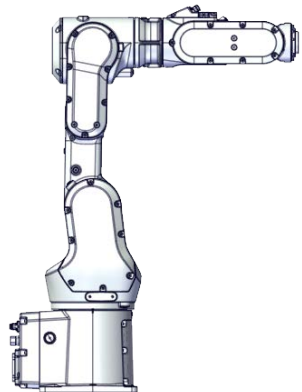
Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. |  Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mounting flange is used for installation of the calibration tool. |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 664 . |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. | |

Removing the gearbox

Use these procedures to remove the axis-1 gearbox.

Preparations before removing the axis-1 gearbox


| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |
| 2 | Jog all axes to zero position. |  xx1800003288 |

Continues on next page



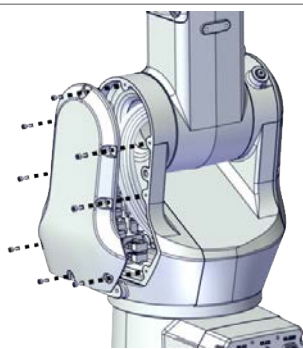

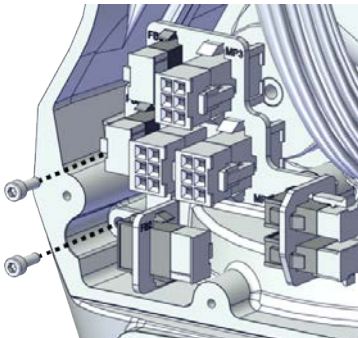
5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox


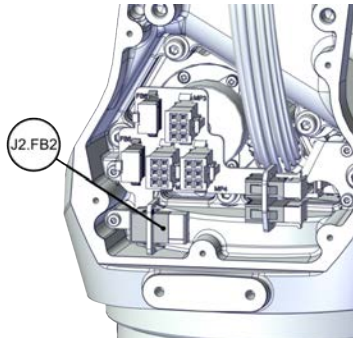
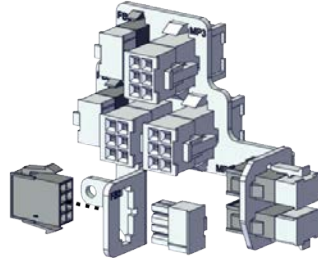
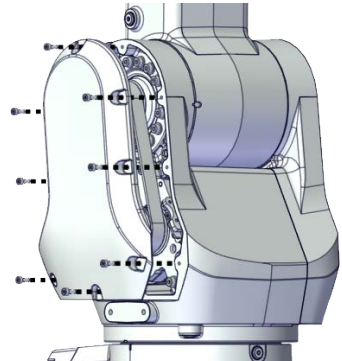

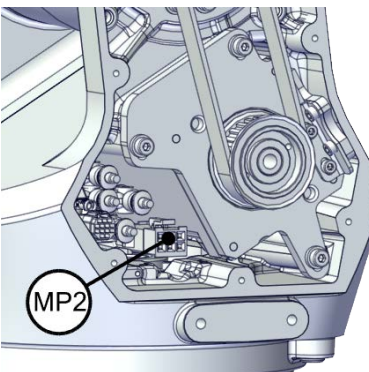
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 3 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. | |

Removing the axis-2 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Remove the swing support cover. |  xx1800002488 |
| 4 | Remove the connector plate.  CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that are attached to the connector plate! The connector plate cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed from the plate. |  xx1800002489 |

Continues on next page

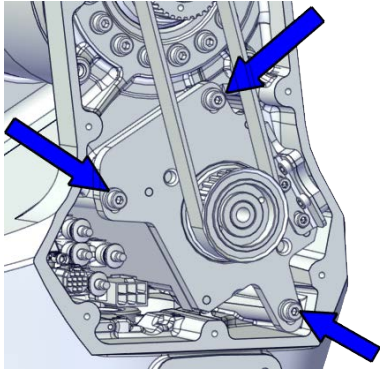
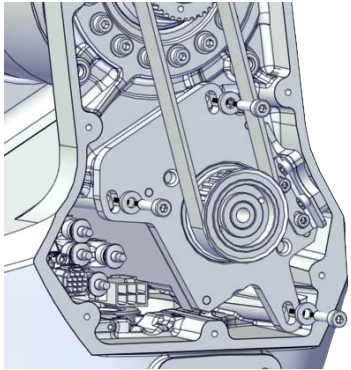


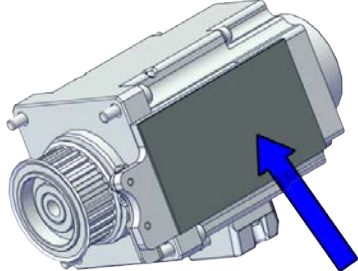
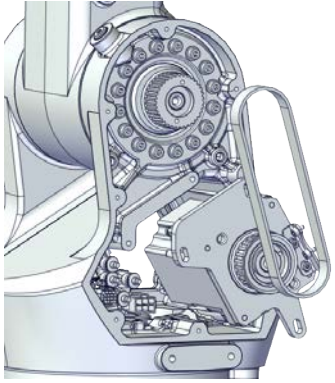
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.FB2  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  <p>xx1800002490</p> |
| 6 | Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the connector plate. |  <p>xx1800002491</p> |
| 7 | Remove the swing cover. |  <p>xx1800002492</p> |
| 8 | Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MP2  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  <p>xx1800002495</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair


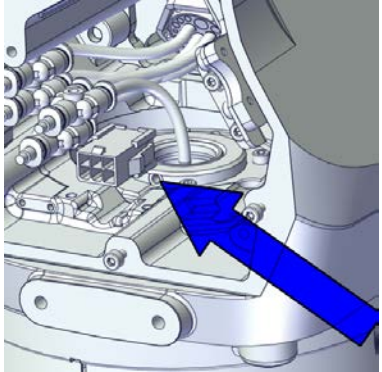
5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued



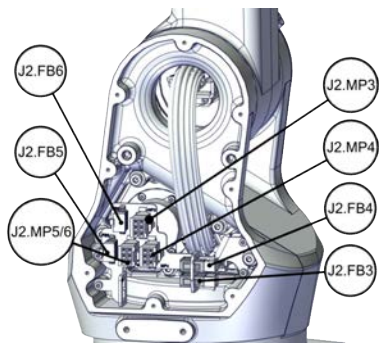
| | Action | Note |
|----|--|---|
| 9 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800002493 |
| 10 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800002494 |
| 11 | Carefully lift out the motor.  CAUTION A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad.  CAUTION Be aware of the motor cabling. The motor cannot be removed completely until the connector is disconnected, as shown in following step. | Cooling pad location  xx1800003603 |
| 12 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800002496 |

Continues on next page

Loosening the cable package from axis-1 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Access the cable package locking screw on the axis-1 gearbox from the swing and then loosen the locking screw. |  xx1800003032 |
| 3 | Remove the locking screw. | |

Disconnecting the connectors at the division point

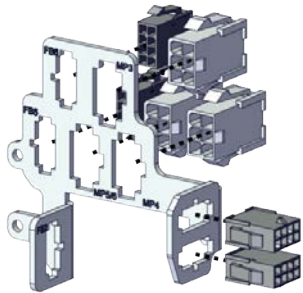
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.FB3,4,5,6 • J2.MP3,4,5/6  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  xx1800002497 |

Continues on next page


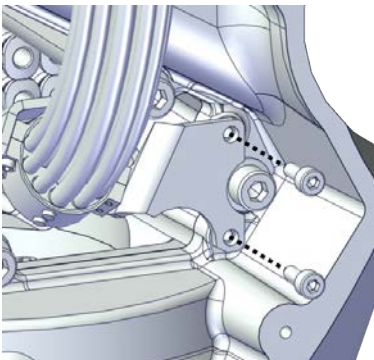
5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | Snap loose and remove the female head of the connectors from the connector plate. |  xx1800002498 |

Separating the cable package from the swing

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the cable bracket. |  xx1800002499 |

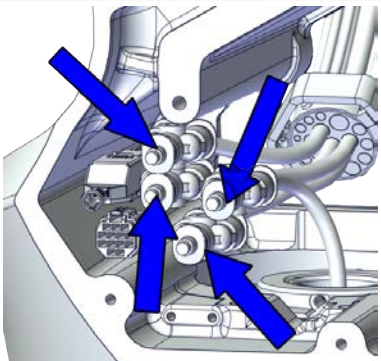


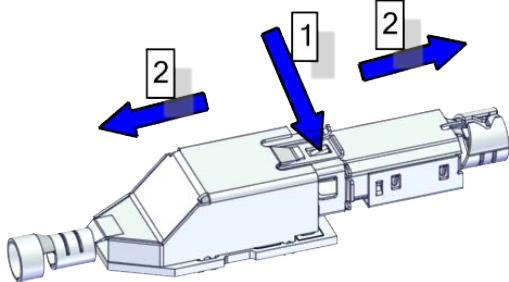
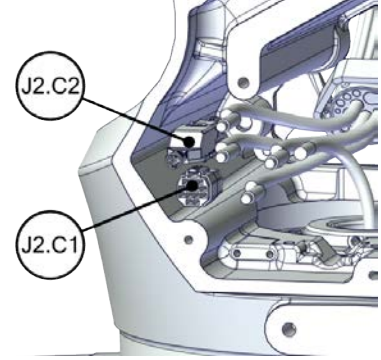
Disconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |


Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | Disconnect the air hoses from the Y-shaped connectors. |  xx1800002500 |
| 3 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.C1 • J2.C2  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.  Tip The connector clip has to be pressed (1) and pushed forward (2) to separate the J2.C2 (for Ethernet cabling).  xx1800002943 |  xx1800002501 |

Putting the robot on its side



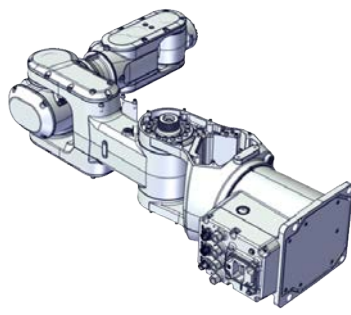
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page





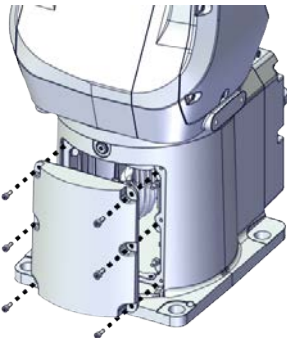
5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox


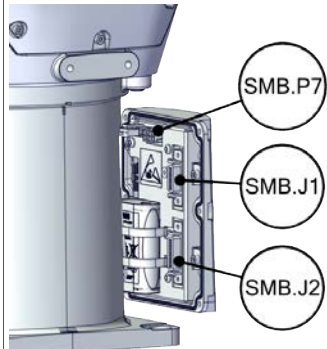
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 |  CAUTION The CRB 1100 robot weighs 21.1 kg and can be lifted by one person. | |
| 3 |  WARNING The robot is likely to be mechanically unstable if not secured to the foundation. | |
| 4 | Loosen the robot from the foundation by removing the foundation attachment screws and put the robot on its side. |  xx1800003033 |


Disconnecting the SMB connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 48 . | |
| 3 | Remove the SMB cover attachment screws and carefully open the cover.  CAUTION Clean cover from metal residues before opening. Metal residues can cause shortage on the boards which can result in hazardous failures.  CAUTION There are cabling attached to the cover. The cover cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed. |  xx1800002467 |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 4 | <p>Disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> |  <p>xx1800002468</p> |
| 5 | Remove the SMB cover completely from the base. | |


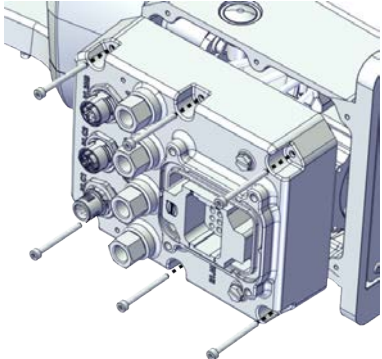
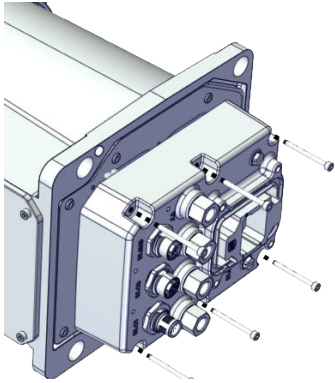
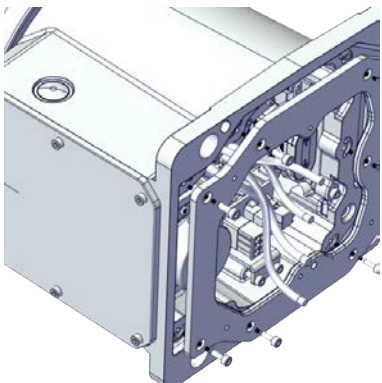
Opening the connector interface plate

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |

5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox


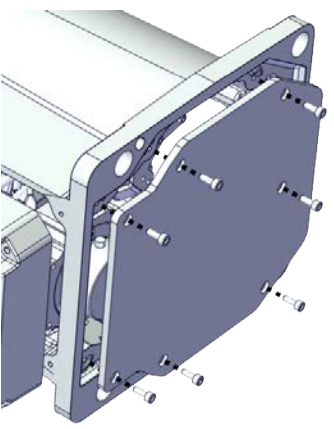
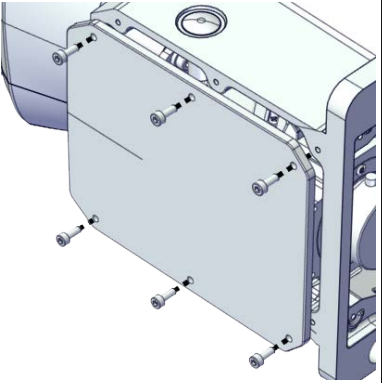
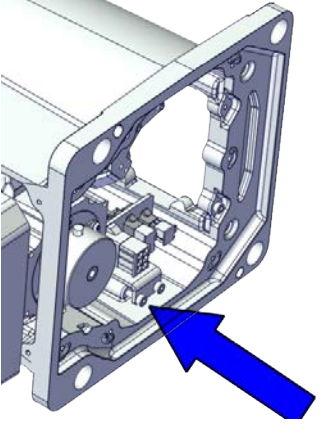
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Remove the connector interface plate attachment screws and carefully open the plate.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>There are cabling attached to the cover. The cover cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed.</p> | <p>Valid for cabling with rear interface</p>  <p>xx1800003034</p> <p>Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)</p>  <p>xx1800003055</p> |
| 3 | <p>Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)</p> <p>Remove the base adapter.</p> |  <p>xx1800003056</p> |

Continues on next page

Removing the brake release button

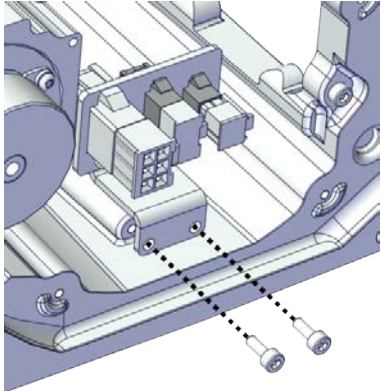

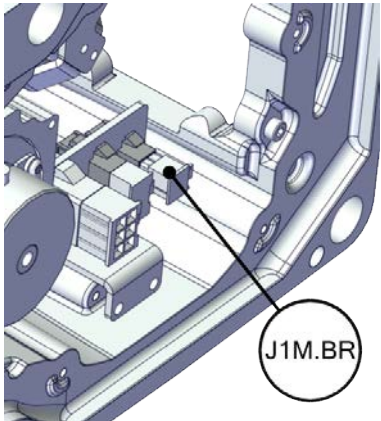
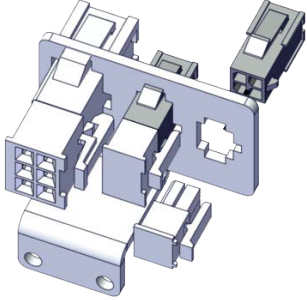
Notice that the procedure differs depending on if the connector interface is located either at the rear or at the bottom of the base.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Valid for cabling with rear interface Remove the base bottom cover. |  xx1800003035 |
| 3 | Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1) Remove the base rear cover. |  xx1800003057 |
| 4 | Disconnect the earth cable. |  xx1800003036 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

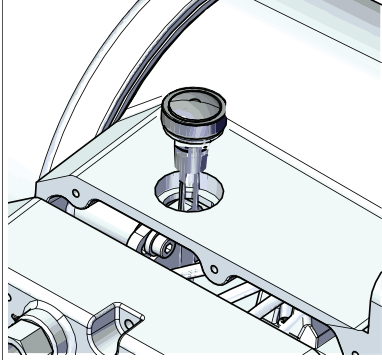
5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | Remove the connector plate. |  xx1800003037 |
| 6 | Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• J1M.BR <div> Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</div> |  xx1800003038 |
| 7 | Remove the female header of the J1M.BR connector from the connector plate. |  xx1800003039 |



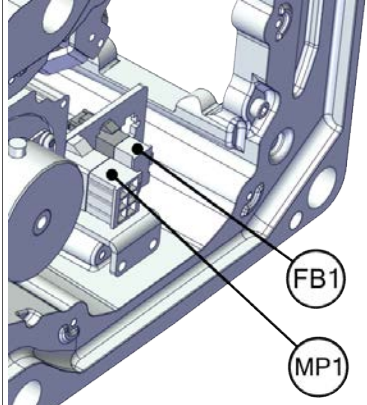
Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 8 | Remove the brake release button from the base using the tool. | brake release button assembly tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001  xx1800003040 |

Disconnecting axis-1 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB1 • MP1  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  xx1800003041 |

Separating the cable package from the base

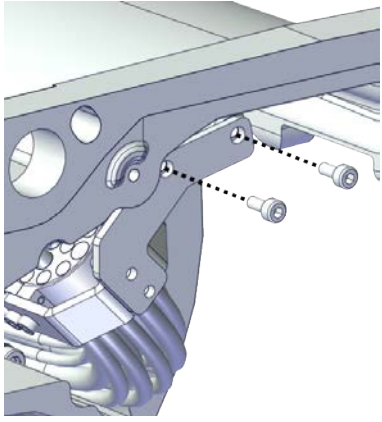
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page


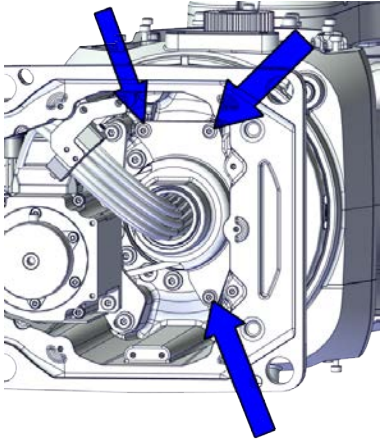
5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---------------------------|---|
| 2 | Remove the cable bracket. |  xx1800003042 |

Separating the cable package from the axis-1 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the pulley cover. |  xx1800003043 |

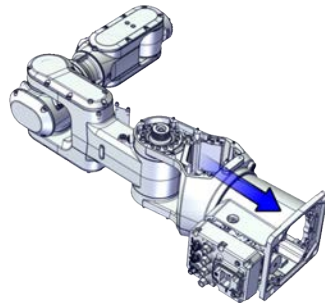
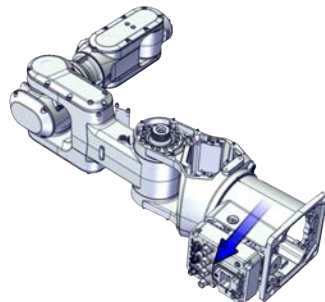
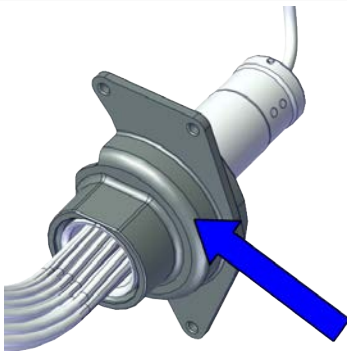
Pulling out the cable package

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |


Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Pull out the lower cable package from the axis-1 gearbox. |  xx1800003044 |
| 3 | Pull out the lower cable package from the base. |  xx1800003045 |
| 4 | Remove the pulley cover from the lower cable package. |  xx1800003046 |

Removing the axis-1 motor


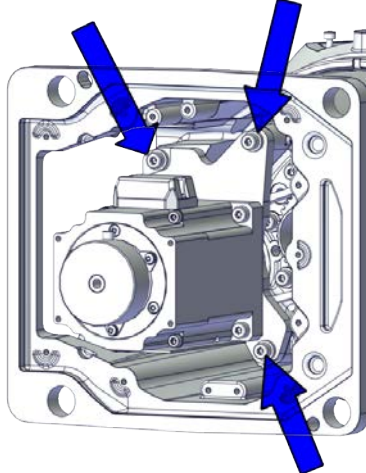
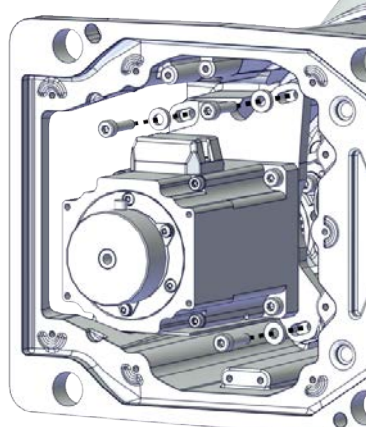

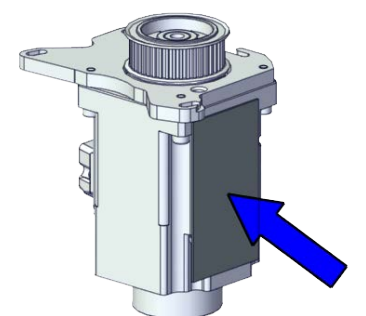
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

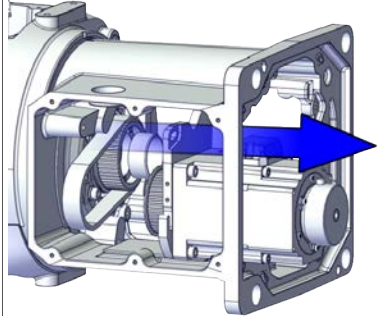
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800003064 |
| 4 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800003065 |
| 5 | Carefully lift out the motor.  CAUTION A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad. | Cooling pad location  xx1800003602 |



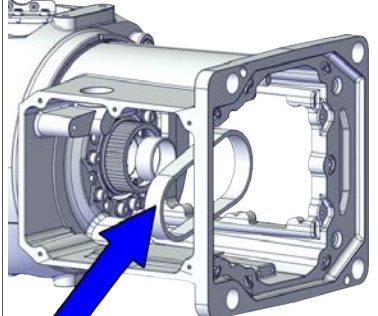
Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 6 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800003066 |

Removing the axis-1 timing belt

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Loosening timing belts will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before loosening timing belts. | |
| 3 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the gearbox. |  xx1800003067 |


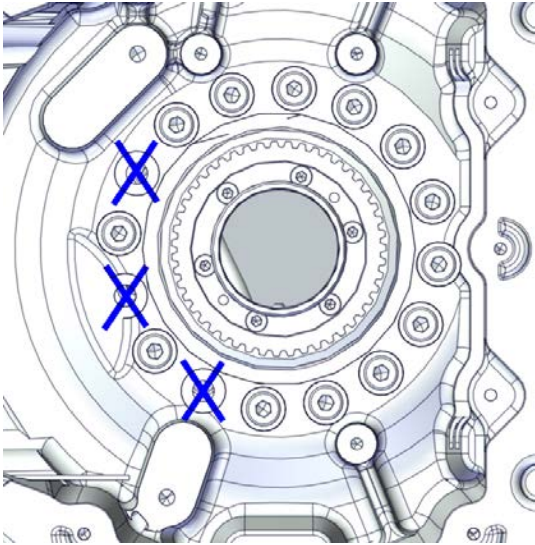
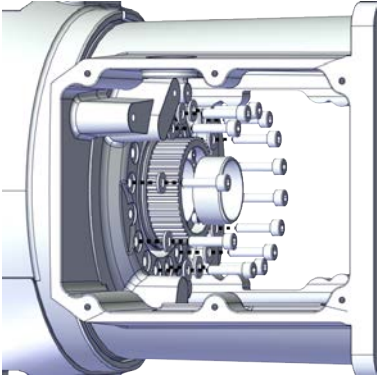

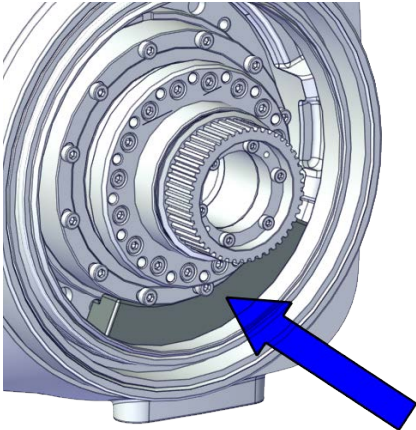
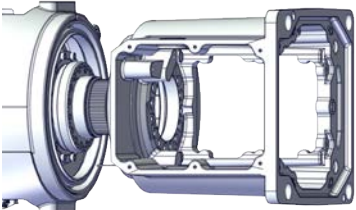
Separating the base from the swing

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page



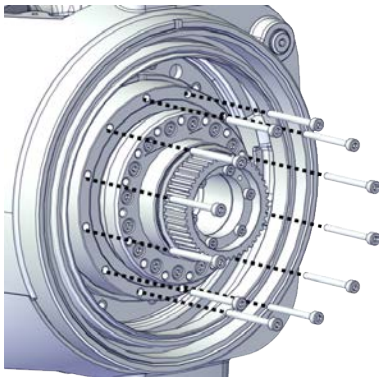
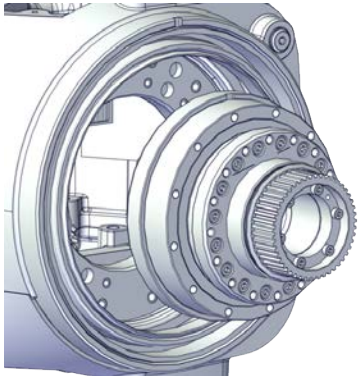
5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox
Continued

| Action | Note |
|---|---|
| <div>2</div> <div>Remove the screws and washers.</div> <div> Tip</div> <div>Three screw holes have no screws fitted in. Take photos of the screw and washer position before removing them, to have as a reference when refitting.</div> <div> xx1800003068</div> | <div> xx1800003069</div> |
| <div>3</div> <div>Separate the base from the swing.</div> <div> CAUTION</div> <div>The axis-1 mechanical stop is accessible now. Put it aside for later refitting.</div> <div> xx1800003071</div> | <div> xx1800003070</div> |

Continues on next page

Removing the axis-1 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing gearboxes will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing gearboxes. | |
| 3 | Remove the screws. |  xx1800003073 |
| 4 | Pull out the gearbox. |  xx1800003074 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

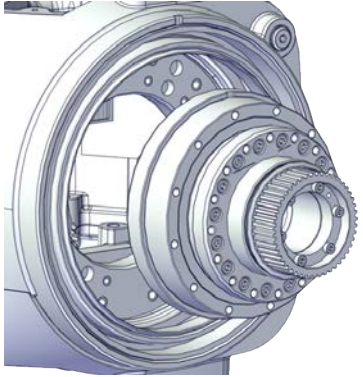
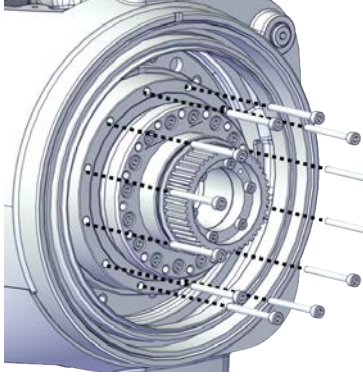
5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued

Refitting the gearbox

Use these procedures to refit the axis-1 gearbox.

Refitting the axis-1 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Refit the axis-1 gearbox. Make sure the locking screw hole on the gearbox is aligned with the notch on the swing casting. |  xx1800003074 |
| 2 | Secure with screws. | Screw: M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (12 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.6 Nm  xx1800003073 |


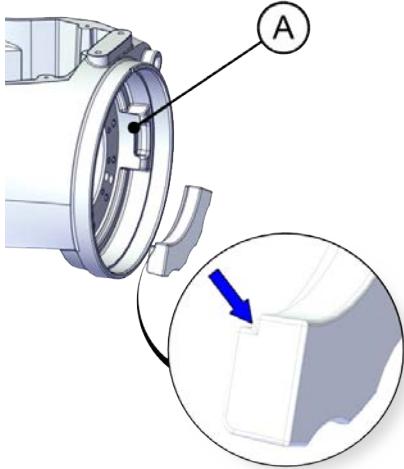
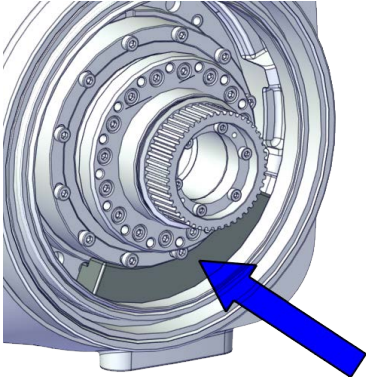
Placing the axis-1 mechanical stop

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Check the axis-1 mechanical stop. Replace if damaged. | Mechanical stop, axis 1: 3HAC061947-001 |


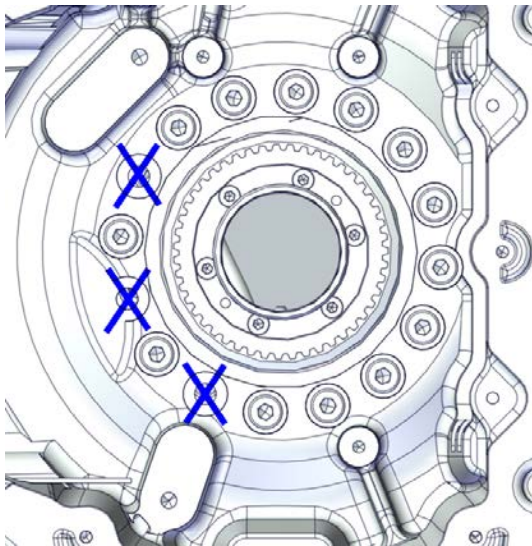
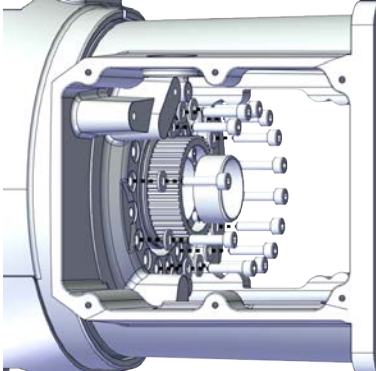
Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | <p>Put the axis-1 mechanical stop in place in the swing.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>The mechanical stop can be placed in any place except the block (A) on the swing. Make sure the mechanical stop step pointed in the figure is facing the swing when putting.</p>  <p>xx1800003619</p> |  <p>xx1800003071</p> |

Refitting the base to the swing

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | <p>Refit the base to the swing.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Pay attention to the screw and washer location.</p>  <p>xx1800003068</p> | <p>Screw: M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (13 pcs) Tightening torque: 4.4 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003069</p> |


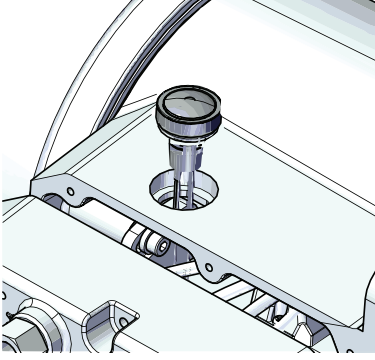
Continues on next page

5 Repair

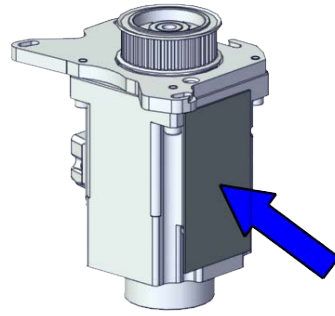
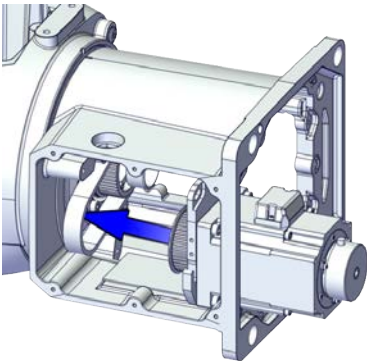
5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued

Refitting the brake release button

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Refit the brake release button.</p>  <p>Note</p> <p>Do not reconnect the connector yet. Do not tighten the button yet.</p> | <p>brake release button assembly tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001</p>  <p>xx1800003040</p> |

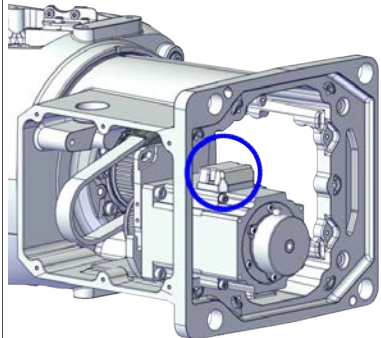

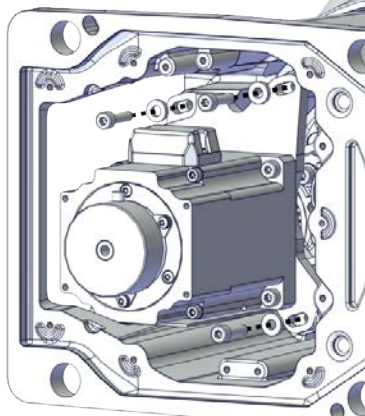
Refitting the axis-1 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Check that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages the motor is clean and undamaged. | |
| 2 | <p>Check the cooling pad. Replace if damaged.</p> | <p>Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors: 3HAC071020-001</p>  <p>xx1800003602</p> |
| 3 | <p>Install the timing belt to the motor pulley and verify that the belt runs correctly in the groove of the pulley.</p> |  <p>xx1800003085</p> |

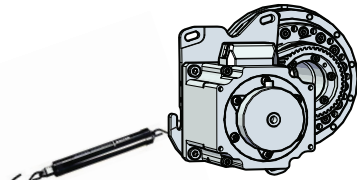
Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the base. At the same time, install the timing belt to the gearbox pulley and verify that the belt runs correctly in the groove of the pulley. | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003072</p> |
| 5 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Washer, 3HAC063985-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800003065</p> |

Adjusting the axis-1 timing belt tension



| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the motor. |  <p>xx1900000040</p> |

Continues on next page

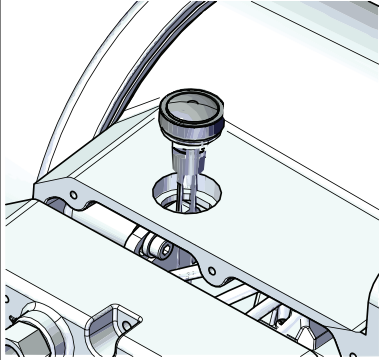
5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued

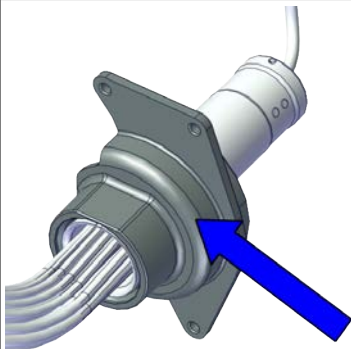
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | <p>Pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>During the measurement, make sure that all interferences that may affect the force are removed. Pay attention to the force application direction.</p> | <p>Used belt: 58.24-63.56 N New belt: 83.2-90.8 N (for reference only)</p>  <p>xx1900000041</p> |
| 3 | Secure the motor with the screws. | Tightening torque: 3 Nm |

Securing the brake release button

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Tighten the brake release button using the tool. | <p>brake release button assembly tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001</p>  <p>xx1800003040</p> |

Refitting the lower cable package through the axis-1 gearbox



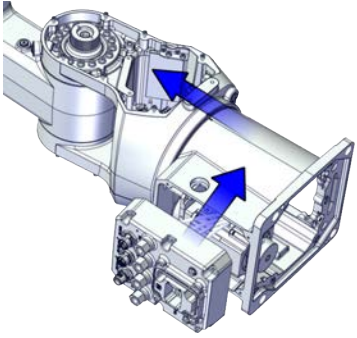

Notice that the procedure differs depending on if the connector interface is located either at the rear or at the bottom of the base.

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Refit the pulley cover to the lower cable package. |  <p>xx1800003046</p> |

Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued



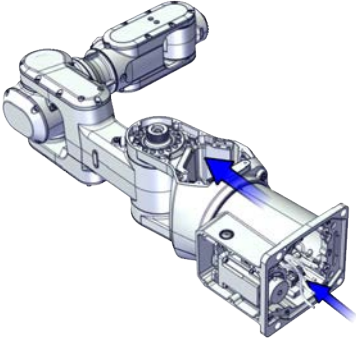

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Valid for cabling with rear interface Insert the cable package in the base and up through the axis-1 gearbox, through the rear.</p> <p> Tip Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> CAUTION Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p> | <p></p> <p>xx1800003047</p> <p>Cable protection tube orientation: use the encircled notch on the cable protection tube as a reference when inserting the cable package, which should be at the opposite direction to the locking screw hole on the gearbox.</p> <p></p> <p>xx1800003048</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair


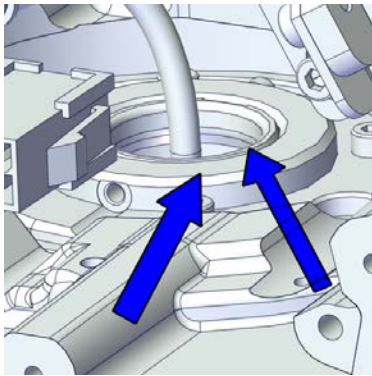
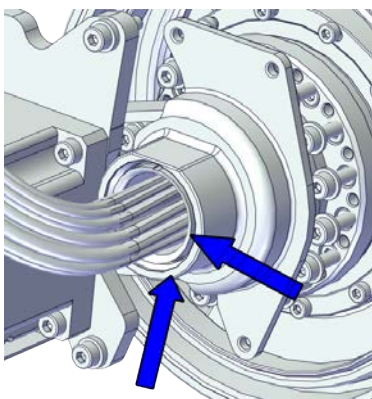
5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 3 | <p>Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)</p> <p>Insert the cable package in the base and up through the axis-1 gearbox, through the bottom.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p> |  <p>xx1800003060</p> <p>Cable protection tube orientation: use the encircled notch on the cable protection tube as a reference when inserting the cable package, which should be at the opposite direction to the locking screw hole on the gearbox.</p>  <p>xx1800003048</p> |

Continues on next page

Securing the lower cable package to the axis-1 gearbox



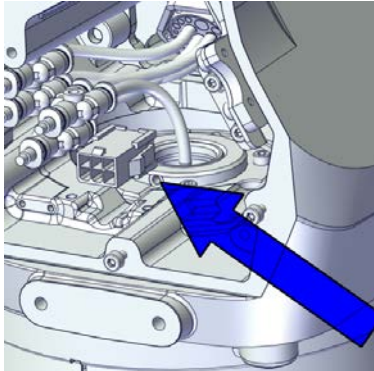
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | <p>Make sure that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The hole on the cable protection tube is aligned with the locking screw hole on the gearbox.• The cable protection tube surface is completely parallel with the pulley cover at one side and with the flange at the other side. |  <p>xx1800003063</p>  <p>xx1800003049</p>  <p>xx1800003050</p> |

Continues on next page

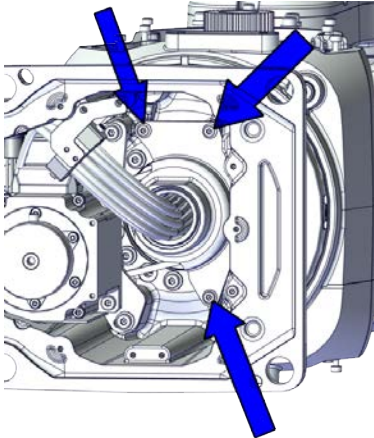
5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 2 | <p>Apply a little Loctite 243 to the locking screw and refit the locking screw.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Make sure the locking screw header is parallel with flange surface.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>If there is locking liquid residues on the screw or screw hole, please clean it before refitting. Remove residual locking liquid after refitting.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 (1 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003032</p> |

Refitting the pulley cover

| | Action | Note |
|---|-------------------------|--|
| 1 | Refit the puller cover. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003043</p> |


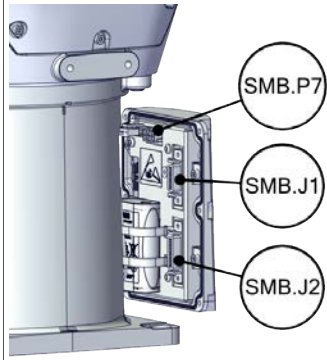

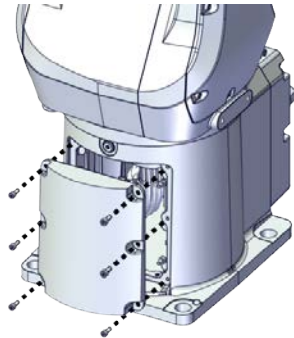
Reconnecting the SMB connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 | <p> ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 48.</p> | |


Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMB.P7 • SMB.J1 • SMB.J2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 0.3 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002468</p> |
| 3 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |
| 4 | <p>Refit the SMB cover to the base.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002467</p> |

Refitting the connector interface plate

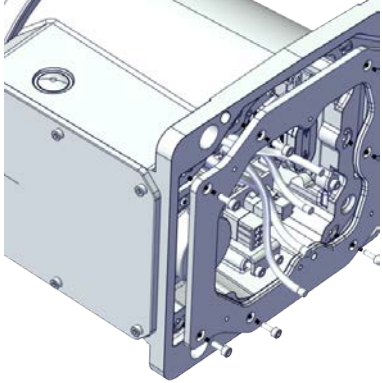
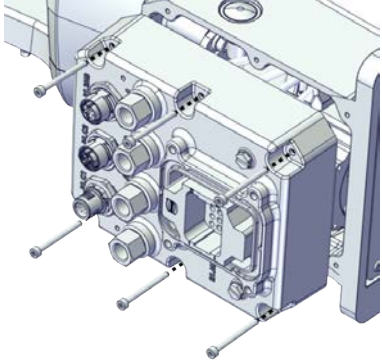
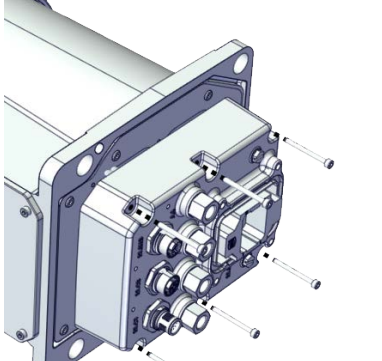
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

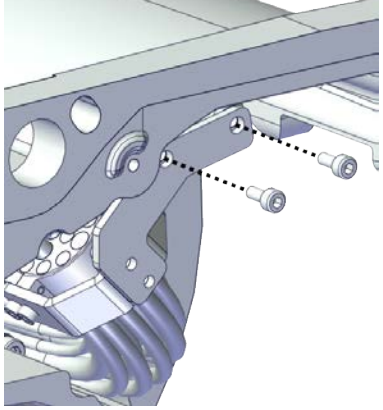
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1) Refit the base adapter. | Screw: M3x8 Steel 8.8-A2F (7 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003056 |
| 3 | Refit the connector interface plate to the base. | Screw: M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm Valid for cabling with rear interface  xx1800003034 Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1)  xx1800003055 |


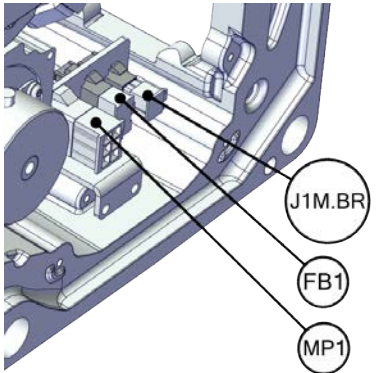
Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox *Continued*

Securing the lower cable package to the base

| | Action | Note |
|---|--------------------------|--|
| 1 | Refit the cable bracket. | <p>Screw: M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003042</p> |

Reconnecting the brake release cabling and axis-1 motor connectors

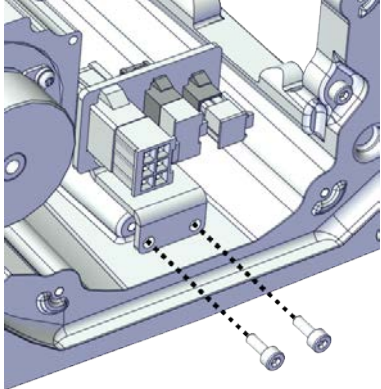
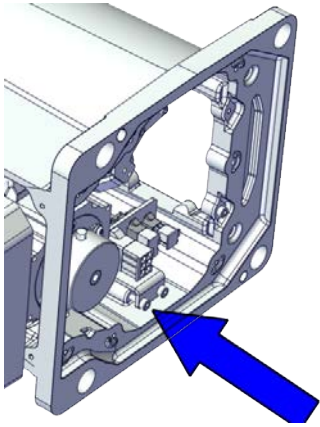
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J1M.BR • MP1 • FB1 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003054</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair


5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued

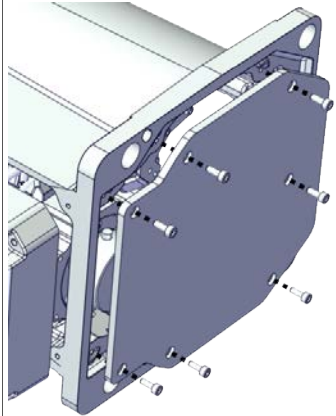
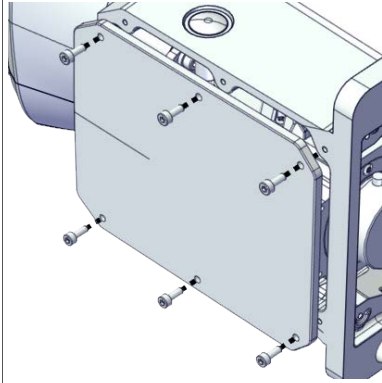
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | Reconnect the floor cable together with the connector plate. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003037</p>  <p>xx1800003036</p> |

Refitting the base cover


Notice that the procedure differs depending on if the connector interface is located either at the rear or at the bottom of the base.

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package. | |
| 2 | Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package. | |
| 3 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 4 | Valid for cabling with rear interface Refit the bottom cover. | Screw: M3x8 Steel 8.8-A2F (7 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003035 |
| 5 | Valid for cabling with bottom interface (option 3309-1) Refit the rear cover. | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003057 |

Securing the robot to the foundation

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 |  CAUTION The CRB 1100 robot weighs 21.1 kg and can be lifted by one person. | |
| 2 | Raise the robot to standing and secure to the foundation with the attachment screws and washers. | Attachment screws: M12x25 (robot installation directly on foundation), quality: 8.8. Washers: 4 pcs, 24 x 13 x 2.5. Tightening Torque: 50 Nm±5 Nm. |


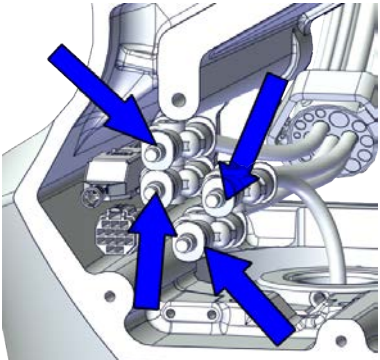

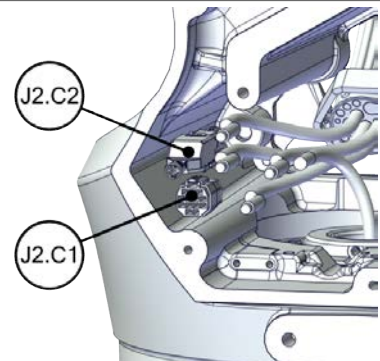
Continues on next page

5 Repair

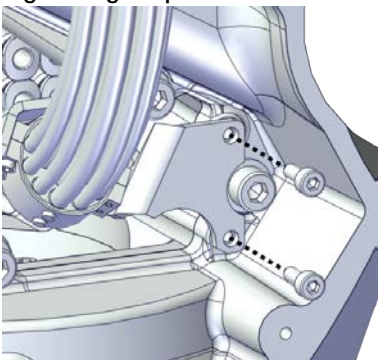
5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued

Reconnecting the air hoses, CP/CS cabling and Ethernet cabling (if equipped)

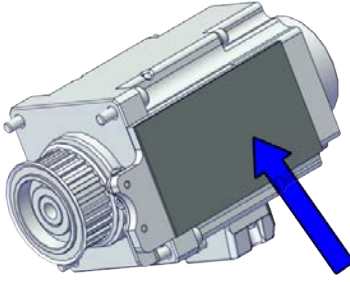
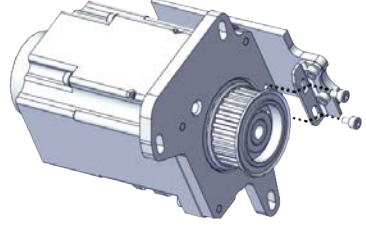

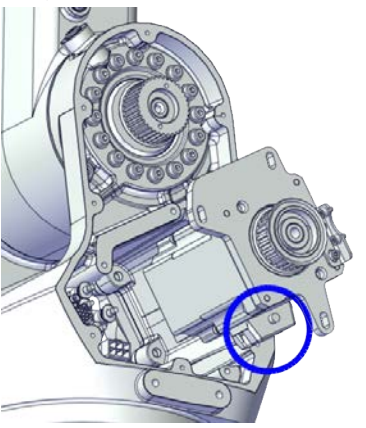
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | <p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern to the Y-shaped connectors.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses. The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p> |  xx1800002500 |
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• J2.C1• J2.C2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  xx1800002501 |

Securing the cable package to the swing

| | Action | Note |
|---|--------------------------|--|
| 1 | Refit the cable bracket. | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  xx1800002499 |

Continues on next page

Refitting the axis-2 motor


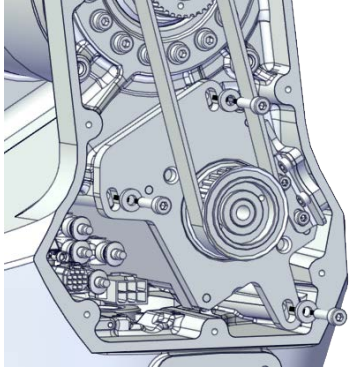
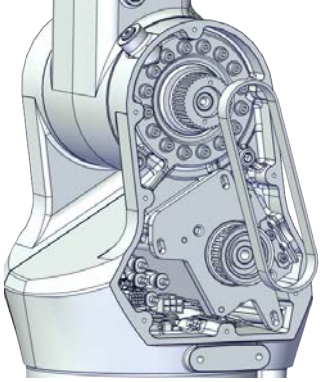

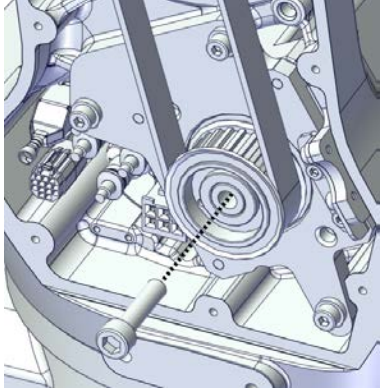
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Check that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages the motor is clean and undamaged. | |
| 2 | Check the cooling pad. Replace if damaged, as shown in the following step. | Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors: 3HAC071020-001  xx1800003603 |
| 3 | Remove the screws. Replace with a new cooling pad and then refit the screws. | Screw: M3x5 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003026 |
| 4 | Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the swing.  Tip Bend the motor signal cable back towards the swing support. | Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.  xx1800003027 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

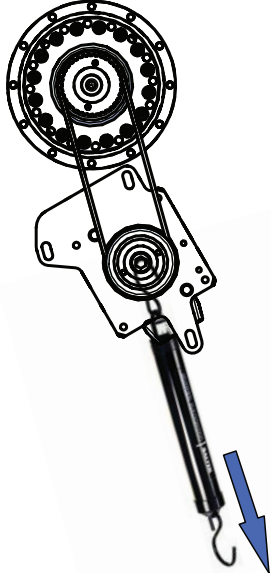
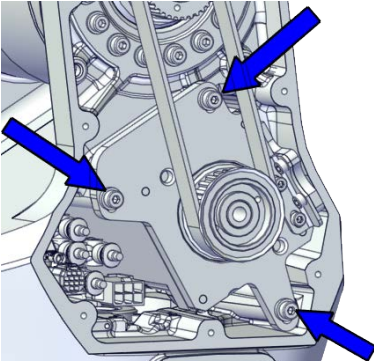
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 5 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washer, 3HAC063985-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800002494</p> |
| 6 | <p>Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys.</p> |  <p>xx1800003028</p> |
| 7 | <p>Install an M6x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not insert the entire screw to the hole.</p> |  <p>xx1900000010</p> |

Continues on next page

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued

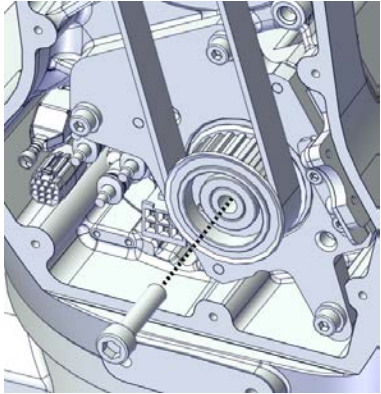

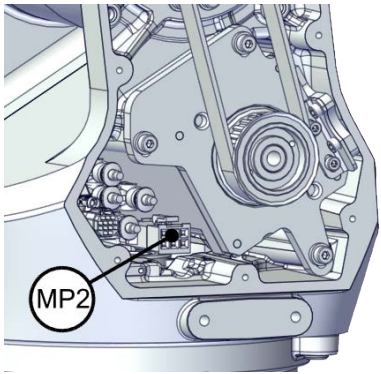
| | Action | Note |
|----|---|---|
| 8 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force. | <p>Initial referenced force for used belt: 68.18-75.04 N (for reference only) Initial referenced force for new belt: 97.4-107.2 N</p>  <p>xx1900000029</p> |
| 9 | Secure the motor with the screws. | <p>Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002493</p> |
| 10 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. | <p>Used belt: 163-174 Hz New belt: 180-229 Hz (for reference only)</p> |
| 11 | If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust. | |

Continues on next page

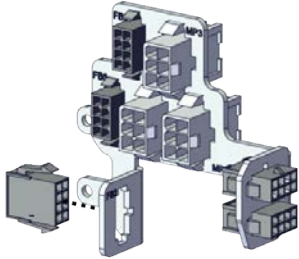
5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox


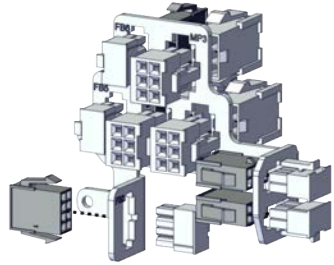

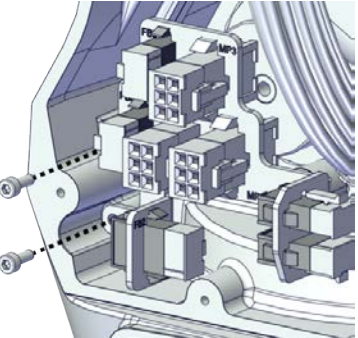
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|--|--|
| 12 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  xx1900000010 |
| 13 | Reconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• MP2  Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector. |  xx1800002495 |

Reconnecting the connectors at the division point

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Insert the female header of the connectors to the connector plate. |  xx1800003029 |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J2.FB2,3,4,5,6 • J2.MP3,4,5/6 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003030</p> |
| 3 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |
| 4 | <p>Refit the connector plate.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002489</p> |

Refitting the swing covers

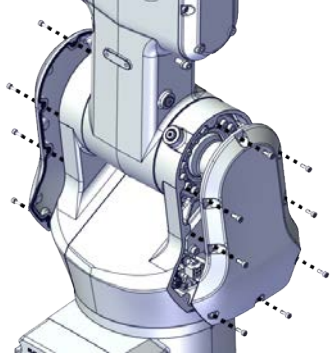
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 | <p>Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package.</p> | |
| 2 | <p>Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package.</p> | |

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | Refit the covers. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Swing cover• Swing support cover | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003607</p> |

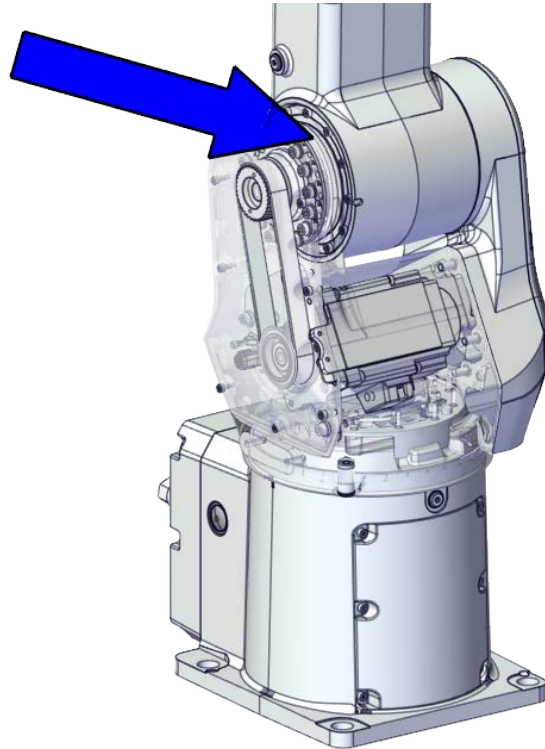
Concluding procedure

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Recalibrate the robot. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |
| 2 |  DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 161 . | |

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

Location of the axis-2 gearbox

The axis-2 gearbox is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002479

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|---|
| Gear unit with pulley, axis 2 | 3HAC073517-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 2 | 3HAC083588-001 | . |
| Timing belt, axis 2 | 3HAC061935-001 | |
| Swing cover | 3HAC069051-001 | |
| Swing support cover | 3HAC069052-001 | |
| Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors | 3HAC071020-001 | Cooling pads are wear parts. One cooling pad sheet contains 6 pieces of small pad. Replace if damaged with one piece each time. |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

Continued

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|------------|----------------|----------------|
| Washer | 3HAC063985-001 | 9x4.3x1, Steel |

Required tools and equipment


| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |
| Sonic tension meter | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| Dynamometer | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |

Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|--------------|----------------|---|
| Cable straps | - | |
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |
| Grease | - | Castrol Molub. Alloy 777-1 NG Used to lubricate bearings on the swing support and lower arm support. |

Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. |  Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mounting flange is used for installation of the calibration tool. |

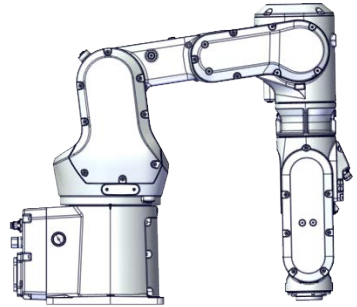

Continues on next page

| Action | Note |
|--|---|
| <p>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</p> <p>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.</p> <p>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible.</p> | <p>Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.</p> <p>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.</p> <p>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 664.</p> |
| <p>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</p> <p>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.</p> | |

Removing the gearbox

Use these procedures to remove the axis-2 gearbox.

Preparations before removing the axis-2 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |
| 2 | <p>Jog the robot to the specified position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Axis 1: 0° • Axis 2: 110° (CRB 1100-4/0.475) / 95° (CRB 1100-4/0.58) • Axis 3: -20° (CRB 1100-4/0.475) / -6° (CRB 1100-4/0.58) • Axis 4: 0° • Axis 5: 0° • Axis 6: No significance. |  <p>xx1800003289</p> |
| 3 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p> | |



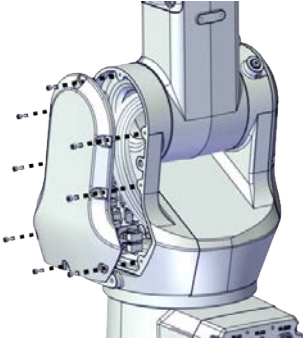

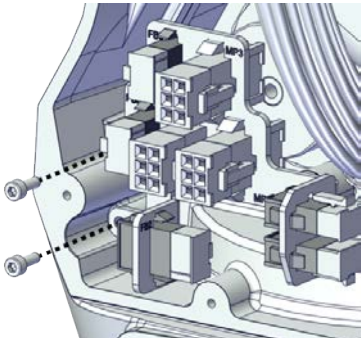

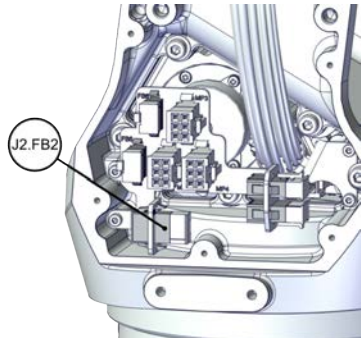
Continues on next page

5 Repair

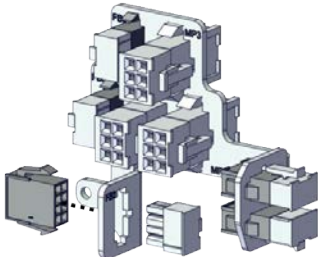
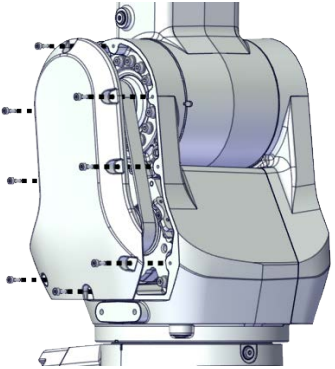

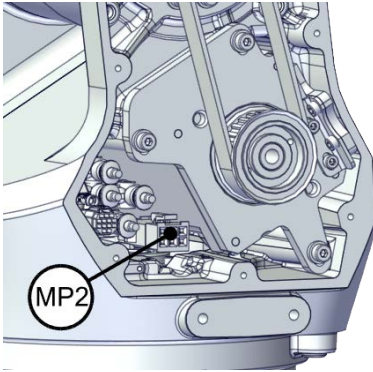
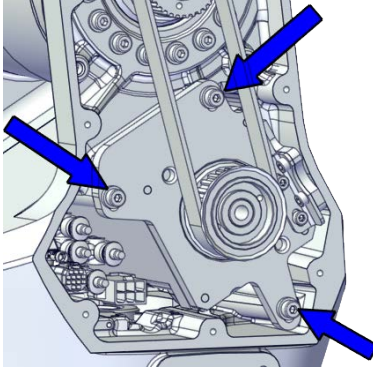
5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

Continued

Removing the axis-2 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Remove the swing support cover. |  xx1800002488 |
| 4 | Remove the connector plate.  CAUTION Be aware of the cablings that are attached to the connector plate! The connector plate cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed from the plate. |  xx1800002489 |
| 5 | Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> J2.FB2  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  xx1800002490 |

Continues on next page

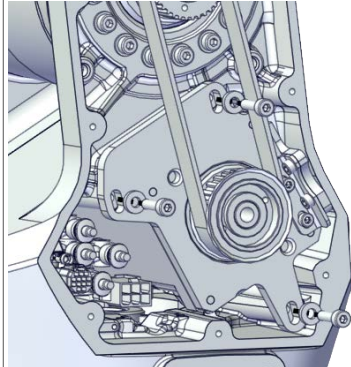


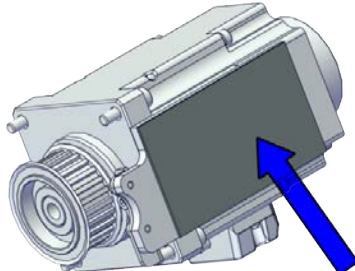
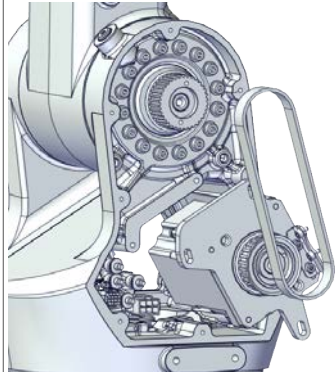
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 6 | Snap loose and remove the female head of the connector from the connector plate. |  <p>xx1800002491</p> |
| 7 | Remove the swing cover. |  <p>xx1800002492</p> |
| 8 | Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MP2  Tip Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting. |  <p>xx1800002495</p> |
| 9 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  <p>xx1800002493</p> |

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|--|--|
| 10 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800002494 |
| 11 | Carefully lift out the motor.  CAUTION A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad.  CAUTION Be aware of the motor cabling. The motor cannot be removed completely until the connector is disconnected, as shown in following step. | Cooling pad location  xx1800003603 |
| 12 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800002496 |

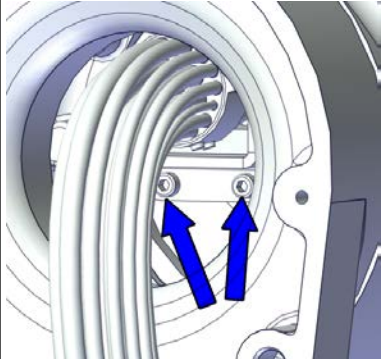
Separating the upper cable harness from the axis-2 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |




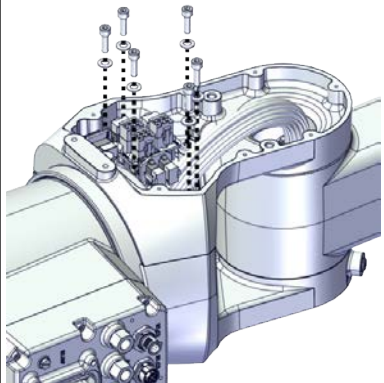
Continues on next page

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox


Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---------------------------|---|
| 2 | Remove the cable bracket. |  <p>xx1800003002</p> |

Loosening the swing support

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Loosen the swing support screws.  Tip If the swing support is hard to loosen from the lower arm, use a plastic hammer to knock on the swing support lightly.  CAUTION The support cannot be removed completely. Make sure the hanging support will not wear or damage the cable harness. |  <p>xx1800003079</p> |

Separating the swing from the lower arm


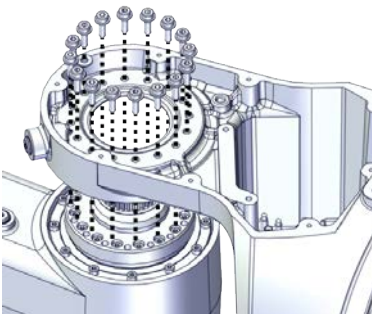

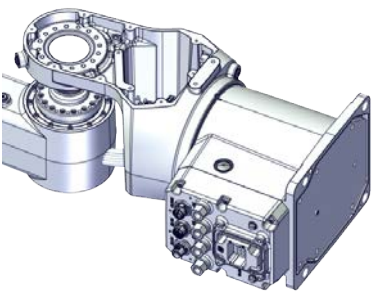
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |

Continues on next page



5 Repair

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Remove the screws.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Some robots may be fitted with separate screws and washers. During replacement, always use the same screws (and washers) that are fitted on the robot at delivery. Contact ABB for more information.</p> |  <p>xx1900002203</p> |
| 3 | <p>Separate the swing from the lower arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>If the swing is hard to loosen from the housing, use a plastic hammer to knock on the swing lightly.</p> |  <p>xx1800003081</p> |

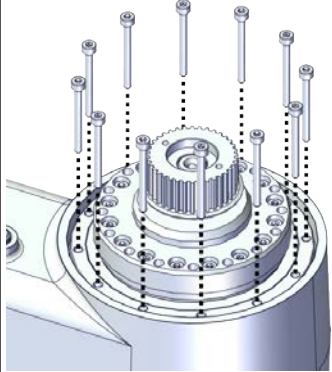
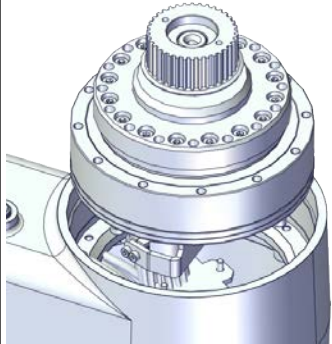
Removing the axis-2 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |
| 2 | <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Removing gearboxes will release axes. This means the axes can fall down.</p> <p>Make sure axes are well supported before removing gearboxes.</p> | |
| 3 | <p>Move the lower arm aside a little to access the gearbox screws.</p> | |


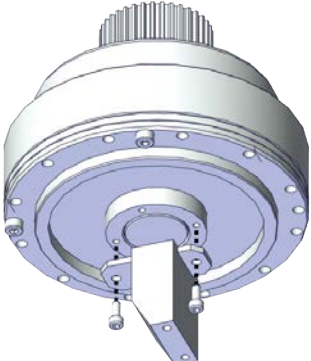
Continues on next page

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|-----------------------|--|
| 4 | Remove the screws. |  xx1800003082 |
| 5 | Pull out the gearbox. |  xx1800003083 |

Removing the cable block

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the cable block from the gearbox. |  xx1800003084 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

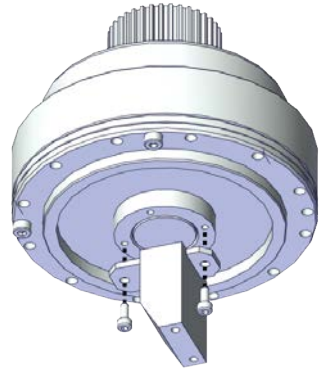
5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

Continued

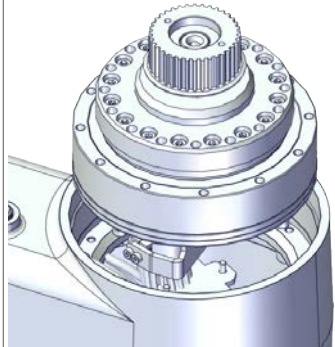
Refitting the gearbox

Use these procedures to refit the axis-2 gearbox.

Refitting the cable block

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Refit the cable block to the axis-2 gearbox. | <p>Screw: M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003084</p> |

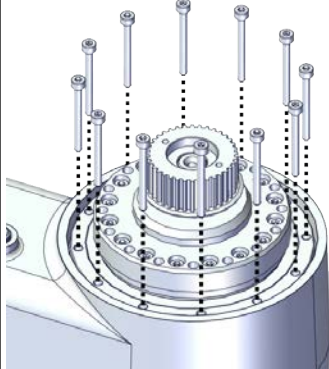
Refitting the axis-2 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|---------------------------|---|
| 1 | Refit the axis-2 gearbox. |  <p>xx1800003083</p> |


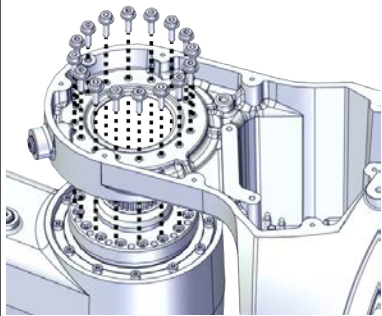
Continues on next page

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

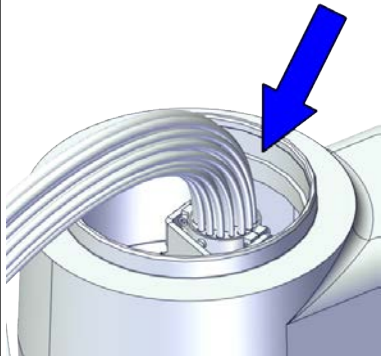
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---------------------|--|
| 2 | Secure with screws. | <p>Screw: M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (12 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.9 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003082</p> |

Refitting the swing to the lower arm

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Refit the swing to the lower arm.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Some robots may be fitted with separate screws and washers. During replacement, always use the same screws (and washers) that are fitted on the robot at delivery. Contact ABB for more information.</p> | <p>Flange screws (16 pcs) Tightening torque: 4.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1900002203</p> |

Securing the swing support


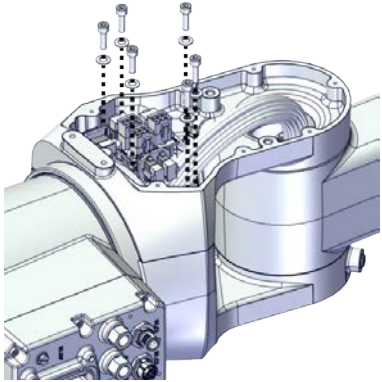
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Apply grease Castrol Molub-Alloy 777-1 NG to the inner surface of the lower arm, where contacts the bearing on the swing support. |  <p>xx2000000058</p> |

Continues on next page

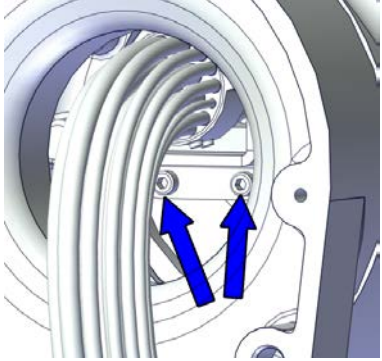
5 Repair

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Refit the swing support.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>If the swing support is hard to closely fit to the lower arm, use a plastic hammer to knock on the swing support lightly.</p> | <p>Screw: M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (6 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003079</p> |

Securing the upper cable package to the axis-2 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|--------------------------|---|
| 1 | Refit the cable bracket. | <p>Screw: M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003002</p> |

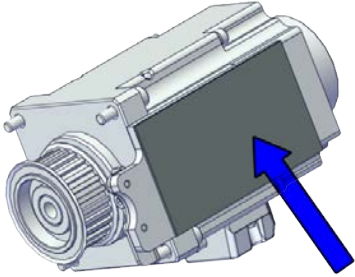
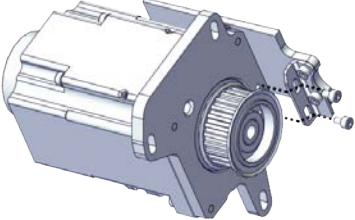

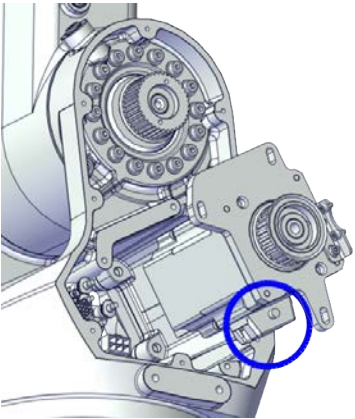
Refitting the axis-2 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | <p>Check that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages• the motor is clean and undamaged. | |

Continues on next page

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

Continued


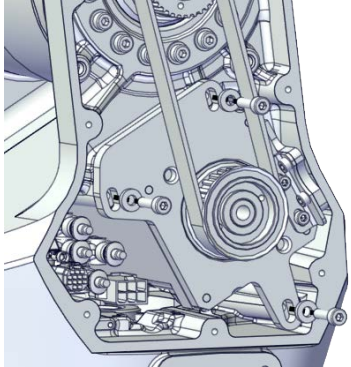
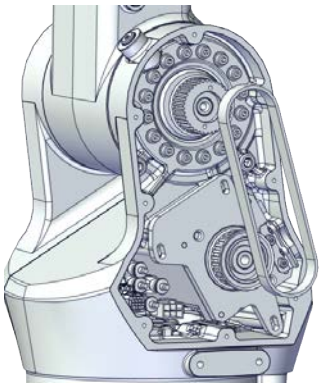

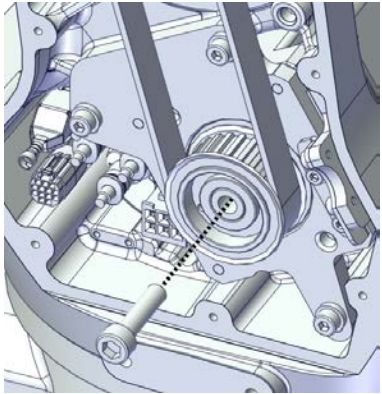
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | <p>Check the cooling pad. Replace if damaged, as shown in the following step.</p> | <p>Cooling pad for axis-1 and -2 motors: 3HAC071020-001</p>  <p>xx1800003603</p> |
| 3 | <p>Remove the screws. Replace with a new cooling pad and then refit the screws.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x5 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003026</p> |
| 4 | <p>Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the swing.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Bend the motor signal cable back towards the swing support.</p> | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003027</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

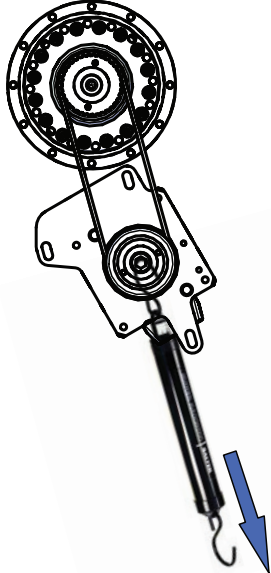
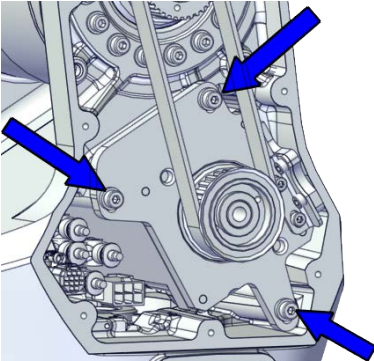
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 5 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M4x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washer, 3HAC063985-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800002494</p> |
| 6 | <p>Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys.</p> |  <p>xx1800003028</p> |
| 7 | <p>Install an M6x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not insert the entire screw to the hole.</p> |  <p>xx1900000010</p> |

Continues on next page

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

Continued

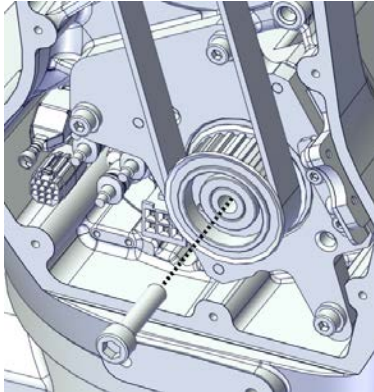

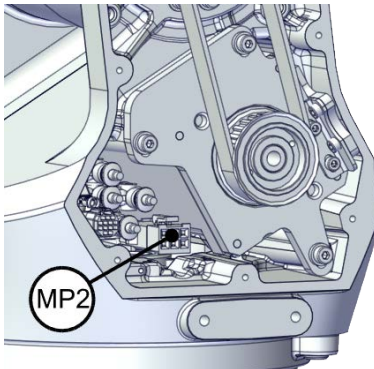
| | Action | Note |
|----|---|---|
| 8 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force. | <p>Initial referenced force for used belt: 68.18-75.04 N (for reference only)</p> <p>Initial referenced force for new belt: 97.4-107.2 N</p>  <p>xx1900000029</p> |
| 9 | Secure the motor with the screws. | <p>Tightening torque: 3.5 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800002493</p> |
| 10 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. | <p>Used belt: 163-174 Hz</p> <p>New belt: 180-229 Hz (for reference only)</p> |
| 11 | If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust. | |

Continues on next page

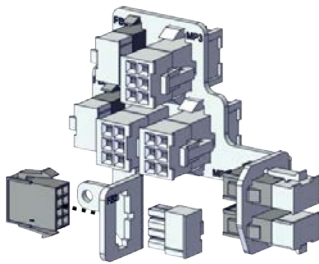
5 Repair

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|--|--|
| 12 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  xx1900000010 |
| 13 | <p>Reconnect the connector.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• MP2 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  xx1800002495 |


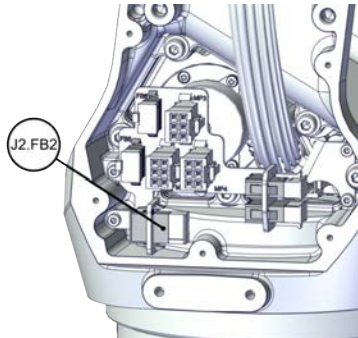

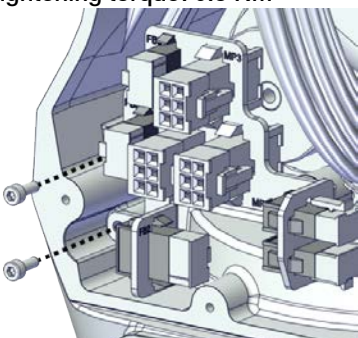
Reconnecting the connector at the division point

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Insert the female header of the connector to the connector plate. |  xx1800002491 |

Continues on next page

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | Reconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> J2.FB2  Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector. |  xx1800002490 |
| 3 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |
| 4 | Refit the connector plate. | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm  xx1800002489 |

Refitting the swing covers

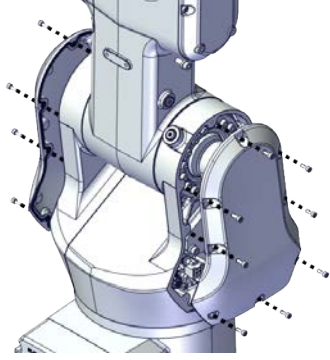
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package. | |
| 2 | Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package. | |

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | Refit the covers. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Swing cover• Swing support cover | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9</p> <p>Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003607</p> |

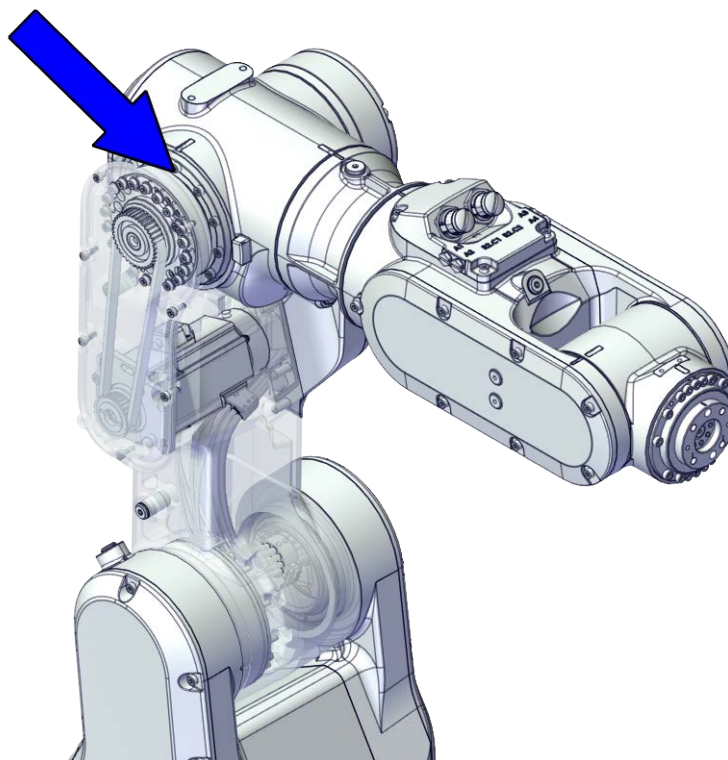
Concluding procedure

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Recalibrate the robot. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |
| 2 |  DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 161 . | |

5.8.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

Location of the axis-3 gearbox

The axis-3 gearbox is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002480

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|-------------------------------|----------------|------|
| Gear unit with pulley, axis 3 | 3HAC073518-001 | |
| Labyrinth sealing ring | 3HAC073218-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 3 | 3HAC083587-001 | |
| Timing belt, axis 3 | 3HAC061936-001 | |
| Lower arm cover | 3HAC069057-001 | |
| Lower arm support cover | 3HAC069059-001 | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

Continued

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|---|
| Cooling pad for axis-3 and -4 motors | 3HAC071021-001 | Cooling pads are wear parts. One cooling pad sheet includes 10 pieces of small pad. Replace if damaged with one piece each time. |
| Washer | 3HAC063985-001 | 9x4.3x1, Steel |

Required tools and equipment

| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |
| Sonic tension meter | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| Dynamometer | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |


Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|----------------|----------------|---|
| Cable straps | - | |
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |
| Grease | - | Castrol Molub. Alloy 777-1 NG Used to lubricate bearings on the swing support and lower arm support. |
| Locking liquid | - | Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243) |

Continues on next page

Deciding calibration routine

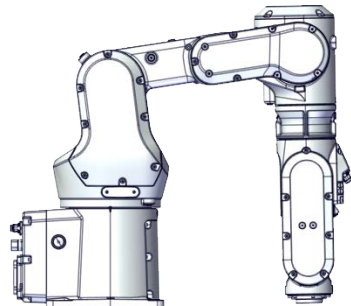
Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot. Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. |  Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mounting flange is used for installation of the calibration tool. |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 664 . |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. | |

Removing the gearbox

Use these procedures to remove the axis-3 gearbox.

Preparations before removing the axis-3 gearbox


| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |
| 2 | Jog the robot to the specified position: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Axis 1: 0° Axis 2: 110° (CRB 1100-4/0.475) /95° (CRB 1100-4/0.58) Axis 3: -20° (CRB 1100-4/0.475) / -6° (CRB 1100-4/0.58) Axis 4: 0° Axis 5: 0° Axis 6: No significance. |  xx1800003289 |

Continues on next page


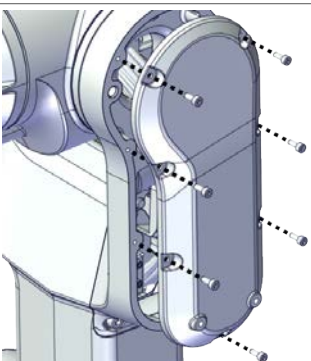

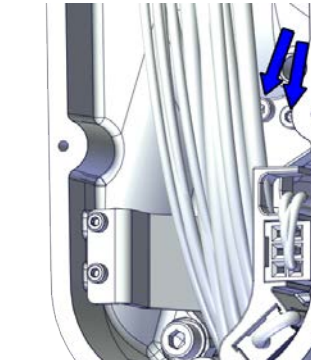
5 Repair

5.8.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox


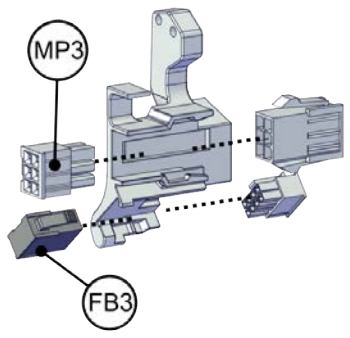
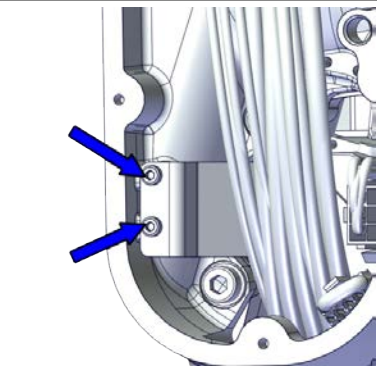
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 3 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• electric power supply• hydraulic pressure supply• air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. | |




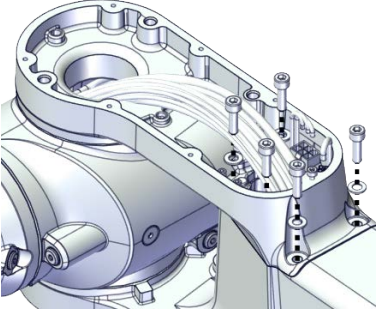
Disconnecting the axis-3 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the lower arm support cover. |  xx1800003003 |
| 3 | Remove the connector plate.  CAUTION Be aware of the cablings that are attached to the connector plate! The connector plate cannot be removed completely until the connectors are removed from the plate, as shown in following step. |  xx1800003004 |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 4 | <p>Slide the connectors out of the connector plate and disconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB3 • MP3 <p> Tip</p> <p>Take photos of the connector and cable position before disconnecting them, to have as a reference when reconnecting.</p> |  <p>xx1800003005</p> |
| 5 | Remove the cable bracket. |  <p>xx1800003006</p> |

Loosening the lower arm support

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p> DANGER</p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> | |
| 2 | <p>Loosen the lower arm support screws.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>If the lower arm support is hard to loosen from the housing, use a plastic hammer to knock on the lower arm support lightly.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>The support cannot be removed completely. Make sure the hanging support will not wear or damage the cable harness.</p> |  <p>xx1800003286</p> |



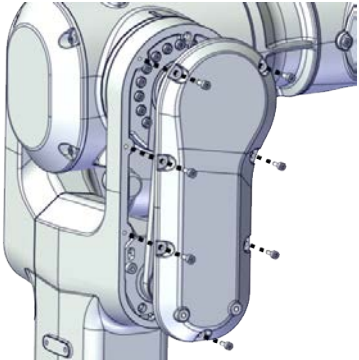
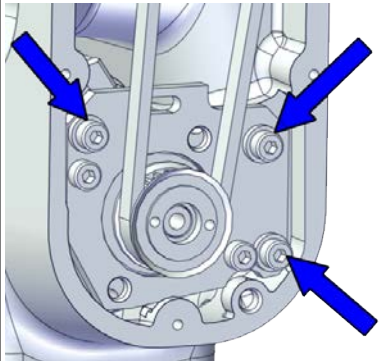
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

Continued

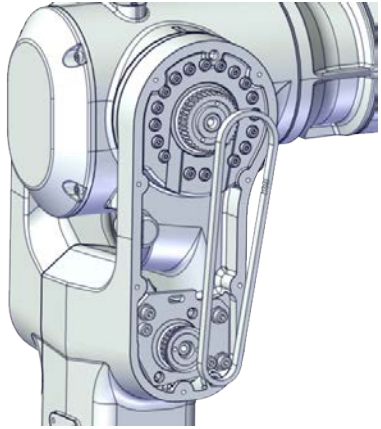
Loosening the axis-3 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Loosening timing belts will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before loosening timing belts. | |
| 3 | Remove the lower arm cover. |  xx1800003007 |
| 4 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800003008 |



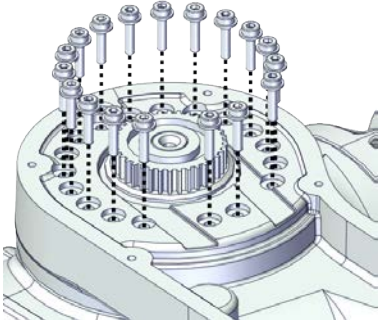

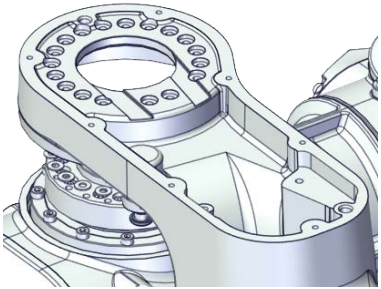
Continues on next page

5.8.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | Remove the timing belt from its grooves on the motor and gearbox. |  <p>xx1800003022</p> |

Separating the lower arm from the housing

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the screws.  Note Some robots may be fitted with separate screws and washers. During replacement, always use the same screws (and washers) that are fitted on the robot at delivery. Contact ABB for more information. |  <p>xx1900002190</p> |
| 3 | Separate the lower arm from the housing.  Tip If the lower arm is hard to loosen from the housing, use a plastic hammer to knock on the lower arm lightly. |  <p>xx1800003090</p> |



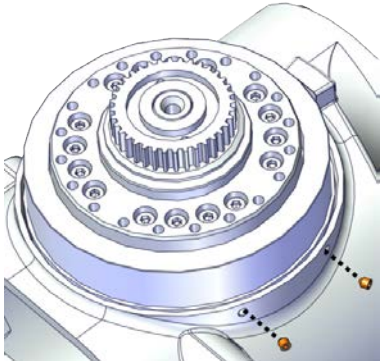
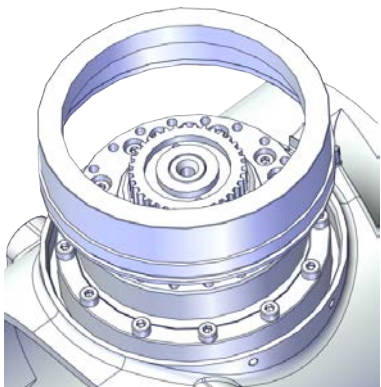
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

Continued

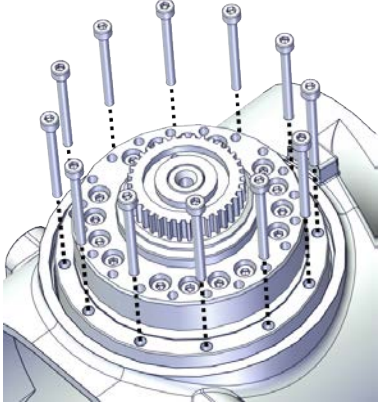
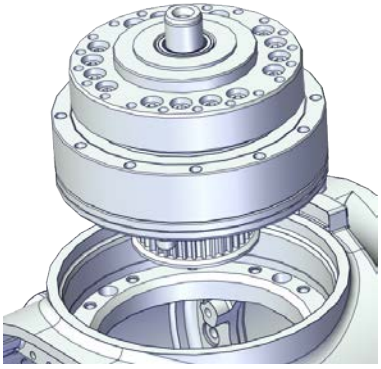
Removing the axis-3 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing gearboxes will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing gearboxes. | |
| 3 | Remove the screws on the labyrinth sealing ring. |  xx1900001425 |
| 4 | Remove the labyrinth sealing ring lightly and evenly. |  xx1900001417 |

Continues on next page

5.8.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

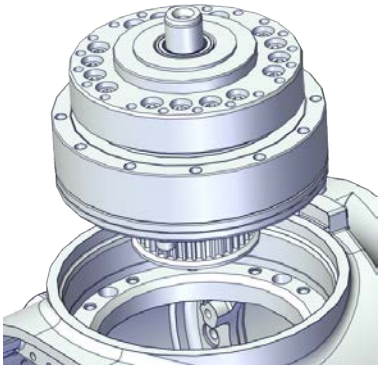
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|-----------------------|--|
| 5 | Remove the screws. |  xx1800003284 |
| 6 | Pull out the gearbox. |  xx1800003285 |

Refitting the gearbox

Use these procedures to refit the axis-3 gearbox.

Refitting the axis-3 gearbox

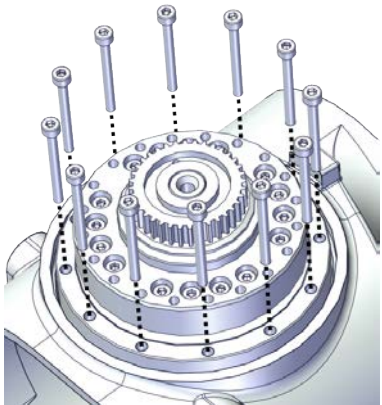
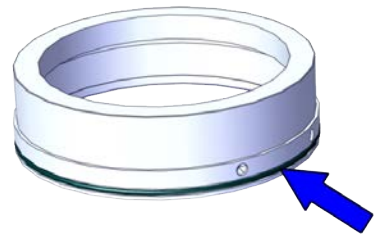

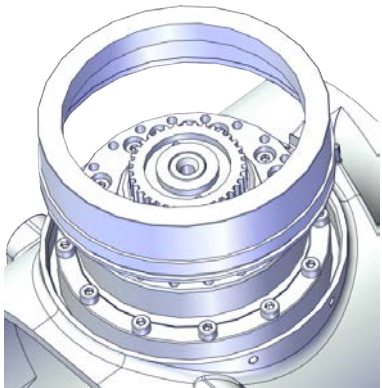
| | Action | Note |
|---|---------------------------|---|
| 1 | Refit the axis-3 gearbox. |  xx1800003285 |

Continues on next page

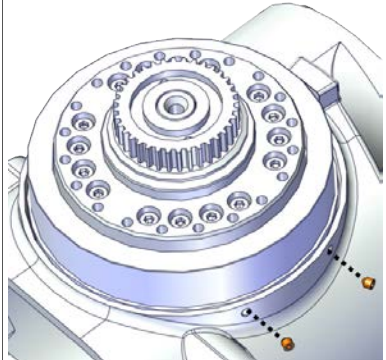
5 Repair

5.8.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox


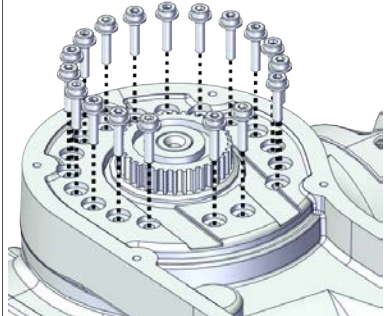
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | Secure with screws. | <p>Screw: M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (12 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003284</p> |
| 3 | Check the O-ring. Replace if damaged. |  <p>xx1900001424</p> |
| 4 | <p>Refit the labyrinth sealing ring lightly and evenly.</p> <p> Note Make sure the labyrinth sealing ring is well fitted to the axis-3 gearbox without any deflection.</p> |  <p>xx1900001417</p> |

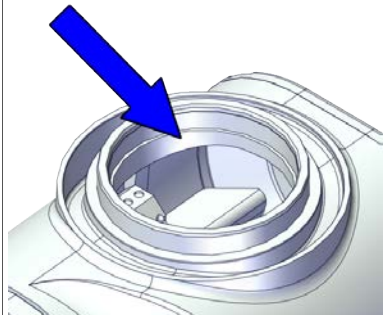
Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 5 | Apply a little Loctite 243 to the screws and secure the labyrinth sealing ring with the screws. | <p>Screw: M3x4 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1900001425</p> |

Refitting the lower arm to the housing

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Refit the lower arm to the housing.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Some robots may be fitted with separate screws and washers. During replacement, always use the same screws (and washers) that are fitted on the robot at delivery. Contact ABB for more information.</p> | <p>Flange screws (16 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.9 Nm</p>  <p>xx1900002190</p> |

Securing the lower arm support

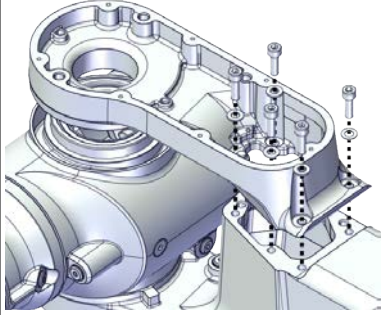
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Apply grease Castrol Molub-Alloy 777-1 NG to the inner surface of the housing, where contacts the bearing on the lower arm support. |  <p>xx2000000059</p> |

Continues on next page

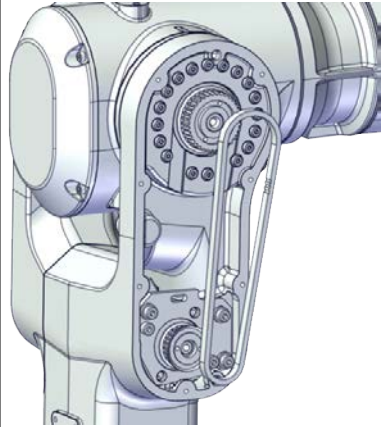

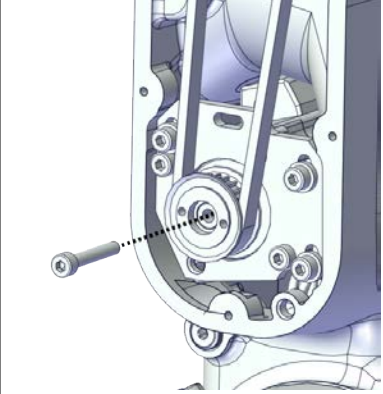
5 Repair

5.8.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | Refit the lower arm support. | <p>Screw: M5x16 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (5 pcs) Tightening torque: 8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003088</p> |
| 3 | Route the cable package through the lower arm support. | |

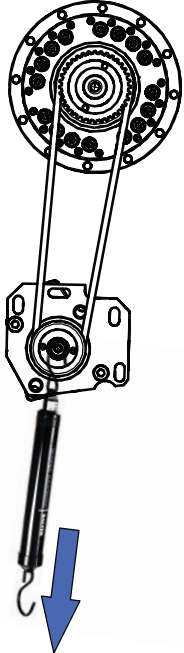
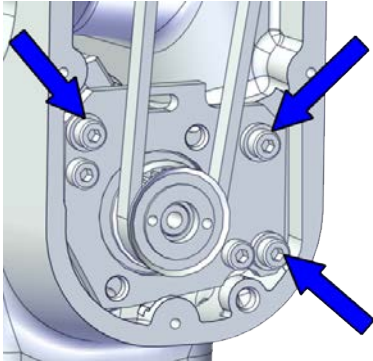
Securing the axis-3 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys. |  <p>xx1800003022</p> |
| 2 | <p>Install an M4x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not insert the entire screw to the hole.</p> |  <p>xx1900000009</p> |

Continues on next page

5.8.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

Continued

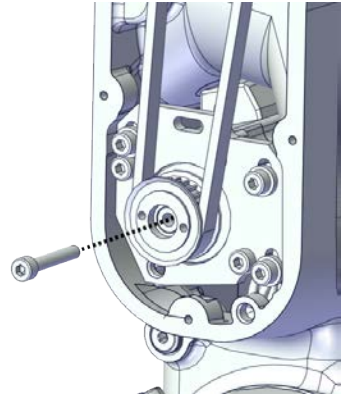
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force. | <p>Initial referenced force for used belt: 21.7-23.94 N (for reference only)</p> <p>Initial referenced force for new belt: 31-34.2 N</p>  <p>xx1900000028</p> |
| 4 | Secure the motor with the screws. | <p>Screw: M4x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Washer, 3HAC063985-001 (3 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 3 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003008</p> |
| 5 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. | <p>Used belt: 102-109 Hz</p> <p>New belt: 113-143 Hz (for reference only)</p> |
| 6 | If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust. | |

Continues on next page


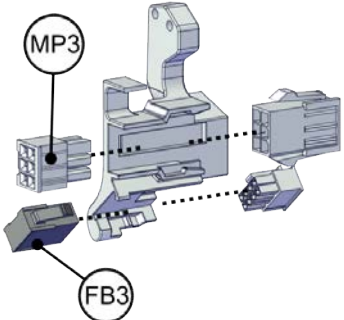

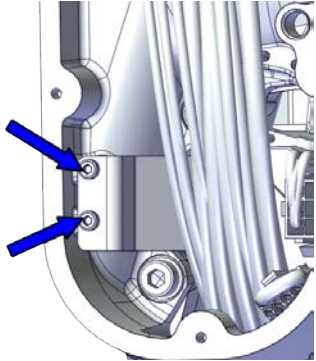
5 Repair

5.8.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

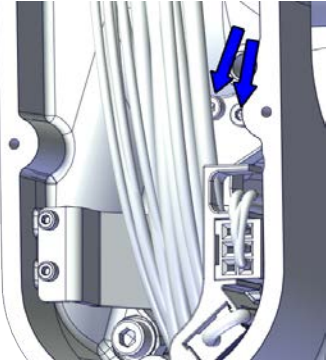
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 7 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  xx1900000009 |

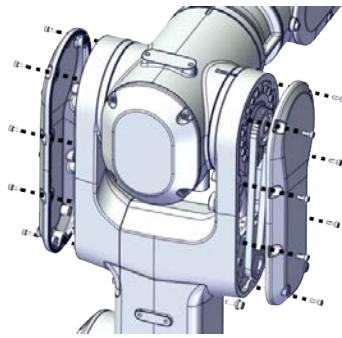
Reconnecting the axis-3 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Slide the connectors into the connector plate and reconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB3 • MP3  Tip See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector. |  xx1800003005 |
| 2 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |
| 3 | Refit the cable bracket. | Screw: M2.5x6 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.6 Nm  xx1800003006 |


Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|----------------------------|---|
| 4 | Refit the connector plate. | <p>Screw: M3x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (2 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003004</p> |

Refitting the lower arm covers

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package. | |
| 2 | Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package. | |
| 3 | Refit the covers. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lower arm cover Lower arm support cover | <p>Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003608</p> |

Concluding procedure

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Recalibrate the robot. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |
| 2 |  DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 161 . | |

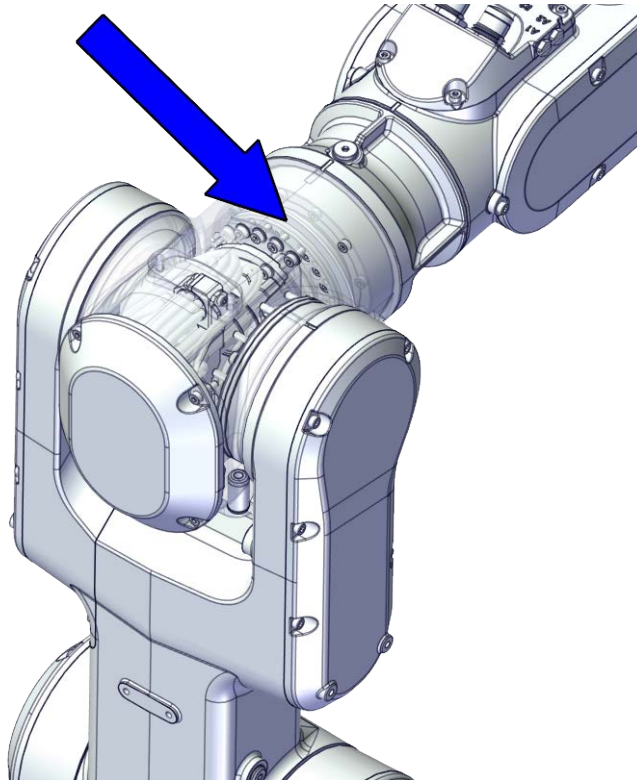
5 Repair

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Location of the axis-4 gearbox

The axis-4 gearbox is located as shown in the figure.



xx1800002481

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the CRB 1100 via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|------|
| Process hub with lamp unit (CP/CS and air hose, with Ethernet) | 3HAC077335-001 | |
| Gear unit with pulley, axis 4 | 3HAC073519-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 4 | 3HAC083586-001 | |
| Timing belt, axis 4 | 3HAC061937-001 | |
| Motor with flange, axis 6 | 3HAC083584-001 | |
| Timing belt, axis 6 | 3HAC061939-001 | |
| Housing cover | 3HAC069054-001 | |
| Wrist cover | 3HAC069061-001 | |

Continues on next page

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|---|
| Cooling pad for axis-3 and -4 motors | 3HAC071021-001 | Cooling pads are wear parts. One cooling pad sheet includes 10 pieces of small pad. Replace if damaged with one piece each time. |
| Washer | 3HAC064765-001 | 7x3.2x1.5, Steel |

Required tools and equipment

| Equipment | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Standard toolkit | - | Content is defined in section Standard toolkit on page 710 . |
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| 24 VDC power supply | - | Used to release the motor brakes. |
| M3x25 eye bolt | - | Included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001. |
| Dynamometer | - | Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| J5.C2 connector assembly tool | - | Included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001. Used to remove and refit the J5.C2 connector, if the Ethernet cabling is equipped. |
| axis-4 motor fitting tool | - | Included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001. Used to refit the axis-4 motor. |

Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|----------------|----------------|--|
| Cable straps | - | |
| Grease | 3HAC029132-001 | FM 222 |
| Locking liquid | - | Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243) |

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued

Deciding calibration routine

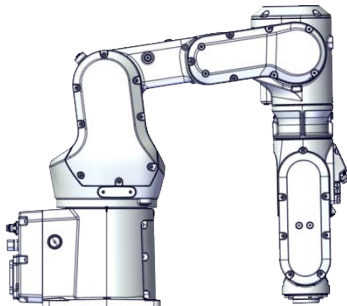
Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot. |  Note Calibrating axis 6 always requires tools to be removed from the mounting flange (also for reference calibration) since the mounting flange is used for installation of the calibration tool. |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration: Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot. If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in Reference calibration routine on page 664 . |
| | If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration: Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. | |


Removing the gearbox

Use these procedures to remove the axis-4 gearbox.



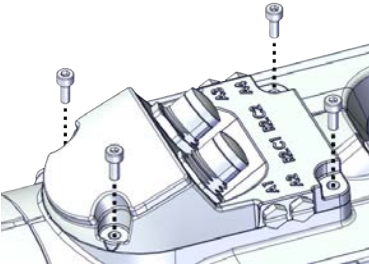
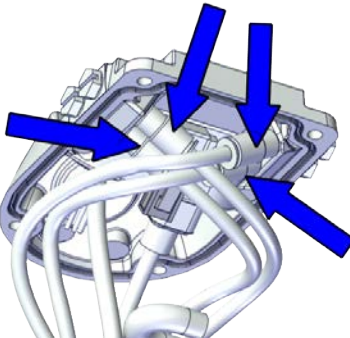
Preparations before removing the axis-4 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. | |
| 2 | Jog the robot to the specified position: <ul style="list-style-type: none">Axis 1: 0°Axis 2: 110° (CRB 1100-4/0.475) /95° (CRB 1100-4/0.58)Axis 3: -20° (CRB 1100-4/0.475) / -6° (CRB 1100-4/0.58)Axis 4: 0°Axis 5: 0°Axis 6: No significance. |  xx1800003289 |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 3 |  DANGER Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • electric power supply • hydraulic pressure supply • air pressure supply to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. | |

Removing the process hub

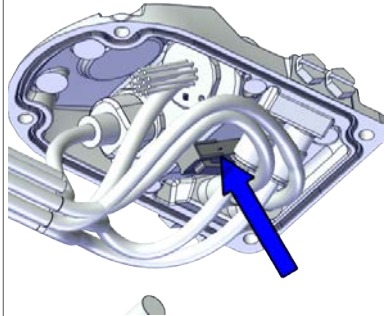
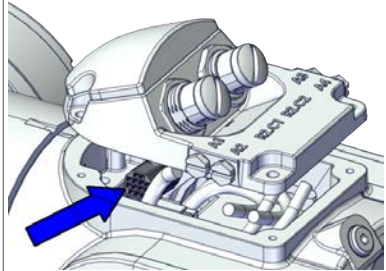
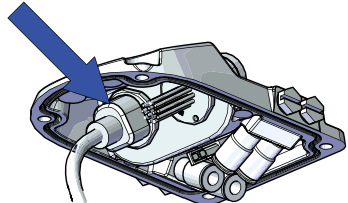
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the screws and carefully open the cover.  CAUTION Be aware of the cabling that is attached to the cover! The cover can not be removed completely until the connectors are disconnected, as shown in following steps. |  xx2000002219 |
| 3 | Disconnect the air hoses. |  xx1800002945 |

Continues on next page


5 Repair

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 4 | Carefully pull out lamp unit connector behind the air hose connectors and disconnect the connector J5.UL. |  xx1800002946 |
| 5 | For robots with CP/CS cabling Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> J5.C1 |  xx2100000293 |
| 6 | For robots with Ethernet cabling Disconnect the connector J5.C2 using the tool. | J5.C2 connector assembly tool: -  xx1800002948 |

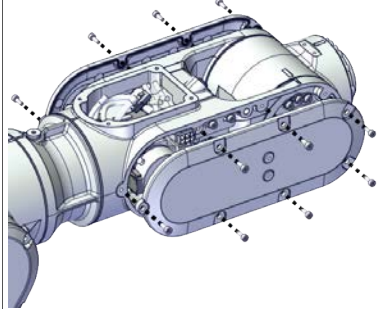
Removing the wrist covers

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |


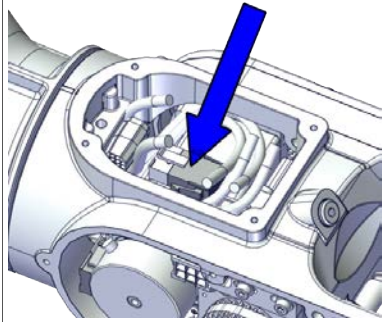
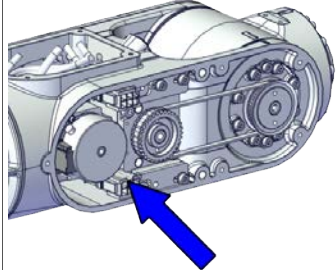
Continues on next page

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | Remove the wrist covers from both sides. |  <p>xx1800002949</p> |

Disconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Access the connector FB5 from the process hub and disconnect the connector. |  <p>xx1800002950</p> |
| 3 | Disconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> MP5 |  <p>xx1800002993</p> |


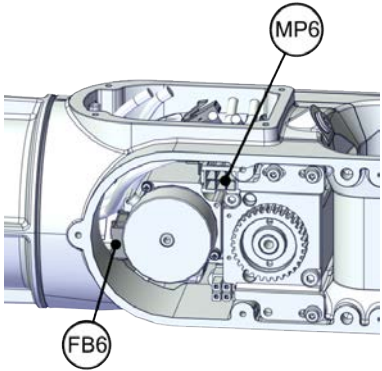
Continues on next page

5 Repair



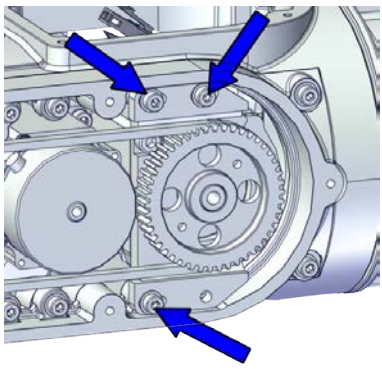
5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued

Disconnecting the axis-6 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Disconnect the connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• MP6• FB6 |  xx1800002994 |

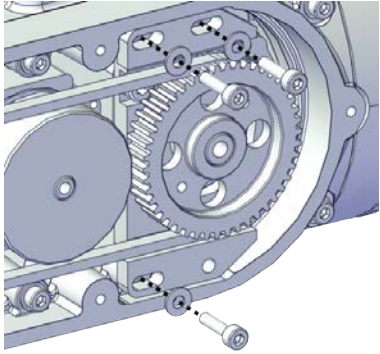
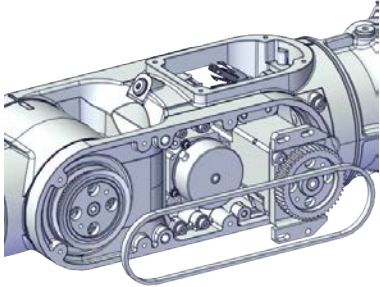
Removing the axis-6 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |
| 3 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800002995 |


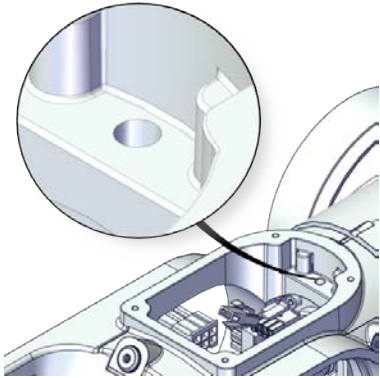
Continues on next page

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 4 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800002996 |
| 5 | Carefully lift out the motor. | |
| 6 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800002997 |

Loosening the cable package from axis-4 gearbox

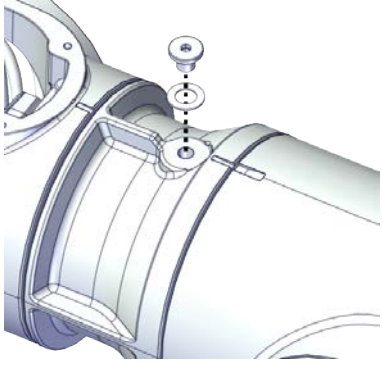
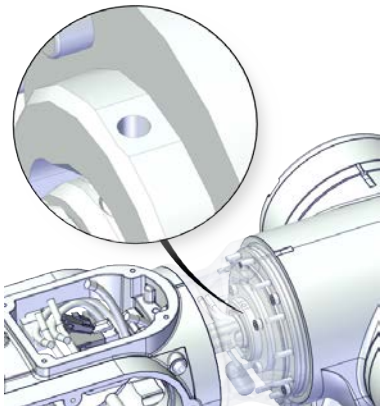
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.475 Access the cable package locking screw on the axis-4 gearbox from the wrist and then loosen the locking screw. |  xx1800003031 |

Continues on next page


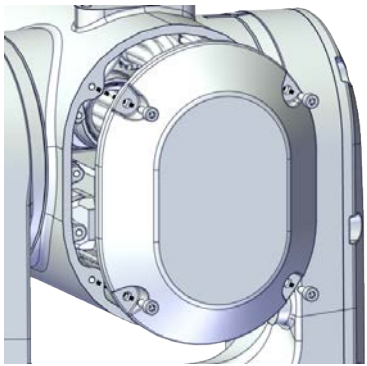
5 Repair

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

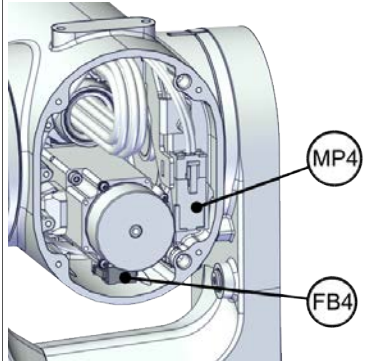
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58 Remove the plug screw and washer on the extender unit to access the cable package locking screw on the axis-4 gearbox and then loosen the locking screw. |  xx1800003000  xx1800003001 |


Disconnecting the axis-4 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the housing cover. |  xx1800003011 |



Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | Disconnect the motor connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB4 • MP4 |  <p>xx1800003012</p> |

Pulling out the upper cable harness

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Pull out the upper cable harness from the housing. | |

Removing the axis-4 motor

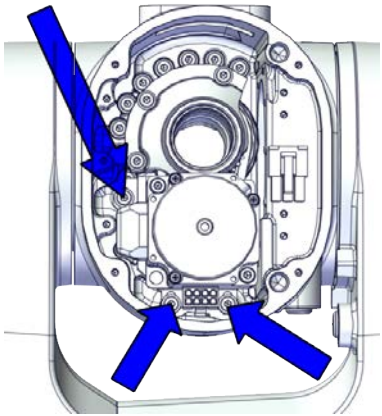
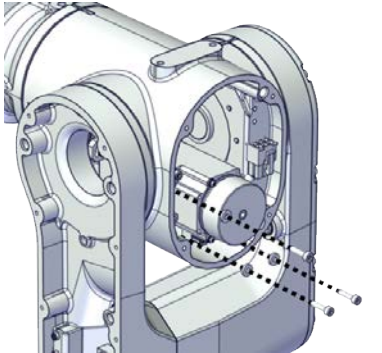

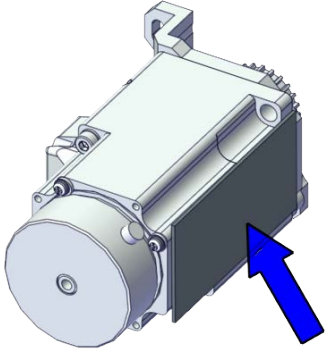
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing motors will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing motors. | |

Continues on next page

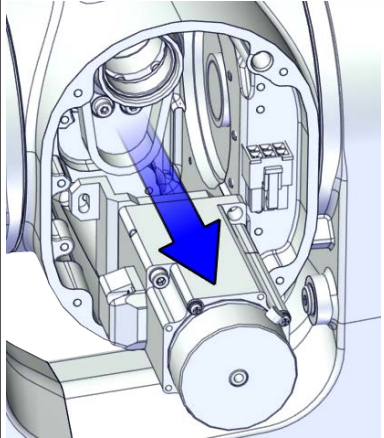
5 Repair

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox



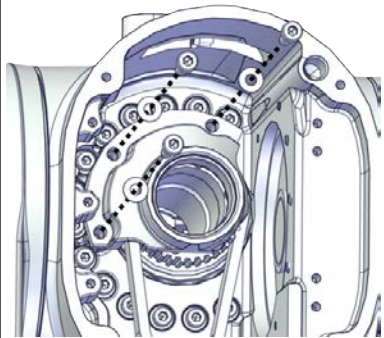
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | Loosen the screws and move the motor slightly to slacken the timing belt. |  xx1800003094 |
| 4 | Remove the screws and washers. |  xx1800003095 |
| 5 | <p>Carefully lift out the motor.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>A cooling pad is attached to the motor, which may stick to the casting. Always use a plastic sheet with caution to remove the pad from the casting. Pay attention not to scratch the casting or damage the pad.</p> | <p>Cooling pad location</p>  xx1800003605 |

Continues on next page

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 6 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the motor. |  xx1800003096 |

Removing the pulley cover and axis-4 timing belt

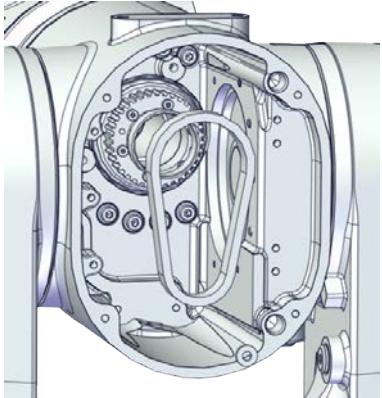
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Loosening timing belts will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before loosening timing belts. | |
| 3 | Remove the pulley cover. |  xx1800003097 |

Continues on next page



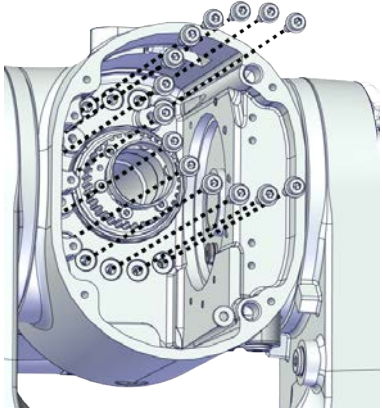
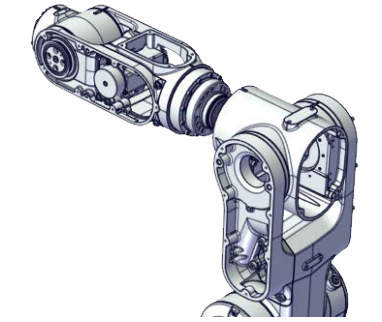
5 Repair

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 4 | Remove the timing belt from its groove on the gearbox. |  xx1800003098 |

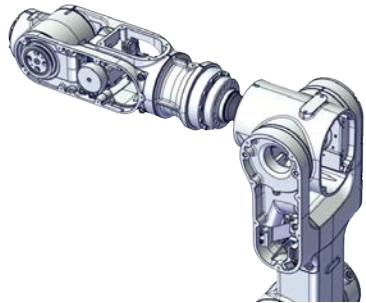
Separating the housing

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 | Remove the screws.  Note Some robots may be fitted with separate screws and washers. During replacement, always use the same screws (and washers) that are fitted on the robot at delivery. Contact ABB for more information. |  xx1900002191 |
| 3 | Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.475 Separate the wrist from the housing. |  xx1800003075 |



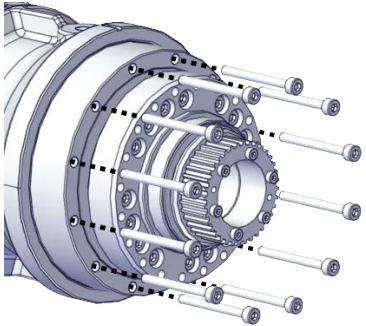
Continues on next page

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 4 | Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58 Separate the extender unit and wrist from the housing. |  xx1800003100 |

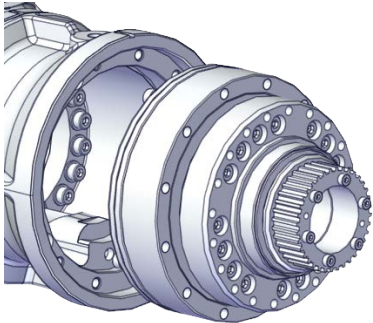
Removing the axis-4 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  DANGER Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. | |
| 2 |  CAUTION Removing gearboxes will release axes. This means the axes can fall down. Make sure axes are well supported before removing gearboxes. | |
| 3 | Remove the screws. |  xx1800003300 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox
Continued

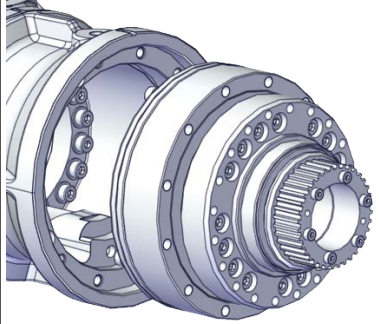
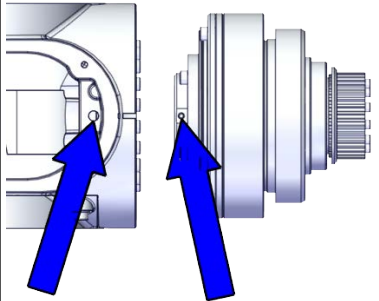
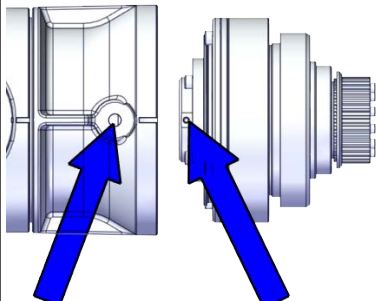
| | Action | Note |
|---|-----------------------|---|
| 4 | Pull out the gearbox. |  xx1800003310 |

Continues on next page

Refitting the gearbox

Use these procedures to refit the axis-4 gearbox.

Refitting the axis-4 gearbox

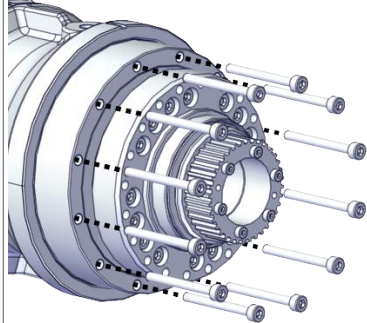
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Refit the axis-4 gearbox. Make sure the locking screw holes on the gearbox and extender unit or wrist are aligned with each other. |  xx1800003310 Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.475  xx1800003313 Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58  xx1800003312 |

Continues on next page

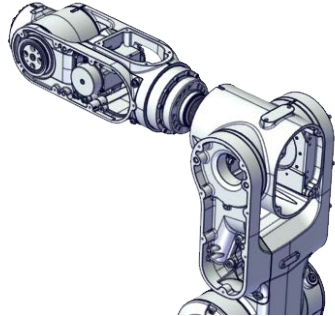
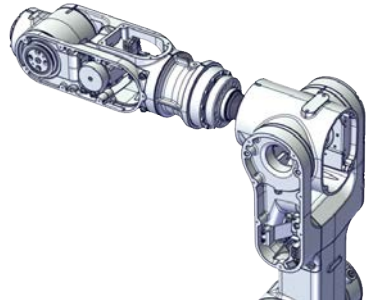
5 Repair

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---------------------|--|
| 2 | Secure with screws. | <p>Screw: M3x30 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (12 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.8 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003300</p> |


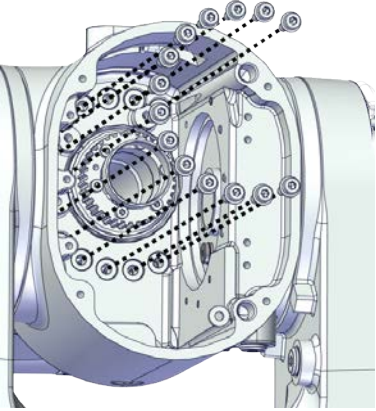
Refitting the housing

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.475 Refit the the wrist to the housing.</p> |  <p>xx1800003075</p> |
| 2 | <p>Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58 Refit the extender unit and wrist to the housing.</p> |  <p>xx1800003100</p> |

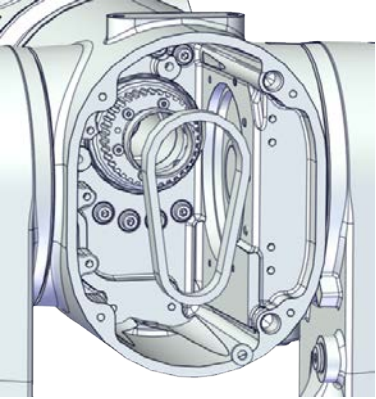
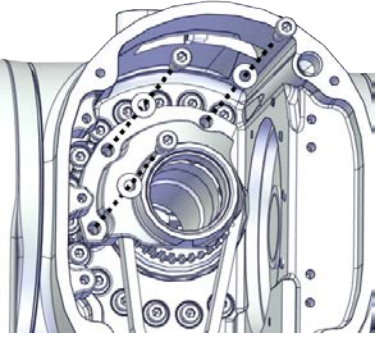
Continues on next page

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 3 | Refit the screws and washers.  Note Some robots may be fitted with separate screws and washers. During replacement, always use the same screws (and washers) that are fitted on the robot at delivery. Contact ABB for more information. | Flange screws (14 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.9 Nm  xx1900002191 |

Refitting the axis-4 timing belt and pulley cover

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Install the timing belt to the gearbox pulley and verify that the belt runs correctly in the groove of the pulley. |  xx1800003098 |
| 2 | Refit the pulley cover. | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx1800003097 |

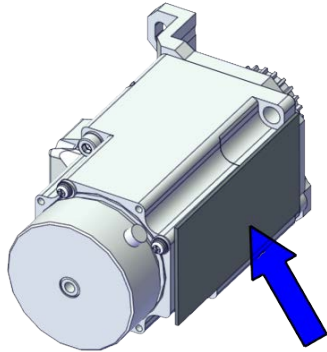
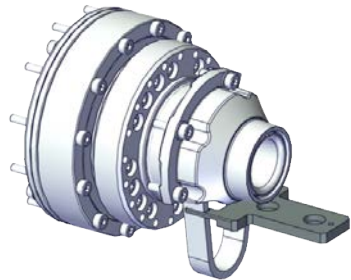
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued


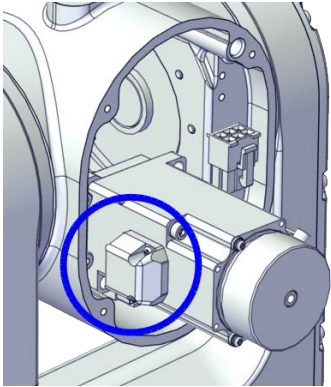
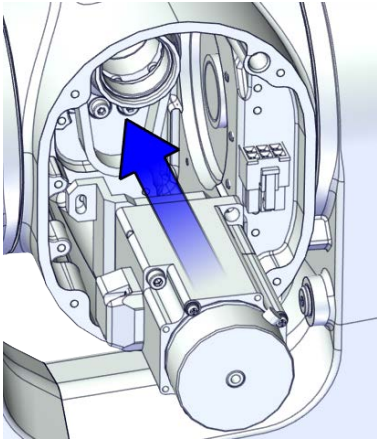

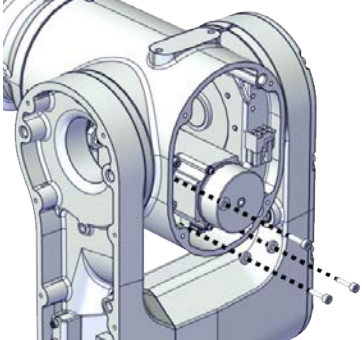
Refitting the axis-4 motor

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Check that: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages• the motor is clean and undamaged. | |
| 2 | Check the cooling pad. Replace if damaged. | Cooling pad for axis-3 and -4 motors: 3HAC071021-001  xx1800003605 |
| 3 | Use the motor fitting tool to fix the timing belt. | axis-4 motor fitting tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001.  xx1900000044 |

Continues on next page

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued

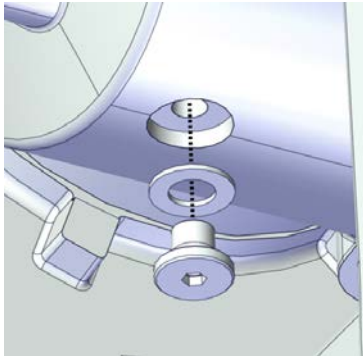
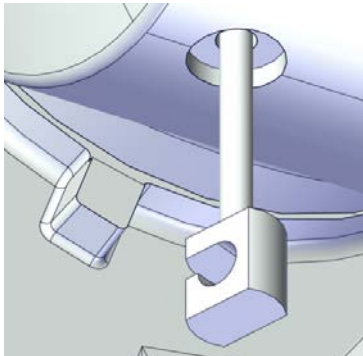
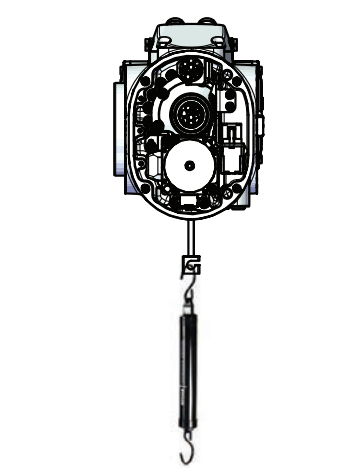
| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 4 | <p>Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the housing.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Make sure the motor flange does not press on the timing belt.</p> | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003287</p> |
| 5 | <p>Install the timing belt to the motor pulley.</p> |  <p>xx1800003617</p> |
| 6 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs) Washer, 3HAC064765-001 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800003095</p> |
| 7 | <p>Remove the motor fitting tool.</p> | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox
Continued


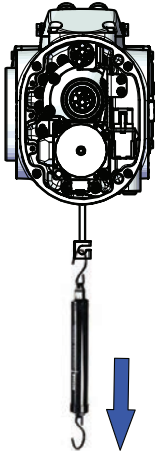
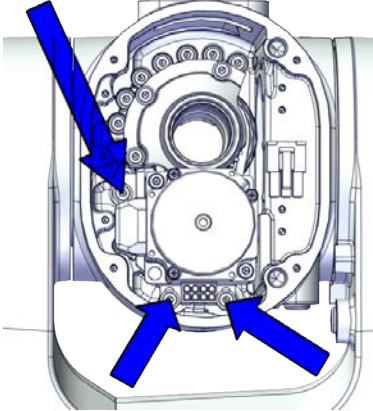
Adjusting the axis-4 timing belt tension

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Remove the screw and washer below the housing. |  xx1900000036 |
| 2 | Fit an M3x25 eye bolt o the screw hole. |  xx1900000037 |
| 3 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the eye bolt. |  xx1900000038 |

Continues on next page

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 4 | <p>Pull the dynamometer to make the tension falling in the allowed force range.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Pay attention to the force application direction.</p> | <p>Used belt: 20.09-22.05 N New belt: 28.7-31.5 N</p>  <p>xx1900000039</p> |
| 5 | Secure the motor with the screws. | <p>Tightening torque: 1.4 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003094</p> |
| 6 | Remove eye bolt and refit the screw and washer below the housing. | <p>Plug screw: 3HAC064146-001 Tightening torque: 2 Nm</p> |



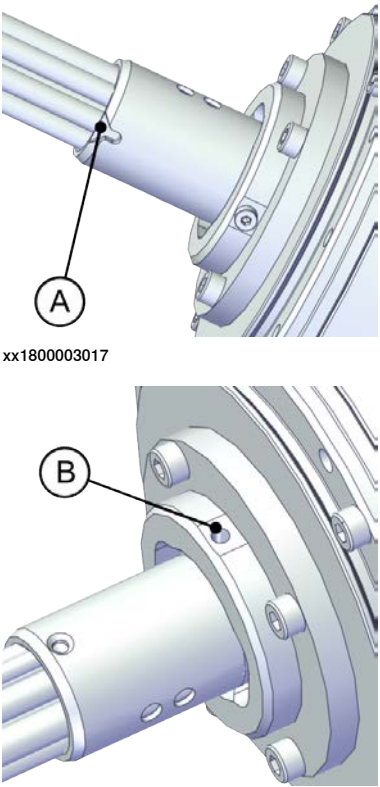
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

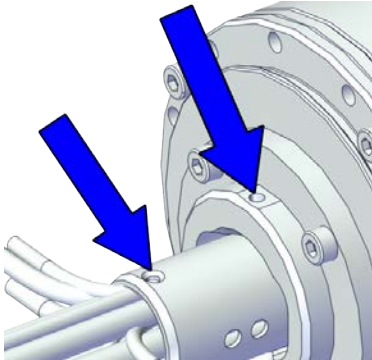
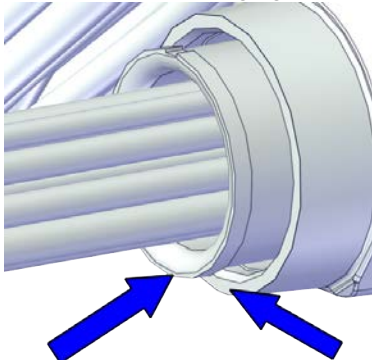
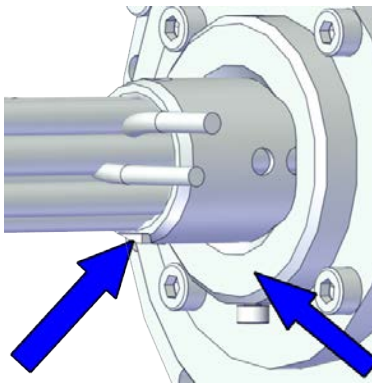
Continued

Refitting the upper cable harness through the axis-4 gearbox

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | <p>Insert the cable package in the housing and through the axis-4 gearbox.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Wrap the connectors with the masking tape.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Make sure that no cables or hoses are twisted or strained. Reroute if necessary.</p> | <p>Cable protection tube orientation: use the notch (A) on the cable protection tube as a reference when inserting the cable package, which should be at the opposite direction to the locking screw hole (B) on the gearbox.</p>  <p>xx1800003017</p> <p>xx1800003601</p> |

Continues on next page

Securing the upper cable package to the axis-4 gearbox



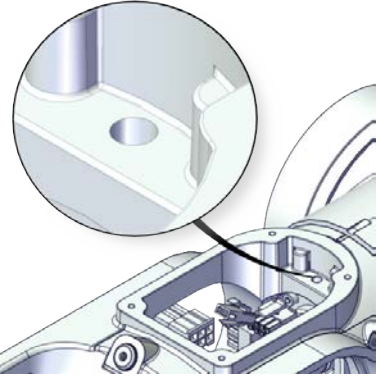
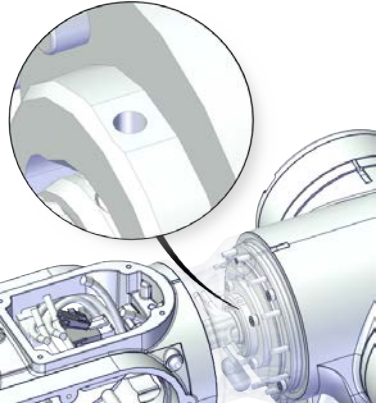
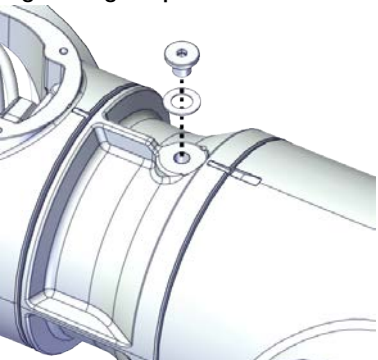
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Make sure that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The hole on the cable protection tube is aligned with the locking screw hole on the gearbox.• The cable protection tube surface is completely parallel with the pulley cover at one side and with the flange at the other side. | <p>Holes to be aligned are shown in the following figure.</p>  <p>xx1800003018</p> <p>Surfaces to be paralleled are shown in the following figures.</p>  <p>xx1800003019</p>  <p>xx1800003020</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued

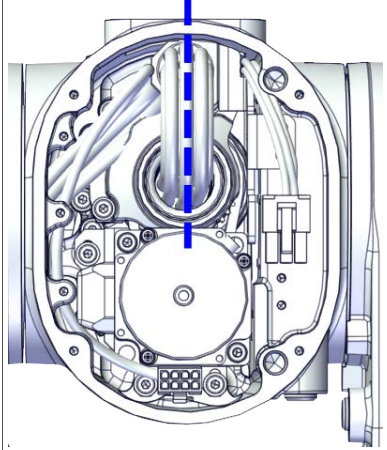

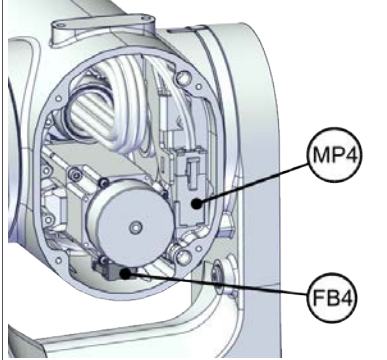
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | <p>Apply a little Loctite 243 to the locking screw and refit the locking screw.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Make sure the locking screw header is parallel with flange surface.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>If there is locking liquid residues on the screw or screw hole, please clean it before refitting. Remove residual locking liquid after refitting.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x8 (1 pcs) Tightening torque: 0.4 Nm Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.475</p>  <p>xx1800003031</p> <p>Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58</p>  <p>xx1800003001</p> |
| 3 | <p>Valid for CRB 1100-4/0.58</p> <p>Refit the plug screw and washer on the extender unit.</p> | <p>Plug screw: 3HAC064146-001 Tightening torque: 2 Nm</p>  <p>xx1800003000</p> |

Continues on next page

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued

Reconnecting the axis-4 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | <p>Check the cabling status. Make sure the cabling is in vertical state and is not twisted.</p> |  <p>xx1800003618</p> |
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB4 • MP4 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003012</p> |

Refitting the axis-6 motor


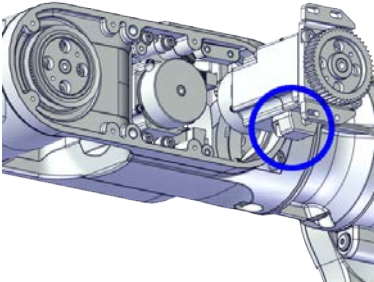

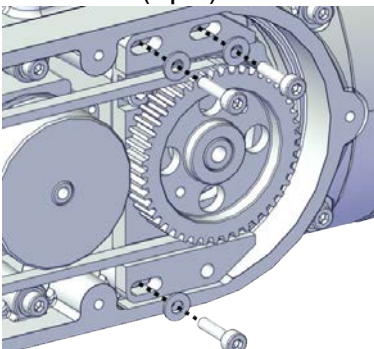
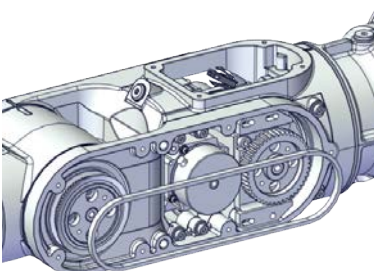
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 | <p>Check that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • all assembly surfaces are clean and without damages • the motor is clean and undamaged. | |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox


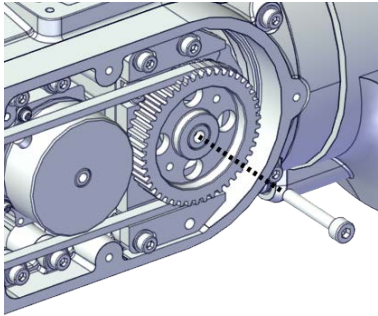
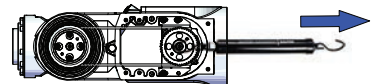
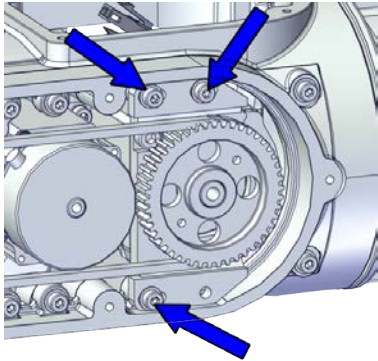
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | <p>Orient the motor correctly and fit it into the lower arm.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>Leave the connectors FB5 and FB6 accessible from the process hub and the connectors MP5 and MP6 accessible from wrist side.</p> | <p>Motor orientation: orient the motor according to the figure below, in regard to the encircled motor connector.</p>  <p>xx1800003023</p> |
| 3 | <p>Refit the screws and washers.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>Do not tighten the screws yet.</p> | <p>Screw: M3x12 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (3 pcs)</p>  <p>xx1800002996</p> |
| 4 | <p>Install the timing belt to the pulleys and verify that the belt runs correctly in the grooves of the pulleys.</p> |  <p>xx1800003024</p> |

Continues on next page

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued

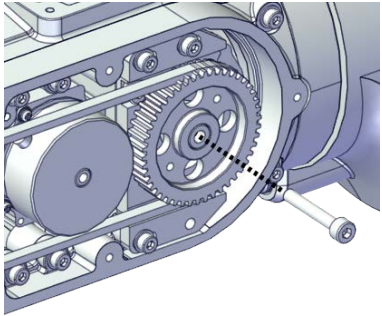
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 5 | Install an M4x25 or longer adjustment screw to the motor.  Note Do not insert the entire screw to the hole. |  xx1900000007 |
| 6 | Use a handheld dynamometer hooking to the screw and pull the dynamometer to reach the initial referenced force. | Initial referenced force for used belt: 8.96-9.8 N (for reference only) Initial referenced force for new belt: 12.8-14  xx1900000026 |
| 7 | Secure the motor with the screws. | Tightening torque: 1.4 Nm  xx1800002995 |
| 8 | Use a sonic tension meter to measure the timing belt tension. | Used belt: 81.3-86.9 Hz New belt: 90-114 Hz (for reference only) |
| 9 | If the timing belt tension does not meet the requirement, loosen the motor screws and readjust. | |

Continues on next page


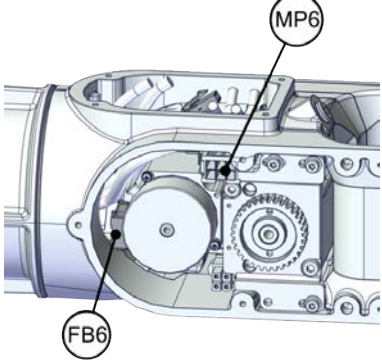

5 Repair

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|----|---|---|
| 10 | Remove the adjustment screw from the motor. |  xx1900000007 |


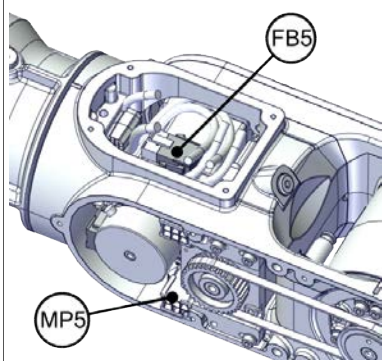

Reconnecting the axis-6 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• FB6• MP6 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  xx1800002994 |
| 2 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |
| 3 | Insert the cabling and connectors into the wrist. | |

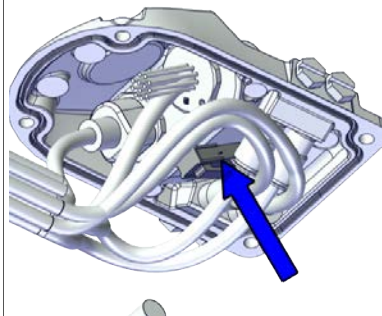

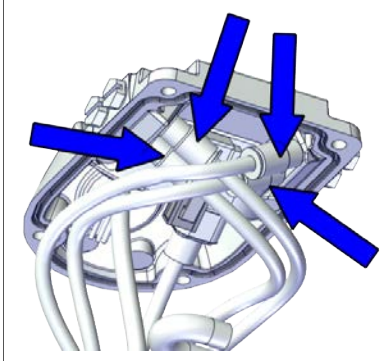
Continues on next page

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox
Continued

Reconnecting the axis-5 motor connectors

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | <p>Reconnect the connectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FB5 • MP5 <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the connectors for help to find the corresponding connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800003025</p> |
| 2 | <p>Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.</p> <p> CAUTION</p> <p>Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged.</p> | |
| 3 | Insert the cabling and connectors into the wrist. | |

Refitting the process hub

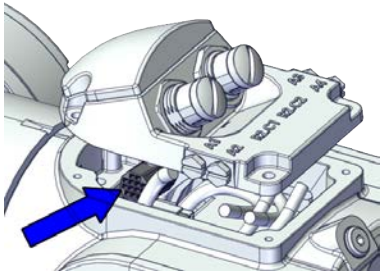
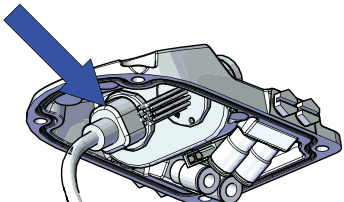

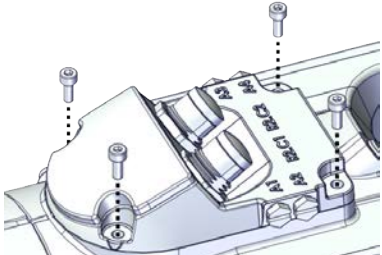
| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | <p>Reconnect the lamp unit connector J5.UL and place the connector behind the air hose connectors.</p> |  <p>xx1800002946</p> |
| 2 | <p>Reconnect the air hoses in a cross pattern.</p> <p> Tip</p> <p>See the number markings on the air hoses for help to find the corresponding air hoses. The air hoses with the same number connect to the same Y-shaped connector.</p> |  <p>xx1800002945</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 3 | For robots with CP/CS cabling Reconnect the connector. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> J5.C1 |  xx2100000293 |
| 4 | For robots with Ethernet cabling Reconnect the connector J5.C2 using the tool. | J5.C2 connector assembly tool, included in the special toolkit 3HAC071022-001  xx18000002948 |
| 5 | Route and secure the cabling with cable straps.  CAUTION Correct cable routing is highly important. If the cables are routed and secured incorrectly the cables can be damaged. | |
| 6 | Refit the cover. | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx20000002219 |

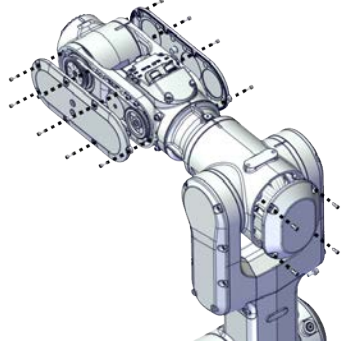
Refitting the covers

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|------|
| 1 | Apply grease to the cable package, cover all moving area of the package. | |
| 2 | Apply grease to the covers that have contacting area with the cable package. | |


Continues on next page

5.8.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|--|
| 3 | Refit the covers. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wrist covers • Housing cover | Screw: M3x8 12.9 Lafre 2C2B/FC6.9 Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  xx2000002150 |

Concluding procedure

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Recalibrate the robot. | Calibration is detailed in section Calibration on page 653 . |
| 2 |  DANGER Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 161 . | |

This page is intentionally left blank

6 Calibration

6.1 Introduction to calibration

6.1.1 Introduction and calibration terminology

Calibration information

This chapter includes general information about the recommended calibration methods and also the detailed procedures for updating the revolution counters, checking the calibration position etc.

Detailed instructions of how to perform Axis Calibration are given on the FlexPendant during the calibration procedure. To prepare calibration with Axis Calibration method, see [Calibrating with Axis Calibration method on page 663](#).

Calibration terminology

| Term | Definition |
|---------------------------|---|
| Calibration method | A collective term for several methods that might be available for calibrating the ABB robot. Each method contains calibration routines. |
| Synchronization position | Known position of the complete robot where the angle of each axis can be checked against visual synchronization marks. |
| Calibration position | Known position of the complete robot that is used for calibration of the robot. |
| Standard calibration | A generic term for all calibration methods that aim to move the robot to calibration position. |
| Fine calibration | A calibration routine that generates a new zero position of the robot. |
| Reference calibration | <p>A calibration routine that in the first step generates a reference to current zero position of the robot. The same calibration routine can later on be used to recalibrate the robot back to the same position as when the reference was stored.</p> <p>This routine is more flexible compared to fine calibration and is used when tools and process equipment are installed.</p> <p>Requires that a reference is created before being used for recalibrating the robot.</p> <p>Requires that the robot is dressed with the same tools and process equipment during calibration as during creation of the reference values.</p> |
| Update revolution counter | A calibration routine to make a rough calibration of each manipulator axis. |
| Synchronization mark | Visual marks on the robot axes. When marks are aligned, the robot is in synchronization position. |

6 Calibration

6.1.2 Calibration methods

6.1.2 Calibration methods

Overview

This section specifies the different types of calibration and the calibration methods that are supplied by ABB.

Types of calibration

| Type of calibration | Description | Calibration method |
|--|--|--------------------|
| Standard calibration | The calibrated robot is positioned at calibration position. Standard calibration data is found on the SMB (serial measurement board) or EIB in the robot. | Axis Calibration |
| Absolute accuracy calibration (optional) | Based on standard calibration, and besides positioning the robot at synchronization position, the Absolute accuracy calibration also compensates for: <ul style="list-style-type: none">Mechanical tolerances in the robot structureDeflection due to load Absolute accuracy calibration focuses on positioning accuracy in the Cartesian coordinate system for the robot. Absolute accuracy calibration data is found on the serial measurement board (SMB) or other robot memory. A robot calibrated with Absolute accuracy has the option information printed on its name plate (OmniCore). To regain 100% Absolute accuracy performance, the robot must be recalibrated for absolute accuracy after repair or maintenance that affects the mechanical structure. | CalibWare |
| Optimization | Optimization of TCP reorientation performance. The purpose is to improve reorientation accuracy for continuous processes like welding and gluing. Wrist optimization will update standard calibration data for axes 4, 5 and 6. | Wrist Optimization |

Brief description of calibration methods

Axis Calibration method

Axis Calibration is a standard calibration method for calibration of CRB 1100. It is the recommended method in order to achieve proper performance.

The following routines are available for the Axis Calibration method:

- Fine calibration
- Update revolution counters
- Reference calibration

The calibration equipment for Axis Calibration is delivered as a toolkit.

An introduction to the calibration method is given in this manual, see [Calibrating with Axis Calibration method on page 663](#).

Continues on next page

The actual instructions of how to perform the calibration procedure and what to do at each step is given on the FlexPendant. You will be guided through the calibration procedure, step by step.

Wrist Optimization method

Wrist Optimization is a method for improving reorientation accuracy for continuous processes like welding and gluing and is a complement to the standard calibration method.

The actual instructions of how to perform the wrist optimization procedure is given on the FlexPendant.

CalibWare - Absolute Accuracy calibration

The CalibWare tool guides through the calibration process and calculates new compensation parameters. This is further detailed in the *Application manual - CalibWare Field*.

If a service operation is done to a robot with the option Absolute Accuracy, a new absolute accuracy calibration is required in order to establish full performance. For most cases after replacements that do not include taking apart the robot structure, standard calibration is sufficient.

The Absolute Accuracy option varies according to the robot mounting position. This is printed on the robot name plate for each robot. The robot must be in the correct mounting position when it is recalibrated for absolute accuracy.

References

Article numbers for the calibration tools are listed in the section [Special tools on page 711](#).

6.1.3 When to calibrate

When to calibrate

The system must be calibrated if any of the following situations occur.

The resolver values are changed

If resolver values are changed, the robot must be re-calibrated using the calibration methods supplied by ABB. Calibrate the robot carefully with standard calibration, according to information in this manual.

If the robot has *absolute accuracy* calibration, it is also recommended, but not always necessary to calibrate for new absolute accuracy.

The resolver values will change when parts affecting the calibration position are replaced on the robot, for example motors or parts of the transmission.

The revolution counter memory is lost

If the revolution counter memory is lost, the counters must be updated. See [Updating revolution counters on page 659](#). This will occur when:

- The battery is discharged
- A resolver error occurs
- The signal between a resolver and measurement board is interrupted
- A robot axis is moved with the control system disconnected

The revolution counters must also be updated after the robot and controller are connected at the first installation.

The robot is rebuilt

If the robot is rebuilt, for example, after a crash or when the reachability of a robot is changed, it needs to be re-calibrated for new resolver values.

If the robot has *absolute accuracy* calibration, it needs to be calibrated for new absolute accuracy.

Robot is not floor mounted

The original calibration data delivered with the robot is generated when the robot is floor mounted. If the robot is not floor mounted, then the robot accuracy could be affected. The robot needs to be calibrated after it is mounted.

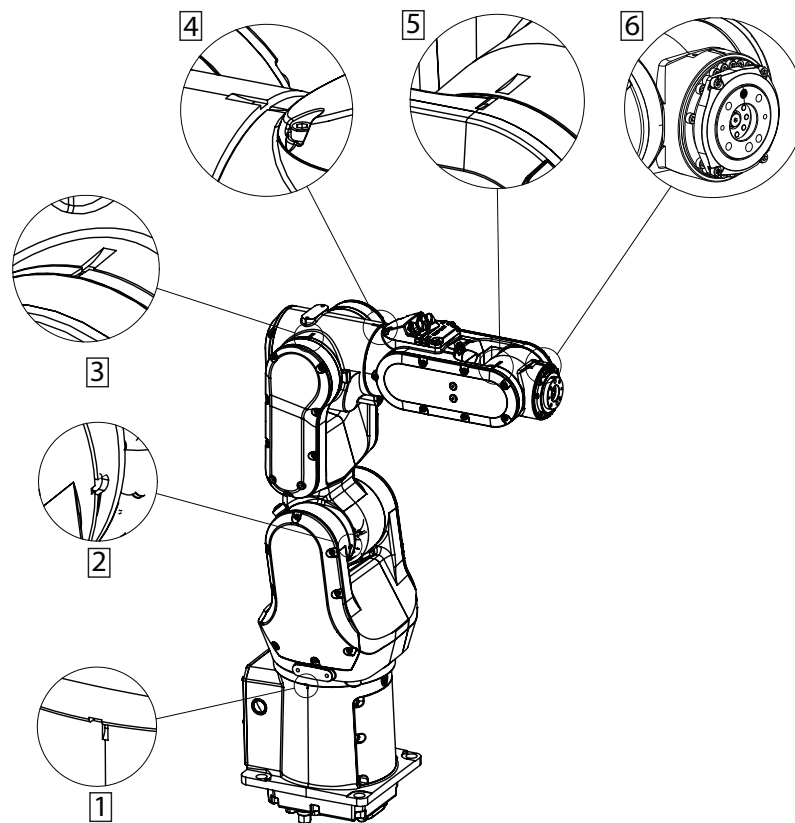
6.2 Synchronization marks and axis movement directions

6.2.1 Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes

Introduction

This section shows the position of the synchronization marks and the synchronization position for each axis.

Synchronization marks, CRB 1100



xx1800002455



CAUTION

To calibrate the axis 6, the notch on the wrist must be aligned with the marked pin hole on the tool flange. Before installing a tool on the tool flange, make sure a visible mark has been made to the tool at the corresponding position.

6 Calibration

6.2.2 Calibration movement directions for all axes

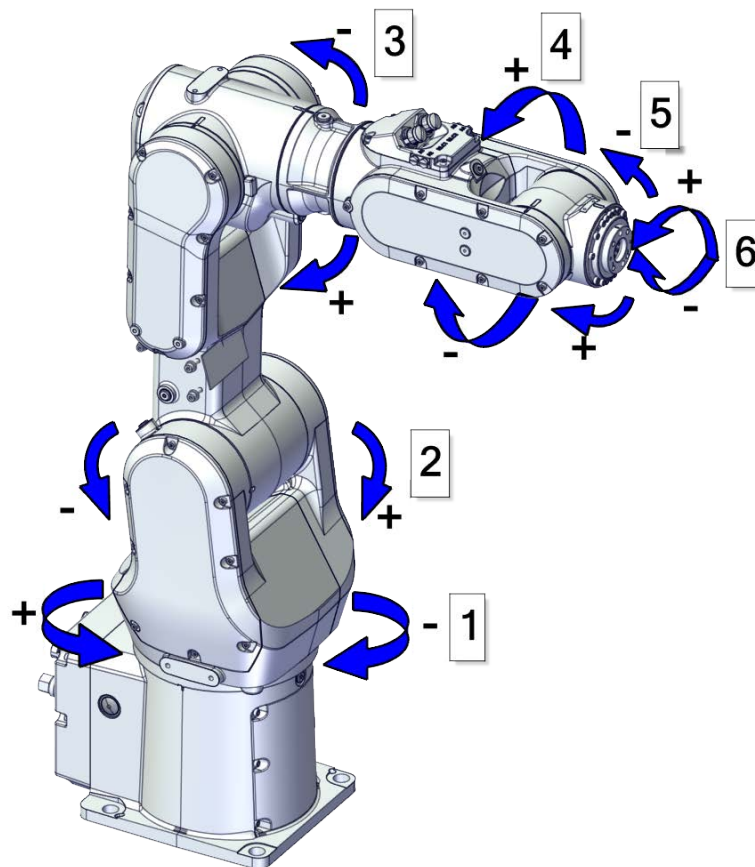
6.2.2 Calibration movement directions for all axes

Overview

When calibrating, the axis must consistently be run towards the calibration position in the same direction in order to avoid position errors caused by backlash in gears and so on. Positive directions are shown in the graphic below.

Calibration service routines will handle the calibration movements automatically and these might be different from the positive directions shown below.

Manual movement directions



xx1800002456

6.3 Updating revolution counters

6.3.1 Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots

Introduction

This section describes how to do a rough calibration of each manipulator axis by updating the revolution counter for each axis, using the FlexPendant.

Step 1 - Manually running the manipulator to the synchronization position

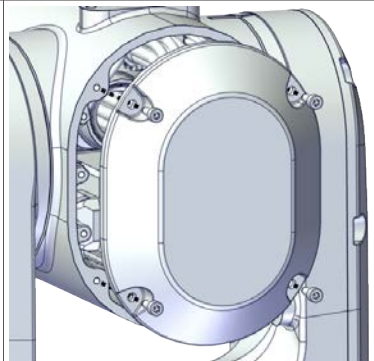
Use this procedure to manually run the manipulator to the synchronization position.

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Select axis-by-axis motion mode. | |
| 2 | Jog the manipulator to align the synchronization marks. | See Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 657 . |
| 3 | When all axes are positioned, update the revolution counter. | Step 2 - Updating the revolution counter with the FlexPendant on page 662 . |

Correct calibration position of axis 4

When jogging the manipulator to synchronization position, it is extremely important to make sure that axis 4 is positioned correctly. Axis 4 can be calibrated at the wrong turn, resulting in an incorrect manipulator calibration.

Make sure axis 4 is positioned according to the cable harness status, not only according to the synchronization marks. Use the following procedure to check and correct the axis 4 position.

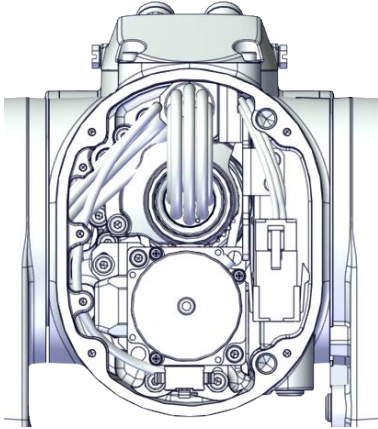
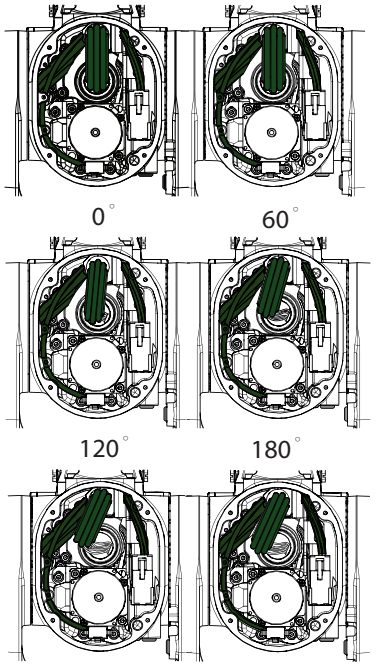
| | Action | Note |
|---|---------------------------|---|
| 1 | Remove the housing cover. |  xx1800003011 |

Continues on next page

6 Calibration

6.3.1 Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots

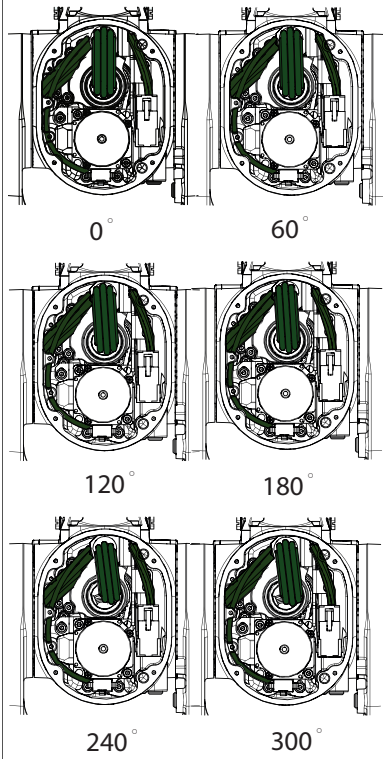
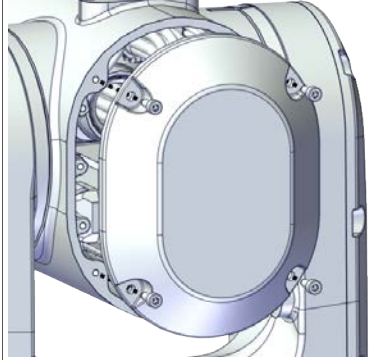
Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 2 | <p>Inspect the cable harness status.</p> <p>The cable harness must be in vertical state as shown in the figure.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the cable harness twists towards left, proceed to step 3.• If the cable harness twists towards right, proceed to step 4. |  <p>xx1800003317</p> |
| 3 | <p>Cable harness twisting towards left</p> <p>Jog the axis 4 anti-clockwise (with the operator facing the rear) until the cable harness is in vertical state.</p> |  <p>xx1800003318</p> |

Continues on next page

6.3.1 Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 4 | Cable harness twisting towards right Jog the axis 4 clockwise (with the operator facing the rear) until the cable harness begins turning left. Then, jog the axis 4 back until the cable harness is in vertical state. |  <p>0° 60°</p> <p>120° 180°</p> <p>240° 300°</p> <p>xx1800003319</p> |
| 5 | Refit the housing cover. | Screw: M3x8 (4 pcs) Tightening torque: 1.2 Nm  <p>xx1800003011</p> |

If the axis is rotated one or more turns from its calibration position before updating the revolution counter, the correct calibration position will be lost due to non-integer gear ratio.

At delivery the manipulator is in the correct position. Do NOT rotate axis 4 at power up before the revolution counters are updated.

Continues on next page





6 Calibration

6.3.1 Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots

Continued

Step 2 - Updating the revolution counter with the FlexPendant

Use this procedure to update the revolution counter with the FlexPendant (OmniCore).

| | Action |
|----|---|
| 1 | On the start screen, tap Calibrate . |
| 2 | Select Calibration from the menu. The Mechanical Units page displays a list of available mechanical units.  Note This step is required only if you are not already in the Mechanical Unit page when you open Calibrate .  Note The Mechanical Unit page is displayed only if there are more than one mechanical unit available. Otherwise, the calibration summary page for the available mechanical unit is displayed. |
| 3 | Select the mechanical unit for which revolution counter need to be updated. |
| 4 | The calibration summary page for the selected mechanical unit is displayed. Calibration method used at factory for each axis is shown, as well as calibration method used during last field calibration. |
| 5 | Tap Calibration Methods on the right pane. The calibration options are displayed. |
| 6 | Tap Revolution Counters . |
| 7 | In the Selection column select the axes for which revolution counters need to be updated.  Note A warning is displayed prompting you to check the cable harness status before proceeding with the revolution counter update for axis 4. See Correct calibration position of axis 4 on page 659 . |
| 8 | Tap Update . A dialog box is displayed, warning that the updating operation cannot be undone: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Tap Update to proceed with updating the revolution counters.• Tap Cancel to cancel updating the revolution counters. Tapping Update and a confirmation window is displayed. |
| 9 | Tap OK . The revolution counter for the selected axes is updated. |
| 10 |  CAUTION If a revolution counter is incorrectly updated, it will cause incorrect manipulator positioning, which in turn may cause damage or injury! Check the synchronization position very carefully after each update. See Checking the synchronization position on page 682 . |

6.4 Calibrating with Axis Calibration method

6.4.1 Description of Axis Calibration

Instructions for Axis Calibration procedure given on the FlexPendant

The actual instructions of how to perform the calibration procedure and what to do at each step is given on the FlexPendant. You will be guided through the calibration procedure, step by step.

This manual contains a brief description of the method, additional information to the information given on the FlexPendant, article number for the tools and images of where to fit the calibration tools on the robot.

Overview of the Axis Calibration procedure

The Axis Calibration procedure applies to all axes, and is performed on one axis at the time. The robot axes are both manually and automatically moved into position, as instructed on the FlexPendant.

A fixed calibration pin/bushing is installed on each robot axis at delivery.

For axis 6 calibration there is one bushing on the wrist and one mounting hole on the tool flange.

The Axis Calibration procedure described roughly:

- 1 A removable calibration tool is inserted by the operator into a calibration bushing on the axis chosen for calibration, according to instructions on the FlexPendant.



WARNING

Calibrating the robot with Axis Calibration requires special calibration tools from ABB. Using other pins in the calibration bushings may cause severe damage to the robot and/or personnel.



WARNING

The calibration tool must be fully inserted into the calibration bushing, until the steel spring ring snaps into place.

- 2 During the calibration procedure, RobotWare moves the robot axis chosen for calibration so that the calibration tools get into contact. RobotWare records values of the axis position and repeats the coming-in-contact procedure several times to get an exact value of the axis position.



WARNING

Risk of pinching! The contact force for large robots can be up to 150 kg. Keep a safe distance to the robot.

Continues on next page

6 Calibration

6.4.1 Description of Axis Calibration

Continued

- 3 The axis position is stored in RobotWare with an active choice from the operator.

Routines in the calibration procedure

The following routines are available in the Axis Calibration procedure, given at the beginning of the procedure on the FlexPendant.

Fine calibration routine

Choose this routine to calibrate the robot when there are no tools, process cabling or equipment fitted to the robot.

Reference calibration routine

Choose this routine to create reference values and to calibrate the robot when the robot is dressed with tools, process cabling or other equipment.

Also choose this routine if the robot is wall mounted or suspended.



Note

When calibrating the robot with the reference calibration routine, the robot must be dressed with the same tools, process cabling and any other equipment as when the reference values were created.



Note

When using reference calibration with some tools, typically large or flexible tools, oscillations in the robot can cause issues leading to failure of the calibration.

If calibrating the robot with reference calibration there must be reference values created before repair is made to the robot, if values are not already available. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. The reference values contain positions of all axes, torque of axes and technical data about the tool installed. A benefit with reference calibration is that the current state of the robot is stored and not the state when the robot left the ABB factory. The reference value will be named according to tool name, date etc.

Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.

When reference calibration is performed, the robot is restored to the status given by the reference values.

Update revolution counters

Choose this routine to make a rough calibration of each manipulator axis by updating the revolution counter for each axis, using the FlexPendant.

Validation

In the mentioned routines, it is also possible to validate the calibration data.

Continues on next page

Position of robot axes

The robot axes should be positioned close to 0 degrees before commencing the calibration program. The axis chosen for calibration is then automatically run by the calibration program to its exact calibration position during the calibration procedure.

It is possible to position some of the other axes in positions different from 0 degrees. Information about which axes are allowed to be jogged is given on the FlexPendant. These axes are marked with **Unrestricted** in the FlexPendant window. Also the following table shows the dependencies between the axes.

Requirements for axis positioning during calibration

| Required position of axis | Axis to calibrate | | | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | Axis 1 | Axis 2 | Axis 3 | Axis 4 | Axis 5 | Axis 6 |
| Axis 1 | - | * | * | * | * | * |
| Axis 2 | 0 | - | 0 | * | * | * |
| Axis 3 | 0 | 0 | - | * | * | * |
| Axis 4 | * | * | * | - | * | * |
| Axis 5 | * | * | * | * | - | X |
| Axis 6 | * | * | * | * | * | - |

| | |
|---|--|
| - | Axis to be calibrated |
| * | Unrestricted. Axis is allowed to be jogged to other position than 0 degrees. |
| 0 | Axis must be put in position 0 degrees. |
| X | Special requirement |

System containing SafeMove

SafeMove will lose its synchronization to the controller if a new calibration is done. New calibration values have to be downloaded to SafeMove, and a new SafeMove calibration has to be done. Make sure that the user rights admit to change the safety settings and to synchronize SafeMove.

How to calibrate a suspended or wall mounted robot

The CRB 1100 is fine calibrated floor standing in factory, prior to shipping.

To calibrate a suspended or wall mounted robot, reference calibration could be used. Reference values for a suspended or a wall mounted robot must be created with the robot mounted at its working position, not standing on a floor.

To calibrate a suspended or wall mounted robot with the fine calibration routine, the robot must first be taken down and mounted standing on the floor.

6 Calibration

6.4.2 Calibration tools for Axis Calibration

6.4.2 Calibration tools for Axis Calibration

Calibration tool set

The calibration tools used for Axis Calibration are designed to meet requirements for calibration performance, durability and safety in case of accidental damage.

The calibration tool will eventually break from fatigue after longer period of use and then needs to be replaced. There is no risk for bad calibrations as long as the calibration tool is in one piece.



WARNING

Calibrating the robot with Axis Calibration requires special calibration tools from ABB. Using other pins in the calibration bushings may cause severe damage to the robot and/or personnel.

| Equipment, etc. | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |

Examining the calibration tool

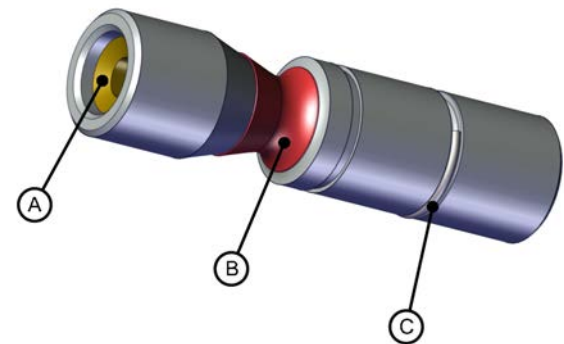
Check prior to usage

Before using the calibration tool, make sure that the tube insert, the plastic protection and the steel spring ring are present.



WARNING

If any part is missing or damaged, the tool must be replaced immediately.



xx1500001914

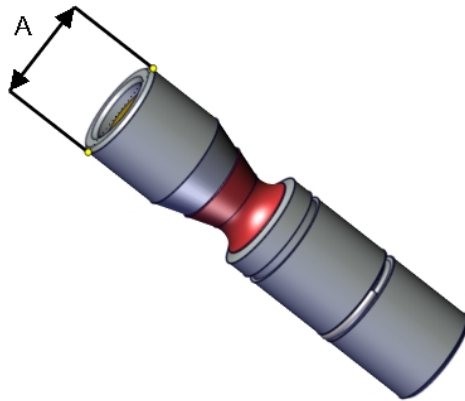
| | |
|---|--------------------|
| A | Tube insert |
| B | Plastic protection |
| C | Steel spring ring |

Continues on next page

Periodic check of the calibration tool

If including the calibration tool in a local periodic check system, the following measures should be checked.

- Outer diameter within $\varnothing 12g4$ mm, $\varnothing 8g4$ mm or $\varnothing 6g5$ mm (depending on calibration tool size).
- Straightness within 0.005 mm.



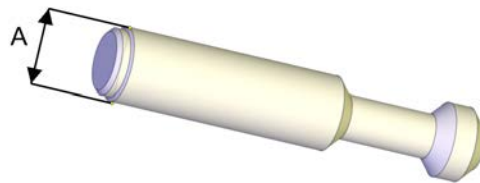
xx1500000951

| | |
|---|----------------|
| A | Outer diameter |
|---|----------------|

Periodic check of the calibration tool for the tool flange (3HAC058238-001)

If including the tool flange calibration tool in a local periodic check system, the following measures should be checked.

- Outer diameter within $\varnothing 5g5$ mm.
- Straightness within 0.005 mm.



xx1600001142

| | |
|---|----------------|
| A | Outer diameter |
|---|----------------|

6 Calibration

6.4.3 Installation locations for the calibration tools

6.4.3 Installation locations for the calibration tools

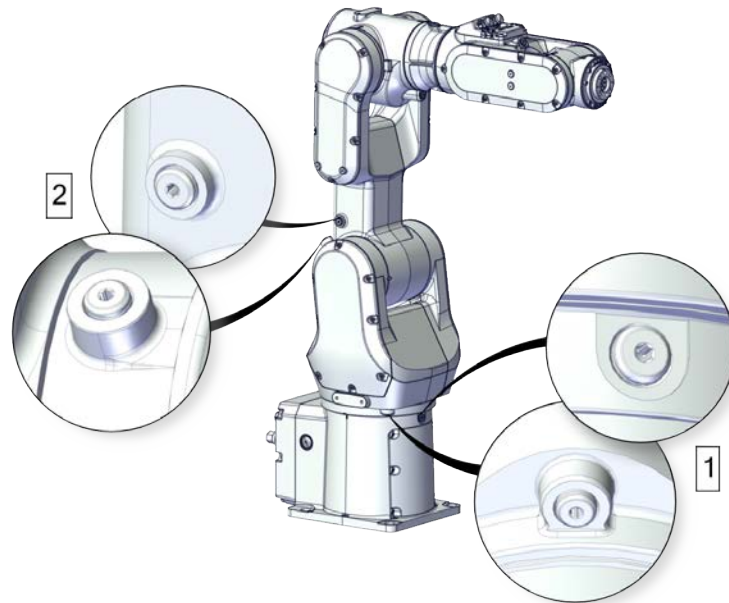
Location of fixed calibration items

This section shows how the robot is equipped with items for installation of calibration tools for Axis Calibration (fixed calibration pins and/or bushings). Installed calibration tools are not shown.

A fixed calibration pin and a bushing for the movable calibration tool are located on each axis as follows.

If there is not enough space on an axis to install a fixed calibration pin, the axis is equipped with two bushings instead, for installation of two calibration tools when calibration is carried out. This is shown in the figure.

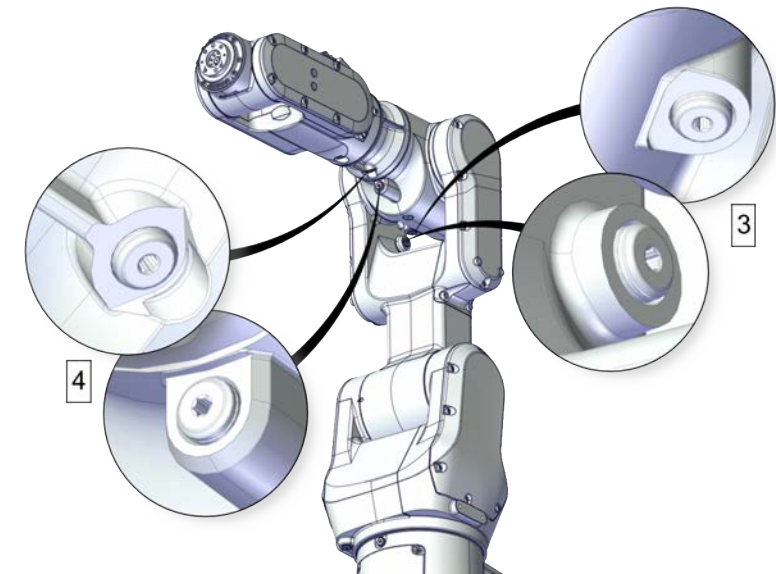
For axis 6 there is only one bushing, the second calibration tool is installed at the mounting flange of the turning disk.



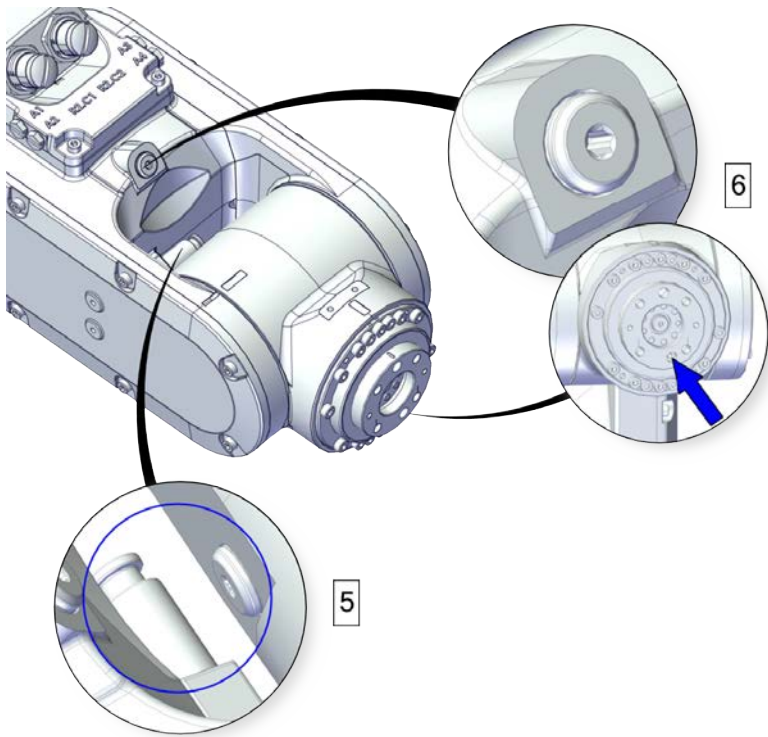
xx1800003320

Continues on next page

6.4.3 Installation locations for the calibration tools
Continued



xx1800003514



xx1800003515

Spare parts

When calibration is not being performed, a protective cover and an o-ring should always be installed on the fixed calibration pin as well as a protective plug, included a sealing, in the bushing. Replace damaged parts with new.

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|-----------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------|
| Protective plug for bushing | 3HAC059556-001 | Replace if damaged or missing. |

Continues on next page

6 Calibration

6.4.3 Installation locations for the calibration tools

Continued

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|---|----------------|--|
| Protective plug for bushing, Clean Room | 3HAC059557-001 | Used with protection type Clean Room. Replace if damaged or missing. |
| Calibration pin cover, 6 mm | 3HAC061926-001 | Replace if damaged or missing. |

6.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure

Required tools

The calibration tools used for Axis Calibration are designed to meet requirements for calibration performance, durability and safety in case of accidental damage.



WARNING

Calibrating the robot with Axis Calibration requires special calibration tools from ABB. Using other pins in the calibration holes may cause severe damage to the robot and/or personnel.

| Equipment, etc. | Article number | Note |
|--|----------------|---|
| Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074119-001 | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |

Required consumables

| Consumable | Article number | Note |
|-------------|----------------|------|
| Clean cloth | - | |

Spare parts

| Spare part | Article number | Note |
|---|----------------|--|
| Protective plug for bushing | 3HAC059556-001 | Replace if damaged or missing. |
| Protective plug for bushing, Clean Room | 3HAC059557-001 | Used with protection type Clean Room. Replace if damaged or missing. |
| Calibration pin cover, 6 mm | 3HAC061926-001 | Replace if damaged or missing. |

Overview of the calibration procedure on the FlexPendant

The actual instructions of how to perform the calibration procedure and what to do at each step is given on the FlexPendant. You will be guided through the calibration procedure, step by step.

Use the following list to learn about the calibration procedure before running the RobotWare program on the FlexPendant. It gives you a brief overview of the calibration procedure.

After the calibration method has been started on the FlexPendant, the following sequence will be run.

- 1 Choose calibration routine. The routines are described in [Routines in the calibration procedure on page 664](#).
- 2 Choose which axis/axes to calibrate.
- 3 The robot moves to synchronization position.
- 4 Validate the synchronization marks.

Continues on next page

6 Calibration

6.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure



Continued

- 5 The robot moves to preparation position.
- 6 Remove the protective cover from the fixed pin and the protection plug from the bushing, if any, and install the calibration tool.
When calibrating axis 5, remove the protective cover from the fixed pin using a tweezer, and install the calibration tool.
- 7 The robot performs a measurement sequence by rotating the axis back and forth.
- 8 Remove the calibration tool and reinstall the protective cover on the fixed pin and the protection plug in the bushing, if any.
After the calibration of axis 5, refit the protective cover on the fixed pin for axis 5 using a tweezer.
- 9 The robot moves to verify that the calibration tool is removed.
- 10 Choose whether to save the calibration data or not.

Calibration of the robot is not finished until the calibration data is saved, as last step of the calibration procedure.

Preparation prior to calibration

The calibration procedure is described in the FlexPendant while conducting it.

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 |  DANGER While conducting the calibration, the robot needs to be connected to power. Make sure that the robot's working area is empty, as the robot can make unpredictable movements. | |
| 2 | Wipe the calibration tool clean.  Note The calibration method is exact. Dust, dirt or color flakes will affect the calibration value. | Use a clean cloth. |
| 3 | Check if the standard calibration data for axes 4, 5 or 6 are updated with wrist optimization. This is shown in the calibration overview/summary window on the FlexPendant. | If the data is optimized, the calibration routine Wrist Optimization must be re-run after standard calibration. See Calibrating with Wrist Optimization method on page 679 . |

Starting the calibration procedure


Use this procedure to start the Axis Calibration routine on the FlexPendant.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|------|
| 1 | Tap the calibration icon and enter the calibration main page. | |

Continues on next page

6.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure

Continued

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|---|
| 2 | <p>All mechanical units connected to the system are shown with their calibration status. Tap the mechanical unit in question.</p> <div>  Note </div> <p>For RobotWare 7, the mechanical unit page is displayed only if there is more than one mechanical unit available.</p> | |
| 3 | The calibration method used at ABB factory for each axis is shown, as well as calibration method used for the robot during last field calibration. | The FlexPendant will give all information needed to proceed with Axis Calibration. |
| 4 | <p>Valid for RobotWare 7</p> <p>Tap Calibration Methods on the right pane and then tap Calibration. The software will automatically call for the procedure for the valid calibration method.</p> | |
| 5 | Follow the instructions given on the FlexPendant. | A brief overview of the sequence that will be run on the FlexPendant is given in Overview of the calibration procedure on the FlexPendant on page 671 . |

Fitting of calibration tools

The figures show the calibration tool in contact with the fixed pin on each axis.

The position of the complete robot shown for each axis is only an example.

In order for the axis to be able to be moved to calibration position, or in order for getting proper access to the calibration bushing, other axes might need to be jogged to positions different from 0 degrees. Information about which axes are

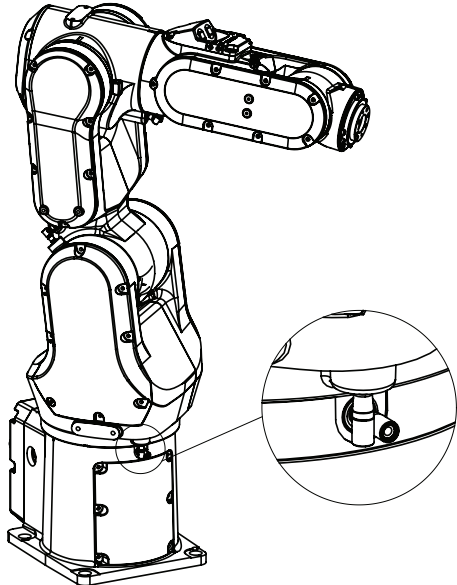
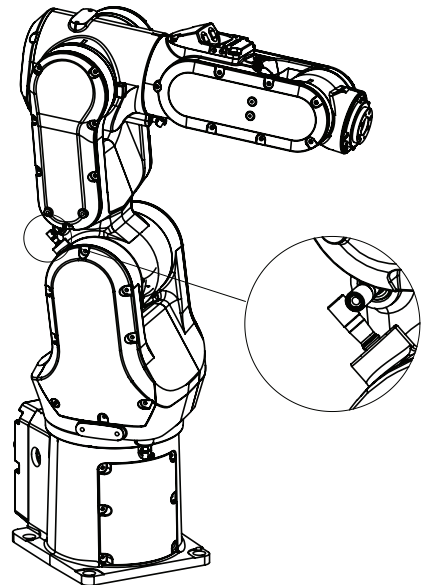
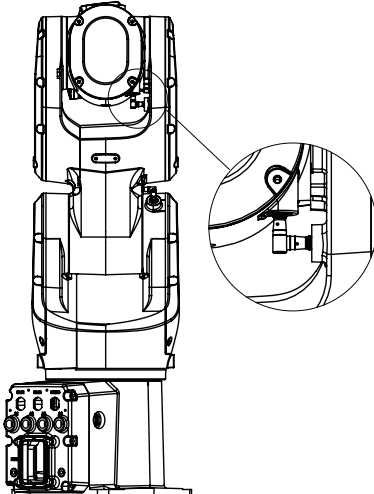
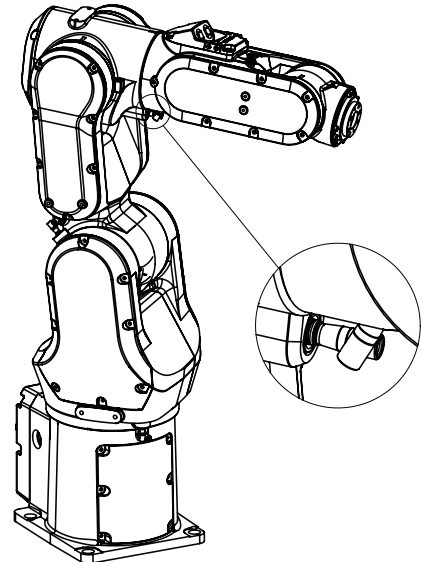
Continues on next page

6 Calibration

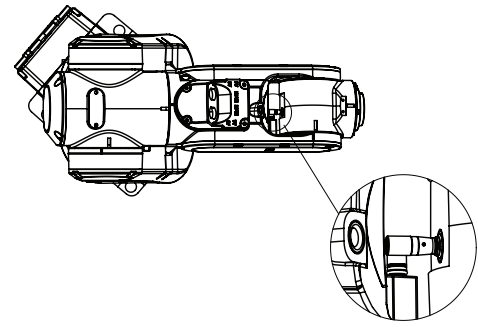
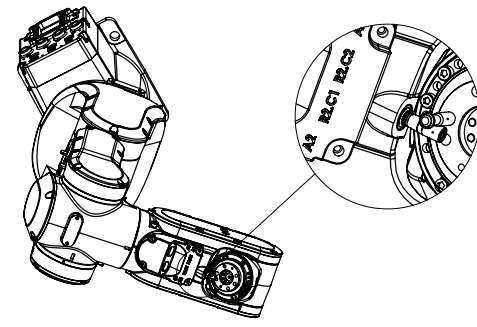
6.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure

Continued

allowed to be jogged will be given on the FlexPendant. These axes are marked with **Unrestricted** in the FlexPendant window.

| Calibration tools in contact | |
|---|--|
| <p>Axis 1</p>  <p>xx1900000113</p> | <p>Axis 2</p>  <p>xx1900000114</p> |
| <p>Axis 3</p>  <p>xx1900000115</p> | <p>Axis 4</p>  <p>xx1900000116</p> |

Continues on next page

| Calibration tools in contact | |
|---|---|
| <p>Axis 5</p>  <p>xx1900000117</p> | <p>Axis 6</p> <p>Make sure to orient the tool flange calibration tool correctly.</p>  <p>xx1900000118</p> |

Restarting an interrupted calibration procedure

If the Axis Calibration procedure is interrupted before the calibration is finished, the RobotWare program needs to be started again. Use this procedure to take required action.

| Situation | Action |
|--|--|
| The three-position enabling device on the FlexPendant has been released during robot movement. | Press and hold the three-position enabling device and press Play . |
| The RobotWare program is terminated with PP to Main . | <p>Remove the calibration tool, if it is installed, and restart the calibration procedure from the beginning. See <i>Starting the calibration procedure</i>.</p> <p>If the calibration tool is in contact the robot axis needs to be jogged in order to release the calibration tool. Jogging the axis in wrong direction will cause the calibration tool to break. Directions of axis movement is shown in Calibration movement directions for all axes on page 658</p> |

Axis Calibration with SafeMove option

To be able to run Axis Calibration, SafeMove needs to be unsynchronized. The Axis Calibration routine recognizes if the robot is equipped with SafeMove and will force SafeMove to unsynchronize automatically.

However, SafeMove may generate other warning messages anytime during the Axis Calibration routine. When a warning message is displayed, tap **Acknowledge** to confirm the unsynchronized state and continue Axis Calibration procedure.



CAUTION

SafeMove must be synchronized after the calibration is completed.

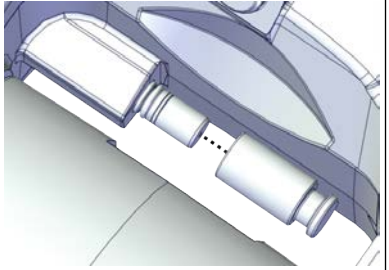
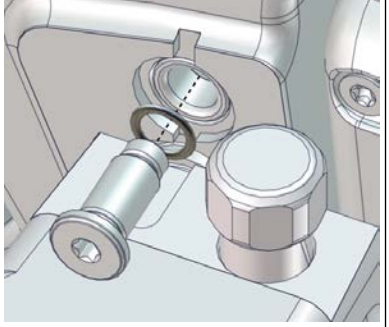
Continues on next page

6 Calibration

6.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure

Continued

After calibration

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Reinstall the protective cover on the fixed calibration pin on each axis, directly after the axis has been calibrated. Replace the cover with new spare part, if missing or damaged. |  xx1900001421 Calibration pin cover, 6 mm: 3HAC061926-001 |
| 2 | Reinstall the protective plug and sealing in the bushing on each axis, directly after the axis has been calibrated. Ensure that the sealing is not damaged. Replace the plug and the sealing with new spare part, if missing or damaged. |  xx1500000952 Protective plug for bushing: 3HAC059556-001. |
| 3 | If the standard calibration data for axes 4, 5 or 6 should be updated with wrist optimization, run the calibration routine Wrist Optimization . | See Calibrating with Wrist Optimization method on page 679 . |

6.4.5 Reference calibration

Brief introduction to Reference Calibration

Reference calibration is a faster method compared to Fine calibration, as it refers to a previously made calibration.

- 1 Create a backup of the current robot system.
- 2 Check that the active calibration offset values corresponds to the values on the silver label (on the lower arm or the base).
- 3 Jog the manipulator so that all axes are in zero position (ex use `MoveAbsJ` instruction). Check that all axis scales are aligned with calibration marks.
- 4 If the scales differ from calibration marks it might depend on wrong turns of the revolution counters. Make a marker line on the corresponding axis to be able to validate the result of the calibration. If more than one motor revolutions are wrong, the calibration will fail.
- 5 Use a verification position. This is especially recommended if all axes were not aligned with the synchronization marks (step 3). Reuse an existing position that is suitable and accurate so it can be used to validate the repair. Use a position where a deviation in axis calibration gives a big deviation in positioning. Note! Check the position after each repair in one axis.
- 6 Use Reference calibration to save reference values for all axes that is to be replaced. Make sure that the values are saved in RobotStudio or FTP program. The files are located in "Active system folder name/HOME/RefCalibFiles".
- 7 Perform the repair.
- 8 Make sure that the tooling and process equipment are the same as when creating the reference. Use Reference calibration to update the system with new calibration offset value for the repaired axis.
- 9 Check the position against the verification position (step 5).
- 10 Proceed with the repair of the next axis, if necessary, and repeat (step 8-9) for every axis.
- 11 (For system containing SafeMove) Download new calibration values to SafeMove. Use Visual SafeMove in RobotStudio.
- 12 (For system containing SafeMove) Synchronize SafeMove to activate SafeMove.
- 13 Perform test run.
- 14 Update the label for resolver values with new calibration values.

Manual tuning of calibration offset

Manual tuning of calibration offset is normally not needed, but can be useful in some situations. The requirement to do manual tuning is that there is a known accurate position, that worked accurately before the repair (step 5, see [Brief introduction to Reference Calibration on page 677](#)).

Example "Adjust axis 4":

- 1 Create a backup.

Continues on next page

6 Calibration

6.4.5 Reference calibration

Continued

- 2 Run the manipulator to the verification position. (The manipulator position is now deviating from the verification position.)
- 3 Read and note current axis 4 value in degrees (example: 96.3 degrees).
- 4 Manually jog, only axis 4, so that the manipulator is correctly positioned to the verification position.
- 5 Read and note current axis 4 value in degrees (example: 94.2 degrees).
- 6 Move the manipulator to its calibration position.
- 7 Calculate the angle difference (ie $96.3 - 94.2 = 2.1$ degrees).
- 8 Manually jog axis 4 the calculated angle difference (-2.1). NOTE! The direction +/- shall be the same direction as the direction used when axis 4 was manually jogged to coincide with the verification process. In the example -2.1 degrees.
- 9 Make a new manual fine calibration of axis 4 with axis in -2.1 degrees position.
- 10 Check again against the verification position.
- 11 Repeat the manual tuning if needed.
- 12 Create a new reference if the intention is to use the reference in the future.

6.5 Calibrating with Wrist Optimization method

When to run Wrist Optimization

Wrist Optimization routine is run to improve TCP reorientation performance.

Calibrating the robot with standard calibration method overwrites the optimized positions of axes 4, 5, 6. Re-run the **Wrist Optimization** routine after standard calibration to re-achieve the optimized positions of the wrist axes.

Overview of the calibration procedure on the FlexPendant

The actual instructions of how to perform the calibration procedure and what to do at each step is given on the FlexPendant. You will be guided through the calibration procedure, step by step.

Use the following list to learn about the calibration procedure before running the RobotWare program on the FlexPendant. It gives you a brief overview of the calibration procedure sequence.

After the calibration method has been called for on the FlexPendant, the following sequence will be run.

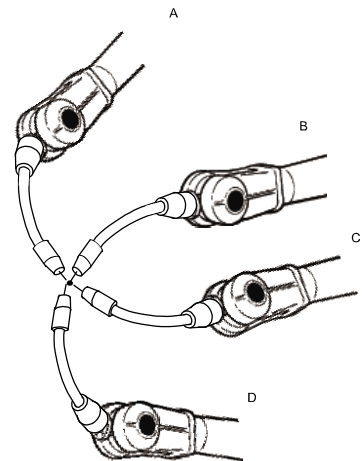
- 1 Choose calibration routine Wrist Optimization.
- 2 Modify targets for 4-point tool frame definition, in Wrist Optimization routine.



Tip

Select positions with large reorientations around the TCP. For best results, make sure that axis 4 and 5 have large movements.

- a Jog the robot to an appropriate position, A, for the first approach point.
Use small increments to accurately position the tool tip as close to the reference point as possible.
- b Tap **Modify Position** to define the point.
- c Repeat for each approach point to be defined, positions B, C, and D.
Jog away from the fixed world point to achieve the best result. Just changing the tool orientation will not give as good a result.



en0400000906

- 3 Improved calibration data to the wrist axes is identified and presented.
- 4 Optimized positions for the wrist axes are presented.

Continues on next page

6 Calibration

6.5 Calibrating with Wrist Optimization method

Continued

- 5 The robot moves to the optimized positions for the wrist axes and automatically overwrites previous calibration data.



WARNING

Robot moves automatically when pressing **Calibrate**.

- 6 Wrist optimization is finished.
- 7 Redefine / verify TCP for all tools.

6.6 Verifying the calibration

Introduction

Always verify the results after calibrating *any* robot axis to verify that all calibration positions are correct.

Verifying the calibration

Use this procedure to verify the calibration result.

| | Action | Note |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Run the calibration home position program twice. Do not change the position of the robot axes after running the program! | See Checking the synchronization position on page 682 . |
| 2 | Adjust the <i>synchronization marks</i> when the calibration is done, if necessary. | This is detailed in section Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 657 . |
| 3 | Write down the values on a new label and stick it on top of the calibration label. The label is located on one side of the base. | |

6 Calibration

6.7 Checking the synchronization position

6.7 Checking the synchronization position

Introduction

Check the synchronization position of the robot before beginning any programming of the robot system. This may be done:

- Using a `MoveAbsJ` instruction with argument zero on all axes.
- Using the **Jog** window on the FlexPendant.

Using a `MoveAbsJ` instruction

Use this procedure to create a program that runs all the robot axes to their synchronization position.

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Tap Code . | |
| 2 | Create a new program. | |
| 3 | Use MoveAbsJ in the Add Instruction menu. | |
| 4 | Create the following program: <pre>MoveAbsJ [[0,0,0,0,0,0], [9E9,9E9,9E9,9E9,9E9,9E9]] \NoEOffs, v1000, fine, tool0</pre> | |
| 5 | Run the program in manual mode. | |
| 6 | Check that the synchronization marks for the axes align correctly. If they do not, update the revolution counters. | See Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 657 and Updating revolution counters on page 659 . |

Using the jogging window

Use this procedure to jog the robot to the synchronization position of all axes.

| | Action | Note |
|---|--|--|
| 1 | Tap Jog . | |
| 2 | From the Mechanical unit list select a mechanical unit. | |
| 3 | From the Motion mode section, select an axis-set that need to be jogged. For example, to jog axis 2, select the axis set Axis 1-3 . | |
| 4 | Follow the screen instruction on joystick movements to understand the direction of the axis that you want to move and move the joystick. | |
| 5 | Manually run the robots axes to a position where the axis position value read on the FlexPendant, is equal to zero. | |
| 6 | Check that the synchronization marks for the axes align correctly. If they do not, update the revolution counters. | See Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 657 and Updating revolution counters on page 659 . |

7 Troubleshooting

7.1 Introduction to troubleshooting

Introduction

The product manual and the circuit diagram contains information that can be good when troubleshooting.

For OmniCore, all event logs from the software can be seen on the FlexPendant, or in *Technical reference manual - Event logs for RobotWare 7*.

Make sure to read through the section [Safety on page 17](#) before starting.

Troubleshooting strategies

- 1 Isolate the fault to pinpoint the cause of the problem from consequential problems.
- 2 Divide the fault chain in two.
- 3 Check communication parameters and cables.
- 4 Check that the software version is compatible with the hardware.

Work systematically

- 1 Take a look around to make sure that all screws, connectors, and cables are secured, and that the robot and other parts are clean, not damaged, and correctly fitted.
- 2 Replace one thing at a time.
- 3 Do not replace units randomly.
- 4 Make sure that there are no loose screws, turnings, or other unexpected parts remaining after work has been performed.
- 5 When the work is completed, verify that the safety functions are working as intended.

Keep a track of history

- Make a historical fault log to keep track of problems over time.
- Consult those working with the robot when the problem occurred.

Basic scenarios

What to look for during troubleshooting depends on when the fault occurred. Was the robot recently installed or was it recently repaired? The following table gives hints on what to look for in specific situations.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| The robot has recently been installed | Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• the configuration files• connectors• options and their configuration• changes in the robot working space/movements. |
|---------------------------------------|---|

Continues on next page

7 Troubleshooting

7.1 Introduction to troubleshooting

Continued

| | |
|---|---|
| The robot has recently been repaired | Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• all connections to the replaced part• power supplies• that the correct part has been fitted• the last repair documents. |
| The robot recently had a software upgrade | Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• software versions• compatibilities between hardware and software• options and their configuration |
| The robot has recently been moved from one site to another (an already working robot) | Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• connections• software versions |

7.2 Oil and grease stains on motors and gearboxes

Description

The area surrounding the motor, gearbox or seal lip shows signs of oil leaks. This can be at the base, closest to the mating surface, at the furthest end of the motor at the resolver, or around the joints of the covers (closest to the edge) on the robot surface.

Consequences

Besides the dirty appearance, in most cases there are no serious consequences if the leaked amount of oil is very small.


Possible causes

The symptom can be caused by:

- Leakage of rust preventives or mounting grease. This should be wiped off.
- Leaking sealing between gearbox and motor.
- Gearbox overfilled with oil.
- Gearbox oil too hot.

Recommended actions

The following actions are recommended:

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|---|
| 1 |  CAUTION Allow hot parts to cool down. | |
| 2 | Wipe off the oil or grease, see Cleaning the CRB 1100 on page 168 . Monitor the robot over time to see if new oil or grease occurs. | If the oil spill is small, this step is sufficient. |
| 3 | Check the gearbox oil level. | |
| 4 | Too hot gearbox oil may be caused by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Incorrect oil quality or level. • The robot work cycle runs a specific axis too hard. Investigate whether it is possible to program small "cooling periods" into the application. • Overpressure created inside gearbox. | Robots performing certain, extremely heavy duty work cycles may be fitted with vented oil plugs. These are not fitted to normal duty robots, but can be purchased from your local ABB representative. |
| 5 | Inspect all sealings and gaskets between motor and gearbox. Replace broken parts. | |

7 Troubleshooting

7.3 Mechanical noise or dissonance

7.3 Mechanical noise or dissonance

Description

Mechanical noise or dissonance that has not been observed before can indicate problems in bearings, motors, gearboxes, or similar. Be observant of changes over time.

A faulty bearing often emits scraping, grinding, or clicking noises shortly before failing.

A humming resonance sound can occur without being an error. Mechanical resonance sound is a physical phenomenon in mechanical structures. It has no impact on product performance or lifetime. Adjusting the robot movement speed out of the range that causes the resonance will eliminate the sound.

Consequences

Failing bearings cause the path accuracy to become inconsistent, and in severe cases, the joint can seize completely.

Possible causes

The symptom can be caused by:


- Worn bearings.
- Contaminations have entered the bearing grooves.
- Loss of lubrication in bearings.
- Loose heat sinks, fans, or metal parts.

If the noise is emitted from a gearbox, the following can also apply:

- Overheating.

Recommended actions

The following actions are recommended:

| | Action | Information |
|---|---|-------------|
| 1 |  CAUTION Allow hot parts to cool down. | |
| 2 | Verify that the service is done according to the maintenance schedule. | |
| 3 | If a bearing is emitting the noise, determine which one and make sure that it has sufficient lubrication. | |
| 4 | If possible, disassemble the joint and measure the clearance. | |
| 5 | Bearings inside motors are not to be replaced individually, but the complete motor is replaced. | |
| 6 | Make sure the bearings are fitted correctly. | |
| 7 | Tighten the screws if a heat sink, fan, or metal sheet is loose. | |

7.4 Manipulator collapses on power down

Description

The manipulator is able to work correctly while Motors ON is active, but when Motors OFF is active, one or more axes drops or collapses under its own weight. The holding brakes (normally one in each motor), is not able to hold the weight of the manipulator arm.

Consequences

For a heavy robot, the collapse can cause severe injury to personnel working in the area or severe damage to the robot and/or surrounding equipment.
For a small robot, the collapse can cause injury to personnel working close to the robot or damage to the robot and/or surrounding equipment.

Possible causes

The symptom can be caused by:

- Faulty brake.
- Faulty power supply to the brake.

Recommended actions

The following actions are recommended:

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|---|
| 1 | Determine which motor(s) causes the robot to collapse. | |
| 2 | Check the brake power supply to the collapsing motor during the Motors OFF state. | See the circuit diagram. |
| 3 | Remove the resolver or resolver cover of the motor to see if there are any signs of oil leaks. | If found faulty, the motor must be replaced as a complete unit. |
| 4 | Remove the motor from the gearbox to inspect it from the drive side. | If found faulty, the motor must be replaced as a complete unit. |

7 Troubleshooting

7.5 Motor temperature too high

7.5 Motor temperature too high

Description

The robot stops and the motor temperature for joint arg is too high.

Consequences

It is not possible to continue until the motor has cooled down. The system goes to Motors Off.


Possible causes

The symptom can be caused by:

- The values for payload and arm load are not consistent with the actual ones.
- The value for ambient temperature setting in the controller is not consistent with the actual operating temperature environment.
- The user program may contain too much high acceleration and deceleration of the joint.
- Gravity torque or external forces for the joint can also be too high.

Recommended actions

The following actions are recommended:

| | Action | Information |
|---|--|--|
| 1 |  CAUTION Allow hot parts to cool down. | |
| 2 | Verify that the values for payload and arm load are set correctly. | |
| 3 | Verify that the value for ambient temperature setting in the controller is consistent with the actual operating temperature environment. | |
| 4 | Rewrite the user program to reduce the motor utilization. | The ways could be but not limited to optimizing robot movement cycle, adjusting acc, dec as well as external force, adding wait time, and introducing alternative path/RAPID, etc. |

7.6 Communication failure between PROFI-safe-based laser scanner, PLC, and controller

Description

The ProfiNet LED on the laser scanner is not lit up, indicating that the profinet communication between the laser scanner, PLC, and OmniCore controller fails to be set up. However, the cable connection is properly connected and necessary parameters are correctly set during the laser scanner configuration.

This issue may occur when PROFI-safe-based laser scanner(s) is connected.

Consequences

Communication fails to be set up between the laser scanner, PLC, and OmniCore. The safety separation function with the laser scanner cannot be applied.

Possible causes

The firewall for the ProfiNet network is disabled.

Recommended actions

- 1 Open RobotStudio.
- 2 In the **Controller** tab page, choose **Communication** from the **Configuration** group.
- 3 Select **Firewall Manager** in the **Type** pane.
- 4 Set **Enable on Public Network** to **Yes** for the network service **ProfiNet**.

7 Troubleshooting

7.7 Communication failure between PLC and controller

7.7 Communication failure between PLC and controller

Description

The OmniCore controller and PLC are configured with all parameters correctly set. However, the communication between the OmniCore controller and PLC still fails. This issue may occur when the PROFIsafe-based laser scanner(s) is connected.

Consequence

The safety configurations do not take effect.

Possible causes

During configuration of communication between the OmniCore controller and PLC, the PROFIsafe device information must be configured on the OmniCore controller's side first. Otherwise, the configured signals will not be saved in the safety module in the OmniCore controller.

Recommended actions

- 1 Open the RobotStudio.
- 2 In the **Controller** tab page, choose **Visual SafeMove** from **Safety** in the **Configuration** group.
- 3 Check the Safe I/O configurations.

For robots running RobotWare 7.5 or earlier, the following signals can be observed.

| Signal name | Default value | Offset | Width | Signals uses |
|---------------------------|---------------|--------|-------|---------------------|
| ProtectingArea | 0 | 0 | 1 | Writer: SDI_8_bytes |
| WarningArea | 0 | 1 | 1 | Writer: SDI_8_bytes |
| ProtectingAreaSST | 0 | 2 | 1 | Writer: SDI_8_bytes |
| WarningAreaTSP | 0 | 3 | 1 | Writer: SDI_8_bytes |
| SafetyCommunicationEnable | 0 | 4 | 1 | Writer: SDI_8_bytes |

xx2100000511

Continues on next page

7.7 Communication failure between PLC and controller
Continued

For robots running RobotWare 7.6 or later, the following signals can be observed.

| | | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------------|---------------|--------|-------|--|
| Signals | PROFIsafe | | | | |
| Function mappings | OmniCore_Internal (Device) | | | | |
| Pre Logic | SDI_8_bytes (Module) | | | | |
| Post Logic | Input signals | | | | |
| | Signal name | Default value | Offset | Width | Signals uses |
| | ProtectingArea | 0 | 0 | 1 | Writer: SDI_8_bytes Readers: ISH_Activate_SST, ISH_Delay_SST |
| | WarningArea | 0 | 1 | 1 | Writer: SDI_8_bytes Readers: ISH_Activate_TSP, ISH_Delay_TSP |
| | SafetyCommunicationEnable | 0 | 2 | 1 | Writer: SDI_8_bytes |
| | Global signals | | | | |

xx2200000304

- 4 If the signals cannot be observed, choose **I/O Engineering Tool** from **Configuration** in the **Configuration** group.
 - 5 Go back to the **Visual SafeMove** window and write the SafeMove configurations to the controller again.
- You will observe the signals and the communication is correctly set up.

7 Troubleshooting

7.8 Communication failure between scalable I/O device and controller

7.8 Communication failure between scalable I/O device and controller

Description

The OmniCore controller and scalable I/O device DSQC1042 are configured with all parameters correctly set. However, the communication between the OmniCore controller and scalable I/O device still fails.

This issue may occur when the SafetyIO-based laser scanner(s) is connected.

Consequence

The safety configurations do not take effect.

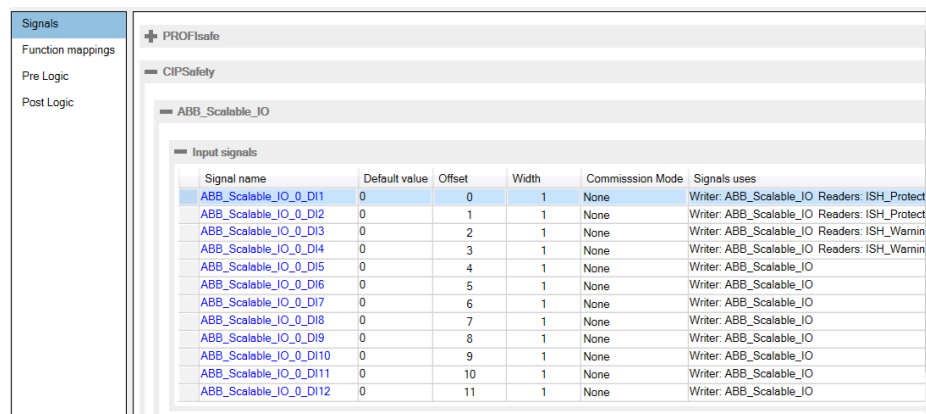
Possible causes

During configuration of communication between the OmniCore controller and scalable I/O device, the scalable I/O device information must be configured on the OmniCore controller's side first. Otherwise, the configured signals will not be saved in the OmniCore controller.

Recommended actions

- 1 Open the RobotStudio.
- 2 In the **Controller** tab page, choose **Visual SafeMove** from **Safety** in the **Configuration** group.
- 3 Check the Safe I/O configurations.

The following signals can be observed.



| Signal name | Default value | Offset | Width | Commission Mode | Signals uses |
|------------------------|---------------|--------|-------|-----------------|--|
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | None | Writer: ABB_Scalable_IO Readers: ISH_Protect |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI2 | 0 | 1 | 1 | None | Writer: ABB_Scalable_IO Readers: ISH_Protect |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI3 | 0 | 2 | 1 | None | Writer: ABB_Scalable_IO Readers: ISH_Warmin |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI4 | 0 | 3 | 1 | None | Writer: ABB_Scalable_IO Readers: ISH_Warmin |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI5 | 0 | 4 | 1 | None | Writer: ABB_Scalable_IO |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI6 | 0 | 5 | 1 | None | Writer: ABB_Scalable_IO |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI7 | 0 | 6 | 1 | None | Writer: ABB_Scalable_IO |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI8 | 0 | 7 | 1 | None | Writer: ABB_Scalable_IO |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI9 | 0 | 8 | 1 | None | Writer: ABB_Scalable_IO |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI10 | 0 | 9 | 1 | None | Writer: ABB_Scalable_IO |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI11 | 0 | 10 | 1 | None | Writer: ABB_Scalable_IO |
| ABB_Scalable_IO_0_DI12 | 0 | 11 | 1 | None | Writer: ABB_Scalable_IO |

xx2200000305

- 4 If the signals cannot be observed, choose **I/O Engineering Tool** from **Configuration** in the **Configuration** group.
- 5 Go back to the **Visual SafeMove** window and write the SafeMove configurations to the controller again.

You will observe the signals and the communication is correctly set up.

7.9 Errors related to stopped background task T_SWIFTI_LED

Description

Execution errors are reported because the background task T_SWIFTI_LED is stopped.

Consequences

Program execution is halted.

Possible causes

The I/O module is changed or reset.

Recommended actions

- 1 Tap I/O in the main page of the FlexPendant.
- 2 Check the device status, whether the **CabinetIO** device with address **192.168.125.100** is in **Not connected** state, and there is another device in **Unknown** state.
- 3 If in previous situation, tap the menu button after the unknown device and tap **Identify** in the list.
Verify whether the unknown device is the I/O module installed on the controller. If yes, the LED blinks on the I/O module.
- 4 Tap **Configure** in the list for the unknown device.
- 5 In the displayed **I/O Modernization** window, choose **Update device** in the **Configuration** area and select **CabinetIO** from the drop-down list.
This will update the unknown device to CabinetIO.
- 6 Tap **Apply**.
- 7 Restart the controller.
The system works normally.

7 Troubleshooting

7.10 Unable to change speed value in FlexPendant

7.10 Unable to change speed value in FlexPendant

Description

In manual mode, the **Speed** scrollbar in the FlexPendant cannot be dragged to edit the speed.

This issue may occur when robot is running in RobotWare 7.5 or an earlier version.

Consequences

Robot movement speed cannot be edited in manual mode in FlexPendant.

Possible causes

The speed control module uses the value of the system input whose **Action** is **Set speed** to control the actual movement speed. If the communication between the OmniCore controller and laser scanner fails, the controller considers this situation as that the protecting area is triggered, and the speed will be limited to 0%. If the communication failure remains when the operating mode is changed to Manual, the **Set speed** value is still valid.

Recommended actions

- 1 In the FlexPendant, tap **I/O** in the main page.
- 2 Reset the StartInProtecting DO.
The speed limitation will be released.

7.11 Movement in Safe area not in full speed or at zero speed

Description

The speed in the Safe area is not at the full speed specified in the motion instruction or even at zero speed after the SST/TSP violation is triggered.

This issue may occur when robot is running in RobotWare 7.5 or an earlier version.

Consequences

Robot cannot move in the specified speed, that is, in slow speed, or even stops movement in the Safe area.

Possible causes

Before the SST/TSP is triggered, the system triggers Protecting or Warning area speed control first. In this case, the speed control module uses the value of `SpeedRefresh` to control the robot movement speed. At the time that the SST/TSP triggers the robot stopping, the speed control has already changed by the `SpeedRefresh` value which is 0 in Protecting area and 20 in Warning area.

When users are back to the Safe area and restart or step the program after the SST/TSP violation, the `SpeedRefresh` value that refresh the speed to 100 does not take effect. That is, the speed is still controlled by the `SpeedRefresh` value 0 or 20. Although the speed shown in the FlexPendant is 100%, the actual speed is still controlled by the combination of the `SpeedRefresh` value and the speed set in motion instruction, which will result in the movement stopping or moving in slow speed in the Safe area.

Furthermore, when the STT violation is triggered, the manipulator triggers Cat0 or Cat1 emergency stop. If the user tries to start program in the Protecting area but is not in the STT area, the robot will start moving a short path to regain the previous point and then stop. In this case, the speed is restricted to 0.

For more details, see [Strategies \(RobotWare 7.5\) on page 151](#).

Recommended actions

Users could perform either of the following solutions:

- Reset the program pointer and start the program in the Safe area again.
- Enter the Warning area but not trigger the TSP supervision violation and then back to the Safe area again.

7.12 Unable to remove or reselect installed options in Collaborative Speed Control add-in

Description

The installed lead-through or laser scanner options fail to be removed or reselected in the Collaborative Speed Control add-in using Installation Manager 7.

Consequence

- Lamp indicator does not light up after the installed options are reselected.
- Modules of the SpeedHandling function remain in task T_ROB1 after the installed options are removed.
- Existing template SafeMove configuration file is not removed after the installed options are removed or not synchronized with new configuration file for the new option after the installed options are reselected.

Recommended actions

- 1 Reset the template SafeMove configuration file to factory settings and apply it to the controller.
- 2 For scenarios to remove options, de-select the checkboxes of the options that require to be removed in the Collaborative Speed Control add-in and apply it to the controller.
- 3 For scenarios to reselect options, de-select the checkboxes of the options not required first and then select the required options in the Collaborative Speed Control add-in and apply it to the controller.
- 4 Reset the RAPID programs and parameters in RobotStudio and restart the controller.
- 5 Load the template SafeMove configuration file using the SafeMove configurator app on FlexPendant.

7.13 Unexpected robot movement when starting the program in Protecting Area

Description

The robot moves unexpectedly in a speed not larger than 250 mm/sec when the user starts the program in Protecting area, in which situation the robot should be stopped and stand still.

Consequence

The unexpected robot movement may cause damages or injuries to objects or persons within its movement range.

Possible causes

The robot moves in mentioned scenario only when all of the following conditions are met:

- The function ISH_b_FunctionalityIsUsed in RAPID program InternalSpeedHandling_User is set to TRUE.
- The template SafeMove configuration file provided with the Collaborative Speed Control add-in is not loaded, or is loaded but Global_SST configuration is removed or the ISH_UserMODE_bNot_IntemitCollab is set to 1.
- The system is in Auto mode or Manual Full Speed mode.
- The robot was stopped during running a program, and then manually moved to another position which is within the range of the robot return path.
- The user stands in Protecting area and restarts the program using FlexPendant.

Recommended actions

Reset the template SafeMove configuration file to factory setting and then load the configuration file provided with the Collaborative Speed Control add-in. See detailed procedures in [The SafeMove configurator app on FlexPendant on page 104](#).

This page is intentionally left blank

8 Decommissioning

8.1 Introduction to decommissioning

Introduction

This section contains information to consider when taking a product, robot or controller, out of operation.

It deals with how to handle potentially dangerous components and potentially hazardous materials.



Note

The decommissioning process shall be preceded by a risk assessment.

Disposal of materials used in the robot

All used grease/oils and dead batteries **must** be disposed of in accordance with the current legislation of the country in which the robot and the control unit are installed.

If the robot or the control unit is partially or completely disposed of, the various parts **must** be grouped together according to their nature (which is all iron together and all plastic together), and disposed of accordingly. These parts **must** also be disposed of in accordance with the current legislation of the country in which the robot and control unit are installed.

See also [Environmental information on page 700](#).

Transportation

Prepare the robot or parts before transport, this to avoid hazards.

8 Decommissioning

8.2 Environmental information

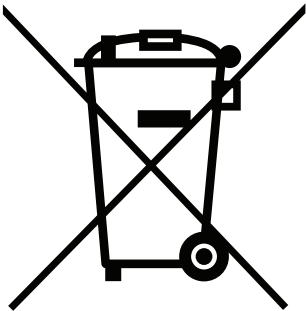
8.2 Environmental information

Introduction

ABB robots contain components in different materials. During decommissioning, all materials should be dismantled, recycled, or reused responsibly, according to the relevant laws and industrial standards. Robots or parts that can be reused or upcycled helps to reduce the usage of natural resources.

Symbol

The following symbol indicates that the product must not be disposed of as common garbage. Handle each product according to local regulations for the respective content (see table below).



xx1800000058

Materials used in the product

The table specifies some of the materials in the product and their respective use throughout the product.

Dispose components properly according to local regulations to prevent health or environmental hazards.

| Material | Example application |
|--------------------|---|
| Aluminium | Base, base adapter, swing, swing support, lower arm, lower arm support, swing, covers, motors, gearboxes, SMB unit, etc |
| Batteries, Lithium | Serial measurement board |
| Copper | Cables, motors |
| Lead | Serial measurement board |
| Neodymium | Motors |
| Oil, grease | Gearboxes, process hub, etc |
| Plastic/rubber | Cables, SMB unit, gearboxes, timing belt, cooling pads, connector kits, etc |
| Steel | Base, swing, lower arm, extender unit, wrist, motors, gearboxes, SMB unit, etc |

Continues on next page

China RoHS symbol

The following symbol shows the information to hazardous substances and the environmental protection use period of CRB 1100 according to "Management Methods for the Restriction of the Use of Hazardous Substances in Electrical and Electronic Products (SJ/T 11364-2014)".



xx1900000803

Green symbol with "e" in it: The product does not contain any hazardous substances exceeding concentration limits and is a green environmentally friendly product which can be recycled.

Oil and grease

Where possible, arrange for oil and grease to be recycled. Dispose of via an authorized person/contractor in accordance with local regulations. Do not dispose of oil and grease near lakes, ponds, ditches, down drains, or onto soil. Incineration must be carried out under controlled conditions in accordance with local regulations.

Also note that:

- Spills can form a film on water surfaces causing damage to organisms. Oxygen transfer could also be impaired.
- Spillage can penetrate the soil causing ground water contamination.

8 Decommissioning

8.3 Scrapping of robot

8.3 Scrapping of robot



Note

The decommissioning process shall be preceded by a risk assessment.

Important when scrapping the robot



DANGER

The risk assessment should consider hazards arising in the decommissioning, such as, but not limited to:

- Always remove all batteries. If a battery is exposed to heat, for example from a blow torch, it will explode.
- Always remove all oil/grease in gearboxes. If exposed to heat, for example from a blow torch, the oil/grease will catch fire.
- When motors are removed from the robot, the robot will collapse if it is not properly supported before the motor is removed.
- A used robot does not have the same performance as on delivery. Springs, brakes, bearings, and other parts might be worn or broken.

9 Reference information

9.1 Introduction

General

This chapter includes general information, complementing the more specific information in the different procedures in the manual.

9 Reference information

9.2 Applicable standards

9.2 Applicable standards

General

The product is compliant with ISO 10218-1:2011, *Robots for industrial environments - Safety requirements - Part 1 Robots*, and applicable parts in the normative references, as referred to from ISO 10218-1:2011. In case of deviation from ISO 10218-1:2011, these are listed in the declaration of incorporation. The declaration of incorporation is part of the delivery.

Robot standards

| Standard | Description |
|----------|--|
| ISO 9283 | Manipulating industrial robots – Performance criteria and related test methods |
| ISO 9787 | Robots and robotic devices – Coordinate systems and motion nomenclatures |
| ISO 9946 | Manipulating industrial robots – Presentation of characteristics |

Other standards used in design

| Standard | Description |
|------------------|--|
| IEC 60204-1 | Safety of machinery - Electrical equipment of machines - Part 1: General requirements, normative reference from ISO 10218-1 |
| IEC 61000-6-2 | Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) – Part 6-2: Generic standards – Immunity standard for industrial environments |
| IEC 61000-6-4 | Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) – Part 6-4: Generic standards – Emission standard for industrial environments |
| ISO 13849-1:2006 | Safety of machinery - Safety related parts of control systems - Part 1: General principles for design, normative reference from ISO 10218-1 |
| ISO/TS 15066 | Robots and robotic devices - Collaborative robots This Technical Specification specifies safety requirements for collaborative industrial robot systems and the work environment, and supplements the requirements and guidance on collaborative industrial robot operation given in ISO 10218-1 and ISO 10218-2. |

Region specific standards and regulations

| Standard | Description |
|------------------|---|
| ANSI/RIA R15.06 | Safety requirements for industrial robots and robot systems |
| ANSI/UL 1740 | Safety standard for robots and robotic equipment |
| CAN/CSA Z 434-03 | Industrial robots and robot Systems - General safety requirements |
| EN ISO 10218-1 | Robots and robotic devices — Safety requirements for industrial robots — Part 1: Robots |

9.3 Unit conversion

Converter table

Use the following table to convert units used in this manual.

| Quantity | Units | | |
|----------|-------|--------------|----------|
| Length | 1 m | 3.28 ft. | 39.37 in |
| Weight | 1 kg | 2.21 lb. | |
| Weight | 1 g | 0.035 ounces | |
| Pressure | 1 bar | 100 kPa | 14.5 psi |
| Force | 1 N | 0.225 lbf | |
| Moment | 1 Nm | 0.738 lbf-ft | |
| Volume | 1 L | 0.264 US gal | |

9 Reference information

9.4 Screw joints

9.4 Screw joints

General

This section describes how to tighten the various types of screw joints on ABB robots.

The instructions and torque values are valid for screw joints comprised of metallic materials and do *not* apply to soft or brittle materials.

UNBRAKO screws

UNBRAKO is a special type of screw recommended by ABB for certain screw joints. It features special surface treatment (Gleitmo as described below) and is extremely resistant to fatigue.

Whenever used, this is specified in the instructions, and in such cases, *no other type of replacement screw* is allowed. Using other types of screws will void any warranty and may potentially cause serious damage or injury.

Gleitmo treated screws

Gleitmo is a special surface treatment to reduce the friction when tightening the screw joint. It is recommended by ABB for M6-M20 screw joints. Screws treated with Gleitmo may be reused 3-4 times before the coating disappears. After this the screw must be discarded and replaced with a new one.

When handling screws treated with Gleitmo, protective gloves of nitrile rubber type should be used.

Generally, screws are lubricated with *Gleitmo 603* mixed with *Geomet 500* or *Geomet 702* in proportion 1:3. *Geomet* thickness varies according to screw dimensions, refer to the following.

| Dimension | Lubricant | Geomet thickness |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|
| M6-M20 (any length except M20x60) | <i>Gleitmo 603 + Geomet 500</i> | 3-5 µm |
| M6-M20 (any length except M20x60) | <i>Gleitmo 603 + Geomet 720</i> | 3-5 µm |
| M20x60 | <i>Gleitmo 603 + Geomet 500</i> | 8-12 µm |
| M20x60 | <i>Gleitmo 603 + Geomet 720</i> | 6-10 µm |

Screws lubricated in other ways

Screws lubricated with Molykote 1000 or Molykote P1900 should *only* be used when specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure descriptions.

In such cases, proceed as follows:

- 1 Apply lubricant to the screw thread.
- 2 Apply lubricant between the plain washer and screw head.
- 3 Screw dimensions of M8 or larger must be tightened with a torque wrench. Screw dimensions of M6 or smaller may be tightened without a torque wrench *if* this is done by trained and qualified personnel.

Continues on next page

| Lubricant | Article number |
|---|----------------|
| Molykote 1000 (molybdenum disulphide grease) | 3HAC042472-001 |
| Molykote P1900 (molybdenum disulphide grease) | 3HAC070875-001 |

Tightening torque

Before tightening any screw, note the following:

- Determine whether a **standard** tightening torque or **special** torque is to be applied. The **standard torques** are specified in the following tables. Any **special torques** are specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure descriptions. **Any special torque specified overrides the standard torque!**
- Use the *correct tightening torque* for each type of screw joint.
- Only use *correctly calibrated* torque keys.
- *Always tighten the joint by hand*, and never use pneumatic tools.
- Use the *correct tightening technique*, that is *do not* jerk. Tighten the screw in a slow, flowing motion.
- Maximum allowed total deviation from the specified value is **10%!**

Tightening torque for oil-lubricated screws with slotted or cross-recess head screws

The following table specifies the recommended standard tightening torque for *oil-lubricated screws with slotted or cross-recess head screws*.

**Note**

A special torque specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure overrides the standard torque.

Tightening torque for oil-lubricated screws with allen head screws

The following table specifies the recommended standard tightening torque for *oil-lubricated screws with allen head screws*.

**Note**

A special torque specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure overrides the standard torque.

| Dimension | Tightening torque (Nm) Class 8.8, oil-lubricated | Tightening torque (Nm) Class 10.9, oil-lubricated | Tightening torque (Nm) Class 12.9, oil-lubricated |
|-----------|---|--|--|
| M5 | 6 | - | - |
| M6 | 10 | - | - |
| M8 | 24 | 34 | 40 |
| M10 | 47 | 67 | 80 |
| M12 | 82 | 115 | 140 |
| M16 | 200 | 290 | 340 |
| M20 | 400 | 560 | 670 |

Continues on next page

9 Reference information

9.4 Screw joints

Continued

| Dimension | Tightening torque (Nm) Class 8.8, oil-lubricated | Tightening torque (Nm) Class 10.9, oil-lubricated | Tightening torque (Nm) Class 12.9, oil-lubricated |
|-----------|---|--|--|
| M24 | 680 | 960 | 1150 |

Tightening torque for lubricated screws (Molykote, Gleitmo or equivalent) with allen head screws

The following table specifies the recommended standard tightening torque for *screws lubricated with Molykote 1000, Gleitmo 603 or equivalent with allen head screws*.



Note

A special torque specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure overrides the standard torque.

| Dimension | Tightening torque (Nm) Class 10.9, lubricated ⁱ | Tightening torque (Nm) Class 12.9, lubricated ⁱ |
|-----------|---|---|
| M5 | | 8 |
| M6 | | 14 |
| M8 | 28 | 35 |
| M10 | 55 | 70 |
| M12 | 96 | 120 |
| M16 | 235 | 300 |
| M20 | 460 | 550 |
| M24 | 790 | 950 |

ⁱ Lubricated with Molykote 1000, Gleitmo 603 or equivalent

9.5 Weight specifications


Definition

In installation, repair, and maintenance procedures, weights of the components handled are sometimes specified. All components exceeding 22 kg (50 lbs) are highlighted in this way.

To avoid injury, ABB recommends the use of a lifting accessory when handling components with a weight exceeding 22 kg. A wide range of lifting accessories and devices are available for each manipulator model.

Example

Following is an example of a weight specification in a procedure:

| Action | Note |
|--|------|
| <div> CAUTION</div> <div>The arm weighs 25 kg. All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</div> | |

9 Reference information

9.6 Standard toolkit

9.6 Standard toolkit

General

All service (repairs, maintenance, and installation) procedures contains lists of tools required to perform the specified activity.

All special tools required are listed directly in the procedures while all the tools that are considered standard are gathered in the standard toolkit and defined in the following table.

This way, the tools required are the sum of the standard toolkit and any tools listed in the instruction.

Contents, standard toolkit

| Qty | Tool | Rem. |
|-----|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1 | Socket head cap 2-17 mm | |
| 1 | Torque wrench 0.3-45 Nm | |
| 1 | Torque wrench 50 Nm \pm 5 Nm | For securing robot to foundation. |
| 1 | Ratchet head for torque wrench 1/2 | |
| 1 | Hex socket head cap no. 2.5 socket 1/2" bit L=110 mm | |
| 1 | Small screwdriver | |
| 1 | T-handle with ball head | |
| 1 | Small cutting plier | |
| 1 | Plastic mallet | |
| 1 | Needle-nose plier | |

9.7 Special tools

General

All service instructions contain lists of tools required to perform the specified activity. The required tools are a sum of standard tools, defined in the section [Standard toolkit on page 710](#), and of special tools, listed directly in the instructions and also gathered in this section.

Special tools



Note

If the replacing procedure is not listed in the table below, only standard tools are needed for the procedure.

Tools and equipment with spare part number: (These tools can be ordered from ABB)

| | |
|----------------|---|
| - | 24 VDC power supply |
| 3HAC074119-001 | Calibration tool box, Axis Calibration Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. The tool box also includes a unique calibration pin for CRB 1100 to be fitted to the tool flange during calibration of axis 6. |
| - | Sonic tension meter Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| - | Dynamometer Used for measuring the timing belt tension. |
| 3HAC071022-001 | Special toolkit Includes J5.C2 connector assembly tool, brake release button assembly tool, axis-4 motor fitting tool and M3x25 eye bolt. |

This page is intentionally left blank

10 Spare parts

10.1 Spare part lists and illustrations

Location

Spare parts and exploded views are not included in the manual but delivered as a separate document for registered users on myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

**Tip**

All documents can be found via myABB Business Portal, www.abb.com/myABB.

This page is intentionally left blank

Index

A

Absolute Accuracy, calibration, 655
 allergenic material, 28
 aluminum
 disposal, 700
 ambient humidity
 operation, 41
 storage, 41
 ambient temperature
 operation, 41
 storage, 41
 assembly instructions, 49
 assessment of hazards and risks, 28
 Axis Calibration, 663
 calibration tool
 article number, 666, 671
 examining, 666
 installation position, 668
 overview of method, 663
 procedure on FlexPendant, 671, 679
 protective cover and protection plug, 668, 671

B

base
 replacing, 277
 batteries
 disposal, 700
 battery pack
 replacing, 178
 Brake power supply, faulty, 687
 brake releasing, 58
 brakes
 testing function, 34

C

cabinet lock, 28
 cable package
 lubricating, 176
 cable package, lower
 replacing, 235
 cable package, upper
 replacing, 191
 cabling between robot and controller, 88
 calibrating
 robot, 663
 roughly, 659
 calibrating robot, 663, 679
 calibration
 Absolute Accuracy type, 654
 rough, 659
 standard type, 654
 verification, 681
 when to calibrate, 656
 calibration, Absolute Accuracy, 655
 calibration manuals, 655
 calibration marks, 657
 calibration position
 jogging to, 682
 scales, 657
 calibration scales, 657
 CalibWare, 654
 carbon dioxide extinguisher, 28
 cleaning, 168
 Cold environments, 93

connecting the robot and controller, cabling, 88
 copper
 disposal, 700

D

damaged bearings, 686
 dimensions
 robot, 66
 direction of axes, 658
 Dual PROFI-safe-based laser scanner
 laser scanner, 80–81, 129, 137
 Dual SafetyIO-based laser scanner
 laser scanner, 82, 146

E

environmental information, 700
 equipment, robot, 66
 ESD
 damage elimination, 48
 sensitive equipment, 48
 expected life, 167
 extender unit
 replacing, 435
 extra equipment, 66

F

factory settings for SafeMove, 105
 faulty brake, 687
 fire extinguishing, 28
 fitting, equipment, 66
 FlexPendant
 jogging to calibration position, 682
 MoveAbsJ instruction, 682
 updating revolution counters, 662
 FlexPendant application, 104
 floor plan, 113
 foundation
 requirements, 40

G

gearbox, axis-4
 replacing, 620
 gearbox, axis-3
 replacing, 605
 gearbox, axis-2
 replacing, 587
 gearbox, axis-1
 replacing, 545
 Global Settings
 FlexPendant application, 104
 Gravity Alpha, 61
 Gravity Beta, 60
 grease, 31
 disposal, 700

H

hanging
 installed hanging, 28
 hazard levels, 19
 hazardous material, 700
 height
 installed at a height, 28
 hot gearbox oil, 685–686
 hot surfaces, 31
 housing
 replacing, 393
 HRA, 28

humidity
operation, 41
storage, 41

I

information labels location, 169
inspecting
information labels, 169
robot cabling, 171
timing belts, 172
installation
equipment, 66
laser scanner, 78
lead-through device, 71
instructions for assembly, 49
integrator responsibility, 28
intervals for maintenance, 165

L

labels
robot, 21
Lamp indicator
safety configurations, 156
laser scanner
installation, 78
Laser scanner
dual PROFIsafe-based laser scanner, 80–81
RobotWare 7.6 or later, 129, 137
Dual SafetyIO-based laser scanner, 82, 146
PROFINET-based laser scanner, 119
PROFIsafe-based laser scanner, 79–80
RobotWare 7.10 or later, 133
RobotWare 7.6 or later, 125
SafetyIO-based laser scanner, 81, 141
lead
disposal, 700
lead-through device
installation, 71
leaking sealing, 685
lifting
robot, 53
lifting accessory, 709
limitation of liability, 17
Lithium
disposal, 700
loads on foundation, 38
lock and tag, 28
locked configuration file, 113
lower arm
replacing, 362
lubricants, 31
lubricating
cable package, 176

M

maintenance intervals, 165
maintenance schedule, 165
mechanical stop
axis 1, 87
mechanical stop location, 87
motor, axis-6
replacing, 535
motor, axis-5
replacing, 524
motor, axis-4
replacing, 513
motor, axis-3

replacing, 502
motor, axis-2
replacing, 490
motor, axis-1
replacing, 475
mounting, equipment, 66
MoveAbsJ instruction, 682

N

national regulations, 28
negative directions, axes, 658
neodymium
disposal, 700
network security, 16
noise, 686

O

oil, 31
disposal, 700
oil leaks, 685
operating conditions, 41
original spare parts, 17
overfilled gearbox, 685

P

pedestal
installed on pedestal, 28
personnel
requirements, 18
plastic
disposal, 700
positive directions, axes, 658
PPE, 18
product standards, 704
PROFINET-based laser scanner
laser scanner, 119
PROFIsafe-based laser scanner
laser scanner, 79–80, 125, 133
protection classes, 41
protection type, 41
protective equipment, 18
protective wear, 18

R

recycling, 700
regional regulations, 28
release brakes, 33
replacements, report, 185
replacing
base, 277
battery pack, 178
cable package
lower, 235
upper, 191
extender unit, 435
gearbox
axis-4, 620
axis-3, 605
axis-2, 587
axis-1, 545
housing, 393
lower arm, 362
mechanical stop
axis 1, 87
motor
axis-6, 535
axis-5, 524

- axis-4, 513
- axis-3, 502
- axis-2, 490
- axis-1, 475
- SMB unit, 269
- swing, 318
- wrist, 435
- xx, 51
- report replacements, 185
- requirements on foundation, 40
- responsibility and validity, 17
- revolution counters
 - storing on FlexPendant, 662
 - updating, 659
- risk of burns, 31
- robot
 - dimensions, 66
 - equipment, fitting, 66
 - labels, 21
 - lifting, 53
 - protection class, 41
 - protection types, 41
 - symbols, 21
 - technical data, 38
 - working range, 45
- robot cabling
 - inspecting, 171
- Robot Encapsulation**
 - FlexPendant application, 104
- rubber
 - disposal, 700

S

SafeMove application, 104

safety

- brake testing, 34
- ESD, 48
- fire extinguishing, 28
- release robot axes, 33
- signals, 19
- signals in manual, 19
- symbols, 19
- symbols on robot, 21
- test run, 161

safety configuration report, 113

Safety configurations

- lamp indicator, 156
- speed control, 156
- template SafeMove configuration file, 156

safety devices, 29

SafetyIO-based laser scanner

- laser scanner, 81, 141

safety signals

- in manual, 19

safety standards, 704

Safe Zones

- FlexPendant application, 104

scales on robot, 657

schedule of maintenance, 165

screw joints, 706

securing, robot, 56

securing the robot to foundation, attachment screws, 56

shipping, 699

signals

- safety, 19

SMB unit

- replacing, 269

speed

- adjusting, 93

Speed control

- safety configurations, 157–158
- strategies, 151

standards, 704

- ANSI, 704
- CAN, 704

start of robot in cold environments, 93

steel

- disposal, 700

storage conditions, 41

suspended mounting, 60

swing

- replacing, 318

symbols

- safety, 19

Synchronization

- FlexPendant application, 104

synchronization position, 659

sync marks, 657

system integrator requirements, 28

system parameter

- Gravity Alpha, 61
- Gravity Beta, 60

T

technical data

- robot, 38

temperatures

- operation, 41
- storage, 41

template configurations for SafeMove, 105

Template SafeMove configuration file

- safety configurations, 157–158, 160

testing

- brakes, 34

timing belts

- inspecting, 172

Tool Data

- FlexPendant application, 104

Tool Encapsulation

- FlexPendant application, 104

torques on foundation, 38

transportation, 699

troubleshooting

- safety, 35

turning radius, 47

U

upcycling, 700

updating revolution counters, 659

users

- requirements, 18

V

validated configuration file, 113

validity and responsibility, 17

velocity

- adjusting, 93

verifying calibration, 681

W

wall mounting, 60

weight, 38

- robot, 56

working range, 47

robot, 45
wrist
 replacing, 435
Wrist Optimization
 overview of method, 679

X
xx
 replacing, 51

Z
zero position
 checking, 682

**ABB AB****Robotics & Discrete Automation**

S-721 68 VÄSTERÅS, Sweden

Telephone +46 10-732 50 00

ABB AS**Robotics & Discrete Automation**

Nordlysvegen 7, N-4340 BRYNE, Norway

Box 265, N-4349 BRYNE, Norway

Telephone: +47 22 87 2000

ABB Engineering (Shanghai) Ltd.

Robotics & Discrete Automation

No. 4528 Kangxin Highway

PuDong New District

SHANGHAI 201319, China

Telephone: +86 21 6105 6666

ABB Inc.**Robotics & Discrete Automation**

1250 Brown Road

Auburn Hills, MI 48326

USA

Telephone: +1 248 391 9000

abb.com/robotics